SED NO. 66-04-03-03-0-001-019
66-04-03-03-0-004-018

TETRA TECH
ARCHITECTS & ENGINEERS

10 Brown Road
Ithaca, New York 14850
607-277-7100

Ithaca, New York
Farmingdale, New York
Albany, New York

VOLUME 2

DOBBS FERRY UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT

DOBBS FERRY, NEW YORK

PROJECT NO. 234903-20001

RECONSTRUCTION TO

DOBBS FERRY MIDDLE HIGH SCHOOL

SPRINGHURST ELEMENTARY SCHOOL

JULY 2, 2020

The engineer that has signed this document certifies that to the best of their knowledge, information and belief, the asbestos plans and specifications are in accordance with applicable requirements of the New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code, Construction Standards of the Commissioner of Education, New York State Department of Labor Part 56 of Title 12, and the United States Environmental Protection Agency Hazard Emergency Response ACT Regulations. Christopher M. Schwarz is accredited to the EPA and New York State under AHERA Regulations as an Asbestos Project Designer (Asbestos Handling Certificate Number 08-1979).

To the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, the design of this project conforms to all applicable provisions of the New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code, the New York State Energy Conservation Code, and the building standards of the New York State Education Department.

SET NO. _____

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PROJECT MANUAL

Volume 2 of 2

BIDDING REQUIREMENTS AND CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

PLEASE NOTE

All sections of the following **SPECIFICATIONS** are sequentially numbered, beginning with Page 1 and concluding with the last numbered page bearing the marking "END OF SECTION -- -- --".

Sections may include additional attachments as noted in following list of Specification sections.

SPECIFICATIONS

SECTION 22 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Definitions, references, and abbreviations.
2. General regulatory requirements.
3. General requirements regarding site/field conditions including existing conditions and field measurements.
4. Sequencing and scheduling including coordination.
5. Definition of design equipment and procedures for consideration of specified equivalents, proposed equivalents, or substitutions.
6. Transition fittings.
7. Grout.
8. Plumbing demolition.
9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
10. Painting and finishing.
11. Concrete bases.
12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.

E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide complete systems, properly connected, tested, balanced, adjusted, and ready for operation, including all necessary and required controls, safeties, details and accessories, including (but not limited to):

1. Sanitary drainage and vent systems.
2. Storm drainage and roof drainage systems.
3. Water distribution systems.
4. Plumbing fixtures.
5. Natural gas piping systems.
6. Miscellaneous items.

1.5 COORDINATION PROCEDURES

A. Coordinate construction operations and construction schedule of plumbing work with other contractors in accordance with Section 01 31 00 “Project Management and Coordination” and as modified below.

1. Pre-Installation Conference:

   a. Attend pre-installation conference. Arrange for all subcontractors to be in attendance.

2. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.

3. Coordinate Plumbing Work with HVAC systems, lighting fixtures, ceiling mounted devices, ceiling heights, materials, structural work, maintenance clearances, and electric code clearance and building systems.

4. Notify Owner's Project Representative and Architect in case of unresolved interferences prior to installation of Plumbing Work.

5. Adjust exact size, location and offsets of pipes to achieve reasonable appearance objectives in open areas without ceilings without increase in Contract Sum.

1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Comply with requirements of Section 01 31 00 “Project Management and Coordination” and as modified below.

1. Prepare drawings coordinating Plumbing Work with HVAC systems, lighting fixtures, ceiling mounted devices, ceiling heights, materials, structural work, maintenance clearances, electric code clearance, building systems, existing construction, etc. Provide additional details and sections, as required for clarity, at all places of potential conflict.

2. Reposition proposed locations of Plumbing systems as required to work within project constraints. Adjust exact size, aspect ratio, location and offsets of piping systems as required. Achieve as specified and other reasonable appearance objectives in open areas without ceilings without increase in Contract Sum.

3. Review Coordination Drawings and compare them with all other drawings to verify that all Work can be installed without interference. Notify Owner's Project Representative in case of unresolved interferences prior to installation of any work. Revise Coordination Drawings as required to eliminate installation interferences upon direction of Architect.

4. Indicate areas of unresolved conflicts between Plumbing systems and other building components by highlighting locations on Coordination Drawings and separately listing.

5. Do not proceed with installation of systems in each area until agreement is reached with all concerned on exact arrangements for each room or area, unless otherwise directed by Architect. If Contractor proceeds with installations prior to resolving conflicts, Contractor shall modify installed Work as required to permit other systems to proceed with a coordinated installation without an increase in Contract Sum.

6. Coordination Drawings do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for coordinating Plumbing system installations with Project work, nor does it authorize extra cost, omission or deviation from Contract Document requirements. Costs arising from errors or omissions in Coordination Drawings shall be borne by Contractor.

1.7 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 “Submittal Procedures” for each individual Section and as modified below.

B. Submit all action submittals required by individual Section concurrently.

1. As-Specified Products: If product to be incorporated into Project is as specified by name and product designation in Part 2 of product specification, and will be installed as specified in Part 3, and only where allowed as such in submittal portion of product specification, then submit “**As-Specified Verification Form**” (attached to SECTION 01 33 00 “Submittal Procedures”) in lieu of “Product Data” identified in the Action Submittal.

2. Do not use “**As Specified Verification Form**” unless specifically indicated in detailed product specification.

3. Equivalent Products or Substitutions: If product to be incorporated into Project is <u>not</u> specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, comply with all Product Data requirements specified.

1.8 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sleeves and sleeve seals. Include rated capacities, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. As-Specified Data: The product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Concrete mix for bases and supports.
2. Grout.
3. Sealants.
4. Paint.
5. Dielectric fittings.
6. Transition fittings.

C. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and attachments to other work for concrete bases.

1.9 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings.
B. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures".

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE.

A. Provide installation, testing and materials in accordance with Federal, State and Local Building, Health, Plumbing and Electrical Codes, Laws, Ordinances, and Regulations that apply to Plumbing Work.

1. Comply with applicable requirements of following documents:

a. New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code.
b. 2020 Building Code of New York State.
c. 2020 Fire Code of New York State.
d. 2020 Plumbing Code of New York State.
e. 2020 Mechanical Code of New York State.
f. 2020 Fuel Gas Code of New York State.
g. 2020 Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State.
h. New York State Education Department Manual of Planning Standards.
i. In event of a conflict between the Codes identified above and Contract Documents, comply with more stringent requirement.

2. Comply with applicable Utility Company Regulations.

3. Obtain and pay for necessary inspections, certificates, and permits from applicable agencies. Perform required tests in accordance with regulation of agency having jurisdiction. Submit certificates of approval prior to the date of Substantial Completion as defined in Section 01 77 00 “Closeout Procedures”.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code-Steel."

C. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

D. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is submitted to the Architect and approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Packing and Shipping: Ship materials in manufacturer’s containers, fully identified with manufacture’s name, trade name, type, class, style, model, grade, size and color.

C. Storage and Protection:

1. Store materials, equipment, fixtures, pipe, fittings, and attachments, under cover, off ground in original containers as applicable, and protect from physical and weather damage while in storage and during construction.

2. Furnish extra materials identified in technical sections, in original manufacturers’ containers and packaging, to Owner at location identified during prebid conference. Obtain receipt from Owner upon delivery of extra materials and send copy of receipt to Architect.

3. Replace or repair damaged, rusted, corroded or otherwise unusable materials physically damaged or weather damaged equipment as determined by Architect, at no change in Contract Sum.

1.12 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONs

A. Existing Conditions:

1. Reuse equipment only as indicated on Drawings.

2. All usable material and equipment not being reused is to be offered to the Owner. If accepted by Owner the Contractor shall deliver to a location on District grounds designated by the Owner.

3. All other material and equipment to be removed, shall be removed from the site and legally disposed of by the Contractor

B. Rodent Proofing:

1. Openings for Pipes: In or on structures where openings have been made in walls, floors or ceilings for the passage of pipes, such openings shall be closed and protected by the installation of approved metal collars that are securely fastened to the adjoining structure. Refer to Section 22 05 17 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing piping” and 22 05 18 “Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping” for additional requirements.

C. Protection of Plumbing Systems:

1. Corrosion: Provide corrosion protection for pipes passing through concrete or cinder walls and floors or buried in corrosive soil conditions.

a. Provide oversized sleeves or core drilled holes to eliminate rubbing on above grade piping installations. Refer to Section 22 05 17 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping” for pipe sleeve and core drilling requirements.

b. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for corrosion protection on buried piping installations in corrosive soil conditions.

2. Stress and Strain: Install plumbing systems in a manner that prevents stresses and strains that exceed the structural strength of the pipe. Install piping systems to accommodate expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

3. Freezing: Do not install water, soil, waste or storm piping outside of a building, in attics or crawlspaces, conceal in outside walls or in any other place subjected to freezing temperatures without providing measures to keep the contents of the piping system from freezing.

D. Field Measurements:

1. Layout of equipment, piping, and similar components in Drawings is diagrammatic. Review Drawings to identify interference with other construction and verify dimensions at Site prior to beginning installation.

a. Obtain exact location of all items and openings and confirm all existing conditions in field.

b. Obtain exact location and roughing requirements for all equipment furnished by others, but installed by this Contractor before roughing. Owner reserves right to make reasonable changes prior to "roughing-in" without increase in Contract Sum.

2. Report any conflicts to Architect in writing before beginning installation.

3. Provide fittings, horizontal and vertical offsets, elevation changes, etc. required to install Plumbing Work. Do not infer that Drawings show level of detail indicating every offset, elbow, union, fitting, elevation changes, or other aspect required for complete installation.

4. Install Plumbing Work with proper provisions for removal and/or access to valves, traps, cleanouts, etc.

1.13 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Perform Plumbing Work in cooperation with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and all Contractors on this Project, and other separate Contractors at the Site.

1. Coordinate Plumbing Work with construction schedule requirements in Division 01
2. Coordinate all submittals with the construction schedule and with requirements and schedules contained in Section 01 33 00 “Submittals Procedures.”
3. Immediately report any delays in receipt of materials required for Plumbing Work including circumstances causing delays.

B. Refer to Division 01 for cooperation between Contractors. Prior to start of construction:

1. Obtain from Contract Drawings or Architect, exact location of items and openings in construction. Conform to existing conditions in field.

2. Review applicable Shop Drawings of all Contracts.

3. If conflict occurs between Contract Drawings, advise Architect in writing before beginning installation and comply with Architect's directions.

4. Obtain exact location and roughing requirements for equipment furnished by other Contractor or by Owner but installed by Contractor responsible for Plumbing Work before beginning roughing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Minimum Material Requirements:

1. Construct potable water systems and equipment according to AWWA standards.

2. Provide electrical equipment and systems meeting UL standards and requirements of NEC.

3. Provide UL label on all equipment and material with listing service.

4. Material Flammability:

a. Flame spread rating of 25 or less.

b. Smoke developed rating of 50 or less.

5. Equipment Verification: Carefully check manufacturer's drawings and specifications as they affect their equipment; follow factory instructions for roughing, installation, connection, filling, lubrication, testing, balancing, adjusting, alignment, wiring, and start-up operation.

2.2 CONCRETE BASES AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for concrete bases and supports specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Equipment Bases: 3-1/2 inches thick minimum, reinforced with 6x6-W1.4xW1.4 welded wire mesh, minimum 1-1/2 inches cover, doubled over 12 inches on long edges, unless otherwise specified.

2.3 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink, non-metallic, high strength grout, suitable for interior and exterior, above and below grade applications.

1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in non-fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

B. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus.
b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.

2.5 PAINT AND FINISHES

A. Refer to Section 09 91 00 "Painting" for interior and Section 09 96 00 “High-Performance Coatings” for exterior painting and finishing of plumbing piping, equipment and systems.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

1. Dielectric Unions:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
4) Jomar International Ltd.
5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Matco-Norca, Inc.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
d. JCM Industries.
e. Romac Industries, Inc.
f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
g. Viking Johnson.

2. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners, and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.

3. Standard: AWWA C219.

4. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.

5. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.

6. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

7. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Section 02 41 19 "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Remove Piping: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
2. Abandon Piping in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
3. Remove Equipment: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
4. Remove and Reinstall Equipment: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
5. Remove and Salvage Equipment: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is rendered unserviceable during the process of demolition, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Unless specific mounting heights are indicated, install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom.

B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.3 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Refer to Division 05 Sections, Section 22 05 29 “Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment”, for detailed additional requirements.
B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping and equipment Sections for specific concrete base and support requirements.

3.5 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
G. Place grout around anchors.
H. Cure placed grout.

3.6 SEALANTS

A. Install sealants according to the requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
B. Refer to individual Division 22 plumbing fixture and equipment Sections for specific sealant and caulking requirements.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Section 09 91 00 "Painting."
B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Install dielectric fittings according to the specific requirements in the Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

3.9 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Install transition fittings according to the specific requirements in the Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

END OF SECTION 22 05 00

SECTION 22 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sleeves and sleeve seals. Include rated capacities, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1. Firestopping.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Wall pipe sleeves.
2. Grout.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.

B. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

D. Flanged Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.1345-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint with 2-inch minimum wide anchor flange welded to perimeter of sleeve. Set flange on perimeter of sleeve to obtain minimum of 2-inches concrete embedment.

E. Flanged Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, welded steel pipe with plain ends and a 2-inch minimum wide anchor flange welded to perimeter of sleeve. Set flange on perimeter of sleeve to obtain minimum of 2-inches concrete embedment.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping” and Section 22 05 00 “Common Work Results for Plumbing”.

2.3 GROUT

A. Refer to grout product requirements specified in Section 22 05 00 “Common Work Results for Plumbing”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

    a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Concrete Masonry Unit (CMU) Partitions: Flanged galvanized-steel sheet sleeves with joint sealant.

2. Concrete Walls (above and below grade) and Floors:

    a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6: Flanged galvanized-steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal fittings.

        1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Interior Metal Stud Partitions: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves with joint sealant.

a. In lieu of joint sealant, provide penetration firestopping at the following locations:

1) Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
2) Penetrations in smoke barriers.

3.5 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for plumbing sleeves and anchors as specified in Section 22 05 00 “Common Work Results for Plumbing”.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

SECTION 22 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes escutcheons and floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.
F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for exposed piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

   a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern type with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring clip fastener.
   b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
   c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
   d. Bare Piping at Wall, Floor or Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
   e. Bare or Insulated Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces and Equipment Rooms: No escutcheons required.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping (only required where impacted by new walls, floors or ceilings):

   a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
   b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
   c. Bare Piping at Wall, Floor or Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
   d. Bare or Insulated Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces and Equipment Rooms: No escutcheons required.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 22 05 18

SECTION 22 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ball valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
B. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1. Two-Piece Bronze ball valves.
2. Three-Piece Bronze ball valves.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.

C. NSF Compliance:

1. NSF/ANSI-61- Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects.
2. NSF/ANSI-61-8 Commercial Hot 180°F (includes Annex F and G).
3. NSF/ANSI-372 for lead-free valve materials for potable-water service.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
2. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Lead-Free, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim (NPS 2 and smaller):

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide NIBCO INC.; Model S-585-66-LF-NS or T-585-66-LF-NS or a comparable product by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves; 70LF-140, 70LF-240.
b. Hammond Valve.
c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc; LFB6000-SS, LFB6001-SS.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Soldered or threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
i. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.
k. Handle: Insulated extension handle.

B. Three-Piece, Lead-Free, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide NIBCO INC.; Model S-595-Y-LF-66-NS or T-595-Y-LF-66-NS or a comparable product by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Hammond Valve.
c. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Soldered or threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
i. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.
k. Handle: Insulated extension handle.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

F. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two- or three-piece, full port, bronze with stainless-steel trim.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23

SECTION 22 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe positioning systems.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sleeves and sleeve seals. Include rated capacities, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1. Insulation shields.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Threaded rod.

2. Adjustable clevis hanger.
3. Adjustable swing-ring band hangers.
4. Adjustable swivel-ring band hangers.
5. Hinged pipe clamps.
6. Adjustable pipe saddle supports.
7. Riser clamps.
8. Beam Clamps.

C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
2. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot dipped.

3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Thermal-Hanger Shield Insert Material: MSS SP-69 and SP-58, Type 40, pre-galvanized carbon steel or stainless steel, one piece pipe sheet metal shield for insulation support assembly.

1. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

a. NPS 1/2 to NPS 3: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Piping:

1. Type "B" Insulated Piping Support Assemblies: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

2. Type "C" Insulated Piping Support Assemblies: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.

3. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

4. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

5. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; pre-galvanized finish.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.

2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

D. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.

2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

L. Insulated Piping:

1. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on over-sized clevis hanger supporting insulated piping. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

3. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

4. Install cellular glass, polyisocyanurate or calcium silicate insulation inserts to support insulated piping as a part of Insulated Piping Support Assemblies indicated on drawing details.

3.2 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.4 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 09 91 00 "Painting."

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Piping in general service applications:

a. Bare Copper Piping Systems:

1) NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Adjustable, plastic coated copper swivel loop hanger for suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes.
2) NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Copper plated clevis hanger for suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes. Hanger sized on outside pipe diameter.

b. Bare Ferrous Piping Systems:

1) NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Heavy duty electro-galvanized steel swivel loop hanger for suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes.
2) NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Electro-galvanized clevis hanger for suspension of non-insulated stationary pipes. Hanger sized on outside pipe diameter.

c. Insulated Piping Systems:

1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Electro-galvanized clevis hanger with galvanized steel thermal-hanger shield insert for suspension of insulated stationary pipes. Hanger sized on outside insulation diameter.

2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Electro-galvanized clevis hanger with separate or integral galvanized steel thermal-hanger shield insert for suspension of insulated stationary pipes. Hanger sized on outside insulation diameter.

2. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.

3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.

4. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

5. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.

2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.

3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.

4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.

5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.

6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.

7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

   a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
   b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
   c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.

9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.

M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.

2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.

3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

Q. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment and piping labels.
2. Valve tags and signage.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Pipe labels.
2. Valve tags.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Valve numbering scheme.

D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Brady, Inc.
2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
3. Seton, Inc.

B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

C. Pre-tensioned Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing and separate self-adhesive direction arrow tape on each end fully wrapped around pipe.

E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.2 VALVE TAGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Brady, Inc.
2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
3. Seton, Inc.

B. Valve Tags: 1-1/2 inches diameter, stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass jack chain or S-hook.

C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Cold Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

2. Domestic Hot Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

3. Sanitary Waste Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

3.3 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Color: Natural.
2. Letter Color: Black.

C. Provide valve tag for each piping systems valve located above grade.

1. Valve Directory: Provide neat typewritten directory listing valve function, location and identification number.
2. Valve Numbering System: Extension of and compatible with existing valve numbering system, where valves are installed in existing building or in addition to existing building.
3. Verification: Verify existing valve numbers in field and provide valve numbering avoiding duplication of existing numbers.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

SECTION 22 07 19 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic cold-water piping.
2. Domestic hot-water piping.
3. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

1. Flexible elastomeric insulation.
2. Mineral-fiber, preformed pipe insulation.
3. Spray polyurethane foam.
4. Mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting insulating and finishing cement.
5. Vapor-barrier mastic.
6. Woven glass-fiber fabric.
7. Protective shielding pipe covers.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Mineral-fiber adhesive.
2. Lagging adhesives.
3. Sealants.
4. ASJ tape.
5. PVC tape.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" and "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

H. Glass-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: Comply with requirements for glass-fiber loose-fill insulation specified in Section 07 21 00 “Thermal Insulation”.

I. Spray polyurethane foam: Comply with requirements for spray polyurethane foam specified in Section 07 21 00 “Thermal Insulation”.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

5. Color: White.

6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ-SSL: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing, self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.

3. Color: White.

4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and roof drain bodies.

2.8 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.

3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 2 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.

3. Thickness: 6 mils.

4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 500 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

   2. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

   3. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive along both edges of strip.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

Q. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation where indicated and in miscellaneous openings and penetrations in the exterior building envelope, including pipe sleeves, exterior wall hydrants, roof drains, downspout nozzles, pipe chases located on exterior walls, voids and cavity spaces created by Plumbing Work where required to provide continuity and integrity to the building exterior envelope insulation system, sealing gaps and preventing air infiltration, using the following materials:

1. Loose-Fill Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.

2. Spray Polyurethane Foam: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

a. Trim and dress surface of spray polyurethane foam to provide smooth, flush surface.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.

4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.

4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.
3. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping”.

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.

4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.

7. Install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

8. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulation Installation on Roof Drain Bodies:

1. Insulate roof drain bodies using preformed fitting insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.

2. Adhere fitted PVC cover to insulated Roof Drain Body with PVC Jacket Adhesive. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape. Seal voids to maintain vapor barrier on drain body assembly.

D. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. Secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.9 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold, Hot and Recirculation Water Piping (General Building Areas):

1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation with factory applied jacket, Type I:

a. Pipes sizes 1 1/4" or smaller: 1-inch thickness.
b. Pipes sizes 1 1/2" or larger: 1-1/2-inch thickness.

B. Domestic Cold, Hot and Recirculation Water Piping located within Masonry Block Wall cores or buried conduits:

1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: 1/2-inch thick.

C. Stormwater and Overflow:

1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-inch thick.

D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation without factory applied jacket, Type I: 2-inch thick.

E. Sanitary Vent Piping within 10 feet of a roof penetration:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC: 30 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19

SECTION 22 11 13 - FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service.
B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.
B. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
D. AWWA: American Water Works Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Piping and fittings
2. Gate valves and curb boxes
3. Backflow preventers
4. Protective enclosures
5. Yard hydrants
6. Identification materials
7. Miscellaneous components and accessories

B. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring for alarms.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water valves and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.

2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.

3. Backflow Preventers: Provide devices complying with applicable provisions of Section 5-1.31 of the New York State Sanitary Code and listed as approved by current edition of the List of Approved Backflow Prevention Assemblies generated by the University of Southern California Foundation for Cross- Connection Control and Hydraulic Research (FCCCHR).

B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.

E. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.

F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.

G. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic potable-water-service piping.
2. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.

B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.

2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.

C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.

F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.

G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry.
2. Cresline Plastic Pipe Co., Inc.
3. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.

4. IPEX USA LLC.
5. J-M Eagle Manufacturing Co.

B. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.

1. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466.

C. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.

1. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467.
2. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

D. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.

1. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.

2. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.

3. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.

4. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.

a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

5. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.

a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.
B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series.
C. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Transition Fittings: Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's. Refer to transition fitting products specified in Section 33 05 00 “Common Work Results for Utilities”.

B. Dielectric Fittings: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined. Comply with requirements in Section 33 05 00 "Common Work Results for Utilities."

2.4 GATE VALVES

A. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
   b. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
   c. Mueller Co.

2. Non-rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:

   a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.

      1) Standard: AWWA C509.
      2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
      3) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
      4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.

2.5 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.

1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.

2.6 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company; Model LF009 or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   d. Flomatic Corporation.
   e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1013.

3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.

4. Body: Lead free cast bronze.

5. End Connections: Threaded.

6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.

7. Accessories:

   a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
   b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

8. Pressure Loss: 12 psi maximum, through middle third of flow range.

9. Size: 2 NPS.

10. Design Flow Rate: 70 gpm.

11. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: 80 gpm.

12. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: 12 psig.

2.7 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES

A. Weather-Resistant Enclosures:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Hot Box; Hubbell Incorporated, Power Systems; Hot Rok No. HR021067043N or a comparable product by one of the following:

   a. DekoRRa Products LLC.
   b. WATTS.

2. Description: Uninsulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from weather and damage.

   a. Standard: ASSE 1060.

   b. Class III-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.

      1) Housing: Reinforced-aluminum construction.

         a) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
         b) Drain opening for units with drain connection.
         c) Access doors with locking devices.
         d) Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.

B. Enclosure Bases:

1. Description: 4-inch-minimum thickness precast concrete, of dimensions required to extend at least 6 inches beyond edges of enclosure housings. Include openings for piping.

2.8 YARD HYDRANTS

A. Post-Type Yard Hydrants:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. J.R. Smith Manufacturing Co.
b. Kupferle Foundry Co. (The).
c. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.

2. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.

a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
b. Outlet: One, with angle discharge.
c. Hose Thread: NPS 2, with NFPA 1963 external hose thread with cap and chain.
d. Barrel: Bronze with Cast-iron casing guard.
e. Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure, and automatic draining.
f. Security: Locking device for padlock.
g. Inlet: NPS 2 minimum.
h. Operating Wrench: T handle key.
i. Provide extra key, two 2 inch female/female bronze connectors, and two 2 inch to 1 inch, female/male bronze reducer couplings with each hydrant.

2.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Underground Warning Tape:

1. Material: 2 inch wide color coded, heavy gauge 0.04 inch, detectable aluminum film
2. Text: “CAUTION BURIED WATER LINE BELOW”
3. Location: Provide warning tape 2 feet below finished grade in buried piping trenches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.

B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.

D. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.

E. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3shall be the following:

1. PE, ASTM pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
2. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FMG, non-rising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation.

B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, seated gate valves with valve box.

2. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to control water pressure.

3. Relief Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground.

    a. Air-Release Valves: To release accumulated air.
    b. Air/Vacuum Valves: To release or admit large volume of air during filling of piping.
    c. Combination Air Valves: To release or admit air.

4. Detector Check Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to detect unauthorized use of water.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.

B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.

C. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

D. Install PE pipe according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 645.

E. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.

F. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 48 inches, with top at least 12inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:

1. Under Driveways: With at least 48inches cover over top.

G. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.

H. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.

1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.

I. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.

J. See Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Make pipe joints according to the following:

1. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

2. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

a. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.6 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:

1. Concrete thrust blocks.
2. Locking mechanical joints.
3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
4. Bolted flanged joints.
5. Heat-fused joints.
6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.

B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:

1. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.

C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.7 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
C. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
D. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.

3.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.

C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

3.9 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE INSTALLATION

A. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches above grade.
B. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
C. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

3.10 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water piping.
B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
C. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.

B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.

1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.

C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.12 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.13 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:

1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.

B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 11 13

SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Copper tube and fittings.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Transition coupling.
2. Solder.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
B. Field quality-control reports.
C. Lab results for biological testing showing samples negative for coliform bacteria.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
B. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.

C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

F. Copper Unions:

1. MSS SP-123.
2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's. Refer to transition fitting products specified in Section 22 05 00 “Common Work Results for Plumbing”.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Unions and Flanges: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 00 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Before proceeding with water piping installation, examine conditions existing at Site and notify affected Contractors and Architect of any construction or any other conditions prevailing which prevent, inhibit, or otherwise interfere with water piping installation.

B. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

C. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

D. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.

E. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

F. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

G. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

H. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

I. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

J. Install piping free of sags and bends.

K. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

L. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

N. Install escutcheons for exposed piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

F. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for transition fittings specified in Section 22 05 00 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
B. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for dielectric fittings specified in Section 22 05 00 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or unions.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.

2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.

2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Above Grade Piping Tests:

a. Initial Test:

1) Do not connect fixtures, equipment and solenoid valves into system during this test.

2) Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

3) Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

4) Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

5) Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 150 psig, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

6) Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

7) Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

b. Test After Fixtures are Connected:

1) Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

2) Test system again for 2 hours at 75 psig or prevailing water pressure, whichever is higher.

3) Repair leaks and defects at fixture and equipment connections or at solenoid valves, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

4) Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.

2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.

3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.

4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.

   a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
   b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.

6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

7. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

   a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.

b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

c. After contact period, flush all parts of system with clear water until system tests at no more than 0.2-PPM residual chlorine.

d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

e. Have samples analyzed by a State Certified testing lab. Submit copy of results to Architect/Engineer showing samples test negative for coliform bacteria.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16

SECTION 22 11 23.21 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1. Irrigation booster pump.
2. Hydropneumatic storage tank.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

C. NSF Compliance:

1. NSF/ANSI-61- Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects.
2. NSF/ANSI-61-8 Commercial Hot 180°F (includes Annex F and G).
3. NSF/ANSI-372 for lead-free valve materials for potable-water service.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Grundfos Pumps Corp; CRE 15-2 N-GJ-A-E-HQQE or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
2. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, USA.

C. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to Schedule on Drawings.

1. Casing Material: Cast iron.
2. Impeller Material: Stainless steel.
3. Pump Control: Control pump through the pump start relay booster included with the Irrigation System Control Panel. Refer to Section 32 84 00 “Turf Irrigation.”

D. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split cast or ductile iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections. Include pump manufacturer's base attachment for mounting pump on concrete base.

2. Impeller: Stainless steel, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.

3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.

4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.

5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.

6. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.

E. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 22 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.3 HYDROPNEUMATIC TANKS

A. Steel, Precharged, Bladder, Water Storage Tanks:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wood, John Co; Model No. JAPR-20-602 or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
b. Flo Fab inc.
c. Taco, Inc.
d. Wessels Company.

2. Description: Steel, vertical, pressured-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with air-charging valve and air precharge.

3. Operation: Factory-installed, butyl-rubber bladder.

B. Construction: ASME code, steel, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig working pressure.

C. Tappings: Factory-fabricated stainless steel or non-ferrous, welded to tank before testing and labeling.

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.

D. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.

E. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.

F. Exterior Coating: Primer paint.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.

1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the pumps.

2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

3. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Check piping connections for tightness.

3. Clean strainers on suction piping.

4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

   a. Verify bearing lubrication.

   b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.

   c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains and prepare pump for operation.

6. Start motor.

7. Open discharge valve slowly.

8. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.

9. Adjust timer settings.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23

SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
3. CISPI, low torque hubless-piping couplings.
4. Copper pipe and fittings.
5. Transition couplings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
B. Provide pipe and fittings produced by a single manufacturer for each type of system.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewer: Refer to “Existing Utility Interruptions” paragraph of Section 01 12 00 “Multiple Contract Summary-Project Schedule” for requirements associated with interrupting the existing sanitary sewer service to facilities occupied by the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AB&I Foundry; a division of McWane, Inc.
2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
3. Tyler Pipe; a division of McWane, Inc.

B. Pipe and Fittings: Centrifugally cast gray cast iron pipe and static cast fittings conforming to requirements of ASTM Standard A 74, service weight (SV) type with coating on interior and exterior in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4. Pipe and fittings marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Institute and listed by NSF® International.

C. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

D. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AB&I Foundry; a division of McWane, Inc.
2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
3. Tyler Pipe; a division of McWane, Inc.

B. Pipe and Fittings: Centrifugally cast gray cast iron pipe and static cast fittings conforming to requirements of ASTM A 888 or CISPI with coating on interior and exterior in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4. Pipe and fittings marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Institute and listed by NSF® International.

C. CISPI, Low Torque Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ANACO-Husky; a division of McWane, Inc.
b. Ideal Clamp Products, Inc.; a Tomkins Company.
c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
d. Tyler Pipe; a division of McWane, Inc.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277, CISPI 310 and listed by NSF® International.

3. Description: Type 301 stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
E. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's. Refer to transition fitting products specified in Section 22 05 00 “Common Work Results for Plumbing”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which drainage and vent systems, e.g., storm drainage, sanitary sewer, laboratory waste, etc., are to be installed in coordination with Installer of materials and components specified in this Section. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

1. Verify invert elevation of existing piping when new connections are indicated. Do not install buried sewer work until existing sewer invert elevation has been verified to meet required slope and bury depth requirements of new sewer piping.

2. Determine inverts and routing of piping systems and interferences with other building piping systems, building structure, lights, ductwork, foundations prior to installation.

B. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping at indicated slopes.

F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

H. Install vent piping to allow application of insulation within 6 feet of a roof penetration.

I. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

J. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 2 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and larger.
2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

L. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

M. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties".

2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties".

N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

O. Insulate vent piping within 6 feet of roof penetrations, all directions. Comply with requirements for insulation specified in Section 22 07 19 " Plumbing Piping Insulation".

P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping".

Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping".

R. Install escutcheons for exposed piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping".

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for transition fittings specified in Section 22 05 00 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

B. Transition Couplings:

1. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install galvanized carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.

2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.

3. Install galvanized carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.

4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.

5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.

6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.

8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
3. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

C. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.

4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wc. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.

5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.

6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground, soil, waste and vent piping NPS 3 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cleanouts.
2. Air-admittance valves.
3. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:

1. Drain-outlet backwater valves.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures") for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Fixture air-admittance valves.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts (CO):

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

2.2 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Durgo, Inc.
b. Oatey.
c. RectorSeal.
d. Studor, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.

3. Housing: Plastic.

4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.

5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.; No. 7080 or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet or storm drain.

3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain or in vertical storm leader for condensate connection.

4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.

5. Inlet: Threaded.

6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of specialties installations.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

B. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.

C. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in condensate connections to vertical conductors.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

SECTION 22 14 23 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof drains.
2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Cast-iron, large-sump, general-purpose roof drains.
2. Drain-outlet backwater valves.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains (RD "A"):

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.; No. 1015Y-R-C-U-AD or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; No. RD-300-AE-B-D-K80-L.
d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.

3. Body Material: Cast iron.

4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 16-inch diameter.

5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.

6. Outlet: Bottom.

7. Extension Collars: Adjustable required.

8. Underdeck Clamp: Required.

9. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.

10. Dome Material: Aluminum.

11. Vandal-Proof Dome: Required.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts (CO):

1. Vertical 6 NPS and Smaller:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
   b. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
   c. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
   d. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
   e. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

2. 8-inch Pipe Size and Larger: Cast bronze tapered plug with tapped test tee cast iron fitting.

3. Horizontal: All Pipe Sizes: Cast iron Tee "Y" fitting with tapped spigot ferrule and cast bronze taper thread plug.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.; No. 7080 or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Josam Company.
   b. MIFAB, Inc.
   c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet or storm drain.

3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain or in vertical storm leader for condensate connection.

4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.

5. Inlet: Threaded.

6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of storm drainage piping systems to verify actual locations of specialties installations.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.

C. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in condensate connections to vertical conductors.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 14 13 "Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 14 23

SECTION 22 42 16.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sinks.
2. Sink faucets.
3. Supply fittings.
4. Waste fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics and furnished specialties and accessories.

a. Sink “A” and “B” faucet.

B. As-Specified Data: If the product to be incorporated in the Work is as specified by manufacturer name and product designation in this Specification Section, submit the “**As-Specified Verification Form**” (attached to Section 01 33 00 “Submittal Procedures”) for each item listed below; otherwise submit full Product Data for the following:

1. Sink “A” bowl.
2. Sink “B” bowl.
3. Supply Fittings.
4. Drain Fitting.
5. Offset Drain Fitting.
6. Sink Traps.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sinks and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Water Conservation:

1. Provide plumbing fixtures complying with applicable provisions of Section 604.4 of the Plumbing Code of New York State.

B. NSF Compliance:

1. NSF/ANSI-61- Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects.
2. NSF/ANSI-372 for lead-free valve materials for potable-water service.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in 36 CFR Part 1191 – “Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: One of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINKS

A. Sink “A”: Standard stainless steel, counter mounted, accessible.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkay Manufacturing Co; Model No. LRAD2522-55 or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Advance Tabco.
b. Eagle Group; Foodservice Equipment Division.
c. Griffin Products, Inc.
d. Just Manufacturing.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

b. Type: Ledge back.

c. Number of Compartments: One.

d. Overall Dimensions: 25 by 22 inches.

e. Metal Thickness: 18 gauge / 0.050 inch.

f. Material: Type 304 stainless steel with fully undercoated underside.

g. Compartment:

1) Dimensions: 21 by 15.75 by 5.5 inches.
2) Drain: 3.5 inch opening.
3) Drain Location: Centered, near back of compartment.

3. Faucet(s): Accessible manual type, single-control mixing valve with swing spout. Comply with requirements in “Sink Faucet” Article.

a. Number Required: One.
b. Mounting: On sink fixture ledge, in hole(s) provided.

4. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.

5. Waste Fittings: Offset Drain Fitting. Comply with requirements in "Drains" Article.

6. Traps: Sink Trap. Comply with requirements in "Traps" Article.

7. Mounting: On counter with manufacturer recommended sealant.

B. Sink “B”: Standard stainless steel, counter mounted.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkay Manufacturing Co; Model No. LR2522 or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Advance Tabco.
b. Eagle Group; Foodservice Equipment Division.
c. Griffin Products, Inc.
d. Just Manufacturing.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

b. Type: Ledge back.

c. Number of Compartments: One.

d. Overall Dimensions: 25 by 22 inches.

e. Metal Thickness: 18 gauge / 0.050 inch.

f. Material: Type 304 stainless steel with fully undercoated underside.

g. Compartment:

1) Dimensions: 21 by 15.75 by 8.125 inches.
2) Drain: 3.5 inch opening.
3) Drain Location: Centered.

3. Faucet(s): Accessible manual type, single-control mixing valve with swing spout. Comply with requirements in “Sink Faucet” Article.

a. Number Required: One.
b. Mounting: On sink fixture ledge, in hole(s) provided.

4. Supply Fittings: Comply with requirements in "Supply Fittings" Article.

5. Waste Fittings: Drain Fitting. Comply with requirements in "Drains" Article.

6. Traps: Sink Trap. Comply with requirements in "Traps" Article.

7. Mounting: On counter with manufacturer recommended sealant.

2.2 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Sink Faucets: Accessible manual type, single-control mixing valve with swing spout.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkay Manufacturing Co; Model LK1000CR or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Bradley Corporation.
c. Chicago Faucets.
d. Delta Faucet Company.
e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
f. GROHE America, Inc.
g. Just Manufacturing.
h. Kohler Co.
i. Moen Incorporated.
j. Speakman Company.
k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.

4. Body Type: Widespread.

5. Body Material: General-duty, solid brass.

6. Finish: Chrome plated.

7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.

8. Handle(s): Lever.

9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.

10. Spout Type: Swing, shaped tube.

11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide McGuire Manufacturing, Inc. No. LF2167-F or comparable product by one of the following:

1. American Standard America
2. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

C. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

D. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass escutcheon with set screw.

E. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

F. Operation: Wheel handle.

G. Risers:

1. NPS 1/2.
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

2.4 DRAINS

A. Drain Fitting:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkay Manufacturing Co No. LK35 or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Just Manufacturing.
b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

3. Drain: Conical basket strainer with removable stopper and chrome plated brass NPS 1-1/2 by 4 inch tailpiece.

4. Material: Stainless steel body with polished finish.

B. Offset Drain Fitting:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkay Manufacturing Co No. LK35L or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Just Manufacturing.
b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

3. Drain: Conical basket strainer with removable stopper and NPS 1-1/2 inch chrome plated brass 90° elbow.

4. Material: Stainless steel body with polished finish.

2.5 TRAPS

A. Sink Traps:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide McGuire Manufacturing, Inc. No. 8912-F or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and ground-joint swivel elbow, 17-gauge brass tube to wall with cleanout plug. Include chrome-plated brass escutcheon with set screw.

3. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

4. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by 1-1/2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
D. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.

1. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations and casework penetrations. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" and sink manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified laboratory to perform lead testing on all potable water faucets used or potentially used for drinking or cooking purposes according to NYS Law 10 CRR-NY 67-4.1. Test results will be submitted to the Owner, Contractor and the Architect.

B. Replace any faucet that exceeds the lead action level (15 micrograms per liter) and coordinate with the Owner for retesting until satisfactory results are obtained.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.16

SECTION 23 01 20 – HYDRONIC SYSTEMS CLEANING AND WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hydronic systems cleaning and water treatment specialty components and chemicals.
2. Heat transfer fluids and system filling components.
3. Flushing, cleaning, filling, venting and treatment of hydronic piping distribution systems (heating and /or cooling systems with and without glycol).

B. Flushing, cleaning, venting, and filling of hydronic systems includes but is not limited to flushing and cleaning of all new piping distribution systems and all existing piping distribution systems that are extended or connected to as part of this project, unless noted otherwise on drawings. Perform all work under the direction of a qualified Water Treatment Services Company (WTSC).

C. Initial water analysis and chemical treatment of hydronic systems as described below, provided complete by an approved WTSC.

D. After systems have been proven clean, final filled, initial chemical treatment of system has been performed, and system is turned over in proper condition and accepted as such by Owner, then, subsequent chemical treatment of hydronic systems will be provided by Owner.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Submit name, qualifications, and references of WTSC.

B. Product Data: Submit data on proposed specialty equipment and glycol mixture demonstrating conformance with specified product characteristics.

C. Closeout Submittals for inclusion in Operations and Maintenance Manual:

1. System Cleaning Report: Provide report on initial system cleaning and treatment including copies of strainer cleaning log books, system fill volume, makeup water and system water test results, chemicals used (type and volume/mass), recommended and final chemical concentrations, and other pertinent water quality data as required to maintain system in optimum condition.

2. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include all instructions for maintenance, cleaning, and ongoing chemical treatment of hydronic systems in project maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Water Treatment Services Company (WTSC) Qualifications: A company with minimum 5 years documented successful experience specializing in cleaning and chemical treatment of HVAC piping systems of comparable or greater size and complexity as required on this project, that is capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying chemicals and other water treatment as specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CHEMICAL TREATMENT AND FILTRATION HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES

A. Glycol Fill Station: Consists of storage tank, pump, control panel, piping, and specialties, suitable for Glycol.

1. Tank: Minimum 50-gallon polyethylene atmospheric pressure storage tank and lid. Include cast in graduations on tank side.

2. Steel floor stand: Four-leg carbon steel stand with four bolt down foot pads. Lower platform to hold pump and piping specialties under tank, upper platform and twin circumference steel support banding to insure tank stability. Controls mounted on stand. Painted with a two-coat system consisting of an oxide primer and alkyd enamel finish.

3. Pump: Bronze rotary gear pump rated for minimum 3.75 GPM against 100 PSI.

4. Controls: Automatic adjustable system pressure sensing switch and pump starter to maintain pressure in system, high and low tank level alarms (panel light, audible, and dry contacts connected to EMCS), alarm on pump activation back to EMCS to indicate leak in system, digital system pressure readout, NEMA 4X enclosure, HOA selector with “on” light.

5. Piping and Specialties:

   a. All piping and specialties provided with glycol feed stations is to meet the piping and specialties requirements included elsewhere in the applicable sections of this specification manual. Plastic valves, hoses, bulkhead fittings, specialties, and piping are specifically prohibited.

   b. Provide suction piping including isolation valve, strainer, low point drain valve, and flexible hose.
   c. Provide discharge piping including flexible hose, isolation valve, check valve, pressure switch, pressure relief valve returning to tank, and pressure gauge.

6. Design Make: “G-50-1A-LP” by Neptune.

2.2 TREATMENT CHEMICALS

A. Provide approved system treatment chemicals as directed by water treatment services company.

2.3 HEAT TRANSFER FLUIDS

A. Water Hydronic Systems: Thoroughly purge and vent approved cleaned system. Provide prescribed chemical treatment and turn over in manufacturers' approved condition.

B. Low Temperature Ethylene Glycol (LTEG): Provide heat transfer fluid consisting of a factory premixed solution of ethylene glycol, corrosion inhibitors, dye, and distilled water. Concentrated design make heat transfer fluid before mixing with water has 95.5 percent Ethylene Glycol and 4.5 percent additives, and is rated for continuous use at an operating temperature range from -60 deg F up to +250 deg F. Final solution must meet all manufacturer's recommendations and requirements for the glycol, system pump, seal, and valve manufacturers used for this project. "Automotive" types of antifreeze or heat transfer fluids with less than design make corrosion inhibition or higher than design make pump or seal wear characteristics, are not acceptable.

1. For comparison purposes, submit properties of required concentrate by volume mixture demonstrating at least the following properties at 50 deg F:

a.	Reserve Alkalinity:	12ml min
b.	Specific Heat:	0.865 btu/lbºF minimum
c.	Density:	65.54 lb/ft^3 minimum
d.	Thermal Conductivity:	0.2554 btu/hr·ft·ºF minimum
e.	Viscosity:	2.95cps maximum
f.	pH:	9.5 -10.5
g.	Boiling point:	220 deg F minimum
h.	Beginning Freeze Point:	5.35 ºF maximum
i.	Burst protection:	-16.6 ºF maximum

2. Provide LTEG mixture in percentage of concentrate by volume as called for on drawings.

3. Provide for annual testing of heat transfer fluids demonstrating continued system protection and maintenance of the specified properties.

4. Acceptable ethylene glycol solutions:

   a. Dow Chemical "Dowtherm SR-1"
   b. Dynalene EG

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine piping distribution systems, both new piping installed in this project and existing piping on the affected systems.

1. Look for automatic and manual vents at end of all horizontal piping runs before elevation drop. Provide additional vents as required for proper air elimination.

2. Look for system connection ports to provide for filling, draining, and circulation of piping. Provide additional valves and connections as required.

3. Look for isolation valves as required to isolate those portions of the system not needing cleaning and treatment. Provide additional valves as required and isolate those portions of the system not being cleaned.

B. Proceed with cleaning only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Beginning cleaning constitutes Contractor's acceptance of systems and conditions.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Glycol Fill Station: Provide glycol system where shown on drawings, on concrete housekeeping pad. Pipe discharge of all automatic glycol air vents, relief valves, drain pans, etc.. back into tank. Pipe discharge of fill pump into air separator or where otherwise shown on drawings. Adjust pump start and stop pressures during system start-up to maintain required system cold fill pressure. If adjustments are made at other than cold fill, pressurize system to appropriate warm fill pressure but leave pump starter adjusted for cold fill. Provide pump activation and high and low tank level alarm connections to EMCS.

3.3 PREPARATION AND PROTECTION OF SYSTEMS

A. At all times from beginning of cleaning of water systems until final acceptance by Owner, provide free oxygen removal and chemical treatment of hydronic systems to protect system components against internal corrosion (or additional corrosion in the case of existing piping and boilers).

1. Do not fill hydronic-heating systems until firing equipment is operable and all aspects of installation are prepared for startup. Do not subject any system to water that has not been de-oxygenated for periods longer than 4 hours. Provide approved de-oxygenation strategy as required to remove free oxygen and prevent corrosion of boilers, chiller, pumps, other system components, and piping.

    a. Heating water to provide for de-oxygenation of heating systems will be an acceptable procedure. Provide heated water to remove free oxygen and prevent corrosion and premature failure of boilers and piping. Start boilers as specified in Project Manual and in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code immediately upon filling and proceed to heat system water to at least 190 deg. F while circulating entire system at temperature for at least two hours and actively venting air.

2. Provide services of approved WTSC to perform the following:

   a. Obtain and coordinate with hydronic equipment manufacturers' published water quality guidelines as required to maintain equipment warrantees. Include copy of this data in report.

   b. Test existing system water / heat transfer solution and make-up water prior to and during system flushing, cleaning, and venting and prescribe proper water treatment to clean system and maintain boiler, chiller, piping, controls, and all other hydronic specialties' warrantees and prevent corrosion or deterioration (further corrosion or deterioration in the case of existing systems) of each entire hydronic system due to oxygen, acid, scaling, or other water or glycol solution related problems. Consider and report on the following characteristics at a minimum, and recommend acceptable range of values for this project's systems individually, using specified values as a starting point only:

      1) Percentage by weight, freeze point, burst point, and other properties as specified above for any glycol based solutions.

      2) pH: 9.0 to 10.5.

      3) "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.

      4) Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.

      5) Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum 100 ppm.

      6) Soluble Copper: Maximum 0.20 ppm.

      7) Tolyiriazole Copper, Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum 10 ppm.

      8) Total Suspended Solids: Maximum 10 ppm.

      9) Ammonia: Maximum 20 ppm.

      10) Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum 20 ppm.

      11) Reserve Alkalinity:

      12) Corrosion Inhibitor, any of the below or as recommended by WTSC:

         a) Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
         b) Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
         c) Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
         d) Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
         e) Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.

      13) Microbiological Limits:

         a) Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum 1000 organisms/ml.
         b) Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum 100 organisms/ml.

c) Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/ml.
d) Sulfate Reducers: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
e) Iron Bacteria: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.

c. Provide prescribed ingredients and maintain proper water conditions until acceptance of system. Turn over in Manufacturers' approved condition.

d. Provide certified portion of system cleaning and treatment report including manufacturer's requirements, water quality test data and recommendations, prescription chemical recommendations and data sheets, treatment schedule, and proposal for continued treatment contract for first year following system acceptance.

3.4 DRAINING, FILLING, FLUSHING, VENTING, AND CLEANING

A. Draining:

1. Drain systems completely so as to avoid cross contamination of one process fluid with the next.
2. Install additional drains if necessary to completely drain system. Note that drain valves are required on all new piping low points.
3. Legally dispose of all drainage.

B. Filling and Venting:

1. Fill and vent each entire system, including portions of existing systems connected to but not modified by this Project, as required leaving entire system in a properly filled, chemically treated, air-free condition.

2. Fill slowly with appropriate fluid for process planned (clean water for initial flushing, system cleaning solution for system cleaning, chemically treated water or glycol solution for final fill, etc.) while operating manual and automatic vents to purge air from system.

3. Vent all air from hydronic systems. Open all manual vents repeatedly to relieve air and test operation of all main and branch automatic air eliminators and vents. Repair and/or replace all malfunctioning vents.

4. Purge systems section by section to remove residual air. Isolate piping sections and purge fluid through each section slowly in direction of normal flow to force air to vent connections without forcing air down risers.

5. Install additional air vents as required to fully vent system. Note that air vents are required at all new piping high points and before drops. Note locations where residual air pockets tend to remain in pre-project existing piping and install additional air vents as necessary to remove remaining air. Repeat purging and venting as necessary to remove all air from each system.

6. When final venting is complete, close manual valves serving automatic air vents to prolong automatic vent service life.

C. Flushing:

1. Flush each entire system, including portions of existing systems connected to, but not modified by, this Project.

2. Flush all piping with clean water at flow rate required to produce local pipe velocity of not less than 10 feet per second. Section by section flushing as required to achieve this velocity is required.

3. Note strainers will likely become clogged repeatedly during this phase of system operation. Repeatedly clean strainers as described below as required to maintain unobstructed flow. Strainer Cleaning:

   a. Remove, clean, and reinstall all strainer screens during and after flushing and venting (including screens of existing system strainers). Record strainer screen contents in log book. Repeat after a 2-week operating period connected to main system pumps.

   b. Insure all pump suction diffusers have fine mesh start-up screens prior to filling system. Remove and clean all pump suction diffuser screens whenever the pressure drop across screen is double the pressure drop of a clean screen and after 2-week operating period. Record strainer screen contents in log book.

   c. Reinstall strainer screens after cleaning. Reinstall fine mesh suction diffuser start-up screens each time they contain significant debris upon removal.

   d. Purge and vent all air from the systems introduced as a result of strainer cleaning.

   e. Submit strainer-cleaning report as detailed for cleaning report submittal.

4. Provide approved de-oxygenation strategy.

5. Test for and repair all leaks.

6. After each system has operated at full temperature for 2-week period and all leaks have been repaired, vent each system as specified above. Purge each system as specified above if necessary.

D. Cleaning: After each hydronic system has been leak-tested, flushed, and vented, clean system as specified below. Do not use system for temporary heat or submit for acceptance and use by Owner prior to cleaning. Do not operate pumps continuously or unattended until system is flushed and strainers cleaned. Notify Owner's Project Representative before starting cleaning.

1. Cleaning Procedures:

   a. Clean all air vents, gauge glasses, control valves, etc. and ensure free operation.

   b. Provide side stream filter across system pumps where indicated on Drawings and use to filter fine particulate from hydronic system during cleaning. Provide filter bags as required to remove all solids from system down to 5-micron size. Deliver 10 spare 5-micron filter bags to Owner.

c. Provide cleaning compound of sodium carbonate and trisodium phosphate, in proportions of 1lb of chemical per 50 gallons of water or as recommended specifically by WTSC and system equipment manufacturers. Mix chemicals with water and introduce into the system per equipment manufacturer's and water treatment service companies instructions, filling entire system with cleaning solution. Provide temporary meter or other means (calculated volume acceptable) of determining amount of water in system. Provide all necessary valves, fill pipe, and similar components.

d. Operate pumps and control system with control valves open. Circulate solution for heating system at 180 Deg. F. for at least 24 hours. Circulate solution for cooling and heat pump systems at ambient temperature for at least 24 hours. Flush and vent system as required during cleaning. Remove and clean air vents, strainers, filters, and check valves, and replace improperly functioning components. Blow down solids separators, sumps, and all system low points where sediment might accumulate.

e. After cleaning and blow down, circulate for additional 8 hours, then clean strainers, filters, and low point blow down locations again; repeat until strainers and filters are found clean, and initial solution taken from any blow down location is clean.

f. Drain, flush cleaning solution with clean water, and legally dispose of drainage.

g. Refill with clean deoxygenated water.

2. Test for Cleanliness:

a. Circulate for additional 24 hours and take water sample to test for cleanliness from any system low point drain or blow down valve selected by Architect or Owner by filling quart sample bottle with initial drainage included and allowing sample to settle for 12 hours. Check for floating and settled impurities. Water is considered clean if no impurities can be observed in drawn samples, and 5-micron side stream filter bag remains nominally clean after 24 hours full flow circulation. Draw samples in presence of Architect and turn over to Owner to confirm cleanliness.

b. Drain and repeat the starting up procedure and cleanliness test as often as required to pass "Test for Cleanliness".

3.5 FINAL FILLING OF WATER AND GLYCOL PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Glycol Hydronic Systems:

1. Drain as completely as possible from all system low point drains, flush with demineralized water acceptable to design make glycol manufacturer for mixing with specified glycol, drain completely again, and refill with a factory premixed mixture of glycol and water as specified to the required fill pressure.

2. Thoroughly purge and vent cleaned system, recovering all purged/vented glycol. Test system for required concentration and freeze protection, reserve alkalinity and corrosion inhibitors as recommended. Add concentrated glycol and/or corrosion inhibitors by same manufacturer as required, compensating for any residual system water. Re-fill system to required fill pressure with all undissolved air removed. Heat system as required to purge dissolved air, allow to cool, and refill again to required pressure. Leave all glycol fill station tanks full of specified premix. Restore to specified concentration any clean but diluted premix removed to bring concentration up to required level and deliver to location approved by Owner in manufacturer's storage drums.

END OF SECTION 23 01 20

SECTION 23 01 30 - MECHANICAL CLEANING AND RESTORATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 specification sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Provide NADCA certified Air Systems Cleaning Specialist (ASCS) subcontractor to perform cleaning as outlined herein where cleaning is called for on the drawings or elsewhere in the specifications.

B. Perform cleaning as outlined herein where new equipment cleaning is required due to failure to protect new mechanical equipment from construction debris and dust during the course of construction. All new work shall be subject to Owner's visual cleanliness verification as described below.

C. Scope of Work:

1. Provide all labor, materials, facilities, equipment and services to thoroughly clean HVAC systems as shown on the drawings and as specified herein. The Cleaning work for each HVAC component, and associated ductwork include the following:

   a. Supply and return ductwork, lined and unlined, including ductwork plenums, branches, risers, and similar components.

   b. Air terminal devices, i.e. supply diffusers, return registers, intake hoods, relief air hoods, and similar components.

   c. Duct mounted coils.

   d. Exhaust duct system and associated registers.

   e. Exhaust fans.

   f. Fire and fire/smoke dampers.

   g. Mechanical Rooms

   h. Mixed air plenums.

   i. Masonry air duct cleaning.

   j. As determined by assessment: Sanitization shall only be applied if active fungal growth is reasonably suspected, or where unacceptable levels of fungal contamination have been verified through testing. Only Sanitizers that have an EPA registration specific for application in HVAC systems should be utilized.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. Clean HVAC system in accordance with latest edition of following standards:

1. Assessment, Cleaning And Restoration of HVAC Systems – 2013 (ACR-2013), published by the National Air Duct Cleaners Association (NADCA)
2. Requirement for the Installation of Service Opening in HVAC Systems, NADCA 05-1997
3. Plans and specifications, which may exceed requirements in referenced standards.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures - Conventional and as modified below.

B. Contractor: ASCS Agency shall be approved before beginning cleaning and restoration work. Submit the following for approval within 30 days after award of Contract:

1. Name of proposed ASCS Agency along with statement of qualifications, copy of NADCA certifications, list of equipment to be used in cleaning and restoration work, and 3 local references for comparable recent jobs.

2. Detailed description of methods, including cut sheets of equipment to be used that can document, clean and coat up to a minimum of 50 lineal feet of ductwork in each direction per access point, per paragraph 3.3

3. Product descriptions, specifications, and Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) on all solvents, cleaners, disinfectants, adhesives, and coatings to be used on Project.

4. Include duct penetrations required for cleaning in sheet metal coordination drawings.

C. ASCS Agency:

1. Submit information as detailed above and as required to secure approval to begin work.

2. Submit shop drawings to prime contractor locating all proposed duct penetrations and required ceiling access openings in gyp / plaster ceilings.

3. A letter signed by the certified ASCS supervisor of this project's cleaning and restoration work stating that the cleaning work was completed according to the requirements in this specification and scope of work, and that the work is ready for the Owner's inspection and verification of cleanliness. Submit this letter ON THE SAME DAY that the cleaning work is ready for inspection, immediately following completion, so as to not delay inspection and subsequent coating and sealing work.

4. Post Cleaning Report: Submit promptly upon completion of cleaning, early in project so remedial recommendations can be acted upon in timely fashion. Submit information in typed report format as specified below, minimum three copies. Guarantee all results. Report format shall consist of the following:

a. Title sheet with job name, Contractor, Architect, Engineer, date, ACSC Agency's name, address, telephone number and contact person's name.

b. Evidence of current ASCS Agency Certification as outlined below.

c. A letter signed by the certified ASCS supervisor of this project's cleaning and restoration work stating that the cleaning work was completed according to the requirements in this specification and scope of work

d. Photographic or video documentation of representative concealed areas of the ductwork systems cleaned, and the equipment cleaned, per the scope of work, both before and after cleaning. Include all photographs described in "verification" below. CD or DVD preferred.

e. A written description of the general condition of each item of equipment cleaned and restored, with special notes and photographs of areas of the system found to be damaged, in need of repair, and / or requiring restoration work beyond the specified scope of project contract work.

D. Prior to beginning cleaning work, submit a coordinated work schedule showing estimated dates of cleaning work from start to finish required to perform the cleaning services.

E. Include in "as-built" project record drawings marked up locations of ASCS access points.

F. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with section 3.6. Comply with requirements of section 01 77 00 – Closeout Procedures, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "Operating and Maintenance Data" manual described in that section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. HVAC Air Systems Cleaning Subcontractor (ASCS): Full time project supervisor personnel must be certified by NADCA as an Air Systems Cleaning Specialist. Company must have a minimum of two ASCS personnel on staff, and have at least 5 years of experience in commercial duct cleaning for projects similar in scope and complexity.

   a. In addition to General Liability coverage, contractor must maintain Contractors Pollution Liability, Professional Liability. Coverages must not exclude mold. Minimum limits required for all coverages: Each Claim $1,000,000, General Aggregate $2,000,000

2. Sheet Metal Installer/Fabricator: Experienced contractor specializing in sheet metal fabrication and installation. All work to be in accordance with section 23 31 00 – Ductwork and section 23 33 00 – Air Duct Accessories and other applicable sections of division 23 of this document.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. For systems to remain operational during normal work hours, submit procedure for cleaning ductwork and installing filters that minimizes contamination of previously cleaned areas. Verify schedule before bid. Obtain Architect's and Owner's approval of this sequence prior to starting cleaning.

B. Prior to beginning cleaning work, develop a coordinated work schedule showing estimated dates of cleaning work from start to finish required to perform the cleaning services within the contract construction schedule. Present at construction coordination meetings and obtain Construction Manager's written approval of schedule.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Sanitizer - EPA registered sanitizer that is specific for application inside HVAC / ductwork systems, such as "BBJ Microbiocide" as manufactured by BBJ Chemical Compounds, or approved equal. Applications shall be in compliance with label instructions. Sanitizers shall not be applied to porous surfaces, such as fiberglass liner.

B. Insulation Repair Coating: Quick-setting water-based duct liner adhesive and coating, designed for field application to faced or unfaced fiberglass duct liner insulation or to unfaced fiberboard ductboard insulation that dries to form effective air erosion preventive coating, sealing and reinforcing surface. Coating resistant to fire, water, oil, grease, bacteria and fungus. Coating material containing anti-microbial agent, not affecting thermal or acoustic properties of insulation, conforming to NFPA Standards 90A and 90B. Similar to "Tough Coat" by Vac System Industries, Inc, or Approved Equal.

C. Duct Access Doors: Provide access doors as described in section 23 33 00 – Air Duct Accessories for all access openings made in ductwork. Minimum access door size: the larger of 12 inches by 12 inches or 50% of duct transverse dimension, up to a maximum of 24 inches by 24 inches.

D. Plenum Paint Primer - Non-Porous Surfaces: Paint containing EPA registered anti-microbial, "Intercept", which inhibits growth of bacteria, mold, mildew and fungi; similar to "Foster 40-26" by Foster Products Corporation, or Approved Equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions (by ASCS): Examine conditions under which mechanical cleaning and restoration is to be performed and notify Prime Contractor in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely work. Coordinate with project abatement work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

1. Commencement of cleaning constitutes acceptance of conditions of area in which cleaning is to be performed and all defects in cleaning resulting from such accepted service will be corrected without additional expense to Owner.

2. Before commencing work, report ducts and equipment previously damaged or where process has capability of damaging equipment, duct, or lining. Report in writing to prime Contractor, Architect, and Owner. Obtain decision to clean and/or encapsulate these areas from Architect after review of Contractor's findings and Architect has seen field conditions.

B. Examination and Verification of Cleaning Equipment Hygiene (by Owner): Before commencing work, ASCS shall present cleaning equipment to Owner's representative with letter signed by ASCS officer certifying equipment has been cleaned and de-contaminated subsequent to last use off Owner's site, and shall demonstrate that said equipment is visibly clean to Owner's satisfaction, with all new air filters, and will not import contamination to Owner's property. Used filters shall not be brought on to Owner's site.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Disassemble all removable items as required for access to work area. Store removed items in storage area approved by Architect until completion of cleaning.
B. Protect fire protection devices (such as smoke detectors, panel, etc.) prior to cleaning procedures. Clean and test fire protection devices at conclusion of cleaning.
C. Coordinate shutdown and reactivating of fire alarm system to avoid accidental alarms during cleaning process and related activities.
D. Coordinate shutdown of air handling equipment with Owner before starting cleaning, and conform to OSHA requirements regarding fan motor disconnect lock-out/tag-out.
E. Protect all Owner's property within or adjacent to work area from damage due to cleaning operations. Verify pre-existing damage before beginning work.

3.3 CLEANING METHODS

A. HVAC systems shall be cleaned and refurbished using Source Removal mechanical cleaning methods as described in ACR-2005 and in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Containment. Collect debris removed during cleaning and take precautions to ensure that debris is not otherwise dispersed outside ACS during cleaning process. After ACS cleaning, clean any areas that could be affected by cleaning as clean as their condition prior to commencement of cleaning operations.

2. Particulate Collection. Where Particulate Collection Equipment is exhausting inside building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97% collection efficiency for 0.3 micron size particles (see EPA's Building Air Quality). When Particulate Collection Equipment is exhausting outside building, precautions shall be taken to ensure that exhausted air does not re-enter the building or cause any damage by accumulation of debris on the adjacent property.

3. Liquid Collection: Where liquid cleaning waste is generated, collect all drainage and legally dispose of same. Liquid waste must not be disposed of down any facility drain, be it floor drain, to the sanitary sewer, or through kitchen grease traps, without written prior approval from AHJ and Owner's authorized representative.

4. Filtration Integrity. When using particulate collection equipment inside the building, contractors shall be able to certify equipment effectiveness of 99.97% collection efficiency for 0.3 micron size particles through DOP test results, from an independent testing agency, for any collection devices intended for use on a particular job. Where contact vacuuming is required, the equipment used shall be HEPA filtered vacuums.

5. Agitation Equipment for Cleaning Ductwork:

    a. The contractor is required to remove all debris from the inside surface areas, e.g. the top, bottom, and sides of rectangular duct and the entire circumference of round and oval duct by creating the least number of access openings possible. The agitation equipment must be capable of thoroughly cleaning up to 50 lineal feet of ductwork in each direction per access opening. Owner's representative must approve any exceptions. High power/ volume vacuum alone is not an acceptable method of agitation.

6. Controlling Odors. Take all reasonable measures to control offensive odors and/or mist vapors during cleaning process.

7. Component Cleaning. Employ cleaning methods such that all non-porous surface components are visibly clean. Upon completion, return all components to settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.

8. Air Volume Control Devices: Mark position of dampers and any air-directional mechanical devices inside ductwork prior to cleaning and, upon completion, restore components to their marked position.

9. Access Openings. Cut access openings in duct as required to perform cleaning operations per paragraph 3.3. E & F above. Repair any access opening cuts with access doors as described in paragraph 2.1.C. Show all proposed locations and sizes on submittal drawings. Review with Project Engineer or owner's representative prior to installation.

10. Health and Safety

    a. Comply with all applicable federal, state and local requirements for protecting safety of contractors' employees, building occupants, and environment. In particular, follow all applicable standards of Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) when working in accordance with this standard.

    b. Do not employ processes or materials in such manner that adverse health effects to building occupants, cleaning contractors, or general public are created.

    c. Disposal of Debris: Dispose of all debris removed from ACS in accordance with all applicable federal, state and local requirements.

B. Mechanical Cleaning:

1. Duct Surfaces:

    a. Mechanically brush and vacuum interior of all ducts such that all metal surfaces are visibly clean and capable of "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification" as described in NADCA Standards. Clean complete from air inlets through system to air outlets. Do not use cleaning method which could potentially damage components of ductwork or negatively alter integrity of system.

    b. Clean all plenum casing, diffuser plenums, as ductwork.

c. Duct exterior: Remove all loose debris and mechanically brush, vacuum, and wash such that all surfaces are visibly clean. Duct exterior shall not be subject to verification per NADCA Standards.

d. Duct Mounted Coils and Dampers: Clean and restore performance per description below.

e. Grilles, Registers and Diffusers (GRD): Whenever GRD are removable, remove, wash, dry, sanitize and replace. When GRD are restricted by facade or welded in place, hand vacuum and clean. Avoid disturbing existing volume damper settings, or return to original settings.

2. Coils: Thoroughly clean upstream and downstream coil faces insuring removal of debris while avoiding damage to fins. Comb all fins back to original configuration. Vacuum, then hand and /or pressure wash coils, agitating with special brushes and other tools as required cleaning deeply between fins without causing damage, until the coils are visibly clean and capable of passing "Coil Cleaning Verification". Clean condensate drain pan and drain trap and verify operational drain. Coil drain pans are subject to "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Certifications" per NADCA standards. Ensure cleaning methods do not cause any appreciable damage to, displacement of, or erosion of coil surface and conform to coil manufacturer recommendations when available. Remove corrosion from around coil frames and paint all corroded metal surfaces. Coordinate with Testing and Balancing Agency to verify pressure differential readings across coil. Ensure final pressure differentials across coil are within 10% of manufacturer's original ratings. Report on condition of fins and coil in general.

3. Dampers: Applies to all dampers, including manual volume, fire, fire-smoke, zone, and other automatic dampers. Mark current setting or position of dampers before changing. Clean blades, seals, bearings, and linkages, free up moving parts, and lubricate linkages and bearings with manufacturer's recommended or otherwise approved dry lubricant. Remove corrosion from around damper frames and paint all corroded metal surfaces. After cleaning and lubrication, insure free and proper operation through full range of motion and return linkages to proper settings in cooperation with Testing and Balancing sub-contractor. Note damaged, dysfunctional, and otherwise non-adjustable linkages and dampers and report to Architect, indicating locations and sizes of damaged dampers and nature of problem.

4. Above Ceiling Plenums and Mechanical Rooms: Remove all loose debris and mechanically vacuum entire ceiling plenum or Mechanical Room including (but not limited to) duct exteriors, walls, floor / top of ceiling tiles, deck, structural steel, piping, outside of conduit, light fixtures, and other electrical equipment. Ensure plenum or Mechanical Room is visibly clean but these areas are not subject to verification per NADCA Standards.

3.4 MASONRY DUCT SEALING

A. Duct Preparation:

1. Inspect air distribution systems for major leakage sites and significant accumulation of hubris or debris.
2. Remove all debris and significant dust and dirt (>1/8 inch deep) in air distribution system using a NADCA approved duct cleaning method.
3. Ensure adequate structural support for existing masonry duct shafts.

4. Temporarily remove or protect from aerosol particles building controls, fire and smoke sensors as recommended by manufacturer.
5. Temporarily disable fire alarms and notify appropriate authorities.
6. Temporarily isolate air-moving equipment and block off air inlets and outlets, and other devices and appurtenances as recommended by the manufacturer.
7. Protect occupied spaces from aerosol particles using manufacturer procedures.
8. All work shall be done in a substantial and workmanlike manner by factory trained technicians.
9. Inspect air distribution systems for major leakage sites and significant accumulation of hubris or debris.

B. Duct Sealing:

1. Seal existing masonry ductwork from the inside using automated aerosolized sealant injection.

    a. Manufacturer: Aeroseal, LLC. Or approved equal.
    b. Application must be performed by a manufacturer approved service provider.
    c. Sealant shall comply with UL Outline Scope 1381.
    d. Sealant must cure with 2 hours with no VOC off-gassing thereafter.
    e. Sealant shall remain elastic after curing
    f. Sealant shall be deposited substantially at areas of leakage only
    g. Provide pre-sealing, post-sealing and sealing profile reports for all duct sections sealed.

C. Duct Testing:

1. Provide pre-sealing and post-sealing leakage profile reports indicating percentage reduction of leakage for supply, return and exhaust ductwork and shafts.

2. Use manufacturer calibrated blower fan box with digital manometer to measure leakage before and after sealing. Blower shall be provided by Duct Sealing Contractor.

3. Following completion of air handling unit installations, duct repairs, and duct sealing, test all ductwork to insure that the air distribution system is properly sealed.

4. The supply ducts shall have air losses of less than 3% of the total air flow volume measured at the fan or air-moving device.

5. The return ducts shall have air losses of less than 3% of the total air flow volume measured at the fan or air-moving device.

6. Leakage at operating pressure shall be calculated by correcting leakage flows measured at 25 Pa to the average pressure seen by the leaks (defined as the average of the static pressure at the plenum and the average of the diffuser pressure at the end of the shortest and longest duct runs)

D. Cleanup:

1. Reinstall building controls and smoke detectors.
2. Enable fire alarms and notify appropriate authorities.
3. Remove blocking, reinstall grills and registers, and enable air handling fans.

4. Cleanup sealant residue that may have adhered to surfaces in occupied areas as recommended by the Manufacturer.
5. All work shall be done in a substantial and workmanlike manner by factory-trained technicians.

E. Warranty:

1. The Contractor shall warrant that the aerosol sealant application will be free from defects for a period of 3 years from date of the sealing application. If defects should occur during this period, the Contractor shall repair or replace the defective duct seals, including the direct labor costs for performing the repair or replacement, at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.5 VERIFICATION

A. All work shall be subject to demonstration of visual cleanliness by ASCS and verification of cleanliness by Owner, and:

1. ASCS shall report to Owner and Architect promptly when ready for inspection.

2. ASCS shall schedule visual cleanliness demonstration at Owner's convenience as soon after cleaning work as possible. Coordinate schedule of work with Owner in advance as required to expedite.

3. Guide Owner and Architect's rep on cleanliness demonstration tour: provide equipment to, and take, high resolution digital (6 megapixal minimum) photographic documentation of remote interior duct locations of Owner's and Architect's choice, at least one photograph per 50 feet of duct cleaned.

4. Verification must occur, at Owner's discretion, before application of insulation repair coating, disinfectants, or any other materials; and prior to the HVAC system being restored to normal operation.

5. An interior surface is considered verified visibly clean when it is free from non-adhered substances and debris to the Owner's satisfaction. "Non-adhered substance" shall be defined in accordance with ACR-2005: "any material not intended or designed to be present in an HVAC system, and which can be removed by contact vacuuming."

a. If a component is verified visibly clean then no further cleanliness verification is required.

b. In the event there is disagreement concerning whether a surface is visibly clean, contractor shall conduct Surface Comparison Testing in accordance with section 12.2 of ACR-2005.

6. A coil is considered verified visibly clean when it is free from non-adhered substances and impacted between fin debris to the Owner's satisfaction. "Impacted between fin debris" shall be defined as: "any material lodged between or on coil fins, not intended or designed to be present in an HVAC system, and which can be removed by any combination of non-destructive cleaning processes as outlined in this specification."

a. In the event there is a dispute concerning whether a coil is visibly clean, contractor shall perform Surface Comparison Testing similar to section 12.2 of ACR-2005 but with the addition of the coil cleaning methodology outlined above and in ACR-2005.

3.6 SANITIZING AND COATING

A. After systems are verified visibly clean by Owner:

1. Install insulation repair coating on all insulation / acoustical liners exposed to system air flow.

2. Apply plenum paint as follows:

a. Apply to all non-porous surfaces with residual mastic and fibers exposed to system air flow. Include all duct where duct liner was removed.

b. Apply rust inhibitive primer similar to Foster 40-26 to all non-porous surfaces where rust is visible after cleaning.

c. Plenum paint is not required for previously unlined duct, coils, fan impellers and shafts, or automatic damper blades and shafts, where there is no evidence of previous rust.

3. Sanitize all systems cleaned using sanitizer specified above.

3.7 DOCUMENTATION OF CLEANED SANITIZED SYSTEMS

A. Owner may, at their discretion, retain an independent testing agency to promptly test sanitation of cleaned and sanitized surfaces subject to and in accordance with "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification" as described in NADCA Standards. Using proper sampling protocols and analytical procedures as defined by the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA), surface swipes taken in representative areas of the HVAC system and ductwork shall not exceed the following levels for microbial concentrations: 10,000(CFU/inch^2).

3.8 REMEDY

A. If any areas fail Owner's visual cleanliness verification testing and Surface Comparison Testing, or their subsequent sanitation testing, contractor shall re-clean and re-test portions of, up to entire system, at no additional cost to Owner as required to pass Owner's testing.

END OF SECTION 23 01 30

SECTION 23 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and all Division 01 Sections, apply to this Section and to all of Division 23.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Definitions, references, and abbreviations.
2. General regulatory requirements.
3. General requirements regarding site/field conditions including existing conditions and field measurements.
4. Sequencing and scheduling including coordination.
5. Definition of design equipment and procedures for consideration of specified equivalents, proposed equivalents, or substitutions.
6. HVAC demolition.
7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
8. Minimum material requirements and equipment verification.
9. Electrical components for HVAC Work
10. Concrete bases and grout.
11. Mechanical penetrations, waterproofing, and sealants.
12. Fire-stopping
13. Access doors
14. Painting and finishing.
15. General requirements for demonstration of completed systems

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.

E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

F. "Design Equipment", "Design Make", "Basis of Design", and similar terms: Equipment, specified in Technical Specification Section or on Contract Drawings using applicable manufacturer's designation, that forms the basis for performance requirements, physical dimensions, configuration, and similar aspects used in the design of this Project including (but not limited to) physical configuration of surrounding construction and location of connections to other components.

G. Specified Equivalents: Products identified in Technical Specification Section that may provide performance complying with specified requirements but may not have the same arrangement, configuration, size, construction, or other aspects as the specified Design Equipment. Refer to Section 00 21 13 - Instructions to Bidders, and Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures for additional information and requirements regarding equivalents and substitutions.

H. "Equivalents", "Proposed Equivalents", "Proposed Products" and similar terms: These terms may be used interchangeably and mean the same thing: Products NOT identified in Technical Specification Section that the Contractor proposes in accordance with Section 00 21 13 - Instructions to Bidders and Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures.

I. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor, all in accordance with Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures.

J. Heating Work: Refers to Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning Systems and Equipment where used in technical specification sections of Division 23.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS

A. Abbreviations: Reference to technical society, organization, body or section made in Division 23 in accordance with the following abbreviations:

1.	AIA	American Institute of Architects
2.	ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act.
3.	AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.
4.	ANSI	American National Standards Institute
5.	ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers
6.	ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers International
7.	ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials International
8.	AWS	American Welding Society
9.	IBC	International Building Code, New Jersey Edition
10.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
11.	NEC	National Electric Code
12.	NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
13.	NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
14.	NYBFU	New York Board of Fire Underwriters
15.	SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
16.	UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide complete systems, properly connected, tested, balanced, adjusted, and ready for operation, including all necessary and required controls, safeties, details and accessories, including (but not limited to):

1. Demolition and removals required for equipment and system installation.
2. Piping systems and related equipment.
3. Refrigeration systems and related equipment.
4. Ventilation systems and related equipment.
5. Support Systems and related equipment.
6. Insulation Systems and related equipment.
7. Miscellaneous items required for equipment and system installation.
8. Controls and electrical control wiring to equipment furnished in this contract.
9. Electrical power wiring to equipment furnished in this contract, where not covered elsewhere.

B. HEATING WORK DRAWINGS ARE DIAGRAMMATIC. Do not infer that Drawings show level of detail indicating every offset, elbow, union, fitting, elevation or aspect ratio changes, or other details required for complete installation.

1. Provide all required fittings, offsets, elevation changes, dampers, controls, components, and similar items not indicated on Drawings, as required for a complete properly operational system.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General Division 23 submittal requirements:

1. Procedural Requirements: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

   a. Specified Products: If product to be incorporated into Project is specified by name and product designation in Part 2 of product specification, and will be installed as specified in Part 3, and only where allowed as such in submittal portion of product specification, then submit “As-Specified Verification Form” (attached to SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals) in lieu of “Product Data” identified.

   b. Do not use “As Specified Verification Form” unless specifically indicated in detailed product specification.

   c. Equivalent Products or Substitutions: If product to be incorporated into Project is <u>not</u> specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, comply with all Product Data requirements specified.

2. Product Data: Submit Product Data for items listed in individual technical section. Clearly identify manufacturer, pertinent design, function, materials, construction, and performance data specifically addressing specification description and Contract Document requirements of item. Strike out products that are not applicable to item being submitted, where more than one product is indicated on manufacturer product literature.

a. Cover Sheet: Attach cover sheet, identified in Section 01 33 00, to Product Data of each item submitted. Provide cover sheet for only one type of item with related accessories, equipment with related components. Do not combine unrelated items under same cover sheet.

b. Specified Equivalent Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information including product literature, technical specifications and descriptions, performance data, and similar items to demonstrate compatibility with Basis-of-Design Equipment as specified in "Manufacturers" in Part 2 - Products below.

3. Do not proceed with installation of systems in each area until agreement is reached with all concerned on exact arrangements for each room or area, unless otherwise directed by Architect. If Contractor proceeds prior to resolving conflicts, Contractor shall modify installed Work as required to permit other systems to proceed with a coordinated installation.

4. Specified Equivalent Drawings: Submit detailed drawings of proposed Specified Equivalents, indicating proposed installation of equipment and showing maintenance clearances, required service removal space, and other pertinent revisions to arrangement and configuration shown in Contract Documents.

5. Closeout Information, for inclusion in Operations and Maintenance Manual:

a. Approved submittals.

1) If "As-Specified Verification Form" submittal is approved, also include product data as specified in technical section for all components used.

b. Include all information required in SECTION 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

c. Include all other closeout information required by the individual technical specification sections.

B. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and attachments to other work for concrete bases.

C. Welding Quality Control Submittals

1. When welded or brazed work is required or proposed as a part of this project, submit following for approval before beginning any welding or brazing work:

a. Welding and Brazing Procedure Qualification: Prepare and submit for approval welding and brazing procedure qualification specification qualifying all proposed procedures as specified in Quality Assurance below with copies of all back-up data.

b. Welders' and Brazers' Certification: Submit for approval certification that each proposed welder, welding operator, brazer, or brazing operator has been qualified in all procedures proposed for that worker as specified in Quality Assurance below with copies of all back-up data.

D. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

1. Power Train Accessories
2. Concrete Bases, Grout
3. Sealants
4. Fire-stopping.
5. Access doors.
6. Painting and finishing.

E. Samples:

1. Submit color chart with paint manufacturer's color samples for final color selections prior to beginning painting. Comply with additional requirements for color selection samples specified in Division 09.

F. Closeout Information, for inclusion in Operations and Maintenance Manual:

1. Approved submittals.

a. If "As-Specified Verification Form" submittal is approved, also include product data for all components used.

2. Include all information required in SECTION 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

3. Letters on manufacturer's letterhead from equipment manufacturers certifying that their equipment and systems have been installed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, properly aligned and adjusted, tested, lubricated, wired, balanced, etc.

4. Lubrication, Filter, and Belt / Drive charts as described below.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements

1. Comply with applicable requirements of all Federal, New York State, and Local Building, Health, Mechanical, Plumbing and Electrical Codes, Laws, Ordinances and Regulations, including (but not limited to):

a. Building Code of New York State
b. Mechanical Code of New York State
c. Fire Code of New York State
d. Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State
e. New York State Education Department Manual of Planning Standards
f. In event of a conflict between the Codes identified above and Contract Documents, comply with more stringent requirement.

2. Comply with applicable requirements of NFPA, utility company regulations, and following standards:

    a. Provide Underwriters Laboratories (UL) labels on all electrical materials carrying 50 volts or more.
    b. Provide refrigeration equipment complying with Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration (ASHRAE Standard 15 - and ANSI Refrigeration Safety Code B9.1).

B. Certifications: Obtain and pay for all necessary inspections and certificates from all applicable agencies. Perform all required tests in accordance with regulation of agency having jurisdiction. Submit certificates of approval prior to Final Completion as defined in Section 01 77 00 – Closeout Procedures. Submit certificates of approval prior to request for final acceptance of Contract.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

D. Welding Quality Control for General Construction and Support Work:

1. This paragraph refers to qualifications for General Construction and Support Work welding only. Qualify welders, brazers, and any welding or brazing procedure to be used on piping for this Project in accordance with ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX, as specified and detailed in Section 23 21 13 - HYDRONIC PIPING.

2. Welding and Brazing Procedure Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel." Qualification may by made by technically competent group or agency (subject to approval) meeting the following conditions:

    a. Group or agency qualifying the procedure meets all procedure qualification requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel.".

    b. Contractor accepts full responsibility for procedure qualified.

    c. Contractor has qualified at least one welder or welding operator using procedure qualified and provides record of qualification.

    d. Contractor accepts full responsibility for qualified procedures by signing related qualification records with procedure and performance qualifications including all dates, results, and associated data.

3. Welders' and Brazers' Qualifications: Ensure that all welders, welding operators, brazers, or brazing operators employed for this project are qualified for all welding and brazing procedures, proposed as part of this Project, in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel.". Qualification by previous employer or technically competent group or agency (subject to approval) may be acceptable if following information is included:

a. Documentation that the previous qualification was for essentially the same procedures proposed and was in full accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel.".

b. Copy of performance qualification testing record showing who qualified the worker, date of qualification, and work history record showing continuous performance to maintain qualification.

4. Weld and Braze Qualification Records: Maintain and sign certified records of approved procedures used and approved qualified workers employed for welded and brazed joints performed as a part of Prime Contract. Ensure all welding and brazing work can be traced to a specific procedure and welder.

5. Inspection and Examination by Owner, Remedy by Contractor: Owner reserves right to examine, inspect, and test all piping using visual, radiographic, or other recognized testing methods to determine compliance with specified quality control requirements and requirements of applicable regulatory agencies.

a. Cost of Owner's testing of acceptable installation provided at Owner's expense.
b. Repair piping installations not passing Owner's quality inspection testing using approved method or replace at no additional cost.
c. Cost of initial testing of piping not conforming to specified requirements and any retesting of repairs or replacement work shall be deducted from Contract Sum.

E. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packing and Shipping: Ship materials in manufacturer's containers, fully identified with manufacture's name, trade name, type, class, style, model, grade, size and color.

B. Storage and Protection

1. Store materials, equipment, fixtures, pipe, fittings, attachments, under cover, off ground in original containers as applicable, and protect from physical and weather damage while in storage and during construction.

2. Furnish extra materials identified in technical sections, in original manufacturer's containers and packaging, to Owner at location identified during Preconstruction Conference. Obtain receipt from Owner upon delivery of extra materials and send copy of receipt to Architect.

3. Replace or repair damaged, rusted, corroded or otherwise unusable materials physically damaged or weather damaged equipment as determined by Architect, at no change in Contract Sum.

1.9 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements

1. DO NOT SCALE DRAWINGS: Refer to Architectural and Structural drawings for dimensions and details, and verify measurements in field before proceeding.

2. Install all items with proper provision for removal and access to coil bundles, boiler tubes, belts, valves, traps, and similar components.

3. Layout of equipment, piping, and similar components in Drawings is diagrammatic. Review Drawings in the field, identify interference with other construction and verify dimensions at Site prior to beginning installation.

a. Obtain exact size and location of all items and openings and confirm all existing conditions in field. Review Shop Drawings of all Contracts.

b. Coordinate all Heating Work that interferes with other construction with other responsible Contractor.

c. Obtain exact location and roughing requirements for all equipment furnished by others, but installed by this Contractor before roughing. Owner reserves right to make reasonable changes prior to "roughing-in" without increase in Contract Sum.

4. Report any conflicts to Architect in writing before beginning installation.

1.10 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Perform all Heating Work in cooperation with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and all Contractors on this Project, and other separate Contractors at the Site.

1. Coordinate all Heating Work with construction schedule requirements in Division 01
2. Coordinate all submittals with the construction schedule and with requirements and schedules contained in Section 01 33 00 – Submittals Procedures.
3. Immediately report any delays in receipt of materials required for Heating Work including circumstances causing delays.

B. Existing Construction: Provide openings, chases, recesses, lintels and bucks required for admission of Heating Work, unless otherwise noted. Do not cut waterproofed floors or walls for admission of equipment or materials without written permission. Do not pierce structural members without written permission.

C. Supports for Heating Work: Provide anchor bolts required supporting or securing Heating Work. Locate settings and check locations as construction progresses. Provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

D. Cutting and Patching: Bear expense of cutting, patching, repairing or replacing of work of all Contracts required due to fault, error or damage by contractor responsible for Heating Work, unless otherwise specified in Contract Documents. Employ and pay Prime Contractor involved, or if there is no associated Prime Contractor, employ and pay qualified subcontractor as required for corrective work.

E. Refer to Division 01 for cooperation between Contractors. Prior to start of construction:

1. Obtain from Contract Drawings or Architect, exact location of items and openings in construction. Conform to existing conditions in field.

2. Review Shop Drawings of all Contracts.

3. If conflict occurs between Contract Drawings, advise Architect in writing before beginning installation and comply with Architect's directions.

4. Obtain exact location and roughing requirements for equipment furnished by other Contractor or by Owner, but installed by Contractor responsible for Heating Work before beginning roughing.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Pre-Installation Conference:

1. Attend pre-installation conference. Arrange for all subcontractors to be in attendance.

B. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.

C. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

D. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

E. Coordinate Heating Work with plumbing systems, lighting fixtures, ceiling mounted devices, ceiling heights, materials, structural work, maintenance clearances, electric code clearance, and building systems. Verify that Work of all Contractors can be installed without interference with Heating Work.

F. Notify Architect in case of unresolved interferences prior to installation of Heating Work.

G. Adjust exact size, location and offsets of exposed HVAC components to achieve reasonable appearance objectives without increase in Contract Sum.

H. Testing and Balancing: Cooperate with contractor responsible for Testing and Balancing work as required ensuring complete and proper testing, balancing and adjustment of air and water systems. Refer to section 23 05 93 – Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC, for details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Equipment – Provide as specified and scheduled with all options as required for full compliance.

B. Specified Equivalents - If Specified Equivalents (refer to "Definitions" in Part 1 above) are proposed, comply with following requirements:

1. Submit "Specified Equivalent Drawings" as specified in "Submittals" in Part 1 above.

a. Provide required changes in design and adjacent construction or equipment at no increase in Contract Sum.

1) Where required, provide larger motors, equipment, additional control devices, valves, fittings, and other miscellaneous equipment necessary for proper operation and provide proper location of roughing and connections to other Contractors.

2) Provide additional motors, starters, power, wiring, and control wiring required.

3) Provide revisions to equipment, wiring, support structure, controls, valves, fittings, and other miscellaneous equipment.

4) Additional Architectural and Engineering work, coordination, and documentation.

b. If proposed arrangement for Specified Equivalent is rejected, revise to be compliant and resubmit or submit Basis-of-Design Equipment.

2. Submit "Specified Equivalent Product Data" as specified in "Submittals" in Part 1 above to demonstrate that proposed Specified Equivalent is equal to or better than Basis-of-Design Equipment with respect to all performance characteristics, including but not limited to durability, individual equipment operating costs, entire interrelated system operating costs, service access, noise levels, vibration levels, compatibility with Owner's other existing equipment to minimize parts inventory, aesthetics where applicable, and similar characteristics.

3. Do not assume that approval of a specified equivalent submittal implies approval of the installed product. Correct all deviations uncovered during construction and warrantee period that result in or are caused by any lower performance characteristic than the specified Basis of Design equipment.

C. Proposed Equivalents and Substitutions: In addition to requirements described elsewhere in these Contract Documents, all proposed equivalent and substitution products being considered shall be subject to the Specified Equivalent requirements listed above.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Minimum Material Requirements:

1. Provide electrical equipment and systems meeting UL standards and requirements of NEC.

2. Provide UL label on all equipment and material with listing service.

3. Material Flammability:

   a. Flame spread rating of 25 or less.
   b. Smoke developed rating of 50 or less.

4. Equipment Verification: Carefully check manufacturer's drawings and specifications as they affect their particular equipment; follow factory instructions for roughing, installation, connection, filling, lubrication, testing, balancing, adjusting, alignment, wiring, and start-up operation.

2.3 MOTOR POWER TRAIN ACCESSORIES

A. For all new motor installations, whether in new equipment or installed as replacement motors, provide accessories listed below as required for a complete new drive system.

B. V-Belt Connected Motors: Provided with adjustable slide rail bases, motor sheaves, driven pulleys, and belts sized and applied such that total overhung load on motor shaft extension due to belt tension and motor torque does not exceed maximum overhung load allowed by motor design and construction.

1. Size and apply pulleys so that total overhung load on motor shaft extension due to belt tension and motor torque will not exceed maximum overhung load allowed by motor design and construction, with minimum 150% safety factor.

2. Motor and driven pulleys/sheaves to be premium quality, machined cast iron balanced to MPTA standards, tapered bushing bolted shaft connections, variable pitch diameter motor sheave through 10 hp motors (fixed sheaves 15 hp and above), multiple belt grooves and belts 5 hp and above and as required to maintain safety factor.

3. V-belts to be premium quality oil and heat resistant notched cog type belts with precision molded raw edges in matched lengths as required for application. Provide one extra set belts minimum for each belt drive system, secured adjacent to drive or turned over loose to Owner if so requested.

4. Provide slide rail base to fit new motor for all new equipment motors, whenever replacement motor has different NEMA frame size from existing, or where specifically called for:

   a. Slide rail bases to be heavy gauge formed steel, adjustable with single adjusting bolt for belt tensioning, sized to fit motor.

C. Independently Mounted Direct Driven Load Motor Couplings: Interlocking machined and balanced steel spider locked Molded rubber insert and capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor. Include EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.

D. Provide personnel guards to fit new motor and drive for all new equipment motors, whenever replacement motor and drive do not fit existing guard, or where noted to provide new guard on drawings.

1. Personnel guards shall be of OSHA approved construction surrounding belts, shafts, and pulleys, with tachometer holes for motor and driven shafts.

2.4 CONCRETE BASES AND SUPPORTS

A. Use 4000-psi f_c air entrained concrete, maximum #1 aggregate, all edges chamfered 1-1/2 inches, trowel finished, and properly consolidated to eliminate voids. Reinforce and secure to floor with #4 rebar dowels 18 inches O.C. 3 to 6 inches from edge around entire perimeter, inserted into structural slab 3 inches minimum and extending to within 1 inch of pad top. Enclose dowels with #4 deformed rebar ring around all dowels overlapped 18 inches minimum and bent in at ends 12 inches minimum, secured to dowels at center of pad height. Roughen structural slab, and coat with cement grout before pour. Ensure all equipment bolt down locations are within reinforcement ring, extended into structural slab as required by seismic considerations.

B. Set adjustable internal threaded concrete inserts at appropriate bolt-down locations before pouring equipment bases. Use expansion anchors extended into structural slab as required by seismic considerations. If reusing existing concrete base, use expansion anchors. After leveling and anchoring equipment, fill equipment bases with grout as required.

C. Equipment Bases: 3-1/2 inches thick minimum, reinforced with 6x6-W1.4xW1.4 welded wire mesh, minimum 1-1/2 inches cover, doubled over 12 inches on long edges, unless otherwise specified

2.5 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink, non-metallic, high strength grout, suitable for interior and exterior, above and below grade applications.

1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in non-fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants", and also with requirements for Air Duct sealants in Section 23 31 00 – Ductwork.

B. Provide premium products specified for each application as appropriate.

2.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping”.

B. Submit Manufacturers Product Data Sheets for each type of product selected. Certify that Firestop Material is free of asbestos and lead paint, and complies with local regulations.

1. Certification by firestopping manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) and are nontoxic to building occupants.

C. Submit system design listings, including illustrations from qualified testing and inspection agency that is applicable to each firestop configuration.

D. Submit a project specific Penetration Firestopping Schedule indicating where each firestop configuration will be used.

2.8 PAINT AND FINISHES

A. Refer to Division 09 for paint and finish product specifications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Execution" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material at point of continued use or as otherwise specifically indicated.

2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.

3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and cap remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.

4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap all duct ends with same or compatible ductwork material.

5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and remove equipment and all associated accessories. Plug, cap, seal, and otherwise patch to match as required.

6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, protect, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational. Document any existing damage before removals.

7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

C. Disposition of Removed Components:

1. For components that become the Contractor's property through this removal process: Confirm transfer of ownership in writing then promptly remove from the site and legally process.

2. For components indicated on the drawings to be reused: carefully remove, protect, and store until appropriate time for re-installation. Document any pre-existing damage prior to removals.

3. For pipe and tubing indicated to be reused, reuse only those portions of pipe, tubing, and associated fitting assemblies where they are direct replacements of the as specified and as shown new piping assemblies. Valves, strainers, other piping specialties, and insulation shall not be re-used unless specifically indicated on drawings.

3.2 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. Reuse materials and equipment only as indicated on Drawings. Furnish new equipment and materials in conformance with Contract Documents for all Heating Work, including any material, operation, method or device mentioned, listed or noted within Division 23 Sections, unless reuse is specifically indicated, or unless specified as furnished or installed by Owner, all Contractors, or others.

B. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is otherwise made unserviceable by adjacent or associated work or error, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality. Verify, document, and confirm pre-existing damage with Owner and Architect before beginning work.

3.3 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are indicated.

B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

E. Ensure each equipment manufacturer:

1. Carefully checks Contract Drawings and Specifications applicable to manufacturer's equipment before roughing.

2. Reports to Architect, before or when Shop Drawings are submitted, any discrepancies or conditions applied to manufacturer's equipment that prevents proper functioning, servicing, and other aspects of equipment operation.

3. Provides manufacturer's printed installation instructions for each piece of equipment.

4. Thoroughly instructs Contractor exactly how equipment should be installed, connected, lubricated, started, operated, and similar aspects to ensure all factory instructions are rigidly followed during installation of equipment.

F. Install, test, start, and operate equipment as instructed by manufacturer.

G. Submit written evidence from equipment manufacturer that manufacturer's equipment and systems have been:

1. Installed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Properly aligned and adjusted, tested, lubricated, wired, balanced, and similar operations

H. Equipment Connections

1. Provide final make up water, steam, condensate, chilled water/glycol, heating water/glycol, drain, vent, refrigerant, connections to all equipment as required.

2. Provide isolation valves and flanges or unions on the supply and return piping connections to all equipment arranged as required for reasonable service isolation and access.

3. Provide equipment waste, drip, overflow, bleed water, condensate, and drain connections extended to floor or roof drains or other approved points of discharge. Provide integral condensate pumps and appropriate piping for units where gravity condensate drain is not practical or possible.

4. Connect equipment complete and ready-to-use, including all valves, piping, piping accessories, traps, gauges, vents, drains, insulation, sheet metal work, controls, dampers, and similar components required.

I. Precautions Against Freezing: In addition to applicable requirements in Division 01 and individual technical sections, take all necessary precautions with equipment and systems to prevent damage to building, piping, equipment, and other components due to freezing and water leakage until final acceptance. Before freezing weather occurs, make certain all:

1. Safety features are properly functioning.
2. Freeze protection is tested and sensing elements are properly located.

3. Openings around outside grilles, louvers, and similar items are properly sealed; notify Architect in writing if openings are not adequately sealed.
4. Outside air dampers are tight fitting and operational, and damper motors are properly winterized.
5. Air systems are properly balanced.
6. Proper insulation is installed where required.

J. Concealment: Conceal all Work not specifically shown on the Drawings as exposed. Note piping risers may be shown outside of walls due to scale of drawing symbols – the general intent is for these pipes to be concealed within the general construction if possible or if not possible, to be within riser chases. If for any reason concealment is impossible, notify the Architect and obtain written approval before starting that part of the Work.

K. Exposed Items: Install exposed items as shown on Drawings or as approved by Architect. Obtain Architect's approval for final arrangement and appearance before installing items in areas without ceilings.

L. Damaged Components and Replacement: If pipe, duct, insulation, or any HVAC component or equipment is damaged in appearance or is otherwise unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.4 ERECTION OF SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Provide a complete system of support and anchorage for all Contract work.

B. Refer to Section 23 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for HVAC Components, Section 23 05 43 – Mechanical Vibration and Movement Control, and Division 05 and Division 06 complete for detailed additional requirements.

3.5 CONCRETE BASES

A. Provide concrete bases for all floor-mounted HVAC systems equipment, unless specifically indicated otherwise in Contract Documents.

1. Shape and size to accommodate equipment, with minimum of 6 inches clear pad all around perimeter unless otherwise required by equipment manufacturer.

2. Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic requirements of Project. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with anchorage.

3.6 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
G. Place grout around anchors.
H. Cure placed grout.

3.7 MECHANICAL PENETRATIONS, WATERPROOFING, AND SEALING

A. Openings Through Roofs: Curbs are required for rooftop air handling equipment, ventilators, fans, piping penetrations, etc. Roofing, flashing, and general waterproofing are the responsibility of the Contractor unless specifically indicated otherwise elsewhere in the Contract Documents. Refer to Architectural Drawings for related work by others.

1. Use factory pre-fabricated units as specified and noted on Drawings.

2. Caulk and waterproof neatly with additional material as required.

3. Employ the services of an approved roofing sub-contractor for all patching and/or new work indicated as part of the Heating Work.

4. Any roofing work performed under this Contract shall be performed in such a way as to not void any existing roofing warrantee. Additionally, whether there is a roofing warrantee currently in force or not for roof in area of new penetrations, all new penetration work shall be warranted leak free for a period not less than one year from final acceptance of project.

5. Provide structural support for roof deck around all roof curbs and roof deck penetrations larger than 12 inch x 12 inch, unless specifically indicated otherwise elsewhere on the Contract Documents.

B. Opening Through Outside Walls:

1. Guarantee all penetrations to be thoroughly air and watertight. Caulk and flash duct penetrations in accordance with specifications, details on Drawings, and as required.

2. Install louvers in accordance with specifications, manufacturer's recommendations, and details, as required to achieve guaranteed air and watertight penetrations. Direct drainage to drip away from building surface.

3. Use special waterproof construction as directed.

4. Provide mechanical sleeve seals for piping penetrations.

5. Provide structural support for wall above all penetrations wider than 12 inches, unless otherwise indicated elsewhere on the Contract Documents.

C. Openings Through Floors and Inside Walls: Provide through penetration systems for all mechanical work floor and wall penetrations which do not compromise the integrity of the floor or wall with regards to fire rating, smoke passage rating, acoustical noise reduction rating, or seismic rating. Insure through penetration system does not transmit mechanical vibrations to building walls or floors. Seal all floor penetrations to effectively block the passage of smoke and fumes.

1. Provide structural support for floor deck around all penetrations larger than 12 inches in any dimension, unless specifically indicated otherwise elsewhere on the contract documents.

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

A. Provide Through-Penetration Firestopping Systems and Devices listed in UL Fire Resistance Directory under categories XHCR and XHEZ and conforming to construction type, penetrant type, annular space requirements and fire rating indicated or required for each application.

B. Provide systems that withstand passage of cold smoke either as inherent property of system or by use of separate product included as part of UL system or device designed to perform this function.

C. Applied Fireproofing:

1. Coordinate the installation of hangers, supports and accessories from the structural steel with the Contractor responsible for fireproofing. Install all hangers and supports prior to fireproofing.

2. Repair and/or replacement of any fireproofing removed or damaged as a consequence of the installation work of the Heating Work Contract shall be the responsibility of the Heating Work Contractor.

a. Employ the services of an approved fireproofing contractor to repair or replace the fireproofing by patching any areas that have been removed or damaged due to the installation of work after the completion of the fireproofing.

b. Repaired or replacement fireproofing shall match the fireproofing adjacent to the repaired area. All warranties shall be maintained.

c. Remove all excess applied fireproofing from surfaces adjacent to those requiring it, leaving area clean and neat.

3.9 ACCESS DOORS

A. Provide all access doors shown on Drawings and as required for access to motors, dampers, valves, controls and all other devices requiring periodic inspection, adjustment or maintenance where located above or within inaccessible walls or ceilings except where access doors are indicated to be provided by others.

B. Engage skilled tradesman experienced in installation of access doors in applicable types of adjacent construction to install access doors. Install in accordance with requirements of Division 08 Section on access doors.

C. New Construction: Coordinate size and locations of openings required for access panels in walls, floors and ceiling construction with General Work Contractor in ample time for installation of access panels.

D. Existing Walls, Floors, and Ceilings: Cut and patch to install access doors in conformance with Section 01 73 00 - Execution.

E. Ductwork: Provide all access doors as required by section 23 33 00 – Air Duct Accessories.

3.10 PAINTING

A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is additionally specified in Division 09 Sections on Painting.

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

C. Vary initial and final coat colors slightly as required to provide positive identification between coats. Do not proceed with final coat until initial coat is properly cured per manufacturer's instructions, and has been approved as complete by Owner's Project Representative. Final coat shall completely conceal initial coat(s).

D. Paint Requirements:

1. Provide painted finish for HVAC components (exposed equipment, piping, duct, supports and insulation in particular) exposed to view in finished spaces such as gymnasiums, classrooms, offices, corridors, etc. Provide factory painted finishes as specified elsewhere or if not factory painted then field painted. Refer to Division 09 for painting specifications and additional painting requirements if required.

    a. Provide touch up painting as required to repair, or replace as directed, damaged factory finishes of HVAC components.

2. Paint all exposed metal surfaces that will be above 150 degrees F when in operation, with two coats of heat resistant paint.

3. Paint all miscellaneous fabricated ferrous supports complete.

4. Paint all ferrous piping and components located outdoors as specified in Division 09, except where insulation is to be applied over piping or component.

5. For piping that will be subject to moisture induced corrosion on the exterior of the piping, provide one full coverage coat of corrosion inhibiter equal to "Polyguard RG-2400" on the following ferrous (steel) piping and fittings before insulation is applied:

    a. All exterior ferrous piping.

b. All ferrous piping where the fluid in the piping operates at below ambient conditions (all cooling piping)
c. All below grade ferrous piping.

6. Do not paint

a. Chrome plated materials, aluminum and brass valves, or brass trim on iron body valves, stainless steel materials, copper indirect waste piping, laboratory waste and vent piping.

b. Piping above finished ceiling spaces, except un-insulated ferrous piping and supports.

c. Exposed copper pipe, brass valves, or brass trim on iron body valves, or machinery or equipment with factory-applied finish, unless otherwise specified.

7. Coating Systems: Comply with application and material requirements specified in Division 09.

8. Color Code Identification: Provide color code identification of mechanical piping in Boiler Rooms, Mechanical Rooms and Fan Rooms by painting the following services as listed below.

	Item	Color
a.	Heating hot water supply	Dark Red
b.	Heating water return	Light Red
c.	Steam supply	Orange
d.	Condensate (steam)	Rust brown
e.	Chilled water supply	Blue
f.	Chilled Water return	Light Blue

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Maintain systems during construction, temporary use, and until acceptance by Owner.

1. Properly lubricate all HVAC systems bearings during use.
2. Maintain limit controls, overload devices, and safety controls in operating condition during use

3.12 ALTERATIONS

A. Provide protection of existing facilities, demolition and removals, replacement and restoration, including patch-to-match requirements, and hazardous materials procedures to install Heating Work in conformance with Division 01 requirements.

B. Provide cutting and patching required to install Heating Work in accordance with the requirements of Division 01 covering cutting and patching.

3.13 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust all work as required to insure systems perform as designed and as intended, including but not limited to the following:

1. Adjust all registers and diffusers to insure even air distribution free of objectionable drafts. Include all new and all existing to remain registers and diffusers on systems where HVAC modifications are made.

2. Adjust all hangers and supports to insure proper piping slope, alignment of flexible connections, even loadings, proper venting and draining, proper control over thermal expansion, etc.

3. Adjust all mechanical equipment insuring it runs properly as intended, providing the performance specified and required, and as required to maintain all warrantees.

B. Clean work furnished or provided as part of Heating Work, including but not limited to equipment, control panels and devices.

1. Refer to and comply with Section 01 50 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls for additional requirements for cleaning during construction and Section 01 77 00 – Closeout Procedures for additional requirements for final cleaning.

2. Remove debris, leftover piping, tubing, metal, insulation, cartons, papers, etc., resulting from Heating Work.

3. Remove all rust, dirt, oil, etc. from Heating Work to be painted and maintain in condition ready for painting.

4. Clean inside and outside of all equipment and distribution systems provided including (but not limited to) following:

a. All enclosures.

b. Remove all rust, oils, and similar contamination from all equipment, piping and supports to be painted, and leave components ready for painting.

c. Remove debris, leftover piping, wiring, tubing, metal, insulation, cartons, papers, and similar items left in building or on Site. Clean building as often as necessary and when directed by Architect.

C. Final Cleaning: In addition to requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 – Closeout Procedures and other sections in Division 23, provide following measures.

1. Where heating units have been used to provide temporary heat, clean all permanent filters, replace all disposable filters, and clean all ducts, blowers, and coils.

2. Clean all piping strainers and replace all "startup" screens with permanent screens.

3. Refer to Section 23 01 20 – Hydronic Systems Cleaning and Water Treatment for detailed specifications on hydronic systems cleaning.

4. Refer to Section 23 01 30 – Mechanical Cleaning and Restoration for detailed specifications for detailed specifications on mechanical systems cleaning.

5. Provide written notification to Architect upon completion of all final cleaning procedures and request inspection of final cleaning.

3.14 DEMONSTRATION OF COMPLETED SYSTEMS

A. Prior to Final Completion, thoroughly demonstrate and instruct Owner's designated representatives in care and operation of all heating and ventilating systems and equipment provided in Heating Work. Provide necessary skilled labor to operate all systems for not less than 5 days and provide required instruction.

1. In addition to Contractor's instruction, arrange for technically qualified factory representatives to train Owner's designated representatives in care, maintenance, and operation of following manufacturer's equipment and systems.

    a. Temperature controls.
    b. Central station air handling equipment and units.
    c. Chiller
    d. Thermal storage systems.
    e. Variable speed drives.

2. Coordinate and schedule time and place of all training through Architect at Owner's convenience.

3. Submit letters verifying satisfactory completion of all instruction including date of instruction, names of persons in attendance and countersigned by authorized representative of Owner.

4. Until final acceptance, Contractor retains full responsibility for systems operations and maintenance, even though operated by Owner's personnel during instruction, unless otherwise agreed to in writing.

5. During instruction, provide list, sealed in clear plastic, outlining operating, maintenance, and starting precautions and procedures to be followed by Owner for operating systems and equipment.

B. Lubrication Chart: Provide minimum 8-1/2 inch x 11 inch lubrication chart for all Work in Heating Work Contract, typed in capital letters, mounted under clear laminated plastic, and secured to wall where directed by Architect.

1. List all motors and equipment including following information:

    a. Name and location of equipment.
    b. Type of lubrication recommended by manufacturer.
    c. Lubrication period recommended by manufacturer.

2. Lubricate all motors immediately after installation and perform lubrication maintenance until final acceptance by Owner.

C. Air Filter Chart: Provide an air filter chart for all equipment installed in contract.

1. Chart shall be 8-1/2 inch x 11 inch minimum size, typed in capital letters, mounted under clear laminated plastic; secure to wall where directed.

2. List all equipment that includes filters in Contract. Obtain necessary information containing the following:

   a. Name and location of equipment
   b. Type of filters recommended by the manufacturer.
   c. Size of filters for each piece of equipment.
   d. Recommended replacement schedule from unit manufacturer.

D. Belt / Drive Chart: Provide a Belt / Drive chart for all motorized equipment installed in contract. May be combined with lubrication chart above.

1. Chart shall be 8-1/2" x 11" minimum size, typed in capital letters, mounted under clear laminated plastic; secure to wall where directed or turned over in binder.

2. List all motor driven equipment in contract. Obtain necessary information containing the following:

   a. Name and location of equipment.

   b. Type of drive – belt, direct, flex coupling, etc.

   c. Drive data as applicable:

      1) Size and number of belts with replacement belt mfgr., model, part numbers.
      2) Size of drive and driven pulleys, mfgr., model, part numbers.
      3) Flexible coupling mfgr, model, part numbers.

END OF SECTION 23 05 00

SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. General requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

2. Starters and drive train accessories for electric motors.

3. Electrical auxiliary components required for HVAC systems that are not specifically identified in “E” series Drawings or Division 26.

4. Electrical wiring required for HVAC systems that is not specifically identified in “E” series Drawings or Division 26.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit all action submittals required by this Section concurrently.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, demonstrating compliance with all specified performance and construction characteristics.

C. Closeout Submittals:

1. Installation, Operation, and Maintenance Data: For motors, drives, electrical power components, and heat trace - include in operation and maintenance manuals.

a. Wiring Diagrams: Employ competent technical aid to prepare composite wiring diagrams for field wiring of power, signal, and control wiring for all equipment and systems installed as part of the HVAC Work. Deliver diagrams to proper parties in time for roughing of conduit and equipment connections. Clearly indicate all items to be mounted or wired as part of DIVISION 26. Include as built wiring diagrams in O&M manual.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products by one of following manufacturers or equal, except where unusual configurations involving frame, hermetic seals, shaft, bearing, or starting characteristics are peculiar to particular item of equipment as specified by Architect:

1. National Resource Management (NRM).
2. Baldor.
3. General Electric.
4. U. S. Motors.

B. Provide all motors required for the work of Division 23 specifications. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or individual technical specification sections.

C. Provide all motors suitable for operation at the frequency, voltage, and phasing of the building power.

D. Provide motors 1/2 HP and larger and motors indicated as driven by variable speed drives, designed for operation on 3-phase power, voltage as shown on electrical plans, +/- 10 percent, unless specifically indicated otherwise on drawings.

E. Provide constant speed motors 1/3 HP and smaller designed for operation on single phase, 120 volts +/- 10 percent.

F. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

G. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS AND APPLICATIONS

A. Provide each motor suitable for continuous duty operation at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level, and suitable for speed, enclosure, rating, type and horsepower not less than as scheduled or specified in Contract Documents. Provide motor enclosure and maximum allowable temperature rise in degrees Centigrade over 40 deg. C ambient as follows, unless otherwise specified:

1. General Purpose: Drip-proof 40 deg. C or encapsulated design 60 deg. C.
2. Below grade level, roof-top unit, damp, high humidity, or condensing applications: Totally enclosed fan-cooled 50 deg. C or drip-proof encapsulated design 60 deg. C.
3. Motors, wiring, and disconnects installed in potentially flammable atmosphere: UL listed, NEC rated explosion proof construction, fan-cooled 50 deg. C rise.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

C. Each equipment manufacturer is responsible for ensuring motors supplied with manufacturer's equipment are fully compatible with the application and capable of starting and running driven equipment without undue noise, heating, or distress.

2.3 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
5. Electronically Commutated Motor (ECM)

B. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

C. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

D. Variable Speed Motors: electronically commutated motor (ECM) as manufactured by General Electric. Motor shall be of permanent magnet, brushless DC premium efficiency design with variable speed electronic controller capable of maintaining constant speed, torque, and/or cfm as required by service, capable of accepting 0-10vdc or 4-20mA speed control signal from building management system. Adjustable slow start and gradual speed changes, permanently lubricated ball bearings, and extra quiet operation are all included.

E. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

F. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Single Speed General Application Motors:

1. NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

2. Efficiency: Premium efficiency, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Service Factor: 1.15.
4. Random-wound, squirrel cage rotor.
5. Re-greasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
6. Insulation: Class F.
7. Temperature Rise: One class below insulation rating.
8. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
9. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
10. Enclosure Material: Manufacturer's standard rolled steel or cast iron enclosures corresponding to NEMA rating and application requirements.

B. Multi-Speed General Application Motors:

1. Similar to single speed motor requirements above, with separate winding for each speed.

2. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

C. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:

1. Motors shall meet all other requirements of this document, the driven equipment manufacturer, and the Variable Frequency Controller manufacturer, and be rated for this service with the drive and voltage intended. Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

2. All three phase motors for use with variable frequency controllers shall be special application, inverter duty premium efficiency motors of cast iron construction.

3. Ratings shall be in accordance with NEMA MG-1, Part 31 requirements for the specific application.

4. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.

5. Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.

6. Thermal protection via one Class F thermostat per phase, NEMA MG 1 compliant with requirements for thermally protected motors.

D. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 MOTOR ACCESSORIES

A. For all new motor installations, whether in new equipment or installed as replacement motors, provide accessories listed below as required for a complete new drive system.

B. V-Belt Connected Motors: Provided with adjustable slide rail bases, motor sheaves, driven pulleys, and belts sized and applied such that total overhung load on motor shaft extension due to belt tension and motor torque does not exceed maximum overhung load allowed by motor design and construction.

1. Size and apply pulleys so that total overhung load on motor shaft extension due to belt tension and motor torque will not exceed maximum overhung load allowed by motor design and construction, with minimum 150% safety factor.

2. Motor and driven pulleys/sheaves to be premium quality, machined cast iron balanced to MPTA standards, tapered bushing bolted shaft connections, variable pitch diameter motor sheave through 10 hp motors (fixed sheaves 15 hp and above), multiple belt grooves and belts 5 hp and above and as required to maintain safety factor.

3. V-belts to be premium quality oil and heat resistant notched cog type belts with precision molded raw edges in matched lengths as required for application. Provide one extra set belts minimum for each belt drive system, secured adjacent to drive or turned over loose to Owner if so requested.

4. Provide slide rail base to fit new motor for all new equipment motors, whenever replacement motor has different NEMA frame size from existing, or where specifically called for:

    a. Slide rail bases to be heavy gauge formed steel, adjustable with single adjusting bolt for belt tensioning, sized to fit motor.

C. Provide personnel guards to fit new motor and drive for all new equipment motors, whenever replacement motor and drive do not fit existing guard, or where noted to provide new guard on drawings.

1. Personnel guards shall be of OSHA approved construction surrounding belts, shafts, and pulleys, with tachometer holes for motor and driven shafts.

D. Direct connected motors: provide with flexible couplings if required by application and OSHA approved belt guards surrounding rotating machinery.

2.6 STARTERS

A. Manufacturers: Provide all starting equipment and control devices manufactured by same manufacturer and furnished through single responsible supplier unless otherwise specified in Contract Documents. Factory-wired or assembled packaged equipment may be provided with starting equipment of any acceptable manufacturer. Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cutler-Hammer
2. General Electric
3. Square D

B. Provide starters, contactors, and controllers complying with applicable NEMA standards, minimum size 0, and enclosed in enclosures of type appropriate for environment where installed including general purpose, explosion proof, weather resistant, or weather-tight construction as required.

C. Ensure all parts subject to wear, arcing, and similar use are easily removable.

1. Provide necessary auxiliary contacts for each starter subject to electrical interlock or automatic control.

2. Equip magnetic starters for motors operating 208 volts and over, line-to-line, equipped with self-contained light loads imposed thereon with a control transformer having a 120-volt grounded secondary winding, and having 120-volt starter operating coils.

D. Provide combination-type magnetic starters with fused disconnect switches. Fuse with class R fuses. Protect all starters with manual reset, solid state overload relay equal to (Square "D" motor logic) in one leg of single phase line to neutral circuits, in two legs of single phase line-to-line circuits, and in three legs of 3-phase circuits.

E. Provide 6-volt, red pilot light, integral transformer and long life bulb for all starters and contactors.

F. Manual Starters: Toggle operated, single pole for line to neutral circuits, two pole for line-to-line circuits, with thermal overload devices and neon pilot light; flush mounted unless shown otherwise, ganged with selector switch for multispeed applications. Provide manual starters similar to one of the following:

1. General Electric CR-101
2. Cutler-Hammer 9101
3. Square D Class 2510

G. Combination Magnetic Starters: Single speed, across the line, HAND-OFF-AUTO selector switch in cover. Provide combination magnetic starters similar to one of the following:

1. Cutler-Hammer 9589
2. General Electric CR-107
3. Square D Class 8538

H. Magnetic Contactors: With control coil in series with temperature controls as required.

2.7 COMPONENTS

A. Electrical Wiring: Provide all materials conforming to NEMA Standards and UL approved for intended service. Refer to appropriate sections in Division 26.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which materials and methods are to be installed and notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in acceptable manner.

1. Installation indicates conditions are acceptable to Contractor as required to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied.

2. Motors and Starters: Confirm electrical characteristics for all equipment.

3. Electrical Wiring: Check all electrical wiring associated with equipment for compliance with specifications and correctness of connections. Correct wiring in event equipment or devices fail to function in specified manner, whether due to incorrect connections or improper information and wiring diagrams.

B. Inspect and perform tests on project electrical wiring, including infrared scans (thermography), resistance testing, or other industry standard testing as required to demonstrate acceptable wiring. Owner reserves the right to provide their own additional similar testing:

1. Cost of Contractor's testing included in bid price. Cost of Owner's testing of acceptable installations provided at Owner's expense.
2. Repair installations not passing Contractor's or Owner's quality inspection testing using approved method or replace at no additional cost.
3. Cost of initial testing of wiring not conforming to specified requirements and any retesting of repairs or replacement work deducted from Contract Sum.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Motors and Starters

1. Correct, at no additional cost, any misapplied motor or starter combination and improper thermal overload devices for motor starters provided as part of HVAC systems or components, along with damage to other equipment or construction.

2. Motors: Provide motors furnished by equipment manufacturer, specifically manufactured or selected for equipment served; mounted, and installed to provide complete installation that is substantially noiseless in performance under intended use. Replace motors unsatisfactory to Architect with new motor.

3. Starters and Accessories

a. Furnish properly tagged and identified devices specifically indicated on "Electric Equipment and Control Schedule" as supplied by HVAC systems suppliers and determine coordinated location and time for delivery of devices.

b. Provide auxiliary contacts required for temperature controls, interlock with other equipment, alarms, and similar components and applications.

B. Motor Accessories

1. Pulleys and Sheaves: Install on shaft with anti-seize compound and new locking drive keys and setscrews as applicable. Align drive and driven pulleys to within +/- 0.03 inches axially and to within +/- 2 degrees angular misalignment. Install locking devices with anti-vibration locking compound.

2. Belts: Install belts and adjust to the manufacturer's recommended tension.

3. Personnel Guards: secure to equipment such that belts and pulleys / sheaves are free to rotate and personnel are protected from moving parts.

C. Miscellaneous Electrical Wiring included in HVAC systems installations:

1. Provide all control wiring and power wiring for all equipment and associated control devices (including automatic control system) required for HVAC systems and components.

2. Comply with all applicable NEC requirements. Install all electric wiring in accordance with all local and state codes and regulations having jurisdiction.

3. Wiring for Controls: Provide wiring specified in Section 23 09 00 – Instrumentation and Control for HVAC, for all control devices required for temperature control system and other miscellaneous controls not included in "Electrical Equipment and Control Schedule".

4. Allow sufficient headroom under equipment as directed for each location (unit heater, etc.). Verify space available for each equipment item. Refer to Architect for any correction, discrepancy or suggested change in size of location.

5. Secure all equipment and fixture mountings, wiring devices, and accessories (clips, supports, etc.) to structure with screws, bolts, or similar items; nailing not acceptable.

END OF SECTION 23 05 13

SECTION 23 05 19 - METERS AND GAUGES FOR HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gauges.
4. Gauge attachments.
5. Test plugs.
6. Test-plug kits.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedural Requirements: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

1. Specified Products: If product to be incorporated into Project is specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, submit "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals) in lieu of "Product Data" identified below in this Article.

2. Equivalent Products or Substitutions: If product to be incorporated into Project is not specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, comply with all Action Submittal requirements specified below.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Submit all action submittals required by this Section concurrently.
2. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, demonstrating compliance with specifications. Include schedules of locations and ranges proposed.

C. Closeout Submittals:

1. Approved submittal.

a. If "**As-Specified Verification Form**" submittal is approved, also include product data for all valves used.

2. Include all information required in SECTION 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data for all meters and gauges used. Include wiring diagrams for meter power, signal, and control wiring.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Trerice, H. O. Co.
   b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
   c. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
   d. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.

3. Case: Cast aluminum; exterior grade powder coated finish, 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.

4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.

5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and non-mercury blue or red organic liquid.

6. Tube Background: Non-reflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.

7. Window: plastic.

8. Stem: Bare aluminum of length to suit installation.

9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing or Steel Piping: solid machined de-zincification resistant brass or stainless steel.
4. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.

5. External Threads: ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads, size as required for sensors.
6. Internal Threads: ASME B1.1 screw threads, size as required for sensors.
7. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
8. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
10. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin unless otherwise required by sensor manufacturer.

2.3 PRESSURE GAUGES

A. Direct Mounted, Dial Type Pressure Gauges:

1. 4-1/2-inch diameter flat white dials with black characters and graduations, micrometer style or externally adjustable zero point, providing 0.5 percent accuracy at mid scale and 1.0 percent accuracy full scale, certified to ANSI (ASME) B40.100 grade 1A with scales reading in psig.

2. Direct drive helically wound inconel bourdon tube movement with sapphire jeweled bearings or liquid filled stainless steel rotary type movement, rated for pump-mounted service, with bourdon tubes of seamless phosphor bronze alloy with silbrazed tips and forged brass sockets.

3. Impact resistant ABS, drawn steel or cast aluminum case with blow out grommet, snap ring, and “shatterproof” acrylic lens.

4. Provide ranges to read maximum design pressure at between 1/2 and 3/4 of maximum range.

5. Provide combination vacuum pressure gauges where indicated or required.

6. Provide 1/4-inch NPT connections located at bottom, lower back, or center back as required.

7. Provide five-year warranty.

8. Products: Provide one of the following:

   a. “TLG” by 3D Instruments or equal
   b. Ashcroft Duradrive model 1290 or equal
   c. Wika 232.34DD series or equal.

2.4 GAUGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle type, slow opening, bubble tight shutoff, with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.5 TEST PLUGS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. 3D instruments Inc.
2. Flow Design, Inc.
3. Peterson Products Co
4. Trerice, H. O. Co.
5. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
6. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Test Plugs:

1. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

2. Brass or stainless steel body, NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread with Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap with retainer. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

3. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

C. Test-Plug Kits

1. Furnish one test-plug test kit containing two thermometers, one pressure gauge and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gauge, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

3. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

4. Pressure Gauge: One pressure gauge as specified above with insertion type adapter probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 100 psig.

5. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install meters and gauges adjacent to machines and equipment in easily readable position but protected locations to allow and facilitate service and maintenance of meters, gauges, machines, and equipment.

B. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees. Provide thermometer stems of length to match thermowell insertion length.

C. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes. For pipe sizes 1 inch and smaller, increase pipe size by one size at location of thermowell to minimize obstruction.

D. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping. Insulate fitting past piping well and neatly terminate insulation at thermometer body minimizing heat loss while allowing for adjustment.

E. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

F. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

G. Install direct-mounted pressure gauges in piping tees with pressure gauge located on pipe at the most readable position.

H. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gauge for fluids (except steam).

I. Install test plugs in piping tees in location that allows for ease of insertion of standard test kit probes.

3.3 LOCATIONS

A. Install thermometers in the following locations, and as additionally shown on drawings:

1. Inlet and outlet of each chiller, at chiller.
2. Inlet and outlet of heat exchanger.
3. Inlet and outlet of air handling units coils.

B. Install pressure gauges in the following locations:

1. One pressure gauge for each pump with 4 isolation ball valves and snubber, piped to read pressure before suction diffuser screen, at pump suction, at pump discharge, and atmospheric. Valve installed open to atmosphere for zero adjustment of each gauge.

2. One pressure gauge for each differential pressure sensor with 3 isolation ball valves and snubber, piped to read pressure in either supply, return, or atmospheric. Valve installed open to atmosphere for zero adjustment of each gauge.

3. One pressure gauge for each hydronic expansion tank with 2 isolation ball valves and snubber, piped to read pressure in tank air or atmosphere. Valve installed open to atmosphere for zero adjustment of each gauge.

4. One pressure gauge for each chiller with 3 isolation ball valves and snubber, piped to read pressure before and after chiller or atmospheric. Valve installed open to atmosphere for zero adjustment of each gauge.

5. One pressure gauge for each side (heated and cooled) of each heat exchanger, two per heat exchanger, each with 3 isolation ball valves and snubber, piped to read pressure before and after heat exchanger or atmospheric. Valve installed open to atmosphere for zero adjustment of each gauge.

C. Test Plugs and Test Plug Kits:

1. Provide Pressure / Temperature Test Plugs at the supply and return connections to each new air / water heat transfer coil, adjacent to each thermometer and pressure gauge, and as noted on the drawings.

2. Furnish one Test Plug Kit loose to Owner, and provide for training of Owner's personnel in its use.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters and gauges according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate calibration with Testing and Balancing Agency (TAB) and include results in TAB report.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gauges to proper angle for best visibility.

3.5 THERMOMETER TYPE SCHEDULE

A. Thermometers in interior locations that are temperature controlled to within the operating limits of the equipment shall be the following:

1. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.

3.6 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Provide thermometers of approximately the scale range indicated:

1. Scale Range for Chilled-Water / Glycol Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
2. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water / Glycol Piping: 30 to 250 deg F .
3. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 30 to 250 deg F .

3.7 PRESSURE-GAUGE TYPE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gauges shall all be direct drive as specified.

3.8 PRESSURE-GAUGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Building Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
B. Scale Range for Chiller Glycol Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

END OF SECTION 23 05 19

SECTION 23 05 23 – GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass and bronze ball valves.
2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
3. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
4. Check Valves.
5. Manual Balancing valves
6. Automatic Flow Control Balancing valves.
7. Pump Discharge Valves.
8. Air vent valves

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedural Requirements: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

1. Specified Products: If product to be incorporated into Project is specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, submit "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals) in lieu of "Product Data" identified below in this Article.

2. Equivalent Products or Substitutions: If product to be incorporated into Project is <u>not</u> specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, comply with all Action Submittal requirements specified below.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Submit concurrently for each type of valve proposed, demonstrating compliance with requirements.

C. Closeout Information, for inclusion in Operations and Maintenance Manual:

1. Approved submittal.

a. If "**As-Specified Verification Form**" submittal is approved, also include product data for all valves used.

2. Include all information required in SECTION 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

3. Receipt: For spare automatic flow control valve cartridges.

4. Valve Chart: Refer to Section 23 05 00 – Common Work Results for HVAC, for details.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and larger.

2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 5 and smaller.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.

2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

2.2 BRONZE AND BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Solder or Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full or Regular per application schedule.

2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 216 carbon steel, ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM/Teflon, reinforced, resilient, for water temperatures up to 250 deg. F at 150 PSI.
f. Stem: 316 or 416 stainless steel shaft mounted within corrosion resistant bearings.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze, bronze, or nickel coated iron.

2.4 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc; “Gruvlock”.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Victaulic Company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. NPS 8 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
e. Disc: EPDM/Teflon coated ductile iron.
f. Seat: EPDM/Teflon, reinforced, resilient, for water temperatures up to 250 deg. F at 150 PSI.

2.5 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
b. NIBCO INC.
c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.6 CHECK VALVES

A. 1/2-inch to 2-inch Lines: Y-pattern swing-type manufactured in accordance with MSS-SP80, Class 125, bronze ASTM B-62 body with TFE seat disc; similar to "T413-Y (threaded) S413-Y (solder)" by Nibco.

B. 2-1/2-Inch Lines And Larger: Swing-type manufactured in accordance with MSS-SP71, Class 125, flanged ASTM A126 Class B cast iron body with bronze trim, non-asbestos gasket; similar to "F918-B" by Nibco.

C. Provide silent type where indicated and when check valves are installed in vertical lines.

1. 1/2-Inch To 2-Inch Lines: Bronze body, ball-cone check, straight through design, 1/2 PSI opening pressure or other opening pressure if so indicated on drawings, bubble tight shut-off with liquid media, 125 PSIG steam rating; similar to "Apollo 61-100" by Conbraco.

2. 2-1/2-Inch Line And Larger: Globe type, semi-steel body with bronze trim and stainless steel spring, 125 lb. ASA. similar to "Fig. #105-MAP or #107-MAP" by Mueller Steam Specialty.

2.7 MANUAL BALANCING VALVES

A. Provide combination globe-type calibrated flow measuring balance, shutoff, and throttling valve with provision for attaching portable differential pressure meter with each meter connection having positive shutoff access valves equipped with removable insulating cover providing minimum R of 4.5. Rated for 250 PSI at 250 deg. F and provided with calibrated nameplate, 1/4-inch drain/purge port, and drip-tight shut off. Similar to "CBV" by Armstrong, "3D" by B & G, or similar products by Tour & Anderson.

B. Threaded, grooved, or flanged ends as required to fit system piping with bronze, A-metal, or dezincification resistant brass body for pipe sizes 1/2-inch to 2-inches inclusive or cast or ductile iron body with bronze internal parts and Teflon or EPT seals rated for the service fluid and temperature for pipe size 2-1/2-inches and larger.

1. Valves designed to allow for presetting of balance points for proportional system balance prior to system start up.

C. Valve Size: As required to meet the Cv indicated on the Drawings, or if not indicated on Drawings, provide the larger of pipeline size or size required to provide maximum 5 ft. water gauge pressure drop at design flow.

D. Read-Out Ports: Include internal EPT inserts and check valves.

E. Adjustment Knob: Includes minimum of four full turns (1440 degrees) from bubble tight shutoff to full open position and includes pre-set feature indicating degree of valve opening including memory position stop and indicator.

2.8 AUTOMATIC BALANCING VALVES

A. Provide each valve with an identification tag attached by chain, factory marked with the zone identification, valve number and flow rate. Valve to be line size.

B. The GPM for the automatic flow control valves shall be factory set and shall automatically limit the rate of flow to within 5 percent of the specified GPM over at least 95 percent of the control range.

C. For 1/2 inch – 2 inch, the flow cartridge shall be removable from the Y- body housing without the use of special tools to provide access for regulator change-out, inspection and cleaning without breaking the main piping.

D. Pump head requirement: The permanent pressure loss added to the pump head shall not exceed seven feet.

E. Each valve shall have two P/T test plugs.

F. Construction:

1. For 1/2” through 2” pipe sizes: Assembly consisting of a de-zincification resistant (DZR) brass, bronze, or A-metal Y-type body, integral full port SS ball and stem ball valve and ‘O’ ring type union. For all insulated pipe services, provide manufacturer’s pre-formed insulation cover to fit each valve, with extended, insulated, non-condensing handle on ball valves.

2. For 2 1/2” and larger flanged connections: Ductile iron body suitable for mounting wafer style between standard 150# or 300# flanges. Provide long flange bolts and nuts with each valve.

3. Stainless steel internal flow cartridge body and wear surfaces, with machined threads for spring free height adjustment, permanently marked with the GPM and spring range.

4. Factory leak tested at 100 psi. air under water.

G. Flow Verification:

1. Differential pressure measured across the valve shall be measured for flow verification and to determine the amount of system over heading or under pumping.

H. Design Make: IMI Flow Design Inc.

2.9 PUMP DISCHARGE VALVES

A. Provide pump discharge valve for each new pump and as otherwise noted on drawings.

1. For constant speed pump applications, provide pump manufacturer's "triple duty valve" sized to provide maximum 3 feet water gauge pressure drop at the design flow.

2. For variable speed pump applications, provide either pump manufacturer's "triple duty valve" or a combination of a venturi measuring station, non-slam check valve, and isolation valve, all as specified. Size to larger of full line size or as required to provide maximum 3 feet water gauge pressure drop at the design flow.

B. Pump manufacturer's "triple-duty valve":

1. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body of angle or straight pattern.

2. Globe style combination shutoff, calibrated multi-turn flow throttling / measuring, and spring loaded non-slam check valve.

3. Include gage ports with integral check valve, and provision for attaching a portable differential pressure meter, with each meter connection having positive shutoff access valves.

4. Provide with removable insulating cover providing minimum R value of 5.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. "Model 3D Triple Duty Valve" by Bell & Gossett.
2. Armstrong.
3. Paco.
4. Victaulic.

2.10 AIR VENTS

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. For All Pipe Sizes In Accessible Locations Only: Bronze body, quarter turn ball valve with minimum 1/4-inch discharge and inlet connections. Provide collection chamber at inlet and 1/4-inch tube with return bend on outlet, piped to point of collection.

2. For Terminal Units In Accessible Locations: Bronze or brass body and non-ferrous internal parts, 150 PSIG working pressure, 225 deg. F operating temperature. 1/8-inch MNPT inlet connection. Coin or key operated, supply three keys minimum to owner. Similar to "Model 4V" by Bell & Gossett.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. High Capacity Type: Cast iron body with internal working parts of stainless steel, brass, bronze, and EPDM and float-operated sealing valve designed to purge free air from the system and provide positive shut off at pressures to 125 PSIG and temperatures to 250 deg. F. Vent prevents air from entering the system if system pressure drops below atmospheric. Vent readily serviceable by disassembly to access the internal working parts. Similar to "Model "107A" by Bell & Gossett or "720" by Amtrol.

2. Standard Capacity Type: Cast bronze body with internal working parts of stainless steel, brass, bronze and EPDM and float operated sealing valve designed to purge free air from the system and provide positive shut off at pressures to 150 PSIG and temperatures to 230 deg. F. Vent prevents air from entering the system if system pressure drops below atmospheric. Vent readily serviceable by disassembly to access the internal working parts. Similar to "No. 700-C" or "701-C" by Amtrol.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage. Verify dielectric bolt kits are provided for flanged connections between dis-similar materials.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install isolation valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Install isolation valves at each new branch connection serving three or more pieces of terminal equipment, and as additionally shown on drawings.

C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

D. If valves with specified CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

E. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 inch and Smaller: Threaded or solder joint ends.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 inch and larger: Flanged ends.
3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 inch and Larger: Flanged or grooved ends.

3.3 GENERAL DUTY VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Unless otherwise specifically indicated elsewhere, use the following:

B. Hydronic Flow Shutoff Service:

1. 2 inch and smaller: Full Port Ball Valves
2. 2-1/2" and larger: Butterfly Valves.

C. Pressure Gage Shutoff Service: Standard or Full Port Ball valves.

D. Flow Adjustment and Balancing:

1. Provide line size manual adjustment balancing valves for service on branch main lines serving multiple terminal loads, where shown on drawings.

2. Provide line size automatic flow control balancing valves for all individual terminal loads. Size valve flow cartridges based on approved equipment submittal flow rates where different from that scheduled. Include in contract changing cartridges on 10% of automatic flow control valves to some different flow as required during TAB and system commissioning work.

E. Pump Service:

1. Suction: Provide full line size isolation valve at pump inlet before reducers, flex connections, and suction diffuser.

2. Discharge:

a. Constant speed pumps: Provide Pump Discharge Valves by pump manufacturer, full line size of system piping (typically larger than pump discharge size), after flex connections.

b. For VSD driven pumps, the pump discharge valve may consist of a manufacturer's triple duty valve or alternately a combination of a venturi measuring station as specified in Section 23 05 19, a non-slam check valve, and an isolation valve.

c. Install with sufficient length of straight pipe before and after valve as recommended by manufacturer to obtain good and stable measurements.

F. Hydronic System Drain Service: Provide drain valves at all system local or global low points as required for complete system drainage.

1. 2-1/2 inch and larger service: Provide ¾ inch full port ball valves with ¾ inch hose thread end and chained cap.
2. 2 inch and smaller service: Provide ¾ inch full port ball or globe valves, with ¾ inch hose thread end and chained cap.

G. Hydronic System Air Venting:

1. Manual vents: provide standard or full port ball valve, minimum 1/4" NPT; ½" NPT on 4" and larger piping.

2. Provide Standard Capacity Type Automatic Air Vent at accessible points in piping system where air may collect, including all local high points and at the end of each horizontal run before a drop in elevation.

a. If any such point will be inaccessible after construction is complete, provide only Manual Air Vent in lieu of automatic, installed as described below.

3. Equipment Air Vents:

a. Provide High Capacity Automatic Air Vent above each air and air/solids separator.

b. Equipment Above Mains: Connect run outs or risers to upper quadrant or top of mains. Install vent assembly at branch high point, concealed within enclosure if possible, consisting of 1 in. diameter by 6 in. long air collection chamber with 1/4 in. soft copper tube to manual valve. Mount securely near bottom of enclosure, but not fastened to enclosure. For individual units, radiators, fan convectors and units with return grilles: Provide coin air vent valve, operated from discharge grille or access door. Positioning of valve shall not interfere with removal of enclosure.

c. Equipment Below Mains: Connect piping run outs or risers to bottom or lower quadrant of mains. Vent assembly not required in unit. Provide means of purging and draining each unit. Use tees instead of ells at low point of run outs.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. When installing solder-joint end valves, protect valve body from soldering heat using water soaked rags or other heat sink method as required to avoid valve damage. Leaking stems or seats on solder-joint end valves shall be subject to immediate replacement with new valve.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem and handle movement.

E. Install all Automatic Air Vents above manual vent assembly described below, with discharge piped to point of collection - for glycol venting, pipe discharge to glycol feed station as shown, or if not shown to minimum 1 quart clear plastic container, secured and removable for service.

F. Install all Manual Air Vents with air collection chamber above flow piping (minimum line size diameter x 6 inches long), and minimum ¼" tube extended to accessible location, terminating with ball valve located so liquid discharged during venting may easily be collected in minimum 1 quart container.

1. Coin vents may be connected directly to equipment served.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

END OF SECTION 23 05 23

SECTION 23 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC COMPONENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
B. Division 06 section “Roofing Rough Carpentry” for roof mounted support blocking.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes

1. Hangers and supports for (but not limited to) following components:

   a. Piping hangers and supports
   b. Duct hangers and supports
   c. Equipment hangers and supports

2. Roof mounted supports and equipment penetrations including (but not limited to):

   a. Roof curbs.
   b. Combination equipment / pipe penetration curbs
   c. Pipe curb assembly
   d. Equipment support rails
   e. Pipe and duct supports

3. Miscellaneous components and accessories including (but not limited to):

   a. Anchors
   b. Guides
   c. Fasteners
   d. Custom supports
   e. Insulation protection systems

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide corrosion resistant construction as described below for hangers, hanger rods, supports, fittings, hardware, etc, unless otherwise noted or approved. Note that not all products described below are available in corrosion resistance as required for all applications listed – select appropriate corrosion resistant products as required. Multiple conditions may apply, in which case the more corrosion resistant construction is required:

1. General purpose indoor: ASTM B-633 Fe/Zn 25 minimum zinc plated fasteners, ASTM B-653 G90 minimum sheet steel, factory baked enamel paint, or anodized.

2. In contact with copper: Copper plated for size identification and felt lined or plastic coated.

3. In contact with aluminum: Same aluminum alloy as equipment or 300 series stainless steel. 300 series stainless steel fasteners.

4. Outdoors, in crawl spaces, manholes, pits, and below grade: 300 series stainless steel or post-fabrication (after forming, welding, drilling, etc.) ASTM A-153 hot dipped galvanized steel, minimum coating thickness 3 mils.

5. Miscellaneous fabricated custom supports, anchor bases, etc..: painted in accordance with Section 23 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC.

6. Other special conditions: where noted on drawings, provide materials of special temperature, corrosion resistance, or other properties, as required for durable and safe performance.

B. Allowable Working Loads:

1. Use only manufacturer's load rated hangers, supports, and fasteners designed and rated for the intended service.

2. Do not load connectors, hangers, or supports to more than the manufacturers′ recommended working load or the following:

   a. Use a safety factor of 5:1 minimum with respect to manufacturers′ published ultimate shear strength.
   b. Use a safety factor of 10:1 minimum with respect to manufacturers′ published ultimate tension or pull-out strength.

C. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, service loads, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product literature, technical specifications, and other data required to demonstrate compliance with specified requirements for following components:

1. Hangers and supports
2. Roof mounted supports
3. Miscellaneous components

B. Shop Drawings: Submit intended custom support construction for approval.

C. All supports, etc., shall meet the approval of the Architects / Engineers. Submit shop drawings showing fabrication and installation details including calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Equipment supports.
4. Include detailed layout and loading drawings for all above roof piping and equipment.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with applicable requirements of following standards for all hangers and supports:

1. MSS-SP-58 Pipe Hangers and Supports – Materials, Design, and Manufacture.
2. MSS-SP-69 Pipe Hangers and Supports – Selection and Application.
3. ANSI / ASME Code for Pressure Piping B 31.1
4. ASTM standards for corrosion resistant Zinc coatings.
5. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
6. UL 203 Standard for Pipe Hanger Equipment and Fire Protection Service
7. Metal Framing Association MFMA-2
8. ANSI/ NFoPA NDS - National Design Specification for Wood Construction
9. SMACNA – Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association, Inc.

B. All welding shall be approved procedures performed by approved welders. Refer to Division 05 Section for "STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING", and Section 23 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC, for details on welder's qualification requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on product types as defined in MSS SP-58 and 69 where applicable, and, where not applicable, catalog numbers shown have been based on products by the listed manufacturers.

2.2 PIPING ATTACHMENTS

A. Individually Suspended Horizontal Rigid Piping or Tube Attachments:

1. Band type:

a. 1-1/4 inch diameter pipe size and less only.
b. Formed steel loop overlapped at top with rod sized hole or insert nut. With or without side insert closure.
c. MSS SP-58 type 5, 6, or 10.

2. Clevis type:

    a. Any size pipe or tubing.
    b. Formed steel bands top and bottom connected by sheer bolt.
    c. MSS SP-58 type 1.

3. Roller type:

    a. Any size pipe or tubing.

    b. Radiused or angled roller and steel axle; yoke for single hanger rod or end sockets for double rod applications. Designed to accommodate longitudinal movement through roller action.

    c. MSS SP-58 type 41 and 43.

4. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. Grinnell Corporation; Pipe Support Division, Cranston, Rhode Island, or equal.

B. Supported from below Horizontal Rigid Piping or Tube Attachments:

1. Split Ring type:

    a. 1-1/4 inch diameter pipe size and less only.

    b. Cast malleable iron split ring with steel pivot and bolt, cast boss on one side threaded for standard rod or pipe attachment. Designed to accommodate minimal longitudinal movement only.

    c. MSS SP-58 type 12.

2. Roller type:

    a. Any size pipe or tubing.

    b. Radiused or angled roller and steel axle with end sockets for double rod applications. Provide with U-bolt upper restraint. Designed to accommodate longitudinal movement through roller action.

    c. Roller MSS SP-58 type 41 and U-bolt MSS SP-58 type 24.

3. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. Grinnell Corporation; Pipe Support Division, Cranston, Rhode Island, or equal.

C. Group Supported or Suspended (Trapeze) Horizontal Rigid Piping or Tube Attachments (Common Support Beam):

1. Support frame or trapeze beam of load rated brackets or channel strut product.

2. U-Bolt type:

   a. Any size pipe or tubing.

   b. Insulation support system rests directly on beam or shim, with U-bolt or split strut clamp upper restraint. Designed to accommodate minimal longitudinal movement only.

   c. U-bolt MSS SP-58 type 24, Strut clamp similar to B-Line "B-2000" series.

3. Radius Roller type:

   a. Any size pipe or tubing.

   b. Radiused roller and steel axle with end sockets for double rod applications. Provide with U-bolt upper restraint. Designed to accommodate longitudinal movement through roller action.

   c. Roller MSS SP-58 type 41 and U-bolt MSS SP-58 type 24.

4. Angled Roller type:

   a. 6 inch diameter pipe size and less only.

   b. Angled rollers with steel axles and formed steel angle clips designed for channel strut mounting. Provide with U-bolt upper restraint. Designed to accommodate longitudinal movement through roller action.

   c. Roller similar to B-Line "B218" or "B219" and Strut clamp similar to B-Line "B-2000".

5. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

   a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
   b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
   c. Grinnell Corporation; Pipe Support Division, Cranston, Rhode Island, or equal.

D. Individual Vertical Rigid Piping and Tube Attachments:

1. Split Ring type:

   a. 1-1/4 inch diameter pipe size and less only.

b. Cast malleable iron split ring with steel pivot and bolt, cast boss on one side threaded for standard rod or pipe attachment. Designed to accommodate minimal longitudinal movement only.

c. MSS SP-58 type 12.

2. Riser clamp type:

a. 1-1/2 inch diameter pipe size and larger.

b. Twin formed steel bands with formed radius to fit pipe and extension wings drilled for clamping bolts, space between extension wings designed to accept various connections to building structure.

c. MSS SP-58 type 8.

3. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
   a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
   b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
   c. Grinnell Corporation; Pipe Support Division, Cranston, Rhode Island, or equal.

E. Flexible Pipe, Tube, or Hose:

1. Lengths three feet and under to be supported by adjacent piping system.

2. Similar to attachments for rigid piping systems described above, with "V" notch bottom in lieu of radius, and associated continuous rigid trough angle of same material spanning between attachments.

F. Piping Insulation Protection Systems:

1. Pipe Insulation Shields:

a. One Piece:

1) Formed steel, minimum 18 gauge thickness, longer of 2 times diameter or 12-inch long minimum, and 180 degree circumference, sized for insulation thickness.

2) MSS SP-58/69 type 40.

b. Two Piece Sliding:

1) Manufactured two piece sliding shield system designed to accommodate thermal movement.

2) MSS SP-58/69 type 40 inner shield similar to one piece shield above adhered to pipe insulation, with second outer shield of formed steel, minimum 18 gauge thickness, one times diameter length 6-inch long minimum, and 180 degree circumference, sized to fit outside inner shield, with formed ribs to keep shield centered on support clevis or trapeze.

3) Inner and outer shields separated by layer of PTFE (Teflon), minimizing friction between shields and allowing minimum four inches controlled pipe movement relative to hanger without insulation damage or outer shield moving past the end of the inner shield.

2. Type “A” Insulation Protection System:

   a. 1” piping and smaller only.
   b. Provide one piece or two piece sliding shield as required by distance from piping anchors.

3. Type “B” Insulation Protection System:

   a. 1¼” through 8” heating piping only.

   b. Provide one piece or two piece sliding shield as required by distance from piping anchors.

   c. Pipe Support Insulation: High density (20 pcf). molded fiberglass blocks consisting of fiberglass wool and urea-phenolic resin cured binder. Provide number and size of support blocks as required to limit deflection to 1% and avoid long-term damage to vapor barrier, and as required for pipe size and insulation thickness, in accordance with manufacturer’s written guidelines and project details. Seal cut in piping insulation vapor barrier using manufacturer’s recommended matching tape. Similar to AHAMFAB H-Block" by ICA

4. Type “C” Insulation Protection System:

   a. Acceptable for any size heating or cooling piping.

   b. Manufacturer’s assembly consisting of insulation shield, high compressive strength insulation, and vapor barrier covering. May include hanger also.

   c. Hanger: As required above, secured to shield and support insulation.

   d. Insulation Shield: Provide one piece or two piece sliding shield as required by distance from piping anchors.

   e. High Compressive Strength Insulation: 180 or 360-degree circumference insulation insert formed of water resistance treated hydrous calcium silicate (untreated cal-sil not acceptable) or cellular glass insulation, same thickness as adjacent insulation.

   f. Vapor Barrier Covering: White kraft outer surface bonded to aluminum foil, sandwiching reinforcing fiberglass skrim yarn, permanently treated for fire and smoke safety and to prevent corrosion of the foil, with a vapor transmission perm rating of 0.02 or less. Seal to piping insulation vapor barrier using manufacturer’s recommended matching tape.

   g. Similar to Models “123”, “124", “1031”, and “4031” by ERICO/Michigan Hanger.

5. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. ICA Inc.; Lehighton, Pennsylvania, or equal.
    d. Buckaroos, Inc.

G. Pipe Alignment Guides:

1. Steel Spider Clamp Type.

    a. 2-1/2 inch diameter pipe size and larger.

    b. Twin steel bands with formed radius to fit pipe, drilled for clamping bolts, welded extension “spider” wings sized to slide axially in matching welded and bolted outer housing ring with structural attachment legs.

    c. Similar to “No. 650" and “No.651" by ERICO/Michigan Hanger

2. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. Metraflex; Chicago, Illinois, or equal.

H. Pipe Anchors:

1. Anchor Chair Type.

    a. Steel Pipe 1/2 inch and larger.
    b. Structural steel channel with V-notched flanges and U-bolt clamping device.
    c. Similar to Figures “B3147A" and “B3147B" by B-Line Systems, Inc.

2. Anchor Clamp Type.

    a. Steel Pipe 1/2 inch and larger.
    b. Formed steel with radius to fit pipe, holes for clamping bolts, welded gusset reinforced as required, complete with matching base plate.
    c. Similar to Figures “B3256" with “B3257" by B-Line Systems, Inc.

3. Riser clamp type.

    a. Steel pipe and copper tube size 1-1/2 inch and larger.

    b. Twin formed steel bands with formed radius to fit pipe and extension wings drilled for clamping bolts, space between extension wings designed to accept various connections to building structure.

    c. MSS SP-58 type 8.

4. Solder type.

    a. For copper tube 1-1/4 inch and under.
    b. Wrot copper formed band with radius to fit tube, drilled for clamping bolts, complete with matching base plate.
    c. Similar to “copper anchors” by Metraflex

5. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. Metraflex; Chicago, Illinois, or equal.

2.3 DUCT ATTACHMENTS

A. Per SMACNA Duct Manual standards for size, height, and location of ductwork, and as noted below.

1. Materials and corrosion resistance as listed above.

2. SMACNA load tables allow for no external loads on duct: provide for 200 lb external load on all duct hangers and supports. Increase hanger and support sizes from SMACNA tables accordingly:

    a. Minimum band size 20ga. x 1 inch.
    b. Duct 48” wide and larger; provide trapeze style support of metal channel framing or angle iron, suspended from threaded rods.

3. Hanger bands to extend down sides and turn under bottom 1 inch minimum for all duct sizes. Minimum (2) #10 sheet metal screws per hanger (one each on side and bottom), (2) screws minimum on sides for duct over 12 inches tall, 12 inches on center max.

4. Round exposed duct: hang from twin half round bands and rods, or as otherwise detailed.

2.4 BUILDING ATTACHMENTS

A. Structural Steel Connectors:

1. C-Clamp style:

    a. FM approved, U.L. listed, steel or malleable iron C-clamp with hardened set screw and lock nut, tapped for rod size, typically eccentrically loads structure.
    b. Hanger rod bypasses structure: MSS SP-58 type 19.
    c. Hanger rod in line with set screw: MSS SP-58 type 23.

2. Center Loading Beam and Channel Clamp Style:

    a. Forged or formed steel or malleable iron construction, beam clamps with connection for concentrically loading structure, of types as required by loading and configuration.

    b. MSS SP-58 types 21, 27, 28, 29, and 30.

3. Pivoting or Adjustable Connection Style:

    a. Structural welding lug with forged steel clevis, side beam bracket, or other appropriate pivoting beam clamps as required for sloped steel.
    b. Use for sloped steel, where thermal movement requires pivot, where seismic controls requires non-moment building connection, and elsewhere as required.
    c. MSS SP-58 types, 21 or 22 with 16 or 17, 34, 57 with 14, etc...

4. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. Grinnell Corporation; Pipe Support Division, Cranston, Rhode Island, or equal.

B. Existing Concrete Connectors

1. Self-energizing tapered expansion bolt/sleeve: GSA specification FF-S-325, Group II, Type 3, Class 3, UL Listed, FM approved, complete with split expansion sleeve, washer, and hex head nut; similar to “Rawl Lok/Bolt” by Rawlplug.

2. Dual-Interlocking Expansion Wedge Stud: GSA specification FF-S-325, Group II, Type 4, Class 1, UL Listed, FM approved, complete with split expansion sleeve, washer, and hex head nut; similar to “Rawl-Stud” by Rawlplug.

3. Dual-Interlocking Expansion Wedge Threaded Rod Anchors: UL Listed, FM approved, complete with split expansion sleeve; similar to “Rod Hanger Wedge Anchor” by Rawlplug.

4. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. Hilti, Inc.; Tulsa, Oklahoma, or equal
    b. Ramset/Red Head; Michigan City, Indiana, or equal
    c. Rawlplug Co. Inc.; New Rochelle, New York, or equal.

C. Flanged Connectors:

1. Applicable for attachment to building steel, concrete, or wood.

2. Malleable iron flange base, with central threaded hole for connection to threaded rod and symmetrical side hole for securing to structure with appropriate fasteners, typically used with split rings, similar to “Model No. 365M" by ERICO/Michigan Hanger.

3. Pipe Stanchion Flanged Support Plate and Floor Stand: ASTM A-536 ductile iron support plate with 1-inch rolled thread adjustment stud and nut, or 1/4-inch carbon steel base plate welded to schedule 80 threaded steel pipe, designed for use with Stanchion Saddle style supports described above; similar to "PS1236 Redi-Jack Pipe Support" by Red Hed.

4. Provide products by one of the following manufacturers:

    a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
    b. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; Solon, Ohio, or equal
    c. Red Hed; Lincoln, Rhode Island. or equal.

2.5 ROOF MOUNTED SUPPORTS

A. Roof Curbs: Double shell, galvanized steel, welded and painted, 1-1/2 inch minimum thickness, with pressure treated wood blocking, braced and fully insulated with rigid fiberglass insulation (3 PCF). Includes gasket at top of curb for airtight seal between curb and ventilator or fan. Provide raised cant, recessed, or flanged curb bottom to suit roof construction and insulation.

1. Steel Thickness: 20 gauge up to 36 inches, 18 gauge 38 to 72 inches, and 16 gauge over 72 inches. Provided with reinforcing and heavier gauge as required to adequately support weight load on curb; coordinate exact size with specified equipment.

2. Minimum height of curbs above finished roof:

    a. 12 inches for curbs supporting exhaust and relief air equipment.
    b. 24 inches for curbs supporting outside air intakes.
    c. For sloped roof curbs, curb of height sufficient to maintain bottom edge of supported equipment at above specified height.

3. Provide with pressure treated blocking, through bolted to structure with stainless steel fasteners, as required bringing base of curb into proper plane for installation. Blocking minimum width to be no less than blocking height. Refer to Division 1 section "Roof Rough Carpentry" for additional details.

4. Provide products by one of the following:

    a. Pate or equal
    b. Con-Fab or equal
    c. Thy-Curb or equal

B. Pipe Curb Assembly: Similar to Roof Curb specified above, equipped with fully welded curb cap top cover of heavy gauge aluminum (12ga), galvalume (16ga), or stainless steel (16ga) construction with integral curb counter flashing, raised flashing collars with replaceable neoprene pipe boot counter flashing secured with stainless steel clamps, size and number of pipe and conduit openings as required. Similar to Pate PCA curb with PCC-C custom curb cap package.

1. Provide products by one of the following:

    a. Pate or equal

b. Con-Fab or equal
c. Thy-Curb or equal

C. Combination Equipment / Pipe Penetration Curbs: Similar to Roof Curb combined with Pipe Curb Assembly, both as specified above, integrated with equipment platform. Includes solid pressure treated plywood equipment platform top with closed cell foam gaskets between platform and curb and [3-inch] [80mm] rigid fiberglass insulation below platform

1. Includes heavy gauge counter flashing, factory sealed to pipe penetration assembly with penetrations adequate for both mechanical and electrical system penetrations. Similar to "SCEB-5" by Pate.

2. Plywood deck minimum 1.5” thick. With steel rail reinforcing under as required for proper equipment securement. Secure deck to curb and stiffeners, with equipment secured through deck to stiffeners via captive SS nuts and bolts with exposed heads.

3. Provide products by one of the following:

a. Pate or equal
b. Con-Fab or equal
c. Thy-Curb or equal

D. Equipment Support Rails: Double shell galvanized steel, 14 gauge minimum, fully welded with solid bottom and ends. 2 inch x 8 inch treated wood top blocking, minimum 12 inches high above finished roof, minimum 2 inch turned out flange at bottom, C-channel top cap counter-flashing over blocking. Length to be the longer of 12 inches longer than equipment served or extended past equipment to next building structural support member, factory certified for weight of intended equipment at spacing of structure below, with reinforcement and heavier gauge as required. Units longer than eight feet may be field spliced with bolts and splice plates. Provide galvanizing paint at welds and field splices. Include top cap and integral base with raised cant where required. Provide raised cant, recessed cant, or flanged curb bottom to suit roof construction and insulation.

1. Similar to custom "ES-5A" by Pate.

2. Provide products by one of the following:

a. Pate or equal
b. Con-Fab or equal
c. Thy-Curb or equal

E. Non roofing penetration pipe supports:

1. Install per manufacturers recommendations, and as required to maintain roofing warranty. In general, assume installation on loose laid pad of PVC or EPDM reinforcement compatible with roofing, at least one half inch thick and 4 inches larger than support stand base. Provide base sizes load rated for distributing the supported weight at less than two pounds per square inch. Provide detailed piping support layout drawings and support size / weight / roof loading calculations in submittal for all non roofing penetration pipe supports.

2. 2½ inch to 6-inch nominal pipe:

a. Loose laid pipe support stand with structural UV stabilized plastic (polypropylene, polycarbonate, FRP) or stainless steel deck base and adjustment rod support, load rated roller saddle sized for pipe supported, and low friction corrosion resistant sleeve bearing inserts running on a stainless steel shaft. Provide with radiused edges to protect roofing, drainage holes, and bolt down holes as required by seismic restraint system.

b. Stainless steel threaded rod height adjustment roller supports, adjustable as required to achieve pipe slope and roof clearance required.

c. Where required height is larger than supported from below rollers allow, provide load rated channel frame and hanger system similar to PHP PSE-Custom.

d. Load rated as required for pipe supported.

e. Similar to “Pillow Block Pipestand” Models “X-RAHSS” by Miro Industries, PP10-xx by PHP.

3. Provide products by one of the following:

a. B-Line Systems, Inc., Highland Illinois, or equal
b. RTS by Eberl Iron Works, Buffalo, NY, or equal
c. Miro Industries, Inc., Murray, Utah, or equal
d. Portable Pipe Hangers (PHP) Systems and Design, Houston, Texas, or equal

F. Roofing Penetration Pipe and Duct Supports: Same construction as “Equipment Support Rails” specified above, minimum 12 inches high. Include full-length steel bracket, pipe rolls, adjustable upright supports, and accessories as required to secure piping or duct to support. Similar to “RAS” with "PRS-1 or 5" by Pate.

1. Provide products by one of the following:

a. Pate or equal
b. Con-Fab or equal
c. Thy-Curb or equal

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Provide custom designed hangers and supports to properly and resiliently support all contract equipment as required by special circumstances encountered. Suspend from above or support from below as shown on drawings and as required.

B. Use structural carbon steel plate and shapes, secured by welding or bolts as required.

C. Use load rated fasteners full size of the component attachment points unless specifically requested and approved otherwise.

D. Provide lateral bracing as required minimizing potential for sway.

E. Fabricate as required to transmit loads and reaction forces to structure, in accordance with applicable details and layouts shown on Drawings, and as approved by Architect. Submit load calculations and fabrication details for approval for all such supports including verified coordinated dimensions, weights, etc., of mechanical component, support component, and building structure proposed.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS COMPONENTS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Piping Anchor and Guide Bases:

1. Provide custom designed piping anchor and guide bases as required to properly transmit the piping reaction forces to the building structure.

2. Triangulate fabrication to transmit reaction forces to deck edge of structure or other approved anchorage. Submit fabrication details for approval for all such supports including verified coordinated dimensions of support components and building structure proposed for attachment.

3. Use structural steel plate and shapes of pipe wall thickness minimum, with pipe diameter leg dimension minimum, secured by welding or multiple bolts of the pipe's hanger rod size minimum. Increase dimensions as required due to excessive unsupported length (greater than 15 pipe diameters) or moment bearing (bending) design.

4. Secure to at least two structural members, using at least three points of attachment designed to transmit both longitudinal and lateral piping reaction forces.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

C. Threaded Rods, Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Metals, Hardware, and Miscellaneous Assembly Components:

1. Provide manufacturer's load rated fasteners with size, strength and corrosion resistance as required for the application.

2. Rods, bolts, machine screws: rolled forged ANSI B1 Class 2A or better thread, bolts and screws with heads as required by the application.

3. Nuts: heavy pattern where space permits and where subject to repeated operation, ANSI B1 Class 2B or better thread.

4. Washers: US pattern where space permits, SAE pattern otherwise, with toothed or split lock washer when attached to equipment with moving or vibrating parts.

5. Sheet metal screws: self drilling, thread forming, hardened steel (hardened SS as required), load rated screws with hex heads designed for power driving

6. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel, black and galvanized, and/or series 300 Stainless Steel plates, bars, angles, channels, and other shapes in thickness and size as required for load.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which hangers and supports are to be installed and notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.

1. When Contractor confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to Architect written confirmation. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to Contractor.

2. Identify any discrepancies between specifications and field conditions or changes required due to specific equipment selection, prior to installation. Corrective work required by discrepancies after installation at Contractor's expense.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Provide complete hanger and support systems for piping and ductwork systems and equipment, including all necessary attachments, fasteners, threaded rods, bolts, miscellaneous hardware, and associated work as required.

B. Provide specified products, installed in accordance with applicable sections of this specification, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended installation instructions, and as detailed on the Drawings.

C. Support pipe, duct, and equipment from the building structure.

1. Provide approved miscellaneous support structure as required to attach hangers and supports to building structure in conformance with all applicable standards and related specification sections.

2. Do not use chain, perforated hanger strapping or band, wire hangers, or kinked, bent, or otherwise damaged hangers and supports.

3. Do not support one pipe from another, one duct from another, pipe from duct or equipment, or any similar combination.

4. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports as required to prevent swaying.

5. Provide special hangers and supports as shown on the drawings, as required to suit existing conditions, and as required for proper installation of equipment.

D. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

3.3 PIPE HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89 and as specified below. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required properly supporting piping from the building structure.

B. Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.

2. Field fabricate from manufactured slotted channel system or structural shapes selected for loads being supported.

C. Size piping attachments for insulated piping to fit outside insulation. Size piping attachments for un-insulated piping to fit outside diameter of pipe.

D. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping. Provide for slope of trapeze supported piping systems with adjustable individual piping attachments.

E. Accommodate thermal movement of piping systems.

1. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

2. Provide rods of sufficient length for ample swing. Hang rods from high points to allow maximum swing.

3. Hang piping so that rods are vertical at the design temperature.

4. Where length of rod and thermal expansion combine to cause more than 4 degrees angular movement of rod (or 1 inch lateral movement in a 12 inch rod), provide suitable linkage to permit swing and limit rods to tensile loading only, or, provide pipe roll.

5. Where length of rod and thermal expansion would combine to cause more than 10 degrees angular movement of rod (or 2 inch lateral movement in a 12 inch rod), provide pipe roll.

6. More thermal movement is expected as the straight line distance from piping anchor points increases. Unless unusually long hanging rod length allows swing as indicated above, provide pipe roll hangers and supports at or above the following distances from piping anchor points indicated on drawing or installed in field. Deviations from below values subject to pre-approval:

Piping Service		Distance from Anchorage
a.	Individual Copper Cooling Service	100 ft.
b.	Individual Copper Heating Service.	35 ft.
c.	Trapeze Copper Cooling Service	60 ft.
d.	Trapeze Copper Heating Service.	20 ft
e.	Trapeze Copper with both Heating and Cooling Service	10 ft
f.	Individual Steel Cooling Service	140 ft.
g.	Individual Steel Heating Service.	60 ft.
h.	Trapeze Steel Cooling Service	80 ft.
i.	Trapeze Steel Heating Service.	50 ft
j.	Trapeze Steel with both Heating and Cooling Service	20 ft.

F. Pipe Hangers and Supports Spacing (Maximum):

1. Provide hanger or support as close as possible to and within 24 inches of any elbow.

2. Provide hanger or support on branch pipe within 24 inches of main at takeoff / tee.

3. All Horizontal / Sloped Heating and Cooling Piping Systems:

Piping Material		Maximum spacing of hangers
a.	Copper 1 in. and 1-¼ in.	6 ft.
b.	Copper 1½ in. and larger	8 ft.
c.	Steel 1¼ in. and smaller.	7 ft
d.	Steel 1½ in.	9 ft.
e.	Steel 2 in. and larger	10 ft.
f.	Annealed copper	3 ft.
g.	Flexible piping or hose	Continuous

4. Vertical Piping:

a.	Steel and Copper 1¼ in and smaller	Two per floor level.
b.	Steel and Copper 1½ in and larger	One per floor level.

G. Insulated Piping

1. Center insulation shields at piping attachments and secure shield from lateral movements by wrapping PVC tape around circumference of piping insulation and shield at both ends of shield.

2. At all piping attachments, provide piping insulation protection system of strength and configuration required to guarantee integrity of pipe insulation and associated vapor barrier. Refer also to SECTION 23 07 00 INSULATION.

3.4 BUILDING ATTACHEMENTS INSTALLATION

A. Threaded Rod for Hangers:

1. Double nut each end of each rod. Threaded clamp, turnbuckle, etc. counts as one nut.

2. Rod size for individual pipe hangers and two rod / two pipe or duct trapeze style supports:

Rod size:	for Pipe size:	for Duct size:
3/8”	2” and smaller.	48” wide to 72”
1/2”	2-1/2" and 3".	Over 72” wide
5/8”	4" and 5".	
3/4”	6".	

3. For multiple pipe or duct trapeze style supports with two rods for more than two pipes or two or more ducts, size rods according to manufacturers recommended safe working loads taking into account total hung weight, 200 pound live load, as well as capacity of structure; each rod not smaller than size shown above for largest pipe or the sum of the duct width in the trapeze. Submit details of all such supports and connectors for approval before construction, including schedule of proposed sizes and capacities.

B. Fastener Systems: Provide screws, bolts, approved anchors, etc., to secure piping, duct, equipment, supports, and miscellaneous components and accessories to structure. Nailing not permitted.

1. Install all fastener systems and anchorage in strict accordance with fastener manufacturer’s instructions and as otherwise indicated below.

2. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 3” and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

3. Minimize eccentric loading of structure as follows:

   a. For paired point loads eccentrically suspended (C-clamp attached supply and return pipes, etc), suspend from opposite edges of structural member.

   b. For point loads over 400 pounds, use center loading beam clamps or other structurally concentric building attachment, and confirm proposed configuration with Engineer by submittal.

4. For connection to existing concrete:

   a. Connect only to sound concrete free of evidence of deterioration.

   b. Do not install connections or apply loads to recently cast curing concrete until written approval is received from contractor responsible for concrete strength. Use compressive strength certified by ASTM approved test results.

   c. For older existing concrete and in the absence of ASTM approved tests certifying otherwise, assume a concrete compressive strength of $f'c$ = 3000 psi.

d. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Do not use powder-actuated fasteners in precast concrete or in pull-out tension.

5. For connection to wooden structures: Apply NDS criteria to all structural wood connections. Unless grade stamped better, use #2 SPF / white wood strengths for fastener loading calculations.

3.5 DUCT HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Install per SMACNA duct manual and as modified by the requirements of this section.
B. Provide support spacing per building structural system but not greater than 8 feet. Provide extra support structure as required.

3.6 ROOFTOP SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Rooftop Supports for Piping, Duct, and Service Access:

1. Non-roofing penetration supports:

a. Install per manufacturers recommendations, and as required to maintain roofing warranty. In general, assume that cleaning area of roofing at each support is required with installation on loose laid pad of pvc or epdm reinforcement compatible with roofing, at least one half inch thick and minimum 4 inches larger than support stand base.

b. Attach supports to roof as required for seismic, wind, and thermal movement control with compatible rooftop fasteners through holes drilled in bottom of pipe stand pitch pan at time of installation. Fill pitch pan with asphalt material or cement as directed to seal areas around fasteners watertight.

c. Center supports beneath duct or pipe so cradle allows pipe to be squarely over and through cradle pipestand. Align platform supports adjacent to equipment requiring service access as required provided optimized access.

d. Adjust to desired height insuring level platforms, level horizontal bars, proper longitudinal pitch for pipe and duct, and even load distribution among all supports.

e. Set equipment in support without dropping or causing undue impact. Assemble platform grating and secure to superstructure.

f. Assemble duct and piping restraints and handrails, and make final adjustments to alignment and level.

2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe and Duct Supports: Assemble components and mount on permanent, stationary roof equipment support rails or curb. Equipment Support Rails

B. Roof Curbs, Pipe Curbs, and Equipment Support Rails:

1. Contractor is responsible for furnishing all Roof Curbs, Pipe Curbs, and Equipment Support Rails for their equipment complete. Coordinate locations and sizes with roofing subcontractor. Use their services to cut roof openings, provide structural support and installation of Roof Curbs, Pipe Curbs, and Equipment Support Rails, and to patch roofing cuts complete.

2. Provide larger of curb height scheduled on Drawings or as recommended by equipment manufacturer, but not less than 12 in. above finished roof. Refer to required installation details and provide additional curb height where finished roof surface is above curb mounting flange.

3. Furnish all roof curbs required for all rooftop-mounted equipment in Contract.

   a. Provide structural support for roof deck around all roof curbs and roof deck penetrations 12 inch x 12 inch and larger, unless specifically indicated otherwise elsewhere on the Contract Documents. Refer to drawings for additional support details around roof openings.

   b. Verify exact size and location and set and secure unit to roof.

   c. Coordinate with roofing sub-contractor to set and secure curb or support level as required by manufacturer of equipment served and as required by the installation details.

   d. Coordinate roof openings in ample time so as to avoid delay in construction schedule.

   e. Coordinate in curb access and rooftop equipment sound transmission mitigation:

      1) Coordinate special circumstances requiring exceptions to above with Architect and equipment manufacturers.

   f. Set all roof mounted equipment on associated roof curb, pipe curb and equipment curb and secure per manufacturer's recommendations.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust all hangers and supports after installation of piping and associated equipment to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve proper pitch for the applicable piping system.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods as required - avoid hazardous protrusion.

3.8 PAINTING AND TOUCHUP

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29

SECTION 23 05 43 – MECHANICAL VIBRATION AND MOVEMENT CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes mechanical movement controls for all mechanical equipment and components, piping, and duct work provided or modified as a part of this Project and as noted on the drawings, whether movement is from sound, vibration, thermal, or other sources including (but not limited to):

1. Vibration isolation hangers and mounts for equipment, piping, and ductwork.
2. Flexible piping and flexible piping connections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. IBC: International Building Code.
B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide mechanical sound, vibration, and movement control for all mechanical equipment, piping, duct work, and other components provided or modified as a part of this Project, and as shown on the Drawings. Mount on or suspend from vibration isolators to reduce transmission of vibration and mechanically transmitted sound to building structure. Select vibration isolators in accordance with weight distribution to produce reasonably uniform deflections.

1. Correct any variance or non-compliance with specified requirements in manner directed by Architect.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data for the following:

a. Catalog cuts and data sheets on vibration isolators, isolation bases. Indicate rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each device. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

b. Schedule of flexibly mounted equipment, referencing drawings by number. Include number, type, and loading of all isolation components.

2. Shop Drawings

a. Submit details of following items

1) Equipment bases including dimensions, structural member sizes and support point locations. Equipment bases shall include all curbs for rooftop air handling units.

2) Isolation hangers and systems for ceiling hung equipment, piping and ductwork.

3) Mountings for floor supported equipment, piping and ductwork.

4) Complete flexible connector details.

b. Indicate deflections and model numbers on all hanger, mounting or pad drawings including any other specified requirements.

c. Provide in tabular form spring diameters, rated loads and deflections, heights at rated load and closed height for all springs shown in submittals.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Product Certificates:

a. Contractor Statement of Responsibility: Refer to Division 01 Section, “Quality Requirements”.

2. Welding certificates.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Field quality-control test reports.

2. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of Section 01 73 00, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "General Construction Instructions" manual described in that section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of vibration isolation and movement control devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate size and location of concrete housekeeping pads and vibration isolation bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into base. Refer to applicable technical sections in Division 03 for concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements**.**

C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

D. Coordinate design of restraints and vibration isolation design with expansion compensation systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. Kinetics Noise Control.
3. Mason Industries.

B. Factory Finishes: Provide manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.

1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanized metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation devices to indicate capacity range.

C. Where neoprene is referred to and used in vibration isolation components, it shall be bridge-bearing grade premium neoprene of the durometer hardness grade and size specifically recommended by the design make manufacturer for both maximum vibration isolation and load rated for the specific application.

D. Isolation Mountings

1. Neoprene Mountings: Provide minimum static deflection of 0.35-inch with all metal surfaces neoprene-covered and having friction pads both top and bottom.

a. Bolt holes provided on base, isolated from tapped bolt hole with cap screw on top.
b. Steel frame bases used above mountings to compensate for overhang.
c. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type ND or Rails Type DNR.

2. Restrained Neoprene Mountings: OSHPD pre-approved vibration isolation mounts with captive opposed neoprene inserts, minimum static deflection of 0.2-inch.

    a. Restraint rated at 2G minimum in all directions.
    b. Plated steel frame with base mounting holes, isolated from tapped bolt hole with cap screw on top.
    c. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type BR.

3. Spring Isolators: Freestanding and laterally stable without housing and complete with molded neoprene cup or 1/4-inch neoprene acoustical friction pad between base plate and support.

    a. All mountings with leveling bolts rigidly bolted to equipment.
    b. Installed heights and operating heights equal.
    c. Ratio of spring diameter divided by compressed spring height no less than 0.8.
    d. Springs have minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50 percent of rated deflection.
    e. Include spring diameters, deflection, compressed spring height and solid spring height in Submittals specified in Part 1 above.
    f. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type SLF.

E. Hangers

1. Neoprene Hangers: Rigid steel frames containing neoprene element.

    a. Minimum 1-1/4-inch thick neoprene element on bottom with projecting bushing preventing steel-to-steel contact.
    b. Minimum static deflection of 0.20-inch.
    c. Boxes not articulated, clearance hole in neoprene element to allow non-moment bearing connection at structural support.
    d. Configured for threaded rod, eye bolt, or strap connections as required.
    e. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type HD.

2. Type A Hangers: Rigid steel frames containing minimum 1-1/4-inch thick neoprene elements at top and steel spring with general characteristics as specified for Spring Isolator above seated in steel washer reinforced neoprene cup on bottom.

    a. Neoprene element and cup have neoprene bushings projecting through steel box.

    b. Boxes not articulated as clevis hangers nor neoprene element stacked on top of spring in order to maintain stability.

    c. Spring diameters and hanger box lower hole sizes large enough to permit hanger rod to swing through 30-degree arc from side-to-side before contacting cup bushing and short-circuiting spring.

    d. Include hanger drawing showing 30-degree capability.

    e. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type 30N.

3. Type B Hangers: Similar to Type A Hangers specified above with following modifications.

    a. Pre-compressed and locked at rated deflection by means of resilient up-stop to keep piping or equipment at fixed elevation during installation.
    b. Designed with release mechanism to free spring after installation is complete and hanger subjected to full load.
    c. Deflection clearly indicated by means of scale.
    d. Include drawing of hanger showing 30-degree capability in Submittals required in Part 1 above.
    e. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type PC30N.

4. Vibration Hangers: Similar to Type A Hangers specified above with following modifications.

    a. Provided with weldless eyebolts top and bottom to facilitate attachment to flat duct straps.
    b. Basis-of-Design Product: Mason Industries, Inc.; Type W30N.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and movement control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Notify affected Prime Contractors and Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.

1. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

2. Identify any discrepancies between specifications and field conditions or changes required due to specific equipment selection, prior to installation. Corrective work required by discrepancies after installation at Contractor's expense.

B. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 VIBRATION, SOUND, AND THERMAL MOVEMENT CONTROL INSTALLATIONS

A. Install all vibration isolators in strict accordance with manufacturers written instructions and all submittal data. Coordinate installation to avoid rigid contact with building.

1. Install without any change of position of equipment, piping or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

2. Do not make rigid connections between equipment and building structure that degrade noise and vibration control system specified.

3. Do not install any equipment, piping, duct, or conduit with rigid connections to building or other support structure unless no isolation is specifically called for. "Building" includes, but is not limited to, roof deck, floor/ceiling/roof slabs, beams, joists, columns, studs and walls.

4. Identify any conflicts which will result in rigid contact with equipment or piping due to inadequate space or other unforeseen conditions to Architect / Engineer prior to installation. Corrective work required by conflicts after installation at Contractor's expense.

5. Correct, at no additional cost, all installations deemed defective in workmanship and materials at Contractor's expense.

3.3 PIPED EQUIPMENT INSTALLATIONS

A. Chiller:

1. Isolate equipment from structure using vibration isolation system as recommended and provided by the manufacturer.

B. Hydronic Equipment

1. Vibration Isolation of Hydronic Equipment:

a. Isolate all upper floor, suspended, and roof mounted hydronic equipment with vibration producing parts from structure using vibration isolation system specifically designed for the installation and having deflection tuned to the mass and frequency of the rotating or vibrating machinery so as to minimize the propagation of the vibrations.

b. Where piping connects to mechanical equipment with vibration producing parts, including air-handling equipment with hydronic or refrigerant based heat exchange coils, install elastomeric spherical or mechanical coupling flexible connection joints.

1) Where elastomeric based flexible connector joint is not suitable for service (example: refrigerant service), provide flexible stainless steel hose. Install hoses:

a) On equipment side of shut-off valves.
b) Parallel to rotating equipment shafts, wherever possible.
c) Perpendicular to anticipated thermal movement.
d) Where movement in two axes is anticipated, install hose of sufficient length to form elbow or install two hoses with elbow fitting between.

C. Piping Installations:

1. Vibration and Acoustical Isolation of Piping: Locate isolation hangers as near to overhead support structure as possible.

a. Horizontal Pipe Isolation

1) Provide Type B hangers and/or restrained mountings for first 2 pipe hangers in lines near chillers, heat exchangers, pumps, and risers.

a) Provide restrained spring mountings for similar floor supported piping.
b) Provide same static deflection as specified for mountings under connected equipment, minimum 1 inch near chillers and pumps.

b. Riser Isolation

1) Suspend risers from Type A hangers or supported with spring isolator mountings, guided with sliding pipe guides.

2) Provide minimum 0.75-inch steel spring deflections, except in those expansion locations where additional deflection is required to limit load changes to +/-25 percent of initial load.

3) Include riser diagrams and calculations in submittals showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stresses and that none will exist in proposed design.

2. Vibration and Acoustical Isolation of Piping Penetrations: Where piping passes through structure, use Split Wall Seals specified in Part 2 above.

3. Install expansion loops where shown on drawings and in all straight piping runs eighty (80) feet long and longer, at least one (1) expansion loop per one hundred twenty (120) feet of straight run. Install anchors and pipe alignment guides for each expansion loop in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, with anchor and guide bases as specified in Section 23 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for HVAC Components".

4. Thermal Movement Isolation: Where piping with anticipated thermal movement is connected to fixed location equipment (for example, duct coils near main HWS&R, unit ventilators above crawl-space mains just below, etc.), provide flexible hoses perpendicular to motion rated for total expected movement. Anticipate movement and install so flex hose will be nominally straight at normal operating temperature.

3.4 AIRSIDE INSTALLATIONS

A. Vibration Isolation of Air Handling Equipment:

1. Isolate all floor mounted air handlers located above an occupied space using vibration isolation bases specifically designed for the particular installation and having deflection tuned to the mass and frequency of the rotating or vibrating machinery so as to minimize the propagation of the vibrations or use manufacturer's structural base rails attached to Inverted Saddles.

2. Isolate all suspended air handlers using Type B hangers with minimum 2 inches spring deflection for units having 1/2 KW motors and larger and with minimum 1 inch spring deflection for units having less than 1/2 KW motors.

3. Protect air handling equipment and centrifugal fans against excessive displacement resulting from high air thrust in relation to equipment weight. Provide horizontal thrust restraint specified in Part 2 above when thrust forces exceed 10 percent of equipment weight.

4. For all roof top air handlers above occupied spaces unless otherwise noted or scheduled on drawings, provide acoustical attenuation within curb below rooftop air handlers as follows:

   a. Coat deck within curb with damping compound.

   b. Seal around duct, pipe, conduit, fastener, etc., penetrations air-tight to maintain air and vapor barrier, typically with 60mil EPDM roofing membrane sealed to deck and cut for a tight stretch fit to pipe or duct. Caulk holes. Fill deck corrugation flutes at edges with fire rated expanding urethane foam and set / seal EPDM into wet foam.

B. Vibration Isolation of Ductwork:

1. Isolate all ducts from mechanical air handling equipment using flexible connectors.

2. Isolate all discharge runs for distance of 50 ft. from connected equipment from building structure using Type A or Type B hangers or spring floor isolators. Provide minimum of 0.75-inch spring deflection.

3. Isolate all rectangular duct runs having average air velocity of 1200 fpm or more from building structure using Type A or Type B hangers or spring floor supports. Provide minimum of 0.75-inch spring deflection.

4. Unless internally lined, provide damping compound on all rectangular duct hung over occupied spaces and having average air velocity of 1000 fpm or more as required to eliminate duct rumble.

C. Vibration and Acoustical Isolation of Duct Penetrations: Where duct passes through acoustically sensitive structure (walls, floors, roof, and / or ceilings), and where noted on Drawings to provide sound attenuated penetration, provide damping compound for two feet on either side of wall, insulate per Section 23 07 00, then pack gap between insulation and general construction wall materials with mineral wool and seal with damping compound.

1. Coordinate this requirement with any fire rating of the wall and maintain both fire rating and acoustical separation with UL listed assembly.

2. Acoustically sensitive structure penetrations include:

   a. All walls/ floors/ ceilings of mechanical rooms.
   b. Ceiling / roof deck at all roof top air handling units.

c. Rooms with substantial noise generated within, such as woodworking, technology, music rooms, etc.
d. Rooms that require acoustical privacy such as auditoriums and administrative offices.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
B. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
C. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 23 05 43

SECTION 23 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC COMPONENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.
3. Duct labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Equipment Location Ceiling Markers

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedural Requirements: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

1. Specified Products: If product to be incorporated into Project is specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, submit "**As-Specified Verification Form**" (attached to SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals) in lieu of "Product Data" identified below in this Article.

2. Equivalent Products or Substitutions: If product to be incorporated into Project is not specified by name and product designation in Part 2 below, comply with all Action Submittal requirements specified below.

B. Action submittals:

1. Submit manufacturer's data sheets for all proposed products demonstrating compliance with specifications.

C. Closeout Information, for inclusion in Operations and Maintenance Manual:

1. Approved submittal.

a. If "**As-Specified Verification Form**" submittal is approved, also include product data for all identification components used.

2. Include all information required in SECTION 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

3. Valve Chart - Refer to SECTION 23 05 00 – Common Work Results for HVAC, for details.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Paint: Refer to DIVISION 09.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Brimar Industries, Inc. or equal.
2. Campbell International (Ltd.), or equal.
3. Craftmark Identification Systems, Fort Worth, Texas, or equal
4. EMED Company, Inc., Buffalo, New York , or equal
5. Seton Name Plate Company, New Haven, Connecticut, or equal

2.2 LABELS

A. Equipment Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number and equipment function.

B. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Include Equipment Schedule in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive. Secure in place with full circumference tape wrap.

C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using abbreviations indicated below, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction (flow direction arrow circumference tape preferred).

2. Lettering Size: In accordance with ANSI 13.1 and as follows:

	Outside diameter:	Letter Height:
a.	2" or less	¾"
b.	6" or less	1.25"
c.	10" or less	2.5"
d.	Over 10"	3.5" (38 mm)

3. Pipes too small to be directly labeled: provide hanging equipment tag with ½" lettering. Outside diameter indicated is to outside of pipe insulation on insulated piping.

D. Piping Systems: Identify the following systems as indicated:

1. Heating Hot Water Supply (HWS)
2. Heating Hot Water Return (HWR)
3. Chilled Water Supply (CHS)
4. Chilled Water Return (CHR)
5. Condensate Drain (CD)

2.4 DUCT LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Colors: Letter color, black; background color, white.

C. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

E. Minimum Letter Size: One inch for viewing distances up to 60 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

F. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

H. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service, duct size (inches x inches clear inside dimensions, side labeled first), and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Unless specifically indicated otherwise on Drawings, use duct service designations below, where (SYSTEM) is the equipment served:

    a. (SYSTEM) SUPPLY AIR
    b. (SYSTEM) RETURN AIR
    c. (SYSTEM) RELIEF AIR
    d. (SYSTEM) OUTSIDE AIR
    e. (SYSTEM) MIXED AIR

2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 STENCILS

A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts (1 inch for each five feet viewing distance).

1. Stencil Material: Durable, thin, as required to make crisp stenciled pattern.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.
4. Stenciled Label Contents: as described in pipe and duct labels above.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve and Hydronic Specialty Identification: Provide **[1-1/2 inch]**[40-mm]inch diameter brass tags, 0.032-inchminimum thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment with #16 brass jack chain, factory engraved or stamped with 1/2-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers, with black in fill, legend as described below.

1. Stamp "H" and valve number for each main, riser, zone, and branch heating valve.
2. Stamp "C" and valve number for each main, riser, zone, and branch cooling valve.
3. Provide a special tag at thermal expansion tank(s) shut off valve with legend as follows: "Always keep this valve open except when draining tank".

B. Provide manufacturer’s tags for all balancing fittings.

C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses. Include valve-tag schedule in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

2.7 EQUIPMENT LOCATION CEILING MARKERS

A. 5/8-inch diameter celluloid covered or vinyl PSA backed stickers, suitable for ink notation on a colored face; color coded as follows:

1. Yellow: Volume Dampers
2. Blue: Isolation Valves
3. Green: Controls Devices (valves, automatic dampers, controllers)
4. Orange: Equipment (VAV boxes, fan coils, blower coils, fans, pumps, etc.)
5. Red: Fire Dampers

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

B. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE IDENTIFICATION

A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles and flow direction arrows, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system. Stencils shall be crisp and neat with no overspray, drips, runs, or other imperfections visible from normal viewing distance.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 15 feet along each run.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Piping Painting Requirements:

1. Refer to Section 23 05 00 – "Common Work Results for HVAC" and Division 09 sections covering painting for pipe painting requirements and Pipe Color Code Identification Schedule.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of **15 feet** along each run.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

	Item	Color
1.	Hot water supply & return……..	Brown
2.	Chilled water supply & return……	Blue
3.	Condensate (drain)……..	Rust Brown
4.	Refrigerant……...	Dark Green
5.	Chemical treatment……..	White

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts.

B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels, showing service, size, and flow direction as indicated above, may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option, for concealed ductwork or if lettering larger than 1 inch high is needed for proper identification because of distance (over ten feet) from normal location of required identification. Stencils shall be crisp and neat with no overspray, drips, runs, or other imperfections visible from normal viewing distance. Refer to Division 09 sections on painting for more information.

C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

1. New construction: Provide a neat typewritten valve directory listing valve function, location and identification number. Minimum size to be 8-1/2 by 11 inches, incased within plastic laminate. Mount securely where directed.

2. Valve Numbering System: Extension of and compatible with existing valve numbering system, where valves are installed in existing building or in addition to existing building. Do not duplicate existing numbers; verify existing numbers in the field

3. Verification: Verify existing valve numbers in field and provide valve numbering avoiding duplication of existing numbers.

B. Valve Identification For New Construction:

1. Provide 1-1/2 inch diameter brass tag with brass jack chain (#16).
2. Stamp "H" and valve number for each main, riser, zone, and branch heating valve and at all other valves whose function is not readily apparent.
3. Stamp "C" and valve number for each main, riser, zone, and branch cooling valve and at all other valves whose function is not readily apparent.
4. Provide a special tag at compression tank(s) shut off valve with legend as follows: "Always keep this valve open except when draining compression tank"

3.7 EQUIPMENT LOCATION CEILING MARKERS

A. Provide markers in the metal grid of lay-in tile, in metal panel ceilings, at access doors in hard ceilings, and other locations as appropriate, indicating the location of dampers, valves, controls, equipment, fire dampers, and other devices as required. Write on markers with sharply contrasting permanent ink in neat handwriting clearly identifying equipment located beyond mark with abbreviation used in valve chart, equipment schedule, etc.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Work shall be a joint effort of the Contractor and the TAB Agency, performed with the intention of leaving the systems involved in a properly functioning and balanced flow condition as designed and indicated in the Construction Documents, similar to the "Total System Balance" condition described in the AABC Standard.

1. The division of responsibility for the TAB Work is outlined below. Contractor to perform preparation and ancillary work described below, with the option of subcontracting a portion of their work to the TAB Agency, but the TAB Agency must take sole responsibility for any portion of the preparation or TAB Work defined as the TAB Agency's Work.

2. TAB Agency Work to be performed by a fully qualified independent TAB Agency as described in quality assurance below and as approved by the Architects and Engineers.

B. Section includes preparation for, and Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB Work) of HVAC components, equipment, and systems:

1. Contractor Preparation and Participation:

a. Place systems in satisfactory operating condition as detailed below prior to the arrival of the TAB Agency for the specified TAB Work, and notify the TAB agency and Engineer in writing when systems are ready for TAB Work.

b. Attend and actively participate in coordination and TAB meetings.

c. Keep TAB Agency apprised of construction schedule as required facilitating TAB agency job site visits prior to concealment of work. Provide overall construction schedule to TAB agency at coordination meetings and TAB meetings, update schedule regularly noting milestones and dates affecting TAB review and work schedule, and provide at minimum 7 calendar days notice prior to concealment.

d. Coordinate and provide mechanical and controls systems operation, revisions, and other ancillary work as required during TAB Work, as detailed below.

e. Make changes as required to create a testable, balanceable system, as recommended by TAB agency but only as approved by the Engineer.

2. TAB Agency Preparation:

a. Review Construction Documents and Coordination Drawings with Engineer and Contractor and assist in preparation of submittals, particularly Coordination Drawings, dampers, and balancing valves, by preparing recommendations to Contractor and Engineer on locations of balancing valves, dampers, access doors, test connections, etc., as well as any other special considerations affecting the TAB Work and/or the fabrication or engineering of the systems. Documentation of assistance shall be both by mutually agreed upon notations on the submittals / sheet metal Shop Drawings prior to submittal, and by TAB Agency's letter accompanying submittal, verifying review and TAB Agency approval of the specific submittal.

b. Visit job prior to concealment of work, repeatedly if necessary due to construction scheduling, check work, and advise the Contractor and Engineer on correctness of locations of dampers, access doors, test connections, etc., as well as any other special considerations affecting the TAB work. Advise in writing, copied to the Contractor and the Engineer within 3 days of the site visit but in any event before concealment.

C. TAB Work includes:

1. *Testing* of all mechanical components for performance, calibration, capacity, and other characteristics as outlined below and as required, demonstrating conformance with contract documents and submittals.

2. *Adjusting and Balancing* of all mechanical components of this project as described in the contract documents, achieving specified air and water flow at all terminal equipment, distribution at lowest noise levels and energy use, and achieving specified thermometer, gauge, and sensor instrument accuracy and calibration, all as outlined below.

3. Documentation, correspondence, data recording, reporting, and demonstration all as outlined below and elsewhere in the contract documents.

4. *Coordination* with other Contractors, subcontractors, Construction Manager, Owner's Representatives, and Architect / Engineer as required achieving specified TAB results.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
B. ASHRAE: American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers
C. Contractor: The entity contracted to perform the HVAC Work described in these contract documents.
D. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
E. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
F. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
G. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

H. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
I. TAB Agency: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work who is qualified and approved to do so as described below.

1.4 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. Contractor:

1. Prior to submittal of any equipment affecting TAB Agency, review with TAB Agency and obtain commentary and approval as described in “Summary” Article. Include TAB Agency review commentary with affected submittals.

2. Immediately upon approval of other submittals, provide the TAB Agency with copies of approved submittals, including Shop Drawings of all hydronic and air systems and equipment requiring balancing.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor:

1. Perform no work affecting TAB prior to TAB Agency approval.

B. TAB Agency:

1. Submit TAB Agency qualifications proposal for approval.

a. Name and contact information of proposed TAB Agency,
b. Documentation that they meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article,
c. Evidence of current TAB Agency and TAB Supervisor Certification,
d. List of instruments to be used in testing and balancing, with current certification of all instruments’ calibration,
e. Examples of data forms proposed for each system type showing input cells for this Project’s required data,
f. 3 regional references for comparable recent jobs.

2. Submit Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Architect’s approval of TAB Agency, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

3. Submit Preliminary Partial TAB Reports.

4. Submit Certified Final TAB Report.

5. Certified Six Month System Check / Design Condition TAB Report.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTAL

A. Contractor and TAB Agency:

1. Systems Readiness Report as described more fully below.

B. TAB Agency:

1. Instrument Calibration Reports: Include the following on calibration agency letterhead:

   a. Instrument type and make.
   b. Serial number.
   c. Application.
   d. Dates of use.
   e. Dates of calibration.
   f. Test data points over range qualified – standards and measured values.

2. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Architect's approval of TAB Agency, submit the Contract Document Examination Report as specified in Part 3.

3. Include commentary with all Contractor submittals affecting TAB work as described above.

4. Pre-Construction Inspection and Testing Report: Prior to removal of any affected construction.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Agency, Employee, and TAB Work Qualifications:

1. TAB Agency: Fully certified current member of "Associated Air Balance Council" (AABC), "National Environmental Balancing Bureau" (NEBB), or "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau" (TABB), specializing in the adjusting and balancing as specified in this Section of systems as specified and as shown on the Contract Documents, with minimum three years documented experience as a fully certified member, and three current regional references for projects of comparable scope.

2. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB Agency and currently certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB as a Testing, Balancing and Adjusting Supervisor.

3. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB Agency and currently certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB as a TAB technician.

4. All TAB Work: Performed by direct employees of the TAB Agency, who are either TAB Field Supervisors themselves, or who are TAB Technicians working under the direct supervision of a TAB Field Supervisor.

B. Conform to basic procedures and methods outlined by applicable publications in testing and balancing of air and water systems by the following organizations, and as modified by this document:

1. Associated Air Balance Council (AABC).
2. National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB).
3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau (TABB).

C. TAB Report Data Forms: Follow AABC, NEBB, TABB, or SMACNA format as modified by the data requirements of this Project, subject to submittal approval.

D. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Instruments as described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation.", all currently certified as calibrated by a NRTL or NVLAP in accordance with Division 01 Section “Quality Requirements”.

F. Contractor: maintain qualified personnel at Project for system operation, trouble-shooting, making system changes, and performing mechanical adjustments in conjunction with TAB procedures.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements: Accomplish TAB work under appropriate outdoor temperature conditions.
B. Concealed Conditions: Before concealment of systems, verify and advise on type and location of balancing devices and test points. Make changes as required to balancing facilities.

1.9 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

A. Refer to Division 00 and Division 01 for overall project sequencing and scheduling requirements. All HVAC work required for, and, approvable balancing in accordance with the requirements of this section is required to be complete before Contract Substantial Completion.

1. Contractor: Assure that all HVAC work required to properly and completely test and balance the various systems, occurs in a timely fashion coordinated with the overall project schedule as required, with final readiness reported at minimum two calendar weeks prior to contract scheduled Substantial Completion Date. For HVAC Work required to be performed simultaneous with TAB Work, coordinate schedule with TAB agency and provide qualified staffing as required keeping pace with TAB agency personnel. Coordinate and report partial systems readiness to TAB agency to allow TAB work to proceed in an orderly fashion.

2. TAB Agency: Assure that all TAB Work and all subsequent reporting on same occurs in a timely fashion coordinated with the overall project schedule prior to contract scheduled Substantial Completion Date. For HVAC Work required to be performed simultaneous with TAB Work, coordinate schedule with Contractor and provide qualified staffing as required to complete TAB work and reporting within two calendar weeks of final HVAC systems readiness for TAB.

B. Contractor and TAB Agency: Perform all examination and preparation work required and submit Systems Readiness Report(s) prior to beginning TAB work.

C. Contractor and TAB Agency: After submission of Systems Readiness Report, coordinate and schedule all preparation and TAB work with each other, Architect/Engineer, and Owner,.

1. Cooperate with other contractors and affected subcontractors as required to provide complete and proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC systems.

D. Accomplish TAB Work during construction period as soon as the systems are complete enough to perform TAB work. Coordinate with project phases and before Owner takes possession. TAB work and approval of at least partial pencil copy reports is required before Owner takes possession.

E. Multiple visits will be required for phased construction in cooperation with construction schedule, with multiple “pencil copy” submittals of partial TAB reports required promptly as each phase of TAB work is accomplished.

F. Perform balancing for record at final stage when all previously completed sub-systems are checked and re-balanced to design performance.

G. Contractor and TAB Agency: return to the site approximately six months after initial TAB Work is complete to perform system checkup and design condition rebalancing as defined below.

H. Contractor and TAB Agency are subject to recall to site to verify report information before acceptance of the report by the Architect.

I. Contractor: provide 2 additional copies of Shop Drawings and other submittals for all equipment and systems to be tested and balanced to TAB Agency as soon as possible but no later than 60 days prior to scheduled completion of equipment and systems installation.

J. TAB Agency:

1. Verify that Contractor has placed all systems and equipment in satisfactory operating condition as required allowing TAB Work to be properly performed.

2. Cooperate with Contractor and affected subcontractors as required to provide complete and proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of air and water systems.

3. Visit Project prior to concealment of Work and note location of dampers, test connections, and similar items. Record this information, transmit to Contractor, and incorporate on Record Drawings.

4. Coordinate timing of six month system check and design condition TAB Work with weather, Contractor, and Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

A. TAB Agency: Provide tools, ladders, recording meters, gauges, thermometers, velometers, anemometers, Pitot tubes, inclined gauge manometers, magnehelic gauges, amprobes, voltmeters, psychrometers, tachometers, ultrasonic or other non-intrusive flowmeters, and all other instrumentation required to perform specified TAB work. Accurately calibrate all instruments.

1. Make instruments available to Architect to facilitate spot checks during testing and back-checking.
2. Provide additional balancing devices as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. By TAB Agency:

1. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

2. Visit Site and examine existing systems before construction and new / re-worked systems prior to concealment of construction to check on and advise regarding location of installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, thermometers and gages, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, volume dampers, test connections, etc. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible. TAB Agency shall advise Contractor and Architect of TAB Agency findings by letter.

3. Examine the submittals for HVAC systems and equipment. Verify that proposed equipment can be balanced as specified and as required. Provide commentary on all submittals advising where additional balancing devices are needed or configuration adjustment is desired to facilitate TAB work.

4. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

5. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

6. Examine manufacturer's equipment performance data including pump and fan curves.

    a. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

B. By Contractor:

1. Examine systems and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections has been performed, and all TAB preparation as described in "Preparation" Article is complete.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. TAB Agency:

1. Prepare a TAB plan that includes site specific strategies and step-by-step procedures with this project's equipment identified.

B. Contractor: Before TAB work commences on any portion of the system, and before new system startup, verify that systems are complete and in proper operating condition. Ensure the following:

1. Equipment is operable, in a safe and normal condition, and is of the size and capacity specified in the Contract Documents, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and properly tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation. Required modifications to systems shall be made in advance of the TAB Agency's arrival for that portion of the work.

2. Provide proper equipment start-up as specified, complete with manufacturer's filled out standard published start-up forms.

3. Temperature control systems are operable to the extent required for that portion of the TAB Work. Control valves must at least be installed complete and hand operable. Automatic dampers must be operable and under control. Safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment must be properly functional.

4. All motors, pumps, and fans have correct rotation.

5. Align belt driven fan drive systems. Align motor and fan shafts into parallel to within ¼ degree. Align drive and driven pulleys into same plane to within 1/32 inch per foot of center to center distance. Adjust belt tension to within drive manufacturer's recommended tolerance, and securely lock all adjustment fasteners.

6. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete, and proper thermal overload protection is in place for all electrical equipment.

7. All ductwork, air handlers, grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed, complete, and cleaned of dust and debris.

8. All piping, terminal radiation, chillers, pumps, valves, required pressure taps, and hydronic specialties are correctly installed, complete, operational, and clean.

9. All ductwork, diffusers and registers have dampers where specified, and all hydronic systems have balancing and isolation valves where specified.

10. Duct system leakage has been tested where required and minimized.

11. Hydronic systems are flushed, vented, cleaned, leak free, and filled with specified heat transfer fluid.

12. Hydronic expansion tank has been pre-charged to the proper pressure and systems filled to proper cold fill pressure.

13. Glycol based systems have specified glycol fill station properly installed and set to fill at appropriate pressure, and alarm EMCS on pump operation.

14. System pump suction piping is properly vented to ensure absence of entrained air.

15. All manually set dampers (fire, fire/smoke, register, grille, diffuser, and manual volume dampers) operate smoothly and are adjusted open. All automatic dampers have actuators and required linkages installed and rough adjusted.

16. All hydronic systems valves are installed with proper direction of flow and operate smoothly, balancing valves are adjusted open, two-way control valves are open, three-way valves are properly installed for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows, and service valves are open or closed as required for normal flow.

17. Make preliminary adjustments to airflow patterns of all registers, grilles, and diffusers to obtain uniform space temperatures and air movement free from objectionable drafts and noise.

18. Clean new final design filters are installed everywhere called for.

19. Hydronic strainers are clean and any temporary screens are replaced with permanent screens. Sidestream filters have clean new filter bag installed and valves are closed.

20. Coil fins are clean and straight.

21. Access doors in ducts are closed and duct end caps are in place.

22. Access doors necessary to reach duct volume dampers, balancing valves, and measuring stations are installed in accessible locations and are operable.

23. As-built conditions are accurately recorded on working as-built drawings, including locations of all access points, manual and automatic dampers, isolation, balancing, and control valves, fittings, and all other items affecting TAB work. Provide copies of these annotated as-built drawings for TAB agency's use during TAB work.

C. Contractor:

1. Prepare and submit Systems Readiness Reports to Engineer, Commissioning Agent, and TAB Agency, with itemized checklists of the above items as appropriate for the equipment to receive TAB Work, with a column for Contractor indicated status and another with room for TAB Agency commentary, itemizing any remaining deficiencies discovered and confirming all systems preparation and examination has been properly performed.

    a. Include itemized list of all examination and preparation procedures outlined above and as otherwise required by TAB Agency's procedures, with initialed dated verification of each item by authorized responsible party.

    b. Promptly report abnormal conditions in mechanical systems or conditions that prevent system balance. If, for design reasons, system cannot be properly balanced, report as soon as observed.

2. Report any defects or deficiencies observed during performance of TAB procedures.

D. TAB Agency:

1. Review, edit, and submit annotated Contractors Systems Readiness Reports to Contractor, Engineer, and Commissioning Agent, with itemized TAB Agency concurrence or commentary, itemizing deficiencies discovered and confirming all systems preparation and examination has been properly performed, with initialed dated verification of each item by authorized responsible party.

    a. Report abnormal conditions in mechanical systems or conditions that prevent system balance within 24 hours of discovery. If, for design reasons, system cannot be properly balanced, report as soon as observed.

2. Report any defects or deficiencies observed during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values. Include updates in partial TAB report submittals. Adjust as-built drawings as required to accurately reflect deviations from draft as-built set.

3. Promptly report abnormal conditions in mechanical systems or conditions that prevent system balance. If, for design reasons, system cannot be properly balanced, report as soon as observed.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. In the following TAB procedures portions of Part 3 Execution of this document, the procedures are deemed to be TAB Agency work unless specifically identified as Contractor work.

B. Contractor required assistance and Ancillary Work during TAB Agency Work includes the following general work categories and notes on Contractor Work requirements in subsequent specific procedure descriptions:

1. Maintain mechanically qualified personnel at Site to perform necessary mechanical modifications and adjustments in conjunction with TAB procedures.

2. Operate systems.

3. Provide trouble-shooting.

4. Change and re-align pulleys, sheaves, belts, etc., as required to meet system performance requirements. Provide machined steel or cast iron sheaves of quality equal to OEM equipment, and cogged premium raw edge belts. Properly adjust belt tension. Maintain specified drive safety factor – do not reduce the size of the smaller sheave /pulley without explicit written approval of first manufacturer then engineer.

5. Cut insulation, pipes, ducts, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures. Properly plug all holes. Provide new insulation that matches removed materials, finished in accordance with Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

6. Change air filters as required.

7. Adjust automatic damper linkages so they all operate smoothly and close tightly.

8. Perform necessary controls operations required for TAB procedures.

9. Re-adjust / make final adjustments to registers, grilles, and diffusers in cooperation with Owner and TAB Agency as required to obtain uniform space temperatures and air movement free from objectionable drafts and noise. As this affects system pressure drops, this must be completed before final airflow balancing.

10. Make any required additions or changes in types, locations, etc., of balancing equipment.

11. Provide other mechanical adjustments as required in conjunction with TAB procedures.

12. Leave system in proper working order, replacing belt guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes and securing cover plates, restoring thermostats to specified settings, restoring systems to automatic operation as required, replacing ceiling tiles, plugging access ports and repairing insulation, cleaning, etc...

C. Tab Agency: Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems", or SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing", and in this Section.

1. Provide all testing and Balancing as required by the specific procedures outlined below and as required to provide the final test report as described below.

2. Mark equipment and balancing devices, valve position indicators, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

3. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Pre-Construction Testing of Existing HVAC Systems: Prior to system shut down, demolition and modifications associated with existing HVAC systems, and prior to submittal of any replacement equipment, provide testing and recording of existing system operating data as itemized below. Submit copies of existing system operating data to Architect for review. On completion of system modifications, confirm that new or modified system characteristics conform to original data or new requirements by taking new readings and readjusting systems as required.

B. On systems where there are no HVAC component modifications or work other than possible TAB work shown on the contract drawings, no TAB work is required unless specifically called for on the drawings.

C. On systems that are only partially modified, perform TAB work both before and after modifications as required to demonstrate that modified portions of the system are performing as required and unmodified portions of the system are still operating at least as well as they were prior to modifications. Also perform additional TAB work as specifically called for on the drawings.

D. Perform the following operations:

1. Hydronic systems:

a. Hot Water Pumps: Check and record make and model; suction, discharge, and impeller size; pump discharge, suction and total head pressure; drive frequency if controlled by VFD, and gallons per minute delivery.

b. Balancing fittings: Check and record pressure drop, flowrate, and operating condition.

c. Control valves: pressure drop at flow measured at associate balancing fitting.

2. Heat Transfer (heat exchangers, coils):

a. Inlet and outlet pressures, air and watersides.
b. Flowrate, air and/or water, heating and heated mediums.
c. Entering and leaving temperatures, both heating and heated mediums. Include wet bulb and dry bulb temperature for cooling coils.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES: AIR SYSTEMS TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

A. Visit Site prior to concealment of construction to check and advise regarding location of dampers, test connections, etc. TAB Agency shall advise Contractor and Architect of TAB Agency findings by letter.

B. Review sheet metal shop drawings and mark locations of all required balancing dampers before duct fabrication.

C. Re-check fan belt pulley alignment under properly tensioned condition, and report final tolerances and tension achieved. Direct re-alignment as required to achieve stated tolerances.

D. Make air quantity measurements in ducts by Pitot tube traverse of entire cross sectional area of duct in such a manner that local flow dynamics have a negligible effect on the measurements. Use multiple, bidirectional, traverses if flow measurements cannot be made in a section with at least 8 diameters straight duct upstream and 4 diameters of straight duct downstream from the measuring station. Mark all traverse locations on plans in report.

E. After adjustments, take measurements to verify balance has not been disrupted. Verify that disruptions in balance have been corrected.

F. Permanently mark valve, damper, and other adjustment device settings at devices to simplify restoration of settings. Record settings and include in report. Set and lock memory stops.

G. Procedures:

1. Verify that all systems are complete and operable as scheduled.

2. Verify that registers, grilles, and diffusers are adjusted to obtain uniform space temperatures and air movement free from objectionable drafts and noise. Cooperate with Owner and Contractor and reach agreement on air distribution pattern before proceeding.

3. Align belt driven fan drive systems. Align motor and fan shafts into parallel to within ¼ degree. Align drive and driven pulleys into same plane to within 1/32 inch per foot of center to center distance. Adjust belt tension to within drive manufacturer's recommended tolerance. Re-check alignment under properly tensioned condition, securely lock all adjustment fasteners, and report final tolerances and tension achieved.

4. Provide temporary filter media as follows: with the system fully operational, all dampers open, and the fan running at the scheduled RPM, check submittal values for new, midlife, and final/clogged filter pressure drops, check and record air pressure drop across the new clean final design filters, and provide temporary media to approximate midlife pressure drop across the filters for use during balancing. Record and report both pressure drop values at the final design flowrates. Adjust filter differential pressure switches to trip at correct final/clogged filter pressure drop in cooperation with Energy Management and Control System manufacturer's representative.

5. With the system fully operational, all dampers open, and the fan running at the approved submittal RPM, measure the airflow through all terminal units as well as the total system volume, without making any adjustments, and formulate a plan for preliminary adjustments of dampers and fan speed. Terminal units shall be defined to include all diffusers, registers, grilles, duct entries, louvers, hoods, etc.; i.e., wherever air enters or leaves ductwork whether indoors or outdoors. Record and report all initial values.

6. In cooperation with Energy Management and Control System manufacturer's representative, make mechanical adjustments of automatically operated dampers to operate as specified, indicated, and/or noted. Adjust and set the extreme operating conditions of these dampers and check completed damper control operations for proper calibration, reporting to control installers conflicts with those requiring adjustment. Test leakage of closed dampers. Adjust and set intermediate positions of outside air and return air dampers as required to achieve design outside airflow requirements defined in the sequence of operations, and / or calibrate outside air flow meters at this point. Balance variable volume systems at maximum air flow rate with full cooling and at minimum air flow rate with full heating

7. Adjust terminal units to the proportionally correct cfm, not necessarily the design cfm.

    a. If all the dampers in a branch line's terminal units must be adjusted to limit cfm, then use the branch line volume damper to limit the pressure drop across the terminal units in that branch so that at least one terminal unit's damper remains wide open but still has the correct flow. Adjust all branch ducts to proper proportional cfm in this way, leaving the volume dampers in the flow limiting branches wide open.

    b. Provide branch duct volume control by duct internal devices such as dampers and splitters only to the extent that the most open damper or splitter remains wide open and adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels. Under no circumstances shall total air system volume be throttled back to design flow through the partial closing of all dampers and splitters.

    c. Record and report all initial adjustment positions and proportional flowrates achieved.

8. Vary total air system flowrate by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes required.

    a. For variable frequency drive fans, perform the following procedure:

    b. With the VSD set to bypass mode or set at 60 Hz, adjust the fan belt drive system (if applicable) as described above to achieve the design system cfm, with bypass dampers etc. closed or otherwise in the maximum resistance position.

    c. Adjust the VSD to the maximum non- overloading frequency for the system, and measure and report the flowrate at this frequency

    d. If other specific air flow rates are required due to the sequence of operations as reported on the drawings or in Section 23 09 00 – Instrumentation and Control for HVAC, coordinate with these requirements and determine the required frequency - flow relationships

9. Verify that all terminal units are at the design cfm to within the balancing tolerance, and if not, repeat steps f. and g. above until design conditions are satisfied.

10. Test and record final motor, drive, air moving equipment, exhaust fan, damper, and terminal unit information at this point.

11. After all air flow rates are tested, adjusted, and balanced, test the performance of all air to air energy recovery equipment. Test the performance of air to air energy recovery equipment only when the outside air and inside air temperatures are close enough to summer or winter design conditions to verify performance. Test under either summer or winter conditions; if design conditions cannot be met during initial TAB work due to timing, provide energy recovery core testing under true design conditions at the six month system check. Include all data as specified above in reports.

12. Test and record air heating and cooling coil information after this point, as follows:

    a. Perform this step in conjunction with hydronic system balancing and after cooling and heating systems are operational.

    b. Set hydronic control valve to fully open at design flow and temperature as described below. Allow cooling coils to become fully wet with condensation. Test temperatures outside of the line of sight to the coil.

    c. Test and adjust coil performance for all data indicated to be on report test sheets.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

    a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:

    a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.

    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

    c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.

    d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.

    a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.

4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.

5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.

6. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.

7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.

a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.

2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:

1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.

2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.

3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.

4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.

5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.

6. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.

7. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Measure water flow at pumps:

1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump at 60Hz/VSD bypass. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

    a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Architect and comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps."

2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve with this initial balance point. Note and record pump discharge valve position, then return to wide open (or maximum non-overloading position) for proportional balancing procedure.

    a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.

3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower at intended flow rate at run-out. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.

4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.

C. With the system fully operational, all branch and terminal isolation, balancing, and control valves open, and the pump running at 60Hz/VSD bypass, measure the flow through all terminal units as well as the total system volume, without making any adjustments, and formulate a plan for preliminary balancing valve adjustment. Record and report all initial flow and pressure drop values.

D. Adjust all manual balancing valves to the proportionally correct gpm, not necessarily the design gpm.

1. If all the valves in a branch line's terminal units must be adjusted to limit gpm, then use the branch line manual balancing or isolation valve to limit the pressure drop across the terminal units in that branch so that at least one terminal unit's balancing valve remains wide open but still has the correct flow. Adjust all other branch lines to proper proportional gpm in this way, leaving the balancing valves in the flow limiting branches wide open.

2. Provide branch volume control by balancing valves only to the extent that the most open valve remains wide open and adjustments do not create objectionable hydronic sound levels. Under no circumstances shall total system volume be throttled back to design flow through the partial closing of all branch valves.

3. Record and report all initial adjustment positions and proportional flowrates achieved.

E. Vary total system flowrate by adjustments at pump.

1. For constant speed single pump operation systems: throttle the system pump balancing/triple-duty valve until the flow in the system is the design flow rate. If the available flow from the pump is less than the design flow using this procedure, report this to the engineer for advisement immediately. Report the pump, valve, and motor data both with the throttling valve in the wide open and at the final, design flowrate position.

2. For variable frequency drive pumps, Perform the following procedure for each pump circuit running individually:

a. Ramp the VSD to the minimum frequency required to obtain the design flow, with each pump discharge valve open to the maximum position consistent with accurate reading and VSD bypass/60Hz non-overloading operation.

b. Repeat this VSD adjustment for each pump circuit of lead / lag pumps driven by one VSD, and set the VSD at the higher of these two frequencies.

c. At this frequency (the full design frequency - could be more or less than 60Hz), adjust the higher flow rate circuit to the design flow rate by further throttling the pump balancing valve, so that the flow rate from each pump is identical at the design frequency.

d. Verify that all terminal units are at the design gpm to within the balancing tolerance, and if not, repeat steps above until design conditions are satisfied at all system valves, with no excessive pressure and resultant energy use.

e. Report this value as the design frequency in the balancing report, and in writing to the Contractor responsible for incorporation into controls work of the Division 23 .

f. Measure and report the flow-rate at 60Hz, and also at the frequency where the pump motor is running at full load amperage.

g. Measure and report all other pump flow data at this point.

h. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGER

A. Measure water flow through all circuits.
B. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
C. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures, both heating and heated mediums.
D. Measure inlet and outlet pressures, both heating and heated mediums.
E. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the automatic and manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Air pressure drop.
4. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.

2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.13 PROCEDURE FOR MISCELLANEOUS DEVICE TESTING

A. Test and adjust all devices on project as required to correctly report the data listed below under paragraph on final report.

3.14 TOLERANCES

A. Adjust system totals to the sum of the connected load (plus leakage for air systems) rather than the scheduled pump or fan capacity.

B. Adjust air handling systems as follows:

1. Main ducts (ie. each fan system) to within minus 5 percent and plus 10 percent of the design values.
2. Outside air flow tolerance shall be at minimum that scheduled, with a tolerance of minus 0 percent and plus 10 percent.
3. Branch ducts and terminal units to within plus or minus10 percent of the design flow.
4. A total maximum variation of 10 percent between terminal units designated as “typical of (#)”.

C. Adjust hydronic systems as follows:

1. Each pump to within 5 percent of the design flow values.
2. Branch lines and radiation to within 10 percent of the design flow values
3. A total maximum variation of 10 percent between terminal units designated as “typical of (#)”

3.15 PRELIMINARY REPORTING

A. Contract Document Examination Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for proper systems' balancing. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Pre-Construction Inspection and Testing Report: Prior to removal of any affected construction, prepare and submit report outlining results of Pre-Construction Inspection and Testing as outlined above and on the contract drawings.

C. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.16 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.

2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.

3. Project name.

4. Project location.

5. Architect's name and address.

6. Engineer's name and address.

7. Contractor's name and address.

8. Report date.

9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.

10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.

11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.

b. Notable characteristics of systems.
c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.

13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.

14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.

15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
b. Conditions of filters.
c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air Moving Equipment (FCU, BCU, AHU, RTU, ERV, etc):

1. Location

2. Manufacturer

3. Model

4. Air flow, specified and actual

5. Return air flow, specified and actual

6. Outside air flow, specified and actual

7. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual

8. Labeled diagram showing pressure drop across each internal component including dampers, filters, coils, diffusers, and blowers. Provide multiple readings for complex systems with multiple internal dampers affecting system pressure drops, under all specified modes of operation.

9. Inlet pressure

10. Discharge pressure

11. Applicable data as specified elsewhere including coil, motor, damper, and drive data.

12. Fan RPM (for VSD driven fans, under various design conditions including at least full heating, 100% OA economizer, and full cooling loads)

F. Exhaust Fan Data (F):

1. Location
2. Manufacturer
3. Model
4. Air flow, specified and actual
5. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual
6. Inlet pressure
7. Discharge pressure
8. Fan motor and drive data
9. Fan RPM(for VSD driven fans, under various design conditions including at least full heating, 100% OA economizer, and full cooling loads).

G. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Coil type.
   d. Number of rows.
   e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
   f. Make and model number.
   g. Face area in sq. ft.
   h. Tube size in NPS.
   i. Tube and fin materials.
   j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

   a. Air flow rate in cfm.
   b. Average face velocity in fpm.
   c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
   d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F .
   g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
   h. Water flow rate in gpm.
   i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
   j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
   k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.

H. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Room or riser served.
    d. Coil make and size.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Air flow rate in cfm.
    b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
    e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

I. Round, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

    a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    d. Duct static pressure in inches wg .
    e. Duct size in inches.
    f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
    h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
    j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Heat Exchanger:

1. Identification/number
2. Location
3. Service
4. Manufacturer
5. Model
6. Primary steam pressure
7. Secondary water entering temperature, design and actual
8. Secondary water leaving temperature, design and actual
9. Secondary water flow, design and actual
10. Secondary water pressure drop, design and actual

K. Chiller Test Reports:

1. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Water flow rate in gpm.
b. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
c. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
e. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
f. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
g. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model number and serial number.
f. Water flow rate in gpm.
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Design frequency for VSD pumps.
k. Impeller diameter in inches.
l. Motor make and frame size.
m. Motor horsepower and rpm.
n. Voltage at each connection.
o. Starter size, rating, heater data.
p. Amperage for each phase.
q. Rated efficiency, full-load amperage, and service factor.
r. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Electric Motors:

1. Manufacturer
2. HP/BHP
3. Phase, voltage, amperage (nameplate, actual, and no load)
4. RPM
5. Service factor
6. Starter size, rating, heater elements

N. Automatic Air Dampers (AAD, TBAAD, or internal to air moving equipment):

1. Location

2. Manufacturer

3. Model

4. Airflow, specified and actual.

5. Check closed position leakage and report.

6. Damper and/or actuator position at all required positions, along with associated controls signal required to achieve position. Coordinate required positions of return air and outside air ventilation control dampers with positions required by required ventilation rates. Refer to SECTION 23 09 00 – INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS FOR HVAC, and coordinate damper position adjustment with temperature controls and Owner's required occupancy schedule.

7. Total static pressure drop at all required positions.

O. Manual Air Volume Dampers (VD, or shown with no text as: ⊺):

1. Location.
2. Report final damper position as angular deviation of blades from axial, with 0° being fully open and 90° being closed. Mark this position on duct at damper also.
3. Total static pressure drop across damper in as balanced condition.

P. Belt Drives:

1. Identification/location
2. Required driven RPM
3. Driven sheave, diameter and RPM
4. Belt, model, type, size, and quantity
5. Belt tension achieved.
6. Motor sheave, diameter and RPM
7. Alignment tolerances achieved.
8. Center to center distance, maximum, minimum, and actual

Q. Air Distribution Test Sheet (registers, grilles, and diffusers):

1. Air terminal number

2. Room number/location
3. Space Temperature
4. Terminal type
5. Terminal size
6. Area factor
7. Design velocity
8. Design air flow
9. Test (initial, adjusted, and final) velocities
10. Test (initial, adjusted, and final) air flows
11. Percent of design air flow

R. Roof Top Hoods, Louvers, Duct Entries, Goosenecks:

1. Air terminal number / drawing designation
2. Room number/location
3. Terminal type
4. Terminal size
5. Free Area
6. Design velocity
7. Test (final) velocity
8. Design air flow
9. Test (final) air flow
10. Percent of design air flow
11. Design Pressure drop
12. Test (final) pressure drop

S. Automatic Balancing Valves Reports:

1. Identification/station
2. Location
3. Size
4. Manufacturer
5. Model
6. Design flow rate
7. Functional pressure drop range.
8. Actual/final pressure drop at system full flow condition.

T. Hydronic Control Valves Reports:

1. Location
2. Manufacturer
3. Model
4. Flowrate, specified and actual.
5. Pressure drop at full flow condition.

U. Gauges and Thermometers Reports:

1. Identification/number
2. Location
3. Service
4. Manufacturer

5. Test all gauges and thermometers for mid range accuracy. Adjust thermometers where applicable; adjust all gauges for best 0 and/or midrange accuracy.
6. Temperature, test reading and actual
7. Pressure, test reading and actual

V. Controls Sensors Reports:

1. Coordinate work with Energy Management and Control System.
2. Test all controls system temperature, pressure, etc., and electrical current analog sensors for mid normal operating range accuracy. Adjust where applicable.
3. Test all controls system temperature, and electrical current digital (on/off) sensors/switches for trip point. Adjust where applicable.
4. Verify that locations shown on Operators Work Station are schematically correct.
5. Identification/number
6. Location
7. Service
8. Manufacturer
9. Temperature, test reading and actual
10. Pressure, test reading and actual
11. **A**ir composition, parts per million, test reading and actual. Test and adjust at normal ambient and alarm conditions.

W. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.17 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.

2. Check the following for each system:

a. Measure water flow of each device.
b. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
c. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection by TAB Agency is complete and documentation verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the report, request that a final inspection be made, giving at minimum 7 calendar days' notice. Deliver copies of Draft Final Report to Engineer and Commissioning Authority with final inspection request.

    a. Engineer may elect to postpone final inspection upon delivery of written notice to TAB Agency that significant portions of the required TAB results are missing from draft report. If inspection is postponed, TAB Agency shall promptly return to site and provide missing TAB Work, then submit a revised draft and request the Final Inspection again.

2. The TAB Agency and Contractor's qualified technicians are to provide access, tools, and measurements during the inspection in the presence of the TAB Agency Supervisor and the Commissioning Authority.

3. Commissioning Authority will randomly select measurements, documented in the report or as required by contract, to be rechecked. Rechecking will be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED." If recheck calls for a measurement that is required but cannot be found in the draft report, the missing measurement will be noted as "MISSING".

5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB Work will be considered defective and rejected. If the number of "MISSING" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB Work will be considered defective and rejected.

C. If TAB Work is considered defective and rejected, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. Pay all costs associated with second inspection including Commissioning Authority's reasonable additional fees.

2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may require additional inspection similar to second inspection or may contract the services of another TAB agency to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB Agency's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.18 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Re-check and adjust systems approximately 6 months after final acceptance and submit report:

1. Measure the total flow rate of each of the systems originally covered by this section.

2. For each of the systems that no longer operate at design flow measure the flow at each of the terminals of that system.

3. Measure the flow at any terminals included in the original balancing, reported by the Owner or Architect to have continued or new problems.

4. Adjust system changes back to the design values if possible, and submit reports in writing to the Architect, Contractor, and Owner, noting any changes and/or complaints, and offering an interpretation of the cause and significance of the problems.

5. If the design air temperature criteria as specified cannot be satisfied upon initial balancing, perform this six month stability check at a time when it can be, and repeat water system balancing and chiller / heat exchanger performance testing using air temperature at the design conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

SECTION 23 07 00 – HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and all Division 01 Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes materials and installation requirements for mechanical component insulation and related accessories.

1. Insulation Materials:

a. Calcium silicate.
b. Cellular glass.
c. Flexible elastomeric.
d. Mineral fiber.
e. Phenolic.
f. Polyisocyanurate.
g. Polyolefin.
h. Polystyrene.

2. Insulation Accessories:

a. Insulating cements.
b. Adhesives.
c. Mastics.
d. Lagging adhesives.
e. Sealants.
f. Factory-applied jackets.
g. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
h. Field-applied cloths.
i. Field-applied jackets.
j. Tapes.
k. Securements.
l. Corner angles.
m. Insulation protection systems

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. “Concealed”: Work within or behind various construction elements, or in crawl spaces or trenches, that is not exposed to view when Project has been completed. (Areas above ceilings, including above Auditorium or Large Group Instruction partially open “cloud” ceilings and chases are considered a concealed location.)

B. “Exposed”: Anything exposed to view when project has been completed.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.

B. Provide all submittals required by this Section concurrently.

C. Product Data

1. Submit complete manufacturer's product information for each type of insulation and accessory specified in this section demonstrating compliance with specified requirements and including:

    a. Thermal and vapor transmission performance.
    b. MSDS information.
    c. Flame spread / smoke developed data.
    d. Manufacturer's recommended installation methods.

D. Submit insulation schedule indicating each required service with type of insulation, thickness and R value, covering method, finishes, and any applicable notes.

E. Quality Control Submittals

1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification of installers signed by applicable certification agency and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with "Installer Qualifications" requirements specified below in "Quality Assurance" article.

2. Installer Experience Listing: Submit list of completed projects using products proposed for this Project, including Owner contact information for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable "Qualifications" requirements specified below in "Quality Assurance" article.

3. Provide mock-ups for review and approval as described below.

F. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of DIVISION 1 sections on closeout, including submission of maintenance instructions as item in "Operating and Maintenance Data" manual described there.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Provide insulation system installation by qualified Installers who are trained in installation of each proposed insulation material and product with at least one of the following qualifications:

1. Have successfully completed a mechanical insulation apprenticeship program by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training,
2. Have successfully completed an ASHRAE / NIA 8 hour Mechanical Insulation Training course or equal, or
3. Have five years documented experience as a mechanical insulation specialist with references attesting to successful completion of at least three comparable projects.

B. Condensation Resistance: Provide insulation and vapor barrier systems complete as required to eliminate condensation under any normal operating conditions from surfaces of all cooling equipment and components provided or modified as a part of this contract Work, unless those surfaces are designed to remove moisture by condensation from process air, and to contain and drain the condensate.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on products by the following manufacturers:

1. Armstrong; Lancaster, Pennsylvania
2. Benjamin Foster
3. CertainTeed; Valley Forge, Pennsylvania
4. Fit Tight Covers, Inc.
5. Johns Manville; Defiance, Ohio
6. Knauf; North Carolina
7. Owens-Corning; Toledo, Ohio
8. Or Approved Equal.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Pipe and Fitting Insulation: Provide pipe insulation in compliance with ASTM C 585 Dimensional Standards.

1. Insulation Thickness:

a. Pipe and fitting insulation thicknesses specified assume an insulation conductivity (k) value of 0.27 btu•in/hr•ft2•ºF. For pipe and fitting insulation with conductivity other than 0.27 btu•in/hr•ft2•ºF, insulation must be thicker for higher conductivity and may be thinner for lower conductivity as required to achieve same or higher R value. Adjust insulation thickness from that specified in accordance with the following formula:

T = r[(1+t/r)K/k-1] where:

1) T = Adjusted insulation thickness, inches
2) r = Actual pipe outside radius, inches.
3) t = Insulation thickness specified, inches.
4) K = actual insulation conductivity, btu•in/hr•ft2•ºF.
5) k = specified conductivity, 0.27 btu•in/hr•ft2•ºF.

b. Hydronic Piping for Cooling Only:

1) Pipe sizes ½ inch through ¾ inches ..... ½ inch
2) Pipe sizes 1inch through 6 inch ..... 1 inches
3) Pipe sizes 8 inch and larger ..... 1-½ inches

c. Hydronic Piping for Heating or Heating / Cooling (dual temp):

1) Pipe sizes ½ inch through 1-¼ inches..... 1-1/2 inch
2) Pipe sizes 1-½ inches and larger ..... 2 inches

d. Steam Heating Piping:

1) Pipe sizes ½ inch through 3-½ inches ..... 2-1/2 inch
2) Pipe sizes 4 inches and larger ..... 3 inches

e. Make-Up Water and Condensate Drain Piping

1) All pipe sizes ..... ½ inch

f. All Variable Refrigerant Flow and Heat Pump Refrigerant Piping:

1) All pipe sizes ..... 1 inch

g. Flexible Connections:

1) Pipe sizes ½ inch through 1-½ inches ..... 1/2 inch
2) Pipe sizes 2 inches and larger ..... 1 inch

h. Runout piping in restricted spaces where it is not possible to provide the specified thickness may use reduced thickness insulation as required by space restriction.

2. Interior Above Grade Hydronic Piping Insulation:

a. ASTM C547, cylindrically molded preformed rigid half pipe shell forms, factory one-piece "hinged" construction.

1) Rigid pipe or tube insulation may be of mineral wool, fiberglass, closed cell glass, formed polyisocyanurate, formed phenolic, or extruded polystyrene (chilled service only).

2) Thermal Conductivity ("k"): Measured in accordance with ASTM C 335. For k values greater than 0.27, include calculations and compliant increased thickness proposed. For k values equal or less than 0.27, provide specified insulation thickness or calculations justifying thinner insulation.

3) Jacket: All Purpose (AP) vapor barrier jacket with:

a) White kraft paper outer surface bonded to aluminum foil, reinforced with fiberglass yarn, permanently treated for fire and smoke safety and to prevent corrosion of foil.

b) Self sealing pressure sensitive lap.

c) Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, Procedure A, 0.02 perm maximum.

d) Puncture resistance: ASTM D781, 85 scale units minimum

e) Burst resistance: ASTM D774, 100psi minimum.

f) Similar to "150TL facing" as used in "AP T Plus Jacket" and tape by Johns Manville, or equal.

3. Exterior Above Grade Hydronic Piping Insulation:

a. ASTM C547, cylindrically molded preformed rigid half pipe shell forms, factory one-piece "hinged" construction.

1) Rigid pipe or tube insulation may be of closed cell glass, formed polyisocyanurate, formed phenolic, or extruded polystyrene (chilled service only).

2) Thermal Conductivity ("k"): Measured in accordance with ASTM C 335. For k values greater than 0.27, include calculations and compliant increased thickness proposed. For k values equal or less than 0.27, provide specified insulation thickness or calculations justifying thinner insulation.

3) Exterior Pipe Insulation Protective Jacket specified below.

4. Refrigerant Piping, Flexible Connections Insulation: fire-resistant, closed cell flexible (elastomeric) foam plastic, similar to Armacell Armaflex with manufacturer's white painted mastic protective finish.

5. Fitting and Valve Insulation: Precut fiberglass blanket to match thickness, appearance and insulation value of adjacent pipe insulation; similar to "Hi Lo Temp Fiber Glass Insulation Insert" by Johns Manville, with fitted protective jacket specified for the installation.

B. Pipe and Fitting Protective Jackets:

1. Intended for permanent installation on non-serviceable components only.

2. Interior Pipe and Fitting Insulation Protective Jacket:

a. Plastic: High-impact, UV resistant polyvinyl chloride, white, paintable, covering designed to fit over AP jacketed insulated piping systems, molded to fit various sizes of fittings and piping as required; similar to "Zeston 2000 or Zeston 300 PVC Jacketing" by Johns Manville.

1) 20 mil thickness: Fittings and valves in interior applications eight feet above finished floor and higher.
2) 30 mil thickness: Fittings, valves, and straight pipe in interior applications lower than eight feet above finished floor.

b. Aluminum: Circumferentially corrugated 20mil thick or embossed 24 mil thick, with approved moisture barrier, with matching preformed fitting covers by same manufacturer. Similar to Corrolon by Childers.

3. Exterior Pipe and Fitting Insulation Protective Jacket: Modified bituminous, aluminum skinned, peal and stick membrane, similar to Polyguard "Alumaguard 60", with the following properties:

a. Minimum 60 mils thick
b. Permeance less than 0.01 Perms
c. Puncture resistance per ASTM E154 >40lbs.
d. Overlap bond peal adhesion per ASTM D1000 never less than 11lb/in.
e. UV stabilized.
f. Self healing when punctured.

C. Valve Covers, Serviceable Hydronic Component Insulation Jackets:

1. 2" nominal size and smaller Strainers, Triple Duty, Autoflow Control, Manual Balancing, Check, Combination, and Control Valves, and other similar piping components needing periodic service, maintenance or adjustment - provide easily removable insulation jacket requiring no special tools for installation or removal / replacement:

   a. Factory fabricated removable and reusable cover similar to products by No Sweat Valve Wraps, Inc., or approved equal.

   b. Size so outer jacket overlaps adjoining sections of pipe insulation.

   c. Flame and smoke spread 25/50 per ASTM E-84 or less.

   d. Maximum k- factor .26 or matching surrounding insulation, using fiberglass blanket.

   e. Outer jacket made of material equal to DuPont Tychem® QC (polyethylene coated Tyvek) , overlapping and completely covering the insulation with seams joined by integral elastic banding and tabs made from hook and loop fasteners (Velcro).

   f. Butt ends and stem penetrations have sewn-in-place elastic. On cooling service, provide PSA backed closed cell foam gasket material adhered to stem penetration or surrounding insulation jacket between substrate and elastic jacket closure, as required insuring a complete vapor seal.

2. Pumps, Suction Diffusers, Triple Duty Valves, Balancing and Control Valves over 2" nominal size, and other HVAC components needing periodic service, maintenance or adjustment - provide easily removable, reusable insulation jacket in one of two types:

   a. Fabric type insulation jacket similar to products by ThermaXX, LLC, Fit Tight Covers, or approved equal:

      1) Silicone impregnated fiberglass composite cloth jacketing, 17 oz/sq. yd. minimum, 5 lb/cf type E needled fiberglass mat insulation, 35 lb test Kevlar thread, fiberglass or nylon webbing, Velcro closures or high temperature FRP buckles.

      2) Constructed in a folded three dimensional shape designed to minimize the air space and convection current in the space between the hot metal surface and the inner layer of insulation, seamed for removal and replacement inspection ease. Insulation sandwiched and protected between inner and outer layers of jacketing cloth.

3) All jacket pieces which match mating seams must include an extended 2" flap constructed from the exterior fabric (or equivalent) secured using hook & loop closure (i.e. Velcro®) and SS D-rings parallel to the seam or quick release adjustable buckles. Hog rings, staples, wire, etc., are not acceptable methods of closure.

4) Insulation sewn to inner and outer jackets to prevent shifting, in two layers minimum with staggered stitch lines between inside and outside jackets, of thickness as required to match R value of surrounding pipe insulation. All seams sewn with lock stitch at a minimum of 5 stitches per inch using specified thread. All seams except closing seam introverted, closing seam on inside: no raw cut jacket edges exposed after install.

5) For below ambient services, provide vapor barrier coated exterior jacket, with seam sealant at all stitch lines. Seal between jacket and equipment with replaceable closed cell gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

6) Provide a permanently attached Laser Etched Anodized Aluminum nameplate (2" x 3.5") on each jacket with the following information (or QR code and scanner app linking to information):

a) Item Number
b) Location Information
c) Application Type
d) Operating Pressure
e) Component Type
f) Component Size
g) Jacket Min Max Temp
h) Insulation Thickness
i) Jacket material Hot Side
j) Jacket material Cold Side
k) Pre Photo & Post Photos
l) Pattern

D. Duct Insulation

1. Provide insulation thickness on ducts, plenums, and equipment equal to height of flanges, but not less than thickness required to achieve duct insulation R values specified herein:

a. R=6 deg. F-sq. ft.-h/Btu-in:

1) All interior HVAC duct where insulation is required, unless otherwise noted elsewhere.

b. R=12 deg. F-sq. ft.-h/Btu-in

1) Interior outside air intake duct

c. R=12 deg. F-sq. ft.-h/Btu-in:

1) Exterior Duct with no transverse dimension above 48 inches (R=10 minimum, not average)

d. R=20 deg. F-sq. ft.-h/Btu-in:

1) Exterior Duct with any transverse dimension above 48 inches (R=20 minimum, not average)

2. Rigid Board: 3 PCF minimum density glass fiber board (6PCF when exposed in mechanical or utility spaces) or phenolic, with factory-applied AP vapor barrier; similar to "800 series Spin-Glas" and "AP" facing by Johns Manville, or Kingspan KoolDuct.

3. Semi-Flexible: 2.5 PCF minimum density continuous glass fiber oriented strand sheets, with factory-applied AP vapor barrier. Strand orientation such that material has comparable rigidity to board type insulation above in one direction and comparable compressive strength, but is flexible enough in the other direction to wrap curved surfaces at a factory recommended minimum bend radius of 3T where T is the material thickness. Similar to "CrimpWrap" by CertainTeed.

4. Flexible: Glass fiber blanket, 3/4 PCF minimum density, with factory-applied, flame-resistant, FSK jacket; all joints taped; similar to Owens Corning "Fiberglas All Service Duct Wrap".

5. Acoustical / Thermal Duct Lining:

a. Increase sheet metal size as required to provide free area shown on drawings

b. 1-inch thick minimum for sound lining or as otherwise noted. Where used together with external duct insulation, the combined R value must be at least that specified for the service. Where used in lieu of other thermal insulation, provide with rated R-value at least that specified for duct application.

1) R6 duct service = 1.5 inches thick minimum
2) R12 duct service = 3 inches thick minimum.

c. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature (R value equals 4.2 per inch minimum).

d. Surface exposed to air stream and factory edges bonded then coated with a fire, bacterial, fungal and abrasion resistant coating; rated for velocities up to 4000 fpm.

e. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723 or ASTM E 84 as applicable, meets requirements of NFPA 90A; certified by an NRTL.

f. Materials:

1) Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

2) Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: 85 percent cotton, 10 percent borate, and 5 percent polybinding fibers, treated with a microbial growth inhibitor and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

g. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer, low VOC, complying with NFPA 90A, NFPA 90B, and with ASTM C 916 as applicable.

6. Exterior Duct Insulation: Rigid closed-cell extruded polystyrene or phenolic board with integral high density skin, foil or poly faced as recommended by insulation covering manufacturer, tongue and groove along long edges; complying with and exceeding requirements of ASTM C 578 for Type IV insulation, with the following properties:

a. Density: 1.6 pcf minimum.
b. Thermal resistance (R) at 75 deg. for 1-inch thickness: 5 nominal.
c. Compressive resistance at 10 percent deformation or yield: 25.0 psi minimum.
d. Tapered thickness as required to provide ¼" to the foot slope for water shedding.
e. Flame spread (ASTM E84): less than 75.
f. Fuel contributed (ASTM E 84): less than 100.
g. UL listed.

E. Ductwork Insulation Protective Jackets:

1. All Purpose (AP) Vapor Barrier for Duct Insulation: White kraft paper outer surface bonded to aluminum foil and reinforced with fiberglass yarn, permanently treated for fire and smoke safety and to prevent corrosion of foil.

a. Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, Procedure A, 0.02 perm maximum.
b. Puncture resistance: ASTM D781, 85 scale units minimum
c. Burst resistance: ASTM D774, 100psi minimum.
d. Similar to "150TL facing" as used in "AP T Plus Jacket" and tape by Johns Manville, or equal.

2. Foil-Skrim-Kraft (FSK) Vapor Barrier for Duct Insulation: Foil faced outer surface bonded to kraft paper backing and reinforced with fiberglass yarn, permanently treated for fire and smoke safety and to prevent corrosion of foil.

a. Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, Procedure A, 0.02 perm maximum.
b. Similar to "FSK Jacket" and tape by Johns Manville, or equal.

3. Exterior Duct Insulation Covering:

a. Modified bituminous, aluminum skinned, peal and stick membrane, similar to Polyguard "Alumaguard 60", with the following properties:

1) Minimum 60 mils thick
2) Permeance less than 0.01 Perms
3) Puncture resistance per ASTM E154 >40lbs.
4) Overlap bond peal adhesion per ASTM D1000 never less than 11lb/in.
5) UV stabilized.
6) Self healing when punctured.

b. EPDM membrane as specified in Division 07 section 07 53 23 – EPDM Roofing.

F. Mechanical Equipment Insulation:

1. Thickness of insulation:

a. Cooling Equipment:

1) Pumps, air separators, suction diffusers: 1-1/2 inches (R=6 minimum).

2. Cooling Equipment (Cold Service Pump Volutes, Chiller Barrels, Air Separators, Tanks, etc):

a. Insulation: fire-resistant, closed cell flexible (elastomeric) foam plastic, similar to Armacell "Armatuf White". May be multiple thicknesses (inner layers may be similar material without facing similar to "Armaflex AP") with offset joints for complex tight curved shapes or single thickness. Provide sheet stock with either PSA or plain backing, with manufacturer's recommended adhesive for all joints and backing, manufacturer's matching protective vapor barrier facing tape, and Corrosion Inhibitor equal to "Polyguard RG-2400".

G. Insulation Accessories:

1. Mechanical Pin Fasteners: Provide welded or adhered pins of length based on manufacturer's recommendations for insulation density and thickness, securely holding insulation with insulation manufacturer's recommended compression. Mechanical Pin Fastener types include:

a. Stud style welded pins minimum 12 gauge diameter with matching push-on washers. Welded on with capacitor discharge type pin welder with no burn through or undercutting. Welded on prior to insulation application allowing for inspection prior to insulating.

b. Cup head style welded minimum 12 gauge diameter with integral washers. Welded on with capacitor discharge type pin welder with no burn through or undercutting. Welded on after insulation application dis-allowing inspection of pin welds without insulation removal. Not permitted for any Class A or tighter duct, not permitted for any fire rated duct insulation application.

c. Adhered style with perforated metal back plate (minimum 4 square inches surface area) welded to 12 gauge pins with matching push washers, bonded with full coverage of manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Not permitted for any fire rated duct insulation application.

d. Not permitted: PSA backed “peal and stick” pins, sheet metal fastening screws, or any other penetration of duct by fasteners.

2. Insulation Securement Bands: For larger cylindrical surfaces and fire rated duct insulation, tension securement bands may be used to supplement or replace mechanical pin fasteners. Provide bands of material compatible with insulation and system being insulated, minimum ½ inch wide and as required to avoid compressing insulation at required securement tension (3/4 inch minimum for diameters over 36 inches), 24 gage thick or thicker. End buckles of similar material. Wrapping or securing with wires not permitted.

3. Insulation Covering Canvas: 8 oz., 100 percent cotton, with flame spread 10 and smoke developed 0 ratings; similar to “Thermocanvas” by Fattal, Chicago, Illinois.

4. Insulation Tapes: Provide insulation manufacturers’ recommended and matching tapes, matching characteristics of exterior jacket of insulation, in widths as required and as specified below to seal all gaps and reinforce vulnerable areas in vapor barrier. Provide tapes with peel off protective coating covering high performance acrylic adhesive unless manufacturer documents superior performance of alternative recommendation.

5. Insulation Adhesives and Mastics: Provide insulation manufacturers’ recommended and matching adhesives and mastics, as required and as specified below to seal all gaps and reinforce vulnerable areas in vapor barrier. Provide with water based and low VOC formulations unless manufacturer documents superior performance of alternative recommendation and performance deficiencies of water based low VOC products.

6. Corrosion Inhibition Coating:

   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

      1) Polyguard Brand, ReactiveGel™ RG-2400 series of coatings and accessories.

   b. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, substrates, and conditions of service. Provide product formulation specifically designed for the conditions of service.

   c. Product is a field applied gel chemical surface conversion compound utilizing reactive mineralization technology, creating a corrosion resistant mineral barrier 50-200 angstroms deep into the metal surface which increases in thickness as time passes.

   d. Viscosity: Brookfield method; 200,000-300,000 cps

   e. Specific Gravity: Gravimetric; 0.98-1.08

   f. Application: Spray, rag, brush, roll, glove.

g. Corrosion test performance, thickness .025":

1) 1000 hours Accelerated Weathering per ASTM B117 - pass with no corrosion.
2) ASTM G-23 – pass with no corrosion.

h. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 350 deg F. depending on formulation.

i. Color: Blue.

j. V.O.C.: EPA Method; NONE

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
B. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
C. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
E. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion inhibition coating to surfaces to be insulated as follows:

1. All non-galvanized ferrous components with a service temperature below ambient (chilled water and chilled water/glycol systems): Coat with one full coverage coat of specified corrosion inhibition coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Provide thermal and acoustical insulation for components shown on the Drawings as specified in this Section for the following:

    a. All heating and air conditioning systems piping including fittings, valves, and accessories.

        1) Include removal of existing insulation and replacement insulation as specified for existing piping where called for on the drawings or where existing insulation is damaged as a result of contract work.

        2) Include re-insulation where insulation is removed as a part of the abatement work, and not otherwise replaced. Refer to abatement drawings for quantities.

    b. All heating and air conditioning ductwork unless noted otherwise.

        1) All heating and air conditioning ductwork labeled as exposed shall not be insulated unless noted otherwise.
        2) All heating and air conditioning ductwork within a Mechanical Room, Fan Room, etc., shall be insulated whether exposed or not.

    c. All outside air ductwork extending from exterior wall or roof to the equipment which it serves.

    d. Exhaust, return, and relief air ductwork not passing through air to air energy recovery devices prior to exiting the building: extending from exterior wall or roof 15 feet into the building envelope in all directions of duct branch take-offs.

2. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations.

3. Do not begin mechanical insulation until permission is granted to begin mechanical insulation installation, hydronic systems have proved drip free under pressure, duct systems have passed required duct leakage requirements and testing, indoor work areas are weather tight, and outdoor work areas are at appropriate ambient conditions.

4. Below ambient temperature applications:

    a. Provide corrosion inhibition coating as specified above.
    b. Apply vapor barrier mastic and sealant to all open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

5. Do not use any insulation support system which causes compression of insulation, localized or widespread, to less than 75% of the rated nominal thickness. Wires wrapped around rectangular duct insulation are not permitted as insulation support.

6. Provide for durable and repeated service access as part of insulation system.

    a. Do not permanently cover inspection stampings, hand holes, manholes, plugged outlets, or similar features on equipment – provide removable labeled insulated access port with beveled and sealed insulation plug, gasketed if vapor barrier is needed, durably fabricated for repeated access.

7. Install thermal mechanical insulation as follows:

    a. Only on clean, dry surfaces and after piping and ductwork has been tested and found to be tight.
    b. Continuously through wall or ceiling openings and sleeves.
    c. On cold surfaces with continuous unbroken vapor seal.
    d. Insulate ducts and pipes individually.

8. Where more than one layer of insulation is required to achieve specified thickness or R value, apply thinner layer first, and stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.

B. Pipe Insulation

1. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations. Install only when ambient temperatures are within range recommended by manufacturer. STAPLES NOT PERMITTED.

2. Provide high impact plastic wrapper on all exposed, insulated piping from finished floor to 8 ft. above finished floor.

3. Interior Pipe and Fitting Insulation: Install on all heating, cooling, and condensate piping. Seal with factory applied pressure-sealing adhesive strip on the longitudinal lap. Seal butt joints with pressure-sealing adhesive strip at least 2 inches wide. Install valve and fitting covers in all locations.

4. Refrigerant Piping Insulation: Install in full accordance with manufacturers specifications and recommendations on refrigerant and condensate lines, using adhesive specifically intended for flexible foam plastic and provided by insulation supplier. Paint all exposed insulation cut ends with manufacturers (white) finish, similar to “WB Armaflex” or equal. Provide preformed elbows and fittings where available and neatly mitered and fit custom fabrications where manufactured components are not available. Tape and seal all joints vapor tight. For exterior refrigerant piping, install exterior piping protective wrapper water and air tight in accordance with manufacturer’s printed installation directions.

5. Insulation at Pipe Support: Refer to SECTION 23 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for material specifications of insulated piping support assembly and pipe support insulation. Complete insulation installation for the applicable pipe support insulation type to be used.

a. Type “B” Pipe Support Insulation:

1) Install pipe support insulation at hanger and support locations in conformance with manufacturer’s recommendations and as indicated on Drawings.

2) Remove a section of insulation from pipe insulation and replace this section with heavy density molded fiberglass blocks without breaking vapor barrier wrap.

b. Type “C” Pipe Support Insulation:

1) Provide butt connection to high-density insulation sections at pipe hangers as specified in Section 23 05 29 - Hangers and Supports.

2) Provide insulation with vapor barrier on upper half of insulated piping support assembly.

3) Apply wet coat of vapor barrier lap cement on butt joints and finish coat of vapor barrier mastic.

4) Tape edge of insulation section edge and insulation with white, pressure-sensitive PVC tape with tape extending over adjacent pipe insulation by at least 2 inches.

C. Ductwork Insulation: Provide external thermal insulation on ducts as specified or indicated on Drawings; external thermal insulation not required where ducts are shown or specified with internal acoustical insulation. Insulate and seal around duct dampers, damper motors, thermometers, instruments, access doors, and similar component as required without restricting operation or function. Insulate all ducts in all concealed spaces.

1. Use flexible type insulation on concealed ductwork with widths or diameters of 18 inches or less only. Insulate all other ductwork requiring insulation with rigid board type, semi-flexible type, or other type as required by drawings.

2. Duct Insulation Mechanical Fasteners: Provide mechanical fasteners for all duct surfaces over 12” wide. For duct surfaces 18’” wide and less, provide single row of fasteners down duct centerline. For duct surfaces over 18” wide, install minimum of 2 rows per side, applied on maximum 18" centers, starting within 3" of any edge.

a. Pins with the point facing out accepting push washers: clip points close to washers and cover with vapor barrier adhesive and tape. Not permitted on mechanical room duct unless covered by puncture resistant protective wrapper.

3. Duct Insulation Tape: Apply only to clean dry dust free surfaces as recommended by tape manufacturer and as required for durable adhesion.

a. Pealing tape, loose insulation, or otherwise broken vapor barrier subject to repeated recall.

4. Rigid Board Type Insulation Installation: Install board with all corners mitered or rabbeted; no butt joints allowed. Secure insulation with mechanical fasteners. Apply corner reinforcement angles (beads) on all corners for exposed ductwork (including in mechanical or storage spaces), with edge tape over beads. Seal all breaks and joints in vapor barrier with 3 to 5 inches wide insulation tape (minimum 1.5" tape past break all around).

5. Semi-flexible Type: Install similar to rigid board type, on round duct, curved elbows, etc.. Wrap curved and round surfaces taught, provide circumference tape band maximum two feet on center (butt joints and center of four foot roll stock).

6. Flexible Type Insulation Installation: Make all joints and seams with 2-inch lap of vapor barrier cemented with Benjamin Foster "BF85-20". Apply Benjamin Foster "BF-20" adhesive to ducts in 6-inch brush widths at 1 ft. intervals and at each facing edge. Tape all adhered with Benjamin Foster "BF-20". Tape seal all seams, breaks, and joints in vapor barrier, then continuously coat all tape with manufacturer's recommended vapor barrier adhesive

7. Acoustical Duct Lining: Install on low velocity ductwork as noted on Drawings, adhering to sheet metal duct with 100 percent coverage of adhesive meeting the requirements of ASTM C 916, and additionally securing with mechanical fasteners as noted above but on 12-inch centers maximum in the transverse direction. Seal all edges, transverse joints and fastener penetrations with approved mastic. Protect all exposed edges with metal nosing causing no greater than 10% compression of the liner.

8. Exterior Duct Work Insulation: Install insulation and covering in strict compliance with manufacturer's printed instructions and recommendations and as follows:

    a. Mechanically fasten insulation to duct.

    b. Slope top insulation a minimum ¼" per foot for positive drainage using tapered thickness panels, not shims with air gaps below.

    c. Tape joints and ruptures in facing, using adhesive tape of type recommended by insulation manufacturer, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction ensuring vapor tight installation.

    d. Seal and protect exterior duct work insulation with Exterior Duct Insulation Covering, making all joints and terminations watertight with any and all special details as required by application.

    e. Mechanically support bottom of duct Exterior Duct Insulation Covering on all exterior duct 24 inches wide and wider such that there is no unsupported dimension over 30 inches. Provide transverse and if required longitudinal strut system compressing Exterior Duct Insulation Covering against bottom of duct. Refer to Section 23 05 29 – Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment, for details of corrosion resistance and construction of insulation support system.

f. Provide for air pressure bleed ports in the bottom of insulation system of exterior positive pressure duct as required to bleed off duct leakage without pressurizing insulation system. Typical bleed port shall be similar to ¼" OD nylon tubing penetrating bottom of insulation full thickness of insulation, extending ½ inch below insulation cover, cut off at 45 degrees both ends, and sealed to insulation and covering with appropriate caulk. On vertical duct, slope down for drainage. Provide one bleed port for every 10 linear feet of exterior duct.

1) Test and eliminate duct leakage before applying insulation system. If additional bleed ports are needed to prevent insulation covering from bulging out between supports due to internal pressure, remove insulation and reseal duct to control leakage.

D. Equipment, Tank, and Vessel Insulation Installation

1. Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels:

a. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.

b. Develop three dimensional curves using cuts and curves, not wrinkles. Miter exterior corners and provide corner reinforcement angles. Do not use mastic or joint sealer as filler for gaps and voids resulting from poor workmanship: re-cut new better fitting pieces with adjacent insulation sections touching.

c. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.

d. Secure insulation with adhesive, anchor pins and washers, and securement bands as required.

e. Apply adhesives as follows:

1) Select insulation adhesive compatible with service temperature, substrate, and insulation.
2) Provide 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
3) Follow manufacturers' recommended coverage rates per unit area.

f. Install Mechanical Pin Fasteners on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

1) Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.

2) Select insulation hangers and adhesive compatible with service temperature and substrate.

3) Maximum pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.

4) Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.

5) In concealed applications, cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. In exposed mechanical room applications, bend excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

g. Provide securement Bands as follows:

1) Use where adhesives and mechanical pin fasteners are inappropriate or inadequate as required to secure insulation.

2) Secure each layer of insulation with securement bands seperately.

3) Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.

2. Pumps, Suction Diffusers, Strainers, Triple Duty Valves, Balancing and Control Valves, and other HVAC components needing periodic maintenance or adjustment:

a. Provide removable covers as specified above.

b. Fit covers closely to component being insulated and adjacent system insulation and coincide joints with component and adjacent equipment installations allowing easy removal for service access to all parts requiring service.

c. Valves with insulated non-condensing stem assembly: insulate and seal to stem, leaving insulated adjustable portion of valve\s exposed.

3. Surface Finish of Equipment Insulation:

a. Heating Equipment with no serviceable parts concealed: Reinforce insulation and cover with metal mesh and insulating cement. Recover with 8 oz. canvas, smoothly applied, adhered and sized with Benjamin Foster “BF-30" adhesive.

b. Cooling Equipment with no serviceable parts concealed: Glue all joints with 100% adhesive coverage of cut surfaces. Seal assembly vapor tight as required to avoid condensation. Paint all exposed insulation edges with manufacturers (white) finish, similar to “WB Armaflex” or equal, and cover all joints with manufacturer’s matching protective vapor barrier facing tape.

END OF SECTION 23 07 00

SECTION 23 08 00 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1. See especially Section 01 08 00 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements and Commissioning Coordinator responsibilities.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for the following Building Mechanical Systems, which are described in more detail in the technical specifications of Division 23.

1. Cooling generation systems, including direct-expansion systems.

2. Distribution systems, including supply and return air distribution (heating and cooling) systems, hot water/glycol distribution systems, chilled water/glycol distribution systems, exhaust fans and air-handling units.

3. Terminal units, including unit heaters.

4. Vibration, sound, and movement control systems, including vibration isolation devices, sound attenuation, and seismic restraints.

5. Energy Management and Control System.

6. Systems testing, adjusting, and balancing verification, including all of the above mentioned systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system, also known as Energy Management and Control System (EMCS).

B. Building Mechanical Systems: All Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components of the building systems traditionally known as Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, Refrigeration, Plumbing, and Electrical Works.

C. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.

D. CxA: Commissioning Authority –The Owner or a third party commissioning agent designated by the Owner.

E. DDC: Direct digital controls, a part of the BAS.

F. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.

G. "Systems," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

H. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For BAS and HVAC&R Testing Technician.

B. Construction Checklists: Provide construction pre-functional test checklists filled out by qualified technician for all equipment to be commissioned on this project, including but not limited to all :

1. BAS.
2. Heating-water piping and accessories.
3. Cooling-water piping and accessories.
4. Metal ducts and accessories.
5. Fans.
6. Air-handling units.
7. Hydronic Pumps.

C. Certificates of readiness and completion of installation.

D. Test and inspection reports and certificates.

E. Corrective action documents.

F. Instrumentation Calibration Information

G. Functional Performance Test Procedures

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. BAS Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform BAS construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

1. Journey-level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of BAS, HVAC&R, electrical concepts, and building operations.
2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
3. International Society of Automation (ISA) Certified Control Systems Technician (CCST) Level I.

B. HVAC&R Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform HVAC&R construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

1. Journey-level or equivalent skill level. Vocational School four-year program graduate or an Associates degree in mechanical systems, air conditioning, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience in servicing mechanical systems in the HVAC industry. Generally, required knowledge includes HVAC&R systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of HVAC&R equipment, assemblies, and systems.

2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.

3. One of the following:

    a. National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB) Certified Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Technician.
    b. Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) Certified Test and Balance Technician.
    c. Owner retains the right to waive NEBB or AABC Certification.

C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration: For test equipment and instrumentation required to perform HVAC&R commissioning work, perform the following:

1. Submit test equipment and instrumentation list. For each equipment or instrument, identify the following:

    a. Equipment/instrument identification number.
    b. Planned commissioning application or use.
    c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
    d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.

2. Test equipment and instrumentation shall meet the following criteria:

    a. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
    b. Be calibrated at the manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
    c. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout the duration of use on this Project.
    d. Be recalibrated/repaired if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.

D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:

1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the commissioning process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, perform the following:

a. Submit proprietary instrumentation and tools list. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:

1) Instrument or tool identification number.
2) Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
3) Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
4) Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in the operation and maintenance manuals.

c. HVAC&R proprietary test instrumentation and tools become the property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Provide mechanical work in accordance with contract document requirements.

B. Perform commissioning tests including Materials Checks, Installation Checks, Start-up Checks, Startups, and Functional Testing, all at the direction of the CxA.

C. Attend construction phase controls coordination meetings.

D. Attend and participate in TAB review and coordination meetings

E. Attend and participate in commissioning meetings.

F. Participate in Building Mechanical Systems maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.

G. Prepare Construction / Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Performance Test procedures and execute and document results. All Prefunctional Checklists and tests must be documented using specific, procedural forms in Microsoft Word or Excel software developed for that purpose. Prior to testing, Contractor shall submit those forms for review and approval.

H. Submit documentation required for Commissioning work. At minimum, include: Detailed Start-up procedures, Full sequences of operation, Operating and Maintenance data, Performance data, checkout sheet forms used by factory or manufacturer’s field technicians, Functional Performance Test Procedures, Control Drawings, and details of Owner-Contracted tests.

I. Review and approve other relative documentation for impact on Functional Performance Tests of the systems:

1. Shop Drawings and product submittal data related to systems or equipment to be commissioned. Review and incorporate comments from the CxA.

2. Incorporate manufacturer’s Start-up procedures with Prefunctional checklists.

3. Factory Performance Test Reports: Review and compile all factory performance data to assure that the data is complete prior to executing the Functional Performance Testing.

4. Complete equipment Construction / Prefunctional Checklists, Start-up certification forms, and the manufacturer's field or factory performance and Start-up test documentation: review the documentation prior to commencing with the scheduled Functional Performance Tests.

5. Final Testing Reports: Contractor or Subcontractor performing the test will review the documentation prior to commencing with the scheduled Functional Performance Tests.

6. Operating and Maintenance (O&M) information per requirements of the Technical Specifications and Division 01 requirements: To validate adequacy and completeness of the Functional Performance Tests, the Contractor shall ensure that the O&M manual content, marked-up record Drawings and Specifications, component submittal drawings, and other pertinent documents are available at the Project Site for review.

J. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

K. Schedule work so that required installations are completed, and systems verification checks and functional performance tests can be carried out on schedule.

L. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

M. Inspect, check and confirm in writing the proper installation and performance of all Work.

N. Provide technicians to assist during system verification and functional performance testing as required by the CxA

1.7 CxA'S AUTHORITY

A. Directing Commissioning.

B. Assign Commissioning Agent for various commissioning tasks to stand in for the CxA.

C. Edit and approve project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual Building Mechanical Systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be provided as part of the construction contract.

D. Verify Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Work are complete.

1.8 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.

2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for Building Mechanical Systems to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Certificate of readiness certifying that Building Mechanical Systems and associated controls are ready for testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

A. Certify that Building Mechanical Systems have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.

B. Certify that Building Mechanical Systems instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C. Certify that Contractor portions of testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing report discrepancies have been corrected, and corrective work approved.

D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock.

F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

G. Testing Instrumentation: Provide (Furnish and Install) measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.

B. Scope of Building Mechanical Systems testing includes entire HVAC&R installation. Testing includes measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions, accuracy and precision of sensing equipment, and other functional parameters as required, demonstrating that systems are performing as specified and intended. Commissioning testing includes verification of up to 30 percent of the control points, Testing and Balancing data, and other system requirements indicated in the individual technical sections, and on the drawings and schedules of these contract documents. Parameters not otherwise specified to be tested, as required to adequately demonstrate system performance, may constitute up to 10 percent of the 30 percent (3 percent of total).

C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.

D. The CxA along with the Building Mechanical Systems Contractors and their Subcontractors, especially the Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Subcontractor, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Subcontractor, shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Building Mechanical Systems based on the actual installed equipment and the contract documents.

E. Perform tests using design conditions whenever possible.

1. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.

2. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.

3. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.

F. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Building Mechanical System, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests. If deficiencies cannot be resolved, refine tests as required to adequately test Building Mechanical Systems within the constraints of the deficiency.

G. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.3 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING (TAB) VERIFICATION

A. Prior to performance of TAB Work, provide copies of approved sample report forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.

B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of TAB Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Work.

C. Subsequent to approval of formal TAB report, TAB Work will be subject to field verification. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of Building Mechanical Systems at the direction of the CxA. Roughly 10% of required TAB data points identified in TAB specification will be selected for subsequent field verification.

1. The CxA will notify TAB Subcontractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified..

2. The TAB Subcontractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.

3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.

4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.4 SPECIFIC COMPONENT ANS SYSTEM COMMISSIONING TESTS

A. Cooling Generation Systems

1. Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of chillers, refrigerant compressors and condensers, and other refrigeration systems. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested, as required demonstrating that any selected operating performance criteria are met or exceeded.

B. Air Distribution Systems

1. TAB Air Flow Verification:

a. Prerequisites: Completion of "Examination" Article requirements and correction of deficiencies, as specified in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

b. Completion of "Preparation" Article requirements for preparation of a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures, and system-readiness checks and reports, as specified in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

c. Scope: HVAC&R air systems and hydronic piping systems.

d. Purpose: Differential flow relationships intended to maintain air pressurization differentials between the various areas of Project.

e. Conditions of the Test:

1) Commissioning Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: As specified in "Inspections" Article in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

2) Systems operating in full heating mode with minimum outside-air volume.

3) Systems operating in full cooling mode with minimum outside-air volume.

4) For measurements at air-handling units with economizer controls; systems operating in economizer mode with 100 percent outside air.

f. Acceptance Criteria:

1) Under all conditions, rechecked measurements comply with "Inspections" Article in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

2) Additionally, no rechecked measurement shall differ from measurements documented in the final report by more than two times the tolerances allowed.

3) Under all conditions, where the Contract Documents indicate a differential in airflow between supply and exhaust and/or return in a space, the differential relationship shall be maintained.

C. General Hydronic System Testing

1. Pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic tests, and chemical treatment requirements are specified in Division 23 piping Sections. HVAC&R Contractor shall prepare a pipe system cleaning, flushing, and hydrostatic testing plan. Provide cleaning, flushing, testing, and treating plan and final reports to the CxA. Plan shall include the following:

a. Sequence of testing and testing procedures for each section of pipe to be tested, identified by pipe zone or sector identification marker. Markers shall be keyed to Drawings for each pipe sector, showing the physical location of each designated pipe test section. Drawings keyed to pipe zones or sectors shall be formatted to allow each section of piping to be physically located and identified when referred to in pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic testing, and chemical treatment plan.

b. Description of equipment for flushing operations.

c. Minimum flushing water velocity.

d. Tracking checklist for managing and ensuring that all pipe sections have been cleaned, flushed, hydrostatically tested, and chemically treated.

D. Hot Water/Glycol Distribution Systems

1. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Control:

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Startup of boiler.

2) Startup of heating-water pump(s).

3) TAB of heating-water flow and pressure.

4) Input Device: Heating-water supply temperature sensors, thermometers, and thermostatic devices.

5) Output Device: Control valve.

6) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Heating-water supply temperature.
b) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
c) Control-valve position.

b. Scope: Heating-water system.

c. Purpose: Control of heating-water supply temperature at input device.

d. Conditions of the Test:

1) Minimum heating-water flow.
2) Midrange Heating-Water Flow: 50 to 60 percent of maximum.
3) Maximum heating-water flow.

e. Acceptance Criteria: Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F of set point.

2. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Reset:

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Startup of boiler.

2) Startup of heating-water pump(s).

3) TAB of heating-water flow and pressure.

4) Input Device: Heating-water supply temperature sensors, thermometers, and thermostatic devices.

5) Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature sensor;

6) Output Device: Control valve.

7) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Outdoor-air temperature.
b) Heating-water supply temperature.
c) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
d) Control-valve position.

b. Scope: Heating-water system.

c. Purpose: Control of heating-water supply temperature at heating-water supply temperature input device in response to variable outdoor-air temperature input; outdoor-air sensor.

d. Conditions of the Test: Outdoor-air temperature input value may be overridden for this test.

1) Low Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature between minus 30 and 0 deg F.
2) Midrange Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature between 30 and 45 deg F.
3) High Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature above 65 deg F.

e. Acceptance Criteria: Heating-water supply temperature resets in straight-line relationship with outdoor-air temperature for the following reset schedule. Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within 2.0 deg F of set point.

1) 160 deg F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is minus 10 deg F.
2) 110 deg F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 45 deg F.
3) Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F of set point.

3. Pump Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Section “Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC”. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, VSD setup reports, and pump alignment certification to the CxA. Pumps shall deliver the design flow rate and pressure using no more energy than as scheduled. Pump alignment shall be as specified. VSD setup and adjustment shall be as specified.

4. Control Primary Circulating Pump(s):

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Startup of heating-water pump(s).

2) Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature; outdoor-air sensor.

3) Output Device: Heating-water pump; DDC system command to starter relay.

4) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Outdoor-air temperature.

b) Operating status of primary circulating pump(s).

b. Scope: Heating-water pump(s) and associated controls.

c. Purpose: On-off control of heating-water pump(s) in response to variable outdoor-air temperature input; outdoor-air sensor.

d. Conditions of the Test:

1) High Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature above 65 deg F.
2) Low Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature below 65 deg F.

e. Acceptance Criteria:

1) High Temperature: Pump(s) are off when outside-air temperature is above 65 deg F.
2) Low Temperature: Pump(s) are on when outside-air temperature is below 65 deg F.

E. Chilled Water/Glycol Distribution Systems

1. Chilled-Water Supply Temperature Control:

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Startup of chiller.

2) Startup of chilled-water pump(s).

3) TAB of chilled-water flow and pressure.

4) Input Device: Chilled-water supply temperature sensors, thermometers, and thermostatic devices.

5) Output Device: Control valve.

6) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Chilled -water supply temperature.
b) Chilled -water supply temperature set point.
c) Control-valve position.

b. Scope: Chilled -water system.

c. Purpose: Control of Chilled -water supply temperature at input device.

d. Conditions of the Test:

1) Minimum Chilled -water flow.
2) Midrange Chilled -Water Flow: 50 to 60 percent of maximum.
3) Maximum Chilled -water flow.

e. Acceptance Criteria: Under all conditions, chilled-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F of set point.

2. Chilled -Water Supply Temperature Reset:

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Startup of Chiller.

2) Startup of chilled-water pump(s).

3) TAB of chilled -water flow and pressure.

4) Input Device: Chilled -water supply temperature sensors, thermometers, and thermostatic devices.

5) Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature sensor;

6) Output Device: Control valve.

7) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Outdoor-air temperature.
b) Chilled -water supply temperature.
c) Chilled -water supply temperature set point.
d) Control-valve position.

b. Scope: Chilled -water system.

c. Purpose: Constant chilled water supply temperature.

1) Under all conditions, chilled-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F of set point.

3. Pump Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Section “Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC”. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, VSD setup reports, and pump alignment certification to the CxA. Pumps shall deliver the design flow rate and pressure using no more energy than as scheduled. Pump alignment shall be as specified. VSD setup and adjustment shall be as specified.

4. Control Primary Circulating Pump(s):

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Startup of chilled water pump(s).

2) Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature; outdoor-air sensor.

3) Output Device: Chilled-water pump; DDC system command to starter relay.

4) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Outdoor-air temperature.
b) Operating status of primary circulating pump(s).

b. Scope: Chilled -water pump(s) and associated controls.

F. Air-Handling Units

1. Air-Handler Mixed-Air Control:

a. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

1) Minimum Position Input Device: DDC system time schedule.

2) Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).

3) Heating Reset Input Device: DDC system software.

4) Supply-Air Temperature Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.

5) Display the following at the operator's workstation:

a) Mixed-air-temperature indication.
b) Mixed-air-temperature set point.
c) Mixed-air damper position.

b. Scope: Air handler with mixed-air control and associated controls.

c. Purpose:

1) Occupied time control.
2) Minimum damper position control.
3) Heating reset control.
4) Supply-air temperature control.
5) Cooling reset control.
6) Unoccupied time control.

d. Conditions of the Test:

1) Occupied Time Control: Start in unoccupied schedule. Advance to occupied schedule time.

2) Minimum Damper Position Control: Command system to mode in which minimum damper position is required.

3) Heating Reset Control: Create a call for heating.

4) Supply-Air Temperature Control: Override supply-air temperature set point to a value 2.0 deg F above current supply-air temperature.

5) Unoccupied Time Control: Advance to unoccupied schedule time.

6) Control Data Trend Log: Set up a data trend log of the following input device values and output device commands. Record data at hourly intervals. Submit trend data for 24-hour periods in which natural conditions require heating reset control, supply-air temperature control, and economizer cooling control.

a) Minimum position input device.
b) Heating reset input device.
c) Supply-air temperature input device.
d) Cooling reset input device.

e. Acceptance Criteria:

1) Occupied Time Control: Mixed-air control is active in occupied mode.

2) Minimum Damper Position Control: Controller positions outdoor-air dampers to minimum position.

3) Heating Reset Control: Controller sets outdoor-air dampers to minimum position.

4) Supply-Air Temperature Control: Controller modulates outdoor-, return-, and relief-air dampers to maintain temporary supply-air temperature set point plus or minus 1.0 deg F.

5) Economizer Cooling Control: Controller sets outdoor-air dampers to mazimum position when outdoor-air enthalpy is less than return-air enthalpy.

6) Unoccupied Time Control: Controller positions outdoor- and relief-air dampers closed and return-air dampers open.

7) Control Data Trend Log: Data verifies control according to sequence of control.

G. Unit Heaters

1. Unit Heater Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Section “Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC”. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and Unit Heater performance certification to the CxA. Unit Heaters shall be equipped with all accessories as specified and scheduled and shall be demonstrated to deliver the scheduled airflow and heat capacity at no greater noise or power use levels than specified.

H. Energy Management And Control System

1. Testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Section “Instrumentation and Control for HVAC”, Section 3.11 SYSTEM TESTING AND COMMISSIONING. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and EMCS performance certification to the CxA.

2. Provide password and any other hardware and software as required to enable CxA to communicate directly, with full graphics and control capability, with the EMCS from the CxA's office over an internet browser interface. Install complete early in project.

I. Electrical Power Distribution Systems Serving The Above Listed Mechanical (Plumbing And HVAC&R) Systems

1. Be prepared for CxA to take thermal images of field connections for any line voltage power connections.

END OF SECTION 23 08 00

SECTION 23 09 00 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Review and study all drawings and this entire project specification to become familiar with the equipment and system operation as designed and to verify the quantities and types of controllers, valves, dampers, operators, alarms, points, etc., required.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section describes the requirements for a complete Energy Management and Control System (EMCS) for building mechanical systems and components, based upon Direct Digital Control (DDC) logic including WEB served operator interface via one new as well as the existing computer Operator Work Stations, distributed microprocessor controls, and integrated electronic components, interfaces, and actuation, all installed complete as specified.

B. Perform all work in cooperation with the Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and other Prime Contractors. Coordinate all work with the construction schedule established by the Owner, Architect, and Construction Manager, and immediately report any delays including circumstances causing the delays.

C. It is the Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District's (Owner) intent to provide necessary upgrades to and extend the existing Energy Management and Control System (EMCS) network as designed and installed by Automated Control Logic (ACL).

D. Bidders alternative EMCS shall include: General removal of all existing controls components currently serving the Owners facilities, and providing new controls complete as specified herein. Provide new graphic displays for all new controls, and custom configure graphic displays to meet Owner and Engineer requirements. Provide each of the following portions of the complete EMCS as a standalone system that can communicate with any other Direct Digital Control (DDC) system which is following the same protocol:

1. Operator Work Stations (OWS): Provide one desk top computer as a complete OWS, installed at a location of the Owner's choosing; and integrate this project's controls complete with the EMCS at the District's facilities offices and other buildings. Provide software and programming for new OWS and update software at existing EMCS complete to incorporate this addition. Provide guaranteed seamless two way communications from each, including full control, with the EMCS provided as a part of this project and the existing campus EMCS.

    a. The OWS shall monitor, display, and control information from the EMCS through one software package. Rebooting of the OWS, or opening a separate program to access the existing building's multiple systems is not acceptable.

b. The new OWS shall meet the hardware and performance requirements of this specification.

c. The OWS shall allow customization of the system as described in this specification.

d. The OWS shall:

1) Provide new color graphic control panels for all equipment provided or modified as part of this project, as outlined below and on the drawings,
2) Allow operators to view and work with all DDC points associated with all DDC equipment provided or modified as part of this project,
3) Allow operators to create custom graphics and/or control programming generation for any and all new equipment.

2. Network Control Unit (NCU): Provide central processor WEB server capability for and fully integrated two way communications with all energy use and management equipment provided or modified by this project, along with any third party stand alone controls provided by the manufacturers of the Air Handlers, Refrigeration Machinery, Boilers, and Variable Speed Drives. NCU shall be capable of supporting a minimum of 127 field devices, providing reserve capacity for addition of future points and expansion of DDC system into building. The DDC system's NCU shall communicate with the OWS entirely using the BACnet protocol, with a conformance class of 5, as defined in the latest officially amended version of ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004.

3. Distributed Controls: System controls shall include but not be limited to all controllers, sensors, devices, wiring, and all other hardware and software required to perform all of the functions and controls described later in this specification and on the drawings, including fully integrated two-way control of boilers, chiller, condensing units, pumps, VSDs, heat exchanger, and all associated temperatures, pressures, and other controllable parameters of mechanical equipment and systems provided or modified as part of this project. Provide control through the EMCS as outlined in the general controls sequences of operations below, as shown on the project drawings, and with controls similar to as shown where the exact configuration is not explicitly covered by the drawing and specification sequence of operations.

4. Engineer's Office: Provide password and any other hardware and software as required to enable Engineer to communicate directly, with full graphics and control capability, with the EMCS from the Engineer's office over an internet browser interface. Install complete early in project. Engineer will utilize to check progress of installation, to check operation of system during the punch list period, and to monitor system operation after completion of the work.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct Digital Control.

B. PC: Personal computer.

C. EMCS: Energy Management and Control System, includes the complete automatic temperature control and energy use management system specified herein, based upon DDC technology, incorporating all necessary input and output devices, connecting hardware, software, and accessories.

D. OWS: Operator Workstation which is the main operator interface with the EMCS, comprised of a PC with graphical two way interface with, and data base and control capabilities for, the entire EMCS.

E. UC: Unitary Controller, a version of the SCU which is a smaller microprocessor-based controller, possibly pre-programmed to function specifically for the operation of a particular piece of equipment, such as a standard configuration air handler, unit ventilator, variable air volume box, lighting circuit, etc.

F. SCU: Standalone Control Unit, a microprocessor-based controller panel, which contains all necessary control logic to carry out its own, local functions, and can function independently of other SCU panels and all remaining portions of the EMCS. The SCU may serve one or many types of HVAC equipment and is not factory programmed for only one purpose.

G. NCU: Network Control Unit, a secure central processing unit microprocessor based WEB server residing directly on the Owner's Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN; providing direct communications to SCUs, UCs, and other field devices; integrating and processing their data and presenting it as custom HTML WEB pages in accordance with custom programmed graphical interface edited at an OWS.

H. LAN: Local Area Network - the Owner's existing Ethernet communications backbone which connects all of the owners buildings (and various rooms) on their campus. To be used by the Contractor where possible to connect OWSs, NCUs, SCUs, and UCs. Coordinate with Owner to determine extent of interconnection possible.

I. BACnet: A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control networks as defined in American National Standard ANSI/ASHRAE 135-1995, including any updates or revisions to this document.

J. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.

K. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.

L. I/O: Input/output.

M. Modbus: a serial communications protocol originally published by Modicon (now Schneider Electric) in 1979 for use with its programmable logic controllers (PLCs).

N. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.

O. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

P. System Modem: a modem which is installed on the EMCS so that a remote SCU, UC, or OWS can connect up to the LAN and can function the same as if it were locally-installed.

Q. System Printer: a printing device which is installed on the LAN so that all EMCS components can utilize it as an output device.

R. TCC: Temperature Controls Contractor - The entity responsible for the work described by this section of specifications.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Comply with the following performance requirements:

1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.

2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.

3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.

4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.

5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.

6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.

7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.

8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:

   a. Water Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   b. Water Pressure: Plus or minus 2 percent of full scale.
   c. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   d. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
   e. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
   f. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F.
   g. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F.
   h. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
   i. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide all labor, material, equipment, software, and programming necessary to meet the functional intent of the EMCS, and the rigid requirements as specified herein and as shown on the drawings. Provide, without additional cost to the Owner, all equipment and labor not specifically referred to herein or on the plans, which are required to meet the functional intent expressed in the sequences of operations herein or on the drawings. The contractor is responsible for all costs of changes in the work required by substitute equipment.

B. The TCC must have been in business for at least ten years, providing DDC systems as their primary business with documented success. They shall have a minimum of five years as a manufacturer's authorized distributor or branch office representative for one or more of the manufacturers specified. They must have a trained staff of application engineers, project managers, software engineers, commissioning staff, training staff, and service staff experienced in the configuration, programming and service of the EMCS. They must have a local service department and stock the manufacturer's standard replacement parts.

C. The EMCS shall be installed only by skilled mechanics employed directly by the TCC except wiring may be installed by their first tier subcontractor under the TCC project manager's direct supervision. Any subcontractor shall have documented success installing controls with the TCC for a minimum of five years prior to this project. Sub-contractual relations shall in no way relieve the contractor of any of their obligations under their contract.

D. The TCC shall have a training facility with regularly scheduled training as outlined below so as to provide ongoing regularly scheduled application training.

E. Manufacturer must be a firm regularly engaged in manufacture of microprocessor temperature control equipment, of configuration and capabilities similar to or better than specified equipment, for at least ten years, and must have similar earlier vintage models that have been in continuous satisfactory use for not less than ten years in similar service.

F. All work shall conform to the following Codes and Standards, as applicable to the Contracted Work at the Project job site and to the relevant Authorities Having Jurisdiction at the Project site. All products shall be labeled with the appropriate approval markings. In the case of conflict or discrepancy, the latest and most stringent regulation or code shall apply.

1. National Electrical Code (NEC) and applicable local Electrical Codes.
2. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) listing and labels.
3. Underwriters Laboratories of Canada (ULC) listing and labels.
4. UL 864 UUKL Smoke Control.
5. UL 864 UOJZ Fire Protection Signaling Systems.
6. UL-873; Temperature Indication and Regulating Equipment.
7. UL-916; Energy Management Systems for BAS components and ancillary equipment.
8. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code.
9. NFPA 92A and 92B Smoke Purge/Control Equipment.
10. Factory Mutual (FM).
11. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
12. National Electric Manufacturer's Association (NEMA).
13. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME).
14. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE).
15. American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII).

16. Electronics Industries Association (EIA).
17. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).
18. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
19. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) including Part 15, R.F. Devices.
20. Americans Disability Act (ADA).
21. Uniform Building Code (UBC).
22. NEMA 250 – Enclosures For Electrical Equipment (1,000 V Maximum).
23. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code.
24. IESNA – Illumination Engineering Society of North America.
25. UL 50 – Cabinets and Boxes.

1.6 GUARANTEES

A. Guarantee the EMCS complete to be free from defects in durability, materials, and workmanship, except for damages from other causes, for a period of one year after final acceptance.

B. Guarantee System to:

1. Maintain temperatures within +/- 1°Fof setting, within capacity of HVAC equipment.

C. Provide a one (1) year maintenance agreement to run concurrently with the Guarantee period, consisting of 24 hour emergency service and scheduled service (once per month minimum), as required addressing reported issues, for inspection and adjustment of operating controls, and replacement of parts or instruments found deficient or defective during this period.

D. Provide system backup and restore, software, programming, and sequence of operations enhancements, revisions, and adjustments at no charge to the Owner both during construction and commissioning and during this warrantee period.

1.7 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

A. Refer to controls schematic drawings including written sequence of operations for specific pieces of equipment. Provide controls as specified and as required to achieve sequence of operations shown on drawings as well as specified below in general programming, and with controls similar to as shown where the exact configuration is not explicitly covered by the drawing and specification sequence of operations.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit on controls in multiple portions as job progresses Include in each submittal a summary just inside the cover sheet of previously approved portions of submittal, currently submitted portions, and those portions not submitted yet. During closeout documentation, assemble all approved controls submittals into one package designed for use as both an installation and a maintenance manual.

B. Submit a Technical Proposal within 30 days of contract award, complete with the diagrams, Specification Compliance Reports, product information, and supporting documentation outlined below. Arrange the Technical Proposal in order of the specification article numbers, with tabs (bookmarked .pdf files for electronic submittals) at each division. The Technical Proposal shall be designed for use as both a clear demonstration of qualifications and as an installation and maintenance manual.

C. Include the following in a complete Technical Proposal:

1. Description of service capabilities including resumes for service technicians and designers that will be responsible for this project.

2. A list of local jobs (three minimum) of similar type and size the bidder has installed, utilizing the products proposed for this project, with Owner's representatives and engineer of record's names and telephone numbers for reference. This list should directly reflect:

    a. Projects that include direct integration to third party microprocessor controllers of the type specified within this scope.

3. Submit name of any proposed installation subcontractors, along with their statement of qualifications, resumes for service technicians who will be responsible for this project, and 3 local references for comparable recent jobs.

4. EMCS network wiring diagram showing interconnection of all panels, workstations, system printer(s) etc. A diagram describing system architecture for this project with product code numbers for workstation, network controllers, application specific controllers, transducers, sensors, communication networks, etc.. Diagram shall include all components intended to be used to meet or exceed specification requirements, shown in their functional relation to one another.

5. Provide information on owner training provided as part of the bid package as well as additional opportunities and factory schools available with associated costs. Include details of Operator HVAC Training System as specified herein.

6. Specification Compliance Report. The specification compliance report shall address every paragraph within this specification (230900), utilizing an outline format indicating clearly how the proposed system complies with this specification as follows:

    a. No Exception - proposed system complies without exception to both the letter and intent of this specification. Include Data Communications Protocol Certificates certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

    b. Substitution Exception - proposed system is believed to meet the functional intent, but not the letter of the specification. For each paragraph for which a Substitution Exception is taken, the Specification Compliance Report shall identify all deviations from what is specified in the given paragraph and provide a complete description of what is included and how the proposed substitution meets the functional intent.

c. Non-Compliance Exception - proposed system does not meet specification letter or functional intent, and the contractors intent is that the paragraphs requirements will not be provided. For each paragraph for which a Non-Compliance Exception is taken, the Specification Compliance Report shall identify all deviations from what is specified in the given paragraph and provide a complete description of what is included and why the contractor believes their proposed system should still be considered in spite of the non-compliance

d. For all paragraphs indicated as "No Exception" or "Substitution Exception", provide and reference factory product documentation to substantiate compliance.

7. Hardware Product Data Bulletins for all specified products, including PC components of OWS. Each bulletin shall describe product features, model numbers and manufacturer's name.

8. Software Product Data Bulletins for all specified software features. Each bulletin shall describe product features, model numbers, and manufacturer's name.

D. As job progresses and in ample time for review and iteration as required for complete approval, submit the following:

1. Complete written description of all proposed control sequences and control strategy, with any deviations from the specified sequence of operations highlighted and explained.

2. Detailed wiring and piping control diagrams and system description for each system.

3. Detailed layout and nameplate list for all control panels, including pneumatic, unit-specific controllers, data-gathering panels, microprocessor-based panels, third party microprocessor controllers, etc.

4. Damper schedule giving size, type, velocity, pressure drop, configuration, location, and number, type, and size of motorized actuators. Include apparatus bulletins and data sheets. Include all existing to remain dampers proposed for reuse along with comments on condition.

5. Valve schedule giving valve identification tag abbreviation, location, service, failsafe position, pipe size, valve size, make/model, type, configuration, design flow, capacity index (cv), and pressure drop. Include apparatus bulletins and data sheets.

6. Schedule showing direct integration to all third party microprocessor controllers included in this project, including all points available in a point listing describing point type (analog input, binary input, analog output and binary output), point address, units, applicable software interlocks (alarm, interlock, sequence, etc.), and a verbal description of the function and intended control of the point.

7. Termination schedule and point listing describing point type, (analog input, binary input, analog output and binary output), physical point location (eg. AHU #1 mixed air) and software interlocks (alarm, interlock, sequence, etc.).

8. A complete listing of inputs and outputs, control loops and/or routines, timing functions, and facilities management system functions for each controlled system. This listing shall include point logical names and identifiers.

9. For all equipment, submit copy of written installation, maintenance, and operating directions and details, along with manufacturer's printed installation instructions for all equipment furnished, showing required installation and location of the above items.

10. Provide a sample of program language and description of how programming is accomplished.

11. Color printout sheets of representative samples of all proposed graphics and text based OWS pages.

E. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

F. Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.

G. Field quality-control test reports.

H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.
2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
5. Calibration records and list of set points.

1.9 RELATED AND ANCILLARY WORK

A. Electrical control wiring associated with building fire alarm system and duct smoke detectors: Installation is specified under Division 26.

B. Power source wiring for general (non-controls) HVAC motorized equipment: Installation specified under Division 26.

C. Provide power source and controls wiring for all EMCS equipment, complete back to breakers designated as temperature control power breakers on electrical drawings or other approved electrical power panel space. Includes all controls power source wiring, communication wiring, and actuated device power and control wiring. Installation specified both herein and in applicable sections of Division 26.

D. Piping work as required to maintain pressure tight integrity of all hydronic, potable water, and refrigerant based systems for the installation of all piping mounted controls components, including control valve installation, valve and control manifolds, pressure and temperature taps, flow switches, thermal wells, and similar devices: Installation specified both herein and under applicable piping section.

E. Sheet metal work as required to maintain pressure tight integrity of all airside systems for the installation of all airside mounted controls components, including dampers, pressure and temperature probe taps, flow sensors, and similar devices: Installation specified both herein and under applicable sheet metal and ductwork sections.

F. Insulation work as required to maintain the thermal integrity of the various systems associated with and subsequent to controls component installations: Installation specified in Division 23 section on Insulation.

G. For all equipment: Provide and follow written installation directions and details, with manufacturer's printed installation instructions for all equipment furnished, showing required installation and location of the above items.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for submittal, approval, fabrication, and shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer in ample time for factory installation without impacting project schedule.

B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.11 INSTRUCTION AND TRAINING

A. Factory Authorized Control System Training:

1. Provide factory trained and authorized instructors and control technicians to instruct the Owner's operating personnel.

2. Factory authorized on site training - Provide two (2) on site training sessions each four (4) hours in duration covering network layout, controllers, and software functions. Both generic and product specific training shall be provided. Sessions shall be scheduled by the Contractor at the Owner's convenience, at any time up to two years after system installation.

3. Provide videotaping and audio taping of all training sessions, both off and on site. Turn over two copies of tapes and three copies of maintenance manual to Owner's representative.

B. Include in closeout documentation signed letter of acknowledgment of receipt of factory authorized training, videotapes, and maintenance manuals.

1.12 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate all controls work required for a complete operable controls system as specified. Carefully review project summary and scoping documentation and coordinate with contractors responsible for various ancillary portions of controls work. Where supportive or ancillary work is not specifically assigned to another contractor, provide complete as required for a complete operable system.

B. Coordinate equipment with Division 28 Sections on Fire Detection and Alarm Systems to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.

C. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.

D. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Sections on Electrical Power Monitoring and Control to achieve compatibility of communication interfaces.

E. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Sections on Panelboards to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.

F. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Sections on Motor Controls to achieve compatibility with motor starters and annunciation devices.

G. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Refer to Section 23 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC SYSTEMS for additional information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Temperature Control Sub-Contractors (TCCs): Existing Energy Management and Control System (EMCS) and Basis of Design Energy Management and Control System (EMCS) is Schneider Electric Controls as installed by Automated Logic Controls. Subject to compliance with requirements, available TCCs offering products and services that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Automated Logic Controls (ALC).
2. Delta Controls.
3. Johnson Controls Incorporated as installed by JCI.

B. In other Part 2 articles where specific components are described, the basis of design and named equivalent TCCs integrate multiple manufacturers' components into a coherent system. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified:

1. Armstrong
2. Automated Logic Corporation.
3. Functional Devices Inc.
4. Honeywell International Inc.; Home & Building Control.
5. Invensys Building Systems.
6. Johnson Controls, Inc.; Controls Group.
7. KMC Controls/Kreuter Manufacturing Company.
8. McQuay International.
9. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.
10. Schneider Electric
11. Solidyne Corp.
12. Staefa Control System Inc.; Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.
13. TAC Americas, INC.
14. TCS/Basys Controls.
15. Tekmar Control Systems, Inc.
16. Teletrol Systems Incorporated.
17. Tour & Andersson Control, Inc.
18. Trane; Worldwide Applied Systems Group
19. Triangle MicroSystems, Inc.
20. Victaulic, Inc.
21. Voltec, Inc.

2.2 GENERAL SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. The EMCS shall consist of the following:

1. Operators' Workstations (OWS).

2. File Server (FS).

3. Network Control Units (NCU).

4. Standalone Control Units (SCU).

5. Application Specific Unitary Controllers (UC).

6. All controls power wiring 120 volts or less, all network and communication wiring, fiber optic cable, and other controls communication media.

7. All EMCS communications devices.

8. All related field devices including remote I/O cabinets, transformers and power supplies, relays, contactors, transducers, switches, cabling, and related electronic control equipment.

9. All necessary software and custom programming, including graphics and reports.

10. All necessary inputs, outputs, and devices required to meet the features and intent described herein including but not limited to:

    a. Transducers.
    b. Water flow switches and sensors.
    c. Differential Pressure sensors.
    d. Hydronic control valves.
    e. Opposed blade (control) or parallel blade (shutoff), low leakage dampers.
    f. Temperature, pressure, and humidity sensors and safety devices.
    g. Electronic valve and damper actuators.

11. All other equipment necessary for a complete, operational, EMCS.

B. The design of the EMCS shall network OWSs, FCs, NCUs, SCUs, UCs, and all sensors, safeties, actuators, and other devices. Inherent in the system's design shall be the ability to expand or modify the network via the Internet, the Level 1 LAN, the Level 2 bus, or via auto e-mail or auto-dial telephone line modem connections, or via a combination of all four networking schemes. LAN communications between buildings shall be standard ETHERNET TCP/IP and shall be compatible with the district's existing ETHERNET LAN.

C. The EMCS shall:

1. Be modular in nature, with distributed controllers operating in multi-user, multi-tasking environment on token-passing network.

2. Be re-programmable and programmed to control mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems.

3. Be capable of integrating multiple building functions, equipment supervision and control, alarm management, energy management, historical data collection, and archiving.

4. Permit expansion of both capacity and functionally through the addition of components and programming.

5. Include an operator workstation which permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

6. Not be dependent upon any single device for alarm reporting and control execution. Each DDC panel shall operate independently by performing its own specified control, alarm management, operator I/O, and historical data collection. The failure of any single component or network connection shall not interrupt the execution of control strategies at other operational devices.

D. The system architecture shall consist of no more than two communication levels as follows:

1. Level 1 shall be on the Owner's ETHERNET LAN as possible within the constraints of this specification. Contractor shall field verify extent and capacity of existing LAN with Owner prior to creation of network layout drawings, and shall include any and all extensions of the LAN required for complete and robust functioning of the EMCS:

a. Level 1 communications shall use the BACnet protocol.

b. This LAN operates under ETHERNET protocol at 10 Mbps or other speed as determined by the Owner. The Level 1 LAN will provide transfer of point data, alarms and file activity among OWSs, NCUs, and SCUs.

c. Any data from a Level 2 controller can also be transmitted onto this bus through a Level 1 controller. The high speed LAN shall support multi-user communications and multi-session activity. That is, all global data sharing shall occur simultaneously with the transmission of alarm data or user activity.

d. OWSs and NCUs shall reside directly on the LAN such that communications may be executed directly between controllers, directly between workstations, and between controllers and workstations, on a peer-to-peer basis.

e. SCUs and UCs may reside directly on the Level 1 Lan at the TCCs option.

2. Level 2 shall be on a EIA-485 bus or other comparable technology, designed to support a family of dedicated local controllers for control of HVAC equipment and lighting. The Level 2 bus shall communicate bi-directionally with the Level 1 LAN through NCU controllers for transmission of global data:

a. The Level 2 bus, or field bus, shall support local control units (SCUs and UCs) of modular size for operation of the building's HVAC and lighting systems. This bus shall operate at a minimum speed of 200 kbps with a length of 4000 feet and 10Mbps with a length of 150 feet, with 32 nodes before requiring a network repeater. A minimum of 127 controllers shall be configurable on the field bus.

b. The field bus shall permit peer-to-peer communications among all Level 2 controllers and allow simultaneous communications with portable computer service tools that are connected to a Level 2 controller. Failure of any Level 1 NCU controller shall not impair the operation of its associated field bus.

c. All Level 2 field wiring that connects non native BACnet unitary controllers shall have an additional wiring set run in parallel dedicated for future use by native BACnet replacement controllers.

E. NCUs shall be able to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to any other NCU or combination of NCUs on the network without dependence upon a central processing device. NCUs shall also be able to send alarm reports to multiple operator workstations without dependence upon a central processing device.

F. Dynamic Data Access:

1. All operator devices, network resident, internet connected, or connected via dial-up modems, shall have the ability to access all point status and application report data, or execute control functions for any and all other devices via the LAN. Access to data shall be based upon logical identification of building equipment.

2. Access to system data shall not be restricted by the hardware configuration of the EMCS. The hardware configuration of the EMCS network shall be totally transparent to the user when accessing data or developing control programs.

3. All points contained on Level 1 and Level 2 controllers shall be considered global points. Any program in any controller on the network shall be able to reference any point in any controller regardless of its location on the network.

G. General Network Design:

1. Network design shall include the following provisions:

a. Data transfer rate for alarm reporting, report generation from multiple controllers, and upload/download between SCUs and OWSs shall be a minimum of 2.5 Megabaud.

b. Support of any combination of controllers and operator workstations directly connected to the local area network. A minimum of 50 devices shall be supported on a single local area network.

c. Detection and accommodation of single or multiple failures of either OWSs, SCUs, or the network media. The network shall include provisions for automatically reconfiguring itself to allow all operational equipment to perform their designated functions as effectively as possible in the event of single or multiple failures.

d. Message and alarm buffering to prevent information from being lost.

e. Error detection, correction, and re-transmission to guarantee data integrity.

f. Default device definition to prevent loss of alarms or data, and ensure alarms are reported as quickly as possible in the event an operator device does not respond.

g. Commonly available, multiple sourced, networking components and Ethernet protocols shall be used to allow the EMCS to coexist with other networking applications on the Owner's existing LAN/WAN. Ethernet and BACnet are acceptable technologies. BACnet system shall conform to the latest ASHRAE Standards and recommendations.

h. Use of an industry standard IEEE 802.x protocol.

i. Provide synchronization of the real-time clocks in all EMCS panels.

2.3 OPERATOR WORK STATION (OWS)

A. Provide FCC certified class B computer systems as the OWS to control operator input/output, data storage and transmission to and from the system controllers, and to perform all software functions as noted hereafter. Provide hardware and software commercially available nationally from local vendors, with repair parts and service available locally from these vendors. Provide computer products by one of the following:

1. Apple or equal.

2. Dell or equal
3. Gateway or equal.
4. Hewlett Packard or equal.
5. IBM or equal

B. Central Server Computer:

1. Dimensions to fit standard 2S-2U slots.

2. Single 750w Hot Plug Power supply, complete with UPS.

3. INTEL Core i7 3.8 GHz minimum, 8MB L2 cache microprocessor

4. Minimum 24GB dual-channel DDR3 1600MHz SDRAM memory.

5. Provide four (4) internal minimum 500 GB, 7200rpm SATA 3Bbps 3.5 Hot-Plug with 12 – Hot Swap hard disk drives, with average access time of less than 30 milliseconds for storage of primary system data base and operating parameter files.

6. Provide a 56K baud auto answer/auto dial modem as manufactured by US Robotics.

7. Provide two (2) parallel and two (2) serial communications ports. The serial communications ports shall be capable of transfer rates of at least 9600 baud (RS-232-C standard). Provide at least four unused USB 2.0 ports.

8. Provide built-in ethernet networking capabilities (10/100Mbits) and wireless capability.

C. Desktop Workstation Computer:

1. INTEL Core i7 3.8 GHz minimum, 8MB L2 cache microprocessor.

2. Minimum 24GB dual-channel DDR3 1600MHz SDRAM memory.

3. The CPU shall be for desktop use and shall have at least three (3) unused expansion slots.

4. Provide an Integrated AC'97 Full-Duplex Audio card.

5. Provide a 13 in 1 media reader.

6. Provide an on board Combo Drive: 40x/10x/24x CD-RW and 8x DVD-ROM.

7. Provide two (2) internal minimum 500 GB each, 7200rpm hard disk drives, with average access time of less than 30 milliseconds.

8. Provide a 56K baud auto answer/auto dial modem as manufactured by US Robotics.

9. Provide two (2) parallel and two (2) serial communications ports. The serial communications ports shall be capable of transfer rates of at least 9600 baud (RS-232-C standard). Provide at least four unused USB 2.0 ports.

10. Provide built-in ethernet networking capabilities (10/100Mbits) and wireless capability.

11. Provide graphics controller similar to 4GB NVIDIA® GeForce® GTX 745 DDR3.

12. Accessories:

    a. Provide a 24" flat panel monitor, backlit LCD, TFT, Midnight Gray, Up to 1920x1080 Pixels, 0.27 mm Pixel Pitch, Anti-glare with Hard Coating, 15-Pin D-Sub / 24-Pin DVI-D / S-Video / Composite Video / USB 2.0 Connectors.

    b. Provide a black and white laser printer with parallel interface, twelve pages per minute minimum at 1200 dpi equivalent, ½ ream paper storage minimum, dual side printing.

    c. Provide a 101-key enhanced style keyboard capable of generating all the standard ASCII characters. Function keys "F1" through "F12" and numeric keyboard shall also be a part of keyboard.

    d. Provide stereo speakers.

    e. Provide an optical mouse, two buttons and wheel, to serve as the pointing device.

    f. Provide a UL listed 1500 VA minimum UPS with surge protector, with at least six (6) electrical outlets, one (1) cable outlet, and one (1) modem outlet.

D. Operator Workstation Software

1. Operating System: Microsoft Windows XP Professional, 10 Business / Enterprise Professional, or comparable OS (verify with Owner and provide system compatible with Owner's IT system), with high-speed Internet access.

2. EMCS Application Software General Requirements:

    a. The software shall communicate with the existing EMCS over the Owner's LAN using ASHRAE 135 and ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocols.

    b. The software shall be a standard application for the off the shelf MS Windows OS selected above, and shall not require a dedicated OWS, nor a different operating system from the Owner's other office management software.

    c. Standard utility software packages shall be available through local retail outlets.

    d. The OWS shall output advisories and unacknowledged change-of-state or out-of-limits occurrences in a dedicated and protected area of the viewing screen.

    e. Graphical and Text Based Displays: At the option of the user, Operator workstation shall provide consistent graphical or text based displays of all system points and application data described in this specification. Point identification, engineering units, status indication and application naming conventions shall be the same at all workstations.

    f. Individual point information shall be coded via eight different colors. These colors shall be defined with respect to system type and condition.

g. Multiple, Concurrent Displays: provide the ability to simultaneously view several different types of system displays in overlapping windows to speed building analysis. For example, provide the ability to simultaneously display a graphic depicting an air handling unit, while displaying the trend graph of several associated space temperatures to allow the user to analyze system performance. If the interface is unable to display several different types of displays at the same time, the TCC shall provide at least two networked operator stations.

h. Employ browser-like functionality for ease of navigation, with a tree view (similar to Windows Explorer) for quick viewing of, and access to, the hierarchical structure of the database. Provide menu-pull downs and toolbars, "hot-button" commands and navigation to permit the operator to perform tasks with a minimum knowledge of the HVAC Control System or basic computing skills. These shall include, but are not limited to, forward/backward buttons, home button, and a context sensitive locator line (similar to a URL line), that displays the location and the selected object identification.

i. Provide for modifying common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points in a graphical manner, for example using a graphical slider, without requiring operator keyboard entry.

3. Application Software Features:

a. Security:

1) The software shall be designed so that up to 256 users of the software can each have a unique username and password. Each username/password combination shall be linked to a set of capabilities within the software, set and editable only by a system administrator. The sets of capabilities shall range from View only, Acknowledge alarms, Enable/disable and change values, Program, and Administer. The system shall allow the above capabilities to be applied independently to each and every class of object in the system. Passwords shall be changeable through on-line keyboard entry by either the individual user or the administrator.

2) There shall be an adjustable inactivity timer that automatically logs off the current operator after the timer has expired.

3) Record all operator inputs executed under a valid password in a data log, including operator name.

4) At no time shall the actual password numbers be printed on the screen, except for operators with the strictest level of password, who shall be able to generate a password summary listing.

a) The password summary shall include at least a 24-character name, login ID, password, time out value, and security level.

5) Passwords shall be exactly the same for all operator devices, including stationary or portable OWS, or panel mounted network terminals. Any additions or changes made to password definition shall automatically cause passwords at all EMCS panels on a network to be updated and downloaded to minimize the task of maintaining system security. Users shall not be required to update passwords for EMCS panels individually.

6) Operators will be able to perform only those commands available for their respective passwords. Menu selection displayed at any operator device, including portable or panel mounted devices, shall be limited to only those defined for the access level of the password used to log on.

7) Provide user definable, adjustable, automatic log off timer to activate after from 1 to 60 minutes of inactivity (adj.), to prevent operators from inadvertently leaving devices online.

b. I/O capability from each OWS

c. Automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.

d. Database creation and support.

e. Automatic and manual database save and restore.

f. Object and property status and control.

g. Automatic restart of field equipment on restoration of power.

h. Custom report development.

i. Utility and weather reports.

j. Workstation application editors for controllers and schedules.

k. Maintenance management.

l. Trend logs: Support customized trend log reports with variables assignable at the OWS, automatic archive of trended values, with data retrievable in spreadsheets and database programs.

m. Data collection, reports, and logs. Include standard reports for the following:

1) Current values of all objects.
2) Current alarm summary, sorted by priority.
3) Alarm history.
4) Disabled objects.
5) Alarm lockout objects.
6) Logs.

n. Summaries:

1) System log shall log the status of points within system.
2) Alarm summary shall log specified alarm points which are actually in alarm.
3) Off-normal summary shall log points specified by the operator to be in the off-normal mode.
4) Lockout summary shall log points specified to be in the lockout condition.

o. Messages:

1) The system shall support a minimum of 500 different automatic messages defined by the authorized operator on-line via word processing editor with minimum available length of 256 alpha-numeric characters. Messages shall also indicate whether acknowledgment is necessary.

2) Messages may be assignable as pop-up reactions to operator inputs, system alarms, event processes, and other system messages as required and deemed useful by the programmer, Engineer, and Owner.

p. Totalization:

1) The energy management system shall allow for analog or digital point totalization with respect to time.

2) Run time totalization shall be provided to track the run time of point assigned. A summary shall be generatable listing run time points and their present values.

3) Analog totalization shall be provided to measure analog data over real time span. A summary shall be generatable which lists analog totalization points and their current period values, current dry values, previous period and previous day totalized values.

4) Provide customized totalization reports for each major HVAC system.

q. Scheduling:

1) The system shall be capable of initiating equipment based on a preselected time-of-day schedule. This program shall provide scheduling for seven days of the week with 500 unique schedules. The user shall not be required to enter control programs to alter time-of-day schedules.

2) Provisions shall be made to program in holidays up to one year in advance; up to 366 consecutive holidays shall be enterable.

3) On-Line Graphic Generation:

4) This program shall allow the operator to generate color graphics on-line using symbols selected from a standard library of symbols.

4. Energy Management Features: The following energy management programs shall reside in the OWS for global control purposes:

    a. Demand limiting program shall monitor total demand at the on-site meter and reduce load, if possible, to maintain a fixed value.

    b. Duty cycling program shall periodically turn selected loads off to reduce energy consumption.

    c. Optimal run time program shall control the start-up and shutdown of HVAC equipment based on the most energy efficient schedule. Startup shall be staggered to minimize inrush currents.

    d. The energy management program shall not allow the energy management features listed above to shut down air systems (air handling units, unit ventilators, cabinet heaters, etc.) which are providing ventilation air to the occupied spaces during the occupied cycle.

    e. Programs shall be supervised by an energy management program, which shall oversee the execution of global energy management functions. These programs may also reside in individual field panels on systems of this architecture. If the host computer is to act only in a supervisory mode, specific panels shall be assigned to global function duty.

5. Custom Application Software:

    a. English language oriented.
    b. Full-screen character editor/programming environment.
    c. Allow development of independently executing program modules with debugging/simulation capability.
    d. Support conditional statements.
    e. Support floating-point arithmetic with mathematic functions.
    f. Contains predefined time variables.

6. Control Programming: Definition of operator device characteristics, EMCS panels, individual points, application, and control sequences shall be performed through fill-in-the-blank templates and a graphical programming approach. Allow the user to define the software configuration of EMCS panel logic for HVAC system control sequences, fan interlocks, pump interlocks, PID control loops, and other control relationships through the creation of graphical logic flow diagrams.

    a. Graphical Programming: Control sequences are created by using a mouse input device to draw interconnecting lines between symbols and depicting inputs, operators (comparisons and mathematical calculations), and outputs of a control sequence. As a minimum, graphic symbols shall be used to represent:

        1) Process inputs, such as temperature, humidity, or pressure values, status, time, date, or any other measured or calculated system data.
        2) Mathematical process operators, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, or greater than, equal to, or less than, etc.

3) Logical process operators such as IF, AND, OR, ELSE, GO TO, Exclusive OR, NOT, etc.
4) Time delays.
5) Process control outputs such as start/stop control points, analog adjust points, etc.
6) Process calculation outputs.
7) Text file outputs and advisories.

b. Network-wide Strategy Development: Inputs and outputs for any process shall not be restricted to a single EMCS panel, but shall be able to include data from any and all other EMCS panels to allow the development of network wide control strategies. Processes shall also allow the operator to use the results of one process as the input to any number of other processes (cascading).

c. Sequence testing and simulations: Provide a software tool which allows a user to simulate control sequence execution to test strategies before they are actually applied to mechanical systems. Users shall be able to enter hypothetical input data and verify desired control response and calculation results via graphical displays and hard copy printouts.

7. Dynamic Color Graphic Displays:

a. Provide graphics generation software to allow the user to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays that include any manipulated point data from any networked EMCS panels, including SCUs or Ucs. Develop graphic screens using any drawing package capable of generating a GIF, BMP, or JPG file format, including AutoCadd and Visio. Use of proprietary graphic file formats shall not be acceptable. In addition to a graphic background, support the use of scanned pictures.

b. Provide for simultaneous viewing of several graphics at the same time (windowing) to analyze total building operation, or to allow display of a graphic associated with an alarm to be viewed without interrupting work in progress.

c. Provide libraries of pre engineered screens and symbols depicting standard air handling unit components (e.g. fans, cooling coils, filters, dampers, etc.), complete mechanical systems (e.g. constant volume terminal reheat, VAV, etc.) and electrical symbols.

d. The graphic development package shall use a mouse or similar pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow the user to perform the following:

1) Define symbols
2) Position and size symbols
3) Define background screens
4) Define connecting lines and curves
5) Locate, orient, and size descriptive text
6) Define and display colors for all elements
7) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associates system points or other displays.

e. Each graphic display shall consist of a static section and a dynamic section. The static section shall consist of elements which usually do not change with time or point condition. The dynamic section shall consist of elements which usually do change with point conditions, and shall be integrated with the respective static section, appearing in appropriate locations in it.

1) A minimum capability of 256 different static sections shall be provided. Each static section shall be capable of being associated with any number of dynamic sections. The elements of a static section shall be capable of outputting in any one of eight different colors. A static section does not have to be associated with a dynamic section to be used as chromatic output. The elements of static sections shall include, but not be limited to: lines, line drawings, symbols, and character strings (single/double sized).

2) The dynamic section shall accommodate a minimum of 40 elements. The elements of a dynamic section shall be capable of outputting in any one of the eight colors. Symbols shall be a pictorial illustration of the point condition. This illustration shall not be dependent on the type of sensor/device being represented. The elements of a dynamic section shall include, but not be limited to: point identifier, point expanded identifier (if abbreviated), analog value, engineering units, mode units, symbols, lines, text strings. Dynamic temperature values, humidity values, flow values, and status indication shall be shown in their actual respective locations, and shall automatically update to represent current conditions without operator intervention.

3) System graphic display shall update the dynamic elements to the current point condition, at least every 30 seconds. System shall include a list of standard symbols. Lines shall include, but not be limited to: vertical, horizontal, diagonal, curved. Character strings shall include alpha/numeric characters and shall be capable of 60 characters minimum length.

4) Dynamic element shall be capable of being used a multitude of times on a single chromatic display and shall be stored in a symbols library program.

f. When a point is in alarm on the screen, the OWS shall be able to display an alarm graphic with a minimum number of keystrokes. Alarm graphic individual point information shall include, but not be limited to: point identification, point location, alarm point value, alarm limit value, engineering units (^{o}F, KWH, etc.), mode units (on/off, alarm).

8. Web Browser Features:

a. On-Line Help: Provide a context sensitive, on-line help system to assist the operator in operation and editing of the system. On-line help shall be available for all applications and shall provide the relevant data for that particular screen. Additional help information shall be available through the use of hypertext. All system documentation and help files shall be in HTML format.

b. Security: Each operator shall be required to log on to that system with a user name and password in order to view, edit, add, or delete data. System security shall be selectable for each operator. The system administrator shall have the ability to set passwords and security levels for all other operators. Each operator password shall be able to restrict the operators' access for viewing and/or changing each system application, full screen editor, and object. Each operator shall automatically be logged off of the system if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. This auto log-off time shall be set per operator password. All system security data shall be stored in an encrypted format.

c. System Diagnostics: The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all workstations, printers, modems, network connections, building management panels, and controllers. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operator.

d. Alarm Console:

1) The system will be provided with a dedicated alarm window or console. This window will notify the operator of an alarm condition, and allow the operator to view details of the alarm and acknowledge the alarm. The use of the Alarm Console can be enabled or disabled by the system administrator.

2) When the Alarm Console is enabled, a separate alarm notification window will supercede all other windows on the desktop and shall not be capable of being minimized or closed by the operator. This window will notify the operator of new alarms and un-acknowledged alarms. Alarm notification windows or banners that can be minimized or closed by the operator shall not be acceptable.

9. Web Browser Clients

a. The system shall be capable of supporting at least 64 clients using a standard Web browser such as Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator. Systems requiring additional software (to enable a standard Web browser) to be resident on the client machine, are only acceptable if 64 licensed copies of the client machine software are provided, installed, and tested. The system shall support a minimum of ten (10) simultaneous clients.

b. The Web browser software shall run on any operating system and system configuration that is supported by the Web browser. Systems that require specific machine requirements in terms of processor speed, memory, etc., in order to allow the Web browser to function with the EMCS, shall only be acceptable if 64 workstation or workstation hardware upgrades are provided.

c. The Web browser shall provide the same view of the system, in terms of graphics, schedules, calendars, logs, etc., and provide the same interface methodology as is provided by the Graphical User Interface. Systems that require different views or that require different means of interacting with objects such as schedules, or logs, shall not be permitted.

d. The Web browser client shall support at a minimum, the following functions:

1) User log-on identification and password shall be required. If an unauthorized user attempts access, a blank web page shall be displayed. Security using Java authentication and encryption techniques to prevent unauthorized access shall be implemented.

2) Graphical screens developed for the GUI shall be the same screens used for the Web browser client. Any animated graphical objects supported by the GUI shall be supported by the Web browser interface.

3) HTML programming shall not be required to display system graphics or data on a Web page. HTML editing of the Web page shall be allowed if the user desires a specific look or format.

4) Storage of the graphical screens shall be in the Building Control Units (BC), without requiring any graphics to be stored on the client machine. Systems that require graphics storage on each client are not acceptable.

5) Real-time values displayed on a Web page shall update automatically without requiring a manual "refresh" of the Web page.

6) Users shall have administrator-defined access privileges. Depending on the access privileges assigned, the user shall be able to perform the following:

a) Modify common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points in a graphical manner.

b) Schedule times will be adjusted using a graphical slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.

c) Holidays shall be set by using a graphical calendar, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.

d) Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be done by right-clicking the selected object and selecting the appropriate command from the pop-up menu. No entry of text shall be required.

e) View logs and charts

f) View and acknowledge alarms

7) The system shall provide the capability to specify a user's (as determined by the log-on user identification) home page. Provide the ability to limit a specific user to just their defined home page. From the home page, links to other views, or pages in the system shall be possible, if allowed by the system administrator.

8) Graphic screens on the Web Browser client shall support hypertext links to other locations on the Internet or on Intranet sites, by specifying the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) for the desired link.

2.4 NETWORK CONTROL UNITS (NCUs)

A. General: Network Control Units shall be microprocessor based, multi-tasking, multi-user, and employ a real time operating system. Each NCU control panel shall consist of modular hardware including power supply, CPU board, and input/output modules. A sufficient number of NCUs shall be supplied to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the controls requirements shown on the drawings.

1. Basis of design NCUs: Schneider Electric Continuum bCX1-CR-xxx with InfbCX1 controller.

B. Webserver Functionality: All NCUs shall reside directly on the Owner's Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN and shall be capable, out-of-the box, to be set up as a Web Server. The NCU shall have the ability to store HTML code and "serve" pages to a web browser. Provides the ability for any computing device utilizing a TCP/IP Ethernet connection and capable of running a standard Internet browser (Microsoft Internet Explorer™, Netscape Navigator™, etc.) to access real-time data from the entire BAS via any NCU.

1. Graphics and text-based web pages shall be constructed using standard HTML code. The interface shall allow the user to choose any of the standard text or graphics-based HTML editors for page creation. It shall also allow the operator to generate custom graphical pages and forms.

2. The WEB server interface shall be capable of password security, including validation of the requesting PC's IP address. The WEB server interface shall allow the sharing of data or information between any controller, process, or network interface (BACnet, LonTalk and TCP/IP) that the BMS has knowledge of, regardless of where the point is connected on the BAS network or where it is acquired from.

3. The BAS network controller must act directly as the WEB server. It must directly generate HTML code to the requesting user (i.e. WEB browser), eliminating the need for and reliance on any PC-based WEB server hardware or software. To simplify graphic image space allocation, HTML graphic images, if desired, shall be stored in any shared network device. The BAS Web server shall have the ability to acquire any necessary graphics using standard pathing syntax within the HTML code mounted within the BAS WEB server. External WEB server hardware and software are not acceptable.

C. Hardware Specifications

1. Memory: A minimum of 4MB of RAM shall be provided for NCUs with expansion up to 8MB. The 8MB versions shall include a floating-point math co-processor.

2. Communication Ports: Each NCU shall provide communication to both the Workstation(s) and the field buses. In addition, each NCU shall have at least three other communications ports that support a telephone modem, portable service tool, serial printer and connection to third party controllers such as a chiller control panel. On a LAN/WAN system, the NCU shall be provided with a 10Mbps plug-in Ethernet TCP/IP network interface card (NIC).

3. Input/Output (I/O): Each NCU shall support the addition of the following types of inputs and outputs:

a. Digital Inputs for status/alarm contacts
b. Counter Inputs for summing pulses from meters.
c. Thermistor inputs for measuring temperatures in space, ducts and thermowells.
d. Analog inputs for pressure, humidity, flow and position measurements.
e. Digital Outputs for on/off equipment control.
f. Analog Outputs for valve and damper position control, and capacity control of primary equipment.

4. Modular Expandability: The system shall employ a modular I/O design to allow easy expansion. Input and output capacity is to be provided through plug-in modules of various types or DIN-mountable IOU modules. It shall be possible to combine I/O modules as desired to meet the I/O requirements for individual control applications.

5. Real Time Clock (RTC): Each NCU shall include a battery-backed, real time clock, accurate to 10 seconds per day. The RTC shall provide the following: time of day, day, month, year, and day of week. In normal operation, the system clock shall be based on the frequency of the AC power. The system shall automatically correct for daylight savings time and leap years and be Year 2000 compliant.

6. Power Supply: The power supply for the NCUs shall be auto sensing, 120-220VAC, 60/50 Hz power, with a tolerance of +/- 20%. Line voltage below the operating range of the system shall be considered outages. The controller shall contain over voltage surge protection, and require no additional AC power signal conditioning. Optionally, if indicated on the drawings, the power supply shall accept an input voltage of (–48 VDC).

7. Automatic Restart After Power Failure: Upon restoration of power after an outage, the NCU shall automatically and without human intervention: update all monitored functions; resume operation based on current, synchronized time and status, and implement special start-up strategies as required.

8. Battery backup: Each NCU with the standard 120-220VAC power supply shall include a programmable DC power backup system rated for a minimum of 72 hours of battery backup to maintain all volatile memory or, a minimum of 2 hours of full UPS including modem power. This power backup system shall be configurable such that at the end of a settable timeframe (such as 1 hour) of running on full UPS, the unit shall shut off full UPS and switch to memory retention-only mode for the remainder of the battery power. The system shall allow the simple addition of more batteries to extend the above minimum battery backup times.

D. Software Specifications

1. General: The NCU shall contain flash ROM as the resident operating system. Application software shall be RAM resident. Application software shall only be limited by the amount of RAM memory. There shall be no restrictions placed on the type of application programs in the system. Each NCU shall be capable of parallel processing, executing all control programs simultaneously. Any program may affect the operation of any other program. Each program shall have the full access of all I/O facilities of the processor. This execution of control function shall not be interrupted due to normal user communications including interrogation, program entry, printout of the program for storage, etc.

2. User Programming Language: The application software shall be user programmable. This includes all strategies, sequences of operation, control algorithms, parameters, and setpoints. The source program shall be English language-based and programmable by the user. The language shall be structured to allow for the easy configuration of control programs, schedules, alarms, reports, telecommunications, local displays, mathematical calculations, passwords, and histories. The language shall be self-documenting. Users shall be able to place comments anywhere in the body of a program. Program listings shall be configurable by the user in logical groupings.

E. Control Software:

1. The NCU shall have the ability to perform the following pre-tested control algorithms:

   a. Proportional, Integral plus Derivative Control (PID)
   b. Two Position Control
   c. Digital Filter
   d. Ratio Calculator
   e. Equipment Cycling Protection

2. Mathematical Functions: Each controller shall be capable of performing basic mathematical functions (+, -, *, /), squares, square roots, exponential, logarithms, Boolean logic statements, or combinations of both. The controllers shall be capable of performing complex logical statements including operators such as >, <, =, and, or, exclusive or, etc. These shall be able to be used in the same equations with the mathematical operators and nested up to five parentheses deep.

3. Energy Management Applications: NCUs shall have the ability to perform any or all of the following energy management routines:

   a. Time of Day Scheduling
   b. Calendar Based Scheduling
   c. Holiday Scheduling
   d. Temporary Schedule Overrides
   e. Optimal Start
   f. Optimal Stop
   g. Night Setback Control
   h. Enthalpy Switchover (Economizer)
   i. Peak Demand Limiting
   j. Temperature Compensated Duty Cycling
   k. CFM Tracking
   l. Heating/Cooling Interlock
   m. Free Cooling
   n. Hot Water Reset
   o. Chilled Water Reset
   p. Chiller Sequencing

4. History Logging: Each controller shall be capable of logging any system variable over user defined time intervals ranging from 1 second to 1440 minutes. Any system variables (inputs, outputs, math calculations, flags, etc.) can be logged in history. A maximum of 32,767 values can be stored in each log. Each log can record either the instantaneous, average, minimum or maximum value of the point. Logs can be automatic or manual. Logged data shall be downloadable to the Operator Workstation for long term archiving based upon user-defined time intervals, or manual command.

5. Alarm Management: For each system point, alarms can be created based on high/low limits or conditional expressions. All alarms shall be tested each scan of the NCU and can result in the display of one or more alarm messages or reports.

6. Up to 8 alarms can be configured for each point in the controller.

    a. Messages and reports can be sent to a local terminal, to the front-end workstation(s), or via modem to a remote-computing device.

    b. Alarms shall be generated based on their priority. A minimum of 255 priority levels shall be provided.

    c. If communication with the Operator Workstation is temporarily interrupted, the alarm shall be buffered in the NCU. When communications return, the alarm shall be transmitted to the Operator Workstation if the point is still in the alarm condition.

7. Reporting: The NCU shall be able to generate user-definable reports to a locally connected printer or terminal. The reports shall contain any combination of text and system variables. Report templates shall be able to be created by users in a word processing environment. Reports can be displayed based on any logical condition or through a user command.

2.5 STANDALONE CONTROL UNIT (SCU) PANEL

A. SCUs shall be microprocessor based, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time digital control processors designed to integrate multiple Unitary Controllers, provide central processing capacity and integration of distributed processing, and interface directly with the system OWS and LAN.

B. Each SCU panel shall consist of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, power supplies, and input/output modules. A sufficient number of controllers shall be supplied to fully meet the requirements of this specification.

C. The basic elements of the direct digital control system structure shall consist of standard components kept in inventory by the equipment supplier. The components shall not require customizing other than setting jumpers and switches, adding firmware modules or software programming to perform required functions.

D. The system shall be capable of being expanded to its full capacity by adding sensors and entering programs in available random access memory (RAM). Future expansion shall not require hardware modifications to the controller.

E. SCU shall be listed in accordance with UL 864 as required to provide direct control of all smoke dampers.

F. Memory: Provide with sufficient memory to meet system performance requirements and support its own operating system, database system, and database including:

1. Control processes
2. Energy management applications
3. Alarm management
4. Historical/trend data for all points
5. Maintenance support applications
6. Custom processors
7. Operator I/O
8. Dial-up communications
9. Manual override monitoring

G. Point Types: Support the following types of point inputs and outputs:

1. Digital inputs for status/alarm contacts
2. Digital output for on/off requirement control
3. Analog inputs for temperature, pressure, humidity, flow and position measurements.
4. Analog outputs for valve and damper position control, and capacity control of primary equipment.
5. Pulse inputs of pulsed contact monitoring.

H. Expandability:

1. The system shall be modular in nature, and shall permit easy expansion through the addition of software applications, workstation hardware, field controllers, sensors, and actuators.

2. The system architecture shall support expansion capacity of all type of SCU panels, and all point types included in the initial installation.

I. Serial Communication Ports: Provide at least two RS-232C serial data communication ports for simultaneous operation of multiple operator I/O devices such a industry standard printers, laptop workstations, PC workstations, and panel mounted or portable Operator's Terminals. SCU panels shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems, printers, or network terminals.

J. Hardware Override Switches:

1. Provide the ability to manually override automatically executed commands at the SCUs via local, point discrete, onboard hand/off/auto operator override control via local keypad function for binary control points and with modulating control for analog control type points.

K. Hardware Override Monitoring:

1. SCU panel shall monitor the status or position of all override, and include this information in logs and summaries to inform the operator that automatic control has been inhibited. EMCS panel shall also collect override activity information for daily and monthly reports.

L. Local Status Indicator Lamps:

1. The SCU panel shall provide local status indication for each binary input and output for content, up-to-date verification of all point conditions without the need for an operator I/O device.

M. Integrated On-Line Diagnostics:

1. Each SCU panel shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and diagnosis of all subsidiary equipment. The SCU panel shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, or repeated failure to establish communication. Indication of the diagnostic results shall be provided at each SCU panel, and shall not require the connection of an operator I/O device.

N. Sure and Transient Protection:

1. Isolation shall be provided at all network terminations, as well as all field point terminations to suppress induces voltage transient consistent with IEEE Standard 587-1980. Isolation levels shall be sufficiently high as to allow all single wiring to be run in the same conduit as high voltage wiring where acceptable by electrical code.

O. Power failure:

1. In the event of the loss of normal power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all SCU panels to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data, and battery back-up shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 72 hours.

2. Upon restoration of normal power, the SCU panel shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.

P. No digital control panel shall be loaded to more than 80% of its total available point capacity of the digital/analog/input/output sections.

Q. The SCU shall perform its assigned control and energy management functions as a stand-alone unit. Stand-alone control shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Supply and/or water reset.
2. Adaptive optimal start.
3. Time of day start/stop.
4. Zero energy band.
5. Night purge/warm-up.
6. Duty cycle.
7. Control valve, damper, motor and alarm capabilities.

R. EMCS Shall Operate Within The Following Limits:

1. Temperature 32°F to 120°F.
2. Humidity 0 to 95% RH.
3. Voltage +/- 10%.

S. Control algorithms shall be available and resident in the EMCS to permit proportional, integral, derivative, incremental, floating and two position control modes in combination to meet the need of the application and to adapt to job conditions.

T. Control shall be performed in a digital manner using the digital signal from the microprocessor based controller converted through electronic circuitry for modulation of electric or pneumatic actuators. This may take the form of a pulse width modulated signal or a true analog signal generated through a D/A convertor. Electro-pneumatic transducers used for pneumatic outputs shall be cabinet mounted either within the controller or in separate cabinet located immediately next to the digital control panel.

U. Adjustments of control variables shall be available at the controller with the modem through a non-intelligent terminal. Hand held or mounted in cabinet face. If hand held devices are provided two shall be furnished. These adjustments shall include, but not be limited to, setpoints, proportional gain, integral rates, the velocity and acceleration constants associated with incremental control and on/off values of two-position control.

V. The controller shall contain necessary mathematic, logic, utility functions, all standard energy calculations and control functions in ROM. These should be available in combination for programming the unit. These routines shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Math routines:

    a. Basic arithmetic.
    b. Binary logic.
    c. Relational logic.
    d. Fixed formulas for psychrometry.
    e. Calculations.

2. Utility routines for:

    a. Process entry and exit.
    b. Keyboard functions.
    c. Variable adjustments and output.
    d. Alarm indication.
    e. Restart.

3. Control routines for:

    a. Signal compensation.
    b. Loop control.
    c. Energy conservation.
    d. Timed programming.

W. Final field programs shall be stored in battery backed up RAM. The EMCS (SCUs, UCs, etc.) shall be supplied with a minimum of eight hours of battery backup for the RAM with an automatic battery charger.

X. The EMCS shall be expandable by adding additional SCUs, UCs, etc., that operate through the processor of the EMCS.

Y. Provide digital sensors, differential air and/or water flow switches, space temperature sensors (30°F to 90°F), outside and air temperature sensors (-30°F to 120°F), hot water temperature sensor (0°F to 300°F), chilled water sensors (30°F to 90°F), humidity sensors, static pressure sensors, and other sensors and switches required to perform functions as specified.

Z. Provide transducers, EP switches, devices, required by the EMCS to position the control elements.

AA. Provide electric and pneumatic interface devices.

BB. The EMCS software shall contain a self-test procedure for checking the annunciator lights on the digital display, and the computer.

CC. Variable shall be identified as being reliable or unreliable. When a calculation is required to use a value (sensed or calculated), which is identified as being unreliable, the unreliable data value will flash. The calculation will use a default value programmed into the unit.

DD. Alarms (e.g. a pump that did not start) and deviation alarms (e.g. temperature out of limits) will be annunciated.

EE. The SCUs, UCs, shall be enclosed in a metal cabinet. The cabinet shall be constructed such that it can be mounted and electrical terminations made during the construction phase of the project.

FF. The EMCS cabinet shall be a hinged metal type with a baked enamel finish and provided with a key lock. Cabinets on each installation shall utilize one master key. Control wiring and system communications shall be electrically terminated inside the EMCS on a suitable termination board.

2.6 CONTROL UNITS

A. Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.

B. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

C. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:

1. Global communications.
2. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
3. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
4. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
5. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.

D. Standard Application Programs:

1. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.

2. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.

3. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.

4. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.

5. Remote communications.

6. Maintenance management.

7. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).

E. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

F. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

2.7 LOCAL CONTROL UNITS

A. Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.

B. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

C. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following

1. Global communications.
2. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
3. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.

D. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

E. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

2.8 I/O INTERFACE

A. Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.

B. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.

C. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.

D. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.

E. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation with three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights.

F. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA) with status lights, two-position (auto-manual) switch, and manually adjustable potentiometer.

G. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.

H. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

2.9 POWER SUPPLIES

A. Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:

1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.

B. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:

1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.10 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.

2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.

3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.

4. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

2.11 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.

B. Current Transducer:

1. Solid or split core self powered analog current transducer slips over power wiring to provide combination load status and power use trending data.

a. Linear output from 0 to full scale.
b. 0-5Vdc output
c. Operating conditions: -15-60 deg C, 0-95%rh.
d. 2 second response time
e. Use solid core for new applications, split core for retrofits away from terminals.
f. Split core +/- 2% of full scale accuracy from 10% to 100%.
g. Solid core +/- 2% of reading accuracy from 10% to 100%.
h. Similar to Hawkeye 722, 922/932, size and range as required for load.

C. Status Sensors:

1. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.

D. Static Pressure Transmitter / Transducer:

1. Senses differential gauge (static) pressures and converts this pressure difference to a proportional analog output signal.

a. Variable capacitance type, with stainless steel diaphragm and insulated positioning electrode.
b. Voltage Requirement (input): +/- 12 V DC.
c. Output: linear, 4 to 20 mA or 0 - 5 V DC.
d. Pressure ranges 0 to 0.1 in w.g. through 0 to 25.0 in. w.g.

e. Over Pressure Protection: Minimum 10 x full scale.
f. Pressure Part Volumes: Positive part - 0.020 $in.^3$; reference part - 2.0 $in.^3$
g. Accuracy: +/- 1% full scale (includes non-linearity hysteresis and non-repeatability).
h. Factory calibrated with zero span adjustment capability.
i. Temperature compensated output over the entire operating temperature range.
j. Operating Environments: 40 deg. F to 100 deg. F.

E. Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature sensors shall be:

a. Platinum wound RTD Type $\pm$ 1°F. Factory calibration point - 70°F at 1000 OHMS or 0°C at 1000 OHMS. Adjustments for zero and span. Output 4-20 mA.

Or (for non averaging sensors)

b. Contractor may use thermistors which are compatible with system as follows:

1) Accurate to 0.35°F over a range of -40° to 240°F,
2) Noncalibrated devices, accuracy traceable to NBS testing,
3) Guaranteed stability of 0.2°F over a 15 year period,
4) Interchangable with any other in the new system, and
5) Shielded cable not require for the guaranteed performance.

2. Room element assemblies shall be located in conditions representative of the zone, on an interior wall where air is free to circulate around the element but away from non-representative air conditions such as drafts or heat radiation. Mount the assembly 5 feet above the floor on a standard electrical wallbox, or as otherwise directed or required to obtain satisfactory results. A mounting bracket, wallplate, decorative cover and tamper resistant screens shall be furnished with the assembly. May be S.S. wall plate type where applicable.

3. Outside air temperature sensing: The outside air sensor shall be mounted where the effects of sunlight and radiant heat are at a minimum (north wall) for true “dry-bulb” reading. Provide in enclosure to fit 1/2" threaded rigid conduit, designed for exterior dry-bulb sensing. Seal off fittings shall be used to prevent condensation on the element in the housing. Monitoring range to suit controls.

4. Duct temperature sensors: Duct insertion sensors for fan discharge and other thoroughly mixed applications designed for control and/or indication shall have a single sensor with an accuracy of 0.25% of scale range. Provide averaging type sensing elements for transmitters and capillary thermostats in mixed air and coil discharge applications to counteract effects of stratification. Length as required to provide at least four full passes across the duct – two long dimension and two diagonal. Capillary systems to be fully compensated. The element shall consist of nickel wire encased in a copper tube. Monitoring range to suit controls.

5. Liquid temperature sensors shall be mounted in separable brass immersion wells with 1/2" - 14 NPT threads, filled with "Insulgrease" or other approved heat transfer compound. Monitoring range to suit conditions. Well and spring loading device to assure RTD contact with end of sensing well. Whenever a sensing element and well are installed in a chilled water line, plumber's putty or some other suitable sealant shall be applied around the adapter as well as the point where the two sensors leads pass through the adapter. This is to prevent condensation of moisture in the well and failure of the element. Minimum well length to be equal to 1/2 of the pipe diameter; match bulb length to well length.

6. Battery powered “wireless communicating” sensors which use batteries as the source of power for transmission and communication of data are not acceptable.

F. Thermostats:

1. Electronic room thermostats shall be similar to room temperature sensors with occupancy over-ride, bias adjustment, and LCD space / setpoint temperature readout functions built in.

2. Provide with durable cast aluminum or polycarbonate guard where required to prevent unauthorized access.

3. Battery powered “wireless communicating” thermostats which use batteries as the source of power for transmission and communication of data are not acceptable.

4. Incidental electric thermostats specifically indicated as not connected to EMCS shall be heavy duty type with concealed adjustment.

2.12 HVAC PROCESS FLOW CONTROL COMPONENTS

A. Valves:

1. Valve Types:

a. Ball valves – full port for two position on/off service, with characterizing disc for modulating service.
b. Butterfly valves - two-position on/off service or for use in modulating service where specifically called out as such on drawings.
c. Globe valves - modulating service.

2. Valve Bodies:

a. Screwed bronze bodies (2" size and smaller).

b. Flanged iron bodies (larger than 2" size).

c. Ball valves shall be of two piece full port stainless steel ball and stem design similar to those described in SECTION 23 05 23 but with reinforced actuator duty stems, adapters, and electronic actuators.

d. Butterfly valves shall be similar to those described in SECTION 23 05 23 with reinforced actuator duty stems, adapters, and actuators.

e. Globe valves shall have characteristic type throttling plug, #316 stainless steel or Monel stem, and removable composition seats, tight closing to class 4 standard minimum. Provided with necessary features to operate in sequence with other valves or damper operators and adjustable throttling range.

f. Two or three way as required.

g. Designed for 125 psi operating pressure.

h. Arrange to spring return to fail-safe position as called for, quiet operating.

3. Two position valves to be full line size unless otherwise indicated. Modulating water control valves shall be sized on the basis of the smaller of 15% of the total system pressure drop or 8 ft. of water column pressure drop, based on the system design flowrates. Include valve pressure drops in submittal for review. Tag each valve before delivery to project site with scheduled valve identification for location and service.

4. Provide valves and actuation so valves fail safe in normally open or closed positions as required to provide freeze, humidity, force, temperature, etc. protection. Fail position choice shall be submitted for review.

5. Select two-way modulating valves to have equal percentage characteristics.

6. Select three-way valves to have linear characteristics.

B. Actuators:

1. Electronic actuators:

a. Electronic actuators shall be motor driven with cast aluminum enclosure, with completely oil-immersed metal gear trains, sealed integral spiral spring return mechanism, force sensor safety stop, and shall have torque as needed to insure positive movement against system stall pressure. Furnish entire mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment.

b. Size each actuator motor to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating or 2-position action as specified.

c. Provide permanent split-capacitor, shaded pole, or synchronous motors with gear trains completely oil-immersed and sealed.

d. Equip motors for outdoor locations and for outside air intakes with "0 ring" gaskets designed to make motors completely weatherproof, and equip with internal heaters to permit normal operation at -40 deg F (-40 deg C).

e. All actuators for exterior use shall be electronic style and shall have NEMA 4 enclosures with a rain shield covering the valve stem and entire actuator housing.

f. Damper actuators shall be direct-coupled over the damper shaft, and shall be installed without connecting linkage where possible.

1) Where linkages are required, for example with multiple section dampers or dampers where actuator must be installed in the air-stream, provide with linkage furnished by the damper manufacturer and designed for the actuator being used.

g. Ball and Butterfly valve actuators shall be direct-coupled over the valve shaft, installed without connecting linkage.

1) Globe valve actuators shall have a rack and pinion linkage provided by the valve manufacturer and designed for the actuator being used.

h. The actuator shall have electronic overload and digital rotation sensing to prevent damage to the actuator through the entire rotation range of the actuator.

i. Actuators shall be capable of both clockwise and counter clockwise motion by changing mounting orientation.

j. Provide proportional actuators for modulating services that accept a 0 to 10 VDC or 4 to 20mA control input and provide a 2 to 10 VDC or a 4 to 20mA operating range. An actuator capable of accepting a pulse width modulated / floating point control signal and providing full proportional operation is only acceptable for hydronic valve services where there is no connection to outside air.

k. All 24 VAC/DC actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring and shall not require more than 10 VA for AC or more than 8 watts for DC applications. Actuators operating on 120VAC power shall not require more than 10VA. Actuators operating on 230VAC power shall not require more than 11VA.

l. All actuators shall have an external manual gear release and actuators with more than 60 in-lb torque capacity shall have a manual crank to allow manual positioning when the actuator is not powered.

m. All modulating actuators shall have an external, built-in switch to allow the reversing of direction of rotation.

n. Actuators shall be provided with a conduit fitting and minimum three foot electrical cable and shall be pre-wired to eliminate the necessity of opening the actuator housing to make electrical connections.

o. Actuators shall be UL Standard 873 listed and CSA Class 4813 02 certified as meeting correct safety requirements.

p. Actuators shall be designed for a minimum of 60,000 full stroke cycles at the actuators rated torque and shall have a minimum 2-year manufacturer's warranty, starting from the date of installation.

q. Design make: Belimo models as required by torque.

2.13 FLOW METER

A. General:

1. Turbine type.

2. +/- 0.5% of reading at calibration velocity.

   a. +/- 1% of reading from 3 to 30 ft./sec. (10:1 range)
   b. +/- 2% of reading from 0.4 to 20 ft./sec. (50:1 range)

3. Sensing method: Electronic impedance sensing (non-magnetic and non-photoelectric)

4. Supply voltage: 24v AC/DC

5. Liquid temperature: 150°F continuous, 200°F peak.

6. Operating pressure: 400 psi maximum.

7. Material: Electroless nickel plated brass stem

8. Output: Analog output, 4-20mA, 0-10v or 0-5 v, field selectable.

9. NEMA 4 enclosure

10. Standard 10’ of cable with ½” NPT conduit connection.

B. Design Basis: Onicon F-1000 Series or Engineer approved equal.

2.14 SAFETY DEVICES

A. Low Limit: Electric type with 20' long serpentine element, coldest foot sensitivity, with automatic reset and auxiliary contacts to the EMCS. Set for 37 deg. F for "freeze" protection and 55ºF for fan discharge application.

B. High Limit: Electric type, with manual reset; and auxiliary contacts to the EMCS, UL listed for fire, set for 125 deg. F.

C. Filter switches: Differential pressure type with adjustable set point, visual and audible trip indication, and auxiliary contacts to the EMCS.

2.15 MISCELLANEOUS DEVICES

A. Provide all necessary relays, controllers, accumulators, positioners, switches, solenoids, transformers, temperature sensors, and transducers for a complete system.

B. Locate these devices on local panel unless specified otherwise.

C. Wiring:

1. Controls power wiring: Provide wiring in accordance with requirements of Section 23 05 13 , Division 26, and the National Electrical Code.

2. Controls communications and data cabling:

   a. Provide plenum rated cables, in full accordance with the requirements of Divisions 26 (Electrical) and 27 (Communication).

   b. Provide cabling as recommended in writing by the controls manufacturer for optimized communications, similar to:

      1) 22AWG single twisted pair, low capacitance (12.5pF/ft), shielded or unshielded plenum rated cable for low voltage communications.
      2) 18AWG single twisted pair, low resistance (6mW/ft), shielded plenum rated cable.

3. Controls communications and data fiber optic cabling: Provide in accordance with the stricter of the requirements of Divisions 26, 27, and the written recommendations of the manufacturer of the equipment served.

4. Where additional wire to wire terminations are required beyond end device and controller termination strips, make connections using NEMA rated termination blocks with barrier isolated strip/screw or tube/screw connections, all labeled for current function. Flying splices not permitted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which materials and methods are to be installed and notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in acceptable manner.

1. Installation indicates conditions are acceptable to Contractor as required to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied.

2. Electrical Wiring: Check all electrical wiring associated with equipment for compliance with specifications and correctness of connections. Correct wiring in event equipment or devices fail to function in specified manner, whether due to incorrect connections or improper information and wiring diagrams.

3. Verify that conditioned power supply is available to control units and operator workstation as required.

3.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, and services required for the complete removal of all existing controls components being replaced or upgraded as a part of this project or which serve equipment being removed as a part of this contract.

1. Insure that controls for areas outside of this contract's work remain intact and functional. Report any existing problems with functionality before demolition. New problem areas not otherwise a part of this scope that result from this demolition work: rebuild original functionality or upgrade to be included in the new controls.

B. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, and services required for the complete EMCS installation, including Related Work, as required in the Contract Documents. Provide all programming labor required for creating the specified sequences of operation and associated graphics. Include labor required for integrating any software and programming enhancements made both during construction and commissioning and during the warrantee period. Include labor for any programming modifications required due to special circumstances not adequately described in the written sequences of operations, as required to control systems operation as intended.

C. Provide all controls wiring required to connect devices furnished as part of or adjunctive to this EMCS regardless of the source of supply. Provide connections to Owner's LAN, WAN, telephone, and internet as required to perform controls work. Coordinate all fiber optic, telecommunications, and other electrical connections with Owner.

D. Provide power wiring for controls requiring connection to AC power. Control circuits to be 120 vac maximum. Install wiring in accordance with requirements of SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT, Division 26, and the National Electrical Code. Provide actuator power wiring to all automatic dampers including fire/smoke dampers. Coordinate required relays, etc.. with fire alarm system control wiring by Division 16.

E. Provide all necessary devices required for proper system operation, including special electrical switches, conditioned power supplies, transformers, disconnect switches, relays, circuit breaker protection, as required.

F. Provide all controllers, actuators, sensors, etc. as specified later herein, and as required to meet the specified sequence of operation.

G. Furnish all valves, control wells, and dampers to Contractor responsible for their installation, as specified and as required to meet the sequence of operation.

H. Provide interface connections from EMCS hardware to equipment starting circuits, alarms, etc.

I. The system shall include all accessory equipment and electrical wiring to fulfill the intent of this specification, including all control and communications components required to interface with the Owner's Ethernet LAN, forming a complete and interoperable system.

J. Each portion of the District EMCS system as described above shall include all gateways, translators, interpreters, software, programming, or other accessory devices as required to achieve BACnet communications over the LAN.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. System shall be installed and adjusted by trained mechanics and technicians, with a demonstrated experience of not less than (5) years, in the installation, adjustment, and repair of temperature control systems.

B. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

C. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

D. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E. Install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

F. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.4 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Current Transducer: As required; install per manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Static Pressure Transmitter: As required; install per manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Temperature Sensors: Install per manufacturer's written instructions, in locations representative of the controlled spaces' temperature as required for proper control. Include proposed sensor locations in wiring diagram submittal.

1. Provide room temperature sensors for all spaces where thermostats are not specifically called for, as required to properly and individually control all building mechanical HVAC and domestic hot water equipment in accordance with the sequence of operation. For large spaces, provide at least one room sensor per 2000 square feet, in locations representative of the room's various exposures and internal loads.

2. Temperature Sensor with Guard: Provide sensor with guard (preferably S.S. wall plate sensor) wherever temperature sensor is called for in publicly accessed spaces similar to corridors, vestibules, lobbies, stairwells, cafeteria, gymnasium, auditorium, etc..

3. Duct and pipe temperature sensors: Provide as shown on the controls schematics and as required to properly control per the written sequence of operations.

4. Outdoor air sensors: Provide as required to accurately sense outdoor air conditions for proper economizer control, at least five separate locations facing each of East, West, North, and South, as well as a representative rooftop location.

D. Thermostats: Locate thermostats on walls symmetrical with adjacent items. Verify exact room location to avoid doors, fixed and portable equipment. Install to minimize damage. Do not install adjacent to lighting dimmers or other heat generating equipment. Include proposed thermostat locations in wiring diagram submittal.

1. Provide thermostats as specified and as required to properly and individually control all building mechanical HVAC equipment for all administrative offices, staff work and break rooms, classrooms, small group instruction rooms, large group instruction rooms, mechanical rooms, and spaces similar to these in function. Specifically not included in this list are corridors, vestibules, lobbies, stairwells, utility closets, and storage rooms.

2. Thermostat Guards: For bidding purposes, assume 10% of thermostats listed in 3.4.E.1 above will require guards – coordinate locations with Owner and Engineer during submittals. In addition to these and the multiple room sensors required by 3.4.D.1 above, provide single thermostat with protective guard for media center, cafeteria, gymnasium, and auditorium.

E. Automatic Dampers: Furnish dampers, tagged for proper location, (with multiple section damper linkages). Install per manufacturer's printed instructions. Adjust to close tightly. Allow for conduit sleeve or blank space for roof fan dampers.

F. Valves: Install with union or flanged connection. Locate close to apparatus controlled with pipe reducers and increasers located adjacent to valve. Locate, arrange, and pipe per installation diagram in an upright position (stem vertical).

G. Actuators: Install per manufacturer's printed instructions as to motor size and quantity, linkage arrangement, drive connection point. Where ducts or valves are insulated, set damper operators at least 2 in. away from equipment to allow for insulation.

H. Safety Devices:

1. Low Limit: Install on all equipment handling both water and any percentage of unheated outside air, including equipment in boiler rooms handling combustion air, serpentined on the discharge face of heating and/or cooling coils, or elsewhere as required for proper freeze protection, set at 37 deg F. Low limit trip shall report an alarm to the EMCS, which shall prevent the unit’s fans from operating (not applicable to boiler burner fans), cause full flow of water in elements being protected, and fully close the outside air intake and exhaust air dampers until automatically reset (combustion air dampers shall not be closed when combustion is required for building heating). If some other sequence is required for proper freeze protection of special equipment or circumstances, provide this and detail in submittal.

2. High Limit: Install in the supply medium at the discharge of each fuel fired appliance. High limit trip shall report an alarm to the EMCS, which shall prevent the units burner from operating until manually reset.

3. Filter switches: Install across each bank of air filters in each air handling system.

I. Miscellaneous Devices: As required; install per manufacturer’s written instructions.

3.5 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Install building wire and cable according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Install signal and communication cable according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.

E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.6 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. Provide completely installed and ready for use.

B. System Configuration and Definition:

1. All temperature and equipment control strategies and energy management routines shall be definable by the operator. System definition and modification procedures shall not interfere with normal system operation and control.

2. The system shall be provided complete with all equipment and documentation necessary to allow an operator to independently add, delete, or modify the following:

a. SCUs.
b. OWSs.
c. UCs.
d. Points of any type, and all associated point parameters and using constants.
e. Alarm reporting definition for each point.
f. Control loops.
g. Energy management applications.
h. Time and calendar based programming.
i. Totalization for every point.
j. Historical data trending for every point.
k. Custom control processes.
l. All graphic displays, symbols, and cross references to point data.

m. Dial-up telecommunication definition.
n. All operator passwords.
o. Alarm messages.

3. System Definition/control Sequence Documentation: All portions of system definition shall be self documenting to provide hard copy printouts of all configuration and application data. Control process and EMCS control loop documentation shall be provided in logical, graphical flow diagram format to allow control sequence to be easily interpreted and modified at any time in the future.

4. Database Save/Restore/Back-Up: Back-up copies of all standalone EMCS panel databases shall be stored in at least one personal computer operator workstation, and a secure electronic copy of the original complete database setup shall be stored at the offices of the TCS, available for the Owner's use.

5. Continuous supervision of the integrity of all EMCS panel databases shall be provided. In the event that any EMCS panel on the network experiences a loss of its databases for any reason, the system shall automatically download a new copy of the respective database to restore proper operations. Database back-up/download shall occur over the local area network without operator intervention. Users shall also have the ability to manually execute downloads of any or all portions of an EMCS panel database.

3.7 SCU PANEL LOCAL OR PORTABLE OPERATOR'S TERMINALS

A. Each EMCS panel shall be capable of supporting an operator's terminal for local command entry, instantaneous and historical data display, and program additions and modifications.

1. There shall be a provision for both permanently mounting the standalone EMCS panel operator terminal, or using it as a portable hand held unit.

2. The EMCS panel operator terminal shall simultaneously display a minimum of 6 points with full English identification to allow an operator to view single screen dynamic displays depicting entire mechanical systems.

3. The operator functions provided by the EMCS panel operator terminal shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Start and stop points
b. Modify setpoints
c. Modify PID loop setpoints
d. Override PID control
e. Change time/date
f. Add/modify start/stop weekly scheduling
g. Add/modify setpoint weekly scheduling
h. Enter temporary override schedules
i. Define holiday schedules
j. View analog limits
k. Enter/modify analog warning limits
l. Enter/modify analog alarm limits
m. Enter/modify analog differentials
n. Viewpoint history files

4. The EMCS panel operator terminal shall provide access to all real or calculated points in the controller to which it is connected, or any other controller in the network. This capability shall not be restricted to a subset of predefined "global points", but shall provide totally open exchange of data between the operator terminal and any EMCS panel in the network.

5. Operator access at all EMCS panel operator terminals shall be identical to each other, as well as identical to the PC or Laptop operator workstations. Any password changes shall automatically be downloaded to all controllers on the network.

6. The EMCS operator terminal shall provide English language prompting to eliminate the need for the user to remember command formats of point named. Prompting shall be provided consistent with a user's password clearance and the types of points being displayed, to eliminate the possibility of operator error.

7. A multifunction touch pad shall be provided for point and command selection, as well as parameter entry. To minimize the possibility of operator error, the EMCS panel operator terminal shall change the limit touch pad functions based upon an operator's password clearance, the function being performed, and types of points being displayed. Screen displays shall clearly indicate only valid touch pad functions.

8. Context Sensitive Help: On-line, interactive user's "Help" manuals and tutorials shall be provided. Based upon operator request, the "Help" function shall provide general system operating instructions and specific descriptions of commands available in the currently displayed menus.

9. Identification for all real or calculated points shall be consistent for all network devices. The same English language names used at PC workstations shall be used to access points at the EMCS panel operator's terminal to eliminate cross reference or look up tables.

10. In addition to instantaneous summaries, the EMCS panel operator's terminal shall allow a user to view a point history file for system points. Point history files shall provide a record of value of analog points over the last 24 hours, at 30 minute intervals, or a record of the last ten status changes for binary type points.

3.8 GENERAL CONTROLS SYSTEM PROGRAMMING DESCRIPTION

A. Provide color graphic floor plan displays and system schematics detailing all mechanical and electrical systems as indicated in the sequence of operations, at least one for each system and piece of mechanical equipment, including air handling systems, chilled water systems, and heating systems. Create displays to represent logical grouping of system points or calculated data based upon building function, and mechanical system points which aid the operator in the analysis of the facility. The operator shall be able to view and control these systems via graphical and text-based displays and controls.

1. Provide access to the various system schematic and floor plan graphics via any and all of mouse driven graphical penetration scheme, menu selection, “file tree” organization, or text based commands.

a. Graphical menu penetration: locate and display systems graphics via a mouse driven procedure, designed and implemented to optimize performance analysis and speed alarm recognition. Five clicks maximum from whole district map to details of critical alarm via this route.

1) Whole District Map: Include each building shown as an active link; point and click to go to building. Display any building with (Owner defined, TCS implemented) alarms present as highlighted for rapid system review and diagnosis. Include at least three levels of alarm to facilitate prioritizing; each level shall be obvious and visually distinct. The most critical alarm in any building shall define the alarm level of that entire building in this graphic.

2) Main Building Display: Include a full floor key plan of each floor, broken into areas of detailed floor plans, with similar active point/click penetration scheme and highlighted alarm areas.

3) Detailed Floor Plans: Indicate the location of mechanical equipment (boilers, chiller, air handlers, duct and reheat / VAV systems, pumps and pumping systems, metering equip. etc.) and electrical equipment (switch gear, lighting, etc.) on the detailed floor plans. Highlight any systems when in alarm. Outline limits of each control zone (typically along walls, etc..) and provide active multicolored background for each zone. Zone background color shall change with space temperature deviation from setpoint, with a minimum of 8 background colors, colors to be distinct from alarm highlight colors.

4) System Specific Graphics: Provide pictorial schematically correct representations of each and every mechanical system controlled and/or monitored. Include all associated points, digital status, analog values, appropriate and/or significant calculated values, alarms, active adjustment of all user adjustable setpoints, links to all scheduling, trend logs, sequence of operations description, associated systems schematics in appropriate locations, etc. Include plain English descriptions of each active point / link shown. Include appropriate plain English warnings for alarms. Modify as required by Owner and Engineer during system review, start-up, and commissioning.

b. Menu and text based penetration: An operator request for information about a specific system shall cause the associated graphic display to be automatically selected and output on the viewing screen. The operator request may be entered via either the graphical menu penetration procedure or via a pull down directory tree style menu system with “specific building”, “specific mechanical room”, and “specific system” levels of identification. The pull down menu system shall cause the graphical menu system to be updated.

B. Graphic Representations

1. General: The program shall allow the operator to generate color graphics on-line using standard symbols selected from a standard library of symbols.

2. Provide customized graphics with dynamic point values and set points. Graphics shall include but not be limited to:

   a. Each third party microprocessor controlled system with all points available.

   b. Heating Hot Water System with heat injection systems, primary hot water system, secondary hot water systems, 3-ways, 2-ways, etc.

   c. Air Handling Units, air and water sides, with coil pumps, zones, etc.

   d. Floor Plans - The operator interface shall allow the user to access the various graphical schematics via a graphical penetration scheme of the floor plans. Minimum breakdown shall include:

      1) Whole District map, showing all buildings.
      2) Key plan of each building.
      3) Floor plans of each building with zoom in capability.

C. Time Schedule Programs

1. The programs for the EMS shall schedule each system's operation on an hourly basis controlled through daily, weekly and/or monthly schedules. Schedules for each individual system, room or area shall be programmed and modified by the user on a calendar-like display at the OWS.

2. The programs shall store 60 months of schedules.

3. An internal time clock shall automatically compensate for daylight savings time and calendars generated by software shall automatically compensate for leap years.

D. Trend Logs:

1. Provide customized trend log reports with up to twenty variables per report for each HVAC system. Points shall be assignable at the OWS; coordinate desired points on each log with Owner during training and commissioning. Archive trended values on the system hard disk for future inquiry, with back up copies automatically prompted for and generated on removable media.

E. Alarm Points

1. All temperature inputs to the DDC system (space, return air, mixed air, discharge air, supply and return water, boiler and cooling systems) shall be alarmed at the host computer if the temperature is out of range 10 deg. F (adj.) above or below setpoint.

2. Fan status shall be monitored by analog current sensing devices or differential pressure switch. If the fan is scheduled to run and the status is not proven, an alarm condition shall be shown at the host computer.

3. Pump status shall be monitored by analog current sensing devices. If the pump is scheduled to run and the status is not proven, an alarm condition shall be shown at the host computer.

4. All alarm points of any stand alone controllers such as boiler burner controls, chiller or condensing unit controls, etc.., shall be monitored.

5. For all alarms, provide appropriate text and graphical annunciation to facilitate ease of understanding of source and location of problem. Coordinate annunciation with Engineer, equipment manufacturers, and Owner's representatives.

F. Optimum Start Program

1. The building shall initially be brought to occupied temperature through an optimal start program. This program shall gradually increase space temperature requirements over a predetermined time to not only bring the building to required temperature but also soft start building mechanical equipment.

2. Each system shall have an independent modular program.

3. The program shall minimize the total energy consumption during daily start-up of each heating/cooling system.

4. A control algorithm shall compare the outside air temperature to space temperature and historical startup data to calculate a start time for each air handling system.

5. The start time for each system shall bring its respective zone to occupied setpoint at the time of occupied mode start.

6. The optimum start program shall be adjustable to the rate structure of the local energy company.

G. Day/night Setback

1. The day/night setback will consist of lowering the space heating setpoint and raising the space cooling setpoint during the unoccupied mode, thereby reducing the heating and cooling energy requirements. The occupied and unoccupied areas will be specified by the owner and will be coordinated with the control system.

H. Economizer Cooling Cycle

1. The controls shall incorporate an enthalpy logic center with outdoor and return air temperature and humidity sensors that shall maximize the use of outdoor air for cooling before the mechanical cooling is energized and during operation through comparison of outdoor and return air enthalpy as follows. Note that multiple outdoor temperature conditions will be present at different outside air intake locations, and as such a comparable number of outside air sensors are required. Some mechanical systems may share a single outdoor air enthalpy center, for example adjacent UVs each facing east, providing the outdoor air conditions can be demonstrated to be virtually identical from an energy management perspective. Provide at minimum East, West, South, North, and Rooftop outdoor air sensors.

2. When the outdoor air enthalpy is less than the return air enthalpy during cooling mode, the logic circuitry shall cause the outdoor and return air dampers to modulate to the balanced outdoor air position that satisfies the critical space temperature transmitter set point before opening the system chilled water cooling valve.

3. If the outdoor air enthalpy is less than the return air enthalpy and the critical space temperature transmitter set point cannot be satisfied with 100% outside air, then the system shall circulate 100% outside air and the cooling water valve shall modulate open to satisfy the zone temperature requirements.

4. If the enthalpy sensors indicate that the return air has lower enthalpy than the outdoor air, then the system shall revert to normal cooling mode.

5. Upon a call for cooling to maintain the night setback temperature, only the economizer mode shall be operational. The chilled water control valve shall not be opened, and upon satisfying the space temperature transmitter night setback set point, the system shall revert to the normal unoccupied mode.

I. Maintenance Management: Continuously totalize run hours for equipment controlled and/or monitored for use by the maintenance management program.

J. Equipment Scheduling

1. Equipment shall be capable of 7 days, 24 hours schedules with separate holiday hours.
2. There shall be capability for five different holiday schedules which can be selected from the occupancy schedule graphic.
3. Holidays shall be programmed so that they shall need a minimum of manual adjustment year to year and can easily be modified at front end if necessary.
4. All schedule programming shall reside in local controllers, but shall be configurable from the front end.

K. Coil Freeze Protection.

1. Heating and cooling coils and any other equipment provided as a part of this project which are circulating water and or water/glycol solution or are otherwise subject to water freeze damage, subject to the following, that have any percentage of unheated outside air entering them, shall have coil freeze protection.

2. Mixed outside and return air and the preconditioned discharge air from air to air energy recovery units shall be considered unheated for this purpose.

3. The first stage of coil freeze protection shall incorporate analog input temperature sensing at the expected freeze location. Sensing devices may be surface temperature sensors on the coil surface at the expected freeze location, or other comparable devices approved as applicable to the circumstances. Include details of freeze protection scheme for all such equipment in submittal. When the sensed temperature is above 60ºF (adj.), the coil control valve shall be under space temperature control. If at any time the expected freeze location sensed temperature drops below 60ºF (adj.), the control valve shall temporarily open to raise that coil's return water temperature to above 80ºF (adj.), and the EMCS shall report an alarm to the OWS

4. The second stage of coil freeze protection shall be the low limit freeze stat air temperature sensors with the sequence defined under safeties, above.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
4. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
5. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C. DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.

2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.

3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.

4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.

5. Check installation of air supply for each instrument.

6. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.

7. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.

8. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.

9. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.

10. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.

11. Check DDC system as follows:

    a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.

b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.

2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.

3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.

4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:

a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
b. Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

5. Flow:

a. Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
b. Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.

6. Pressure:

a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
b. Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.

7. Temperature:

a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.

8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.

9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.

10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.

11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

3.11 SYSTEM TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

A. Test complete control system for control device operation prior to the systems acceptance. Demonstrate complete sequence of operations to Architect's and Owner's representatives.

1. Verify operation of system inputs and outputs, control loops and/or software programming, timing functions, operator entered constants, facilities management functions, etc., and observe that they perform their intended functions. Generate check out data sheets for each system so verified.

2. Field verify analog input calibration, analog output operation, digital input function, digital output operation, and coordination of system inputs and outputs between system graphics and field devices for schematic accuracy. Coordinate device testing with Testing and Balancing Agency – refer to section 23 05 93 – Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC for additional information. Generate check list of all devices, keyed with descriptive locations and functions, along with complete calibration, testing, and coordination data, certified by Contractor and TAB agency.

3. Provide complete values and points logs, printed with hourly values for one week, demonstrating correct control functions and programming.

B. When above procedure has been completed and control systems are operating satisfactorily, produce and submit a report of entire systems performance for review, including all data described above. Submit three copies to the Architect's Representative advising them that the control system is 100% complete and operates in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 23 09 00

SECTION 23 21 13 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, special-duty hydronic systems fittings, equipment, valves, and specialties, and joining methods for the following:

1. Hydronic Systems piping.
2. Air conditioning condensate drain piping.
3. Air-vent piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:

1. Steel and Copper Hydronic Piping: 125psig at 250 deg F.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Above Grade Piping
2. Pipe Fittings.
3. Dielectric Fittings.
4. Specialty Valves.
5. Air and Pressure Control.
6. Pressure Control
7. Special Duty Hydronic Components.

B. Shop Drawings: Include in coordination drawings details of the piping layout showing proposed piping routing including locations of offsets, fittings, elevations with drain and vent fittings, pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Provide enlarged details of congested areas, custom anchor fabrication, and other details as required to clearly delineate the proposed construction.

C. Welding Quality Control Submittals

1. When welded or brazed pipe work is required or proposed as a part of this project, submit following for approval before beginning any welding or brazing work:

a. Welding and Brazing Procedure Qualification: Prepare and submit for approval welding and brazing procedure qualification specification qualifying all proposed procedures as specified in Quality Assurance below with copies of all back-up data.

b. Welders' and Brazers' Certification: Submit for approval certification that each proposed welder, welding operator, brazer, or brazing operator has been qualified in all procedures proposed for that worker as specified in Quality Assurance below with copies of all back-up data.

D. Qualification Data: For Mechanical Grooved and Pressure Sealed Joint Installers.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control test reports.
B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with all applicable sections of the following:

1. ANSI / ASME B 31.9: "Building Services Piping".
2. ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications".
3. New York State Labor Department Industrial Code Rule No. 4 (cited as 12 NYCRR4)
4. New York State Labor Department Industrial Code Rule No. 14 (cited as 12 NYCRR14).
5. Building Code of New York State.
6. ANSI / ASHRAE 15 "Standard Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration".
7. ASME label on all pressure vessels and safety valves.
8. ANSI / ASME B31 – "Code for Pressure Piping".

B. Installer Qualifications:

1. Grooved Mechanical and Pressure Seal Joint Quality Control:

a. Installer Certification: Provide installers trained in and familiar with the installation of the mechanical joint systems, certified by the approved joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with manufacturer's system.

b. Single Source: Obtain mechanically joined piping system components from single approved manufacturer for each system type, grooved or pressed.

c. Proper Tools: Fabricate and install joints using the proper tools, actuators, rolls, cutters, jaws, rings, etc., as manufactured and instructed by the approved manufacturer.

d. Manufacturer's Inspection: Certify grooved system installation for compliance with manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Welded Support Work Quality Control:

1. Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Welded Piping Work Quality Control:

1. Welding and Brazing Procedure Qualifications: Qualify any welding or brazing procedure to be used on this Project in accordance with ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX. Qualification may by made by technically competent group or agency (subject to approval) meeting the following conditions:

a. Group or agency qualifying the procedure meets all procedure qualification requirements of ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX.

b. Contractor accepts full responsibility for procedure qualified.

c. Contractor has qualified at least one welder or welding operator using procedure qualified and provides record of qualification.

d. Contractor accepts full responsibility for qualified procedures by signing related qualification records with procedure and performance qualifications including all dates, results, and associated data.

2. Welders' and Brazers' Qualifications: Ensure that all welders, welding operators, brazers, or brazing operators employed for this project are qualified for all welding and brazing procedures, proposed as part of this Project, in accordance with ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX. Qualification by previous employer or technically competent group or agency (subject to approval) may be acceptable if following information is included:

a. Documentation that the previous qualification was for essentially the same procedures proposed and was in full accordance with ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX.

b. Copy of performance qualification testing record showing who qualified the worker, date of qualification, and work history record showing continuous performance to maintain qualification.

3. Weld and Braze Qualification Records: Maintain and sign certified records of approved procedures used and approved qualified workers employed for welded and brazed joints performed as a part of Contract Work. Ensure all building services piping welding and brazing work can be traced to a specific procedure and welder.

4. Inspection and Examination by Owner, Remedy by Contractor: Owner reserves right to examine, inspect, and test all piping using visual, radiographic, or other recognized testing methods to determine compliance with specified quality control requirements and requirements of applicable regulatory agencies.

    a. Cost of Owner's testing of acceptable installation provided at Owner's expense
    b. Repair piping installations not passing Owner's quality inspection testing using approved method or replace at no additional cost.
    c. Cost of initial testing of piping not conforming to specified requirements and any retesting of repairs or replacement work shall be deducted from Contract Sum.

E. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Anvil International, Inc.
2. Cerro Flow Products, Inc.
3. Mueller Industries, Inc.
4. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
5. Viega LLC
6. Victaulic Company of America.

B. Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Annealed or Drawn Temper, Types M, L, and K.

C. Copper Tube Fittings:

1. Solder Fittings

    a. Tees, Elbows, Reducers, Adapters: ANSI B16.22 streamlined pattern wrought copper or ANSI B16.18 cast bronze; solder end connections; ASTM B62.
    b. Unions: Solder type, cast bronze, ground joint, Class 150.
    c. Cast Bronze Flanges: ANSI B16.24 Class 150 solder connection flanges, raised ground face, ANSI pattern drilled and spot faced bolt holes.

2. Grooved-End Fittings and Couplings:

    a. Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
    b. Couplings: Rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves.
    c. Gaskets: Prelubricated EPDM gasket manufactured by coupling manufacturer, rated for minimum 250 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

3. Pressure-Seal Fittings:

    a. Housing: Copper conforming to material requirements of ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 and performance criteria of IAPMO PS 117.
    b. Sealing elements: EPDM, factory installed by fitting manufacturer.
    c. Leakage path designed into un-pressed fittings assuring readily visible leakage of system liquids past the sealing element of any un-pressed connection.
    d. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools that compress fittings and effect pressure seal.
    e. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

4. Mechanically Formed Tee Option:

    a. Outlet: formed by proprietary rotating tool expanding drilled side hole of main tube into precision collar.

    b. Branch Inlet: Formed by proprietary tool that radius clips tube ends matching circumference of main tube, and dimples indicating correct insertion depth and orientation that remain visible after brazing.

    c. Connection: Brazed joint, stronger than original main tube, with smoothly radiused branch entry and 0% flow obstruction.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53-S , A53-E, or A106 Schedule 40 or 80, seamless (type S) or electric-resistance welded (type ERW), Grade B, black or ASTM A123 and A153 galvanized steel pipe, plain or threaded ends.

B. Threaded Fittings:

1. Pipe threads in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 National Pipe Thread taper (NPT) standards.
2. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.
3. Unions: ASME B16.39 malleable iron, threaded, Class 150 or higher, ground joint bronze to iron seat.
4. Cast-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.4; Class 125 or higher.
5. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150 or higher.
6. Flanges: Cast Iron ASME B16.1 Class 125 or higher, raised ground face, ANSI pattern drilled and spot faced bolt holes.

C. Welded Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M or A106 seamless forged steel.

1. ASME/ANSI B16.9 pattern with ASME/ANSI B16.25 beveled butt weld ends, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

    a. Long radius pattern unless space restrictions prohibit, then short radius allowed.

2. ASME B16.11 socket weld class 2000.

3. Flanges: ANSI B16.5 Class 150 or higher, butt weld neck type, raised ground face, ANSI pattern drilled and spot faced bolt holes.

4. Where branch connections are two or more sizes smaller than main size, "weldolets" or "threadolets" are acceptable.

5. Fabricate custom bend angle fittings by removing material from standard butt weld type fittings at the appropriate angle and recreating the original ASME B16.25 weld configuration chamfer.

    a. Shop or site-weld weld/groove adapter nipples to custom angle fitting where applicable to create custom angle grooved mechanical fittings.

D. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

1. All products – fittings, couplings, gaskets, and grooving tools - shall be manufactured by a single ISO 9001 or higher certified manufacturer.

2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Anvil International, Inc.
    b. Central Sprinkler Company; a division of Tyco Fire & Building Products.
    c. Victaulic Company of America.

3. Mechanical Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 Ductile Iron; ASTM A 47 Grade 32510 Malleable Iron; ASTM A 53, Types E or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders designed to accept grooved end couplings. Subject to applicable fitting requirements described elsewhere in this document. Basis of Design: Victaulic.

4. Mechanical Couplings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron or ASTM A 47 Grade 32510 malleable iron split housing, designed for bolted assembly with full circumferential engagement of coupling into pipe end or fitting groove or alternatively to grip exterior of plain steel pipe where grooving is not possible. Coupling houses pressure responsive gasket by coupling manufacturer that forms durable pressure seal. Provide rigid type couplings for all straight runs and flexible type couplings for all branch takeoff (side of tee) and elbow fittings, unless otherwise specified or directed. Provide couplings with bolt size and strength and pressure rating not less than the listed product.

    a. Grooved End Mechanical Flexible couplings: pad to pad coupling fit with clearance to groove. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 77.

    b. Rigid Grooved End Mechanical Couplings: full circumference coupling to groove compression contact for rigid style groove couplings. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 07 and Style 107.

    c. Rigid Plain End Mechanical Couplings: Extra heavy housing with hardened toothed jaws set into housing that engage and grip pipe exterior as bolts are tightened. Basis of Design: Victaulic Style 99 Roustabout.

5. Pipe End Grooves: Pipes may be delivered to site full length with factory grooved ends fabricated to coupling manufacturer's specifications or shop or site fabricated to length required using coupling manufacturer's groove cutting or rolling tool, fabricated to coupling manufacturer's specifications.

6. Coupling Gaskets: Synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design manufacturer rated for fluid and temperature of service, minimum 300 psig working pressure at 250 degrees F.

2.3 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2665 for DWV fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe fittings; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe fittings.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Flanges:

1. Gasket Materials:

a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, suitable for chemical, pressure, and thermal conditions of system.
b. 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
c. Full or narrow face pattern to fit flanges.

2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, electroplated, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Provide dielectric kit for flanges joining dis-similar piping materials.

4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Solder Filler Metals: Use solder conforming to ASTM B 32-95; alloy grades Sn96, Sn95, Sn94, E, AM, WS; lead free alloys with maximum lead content of 0.1percent by weight, minimum solidus temperature of 430 deg. F, and approved for use with potable water. Higher lead content solder not acceptable. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Select brazing filler metals compatible with piping to be joined:

1. AWS A5.8 BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper only.

2. AWS A5.8 BAg series, cadmium free silver bearing alloys for joining dis-similar metals including copper with any brass, bronze, steel, or stainless steels, or other dis-similar brazeable materials.

D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

E. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:

1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), in contrasting color.

2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
b. IPEX Inc.
c. KBi.

2. PVC one-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
b. IPEX Inc.
c. KBi.
d. NIBCO INC.

2. MSS SP-107, PVC union. Include brass or copper end, Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end, rubber gasket, and metal threaded union.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials, designed to join dis-similar metallic piping materials with dis-similar metals separated by dielectric material in a configuration to minimize galvanic corrosion of the less noble piping material.

B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. Capitol Manufacturing Company.

3. Central Plastics Company.
4. Elster-Perfection Corporation.
5. Hart Industries International, Inc.
6. Lochinvar Corporation.
7. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
8. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
9. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
10. Victaulic Company of America.
11. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
12. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; AquaSpec Commercial Products Division.

C. All Materials: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

D. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Galvanized steel nipple with insert of noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

E. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Galvanized-steel coupling with insert of noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

F. Dielectric Unions:

1. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.

G. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Flange assembly kit for field assembly. Include full-face or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, steel backing washers, and appropriately sized bolts and nuts. Provide higher strength bolts if undersized as required to maintain system working pressure.

2.7 VALVES

A. Isolation, Check, Balancing, Vent, and Drain Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 23 05 23 -General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 23 09 00 - Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

C. Safety Relief Valves:

1. Designed, manufactured, tested, and labeled in accordance with the requirements of Section IV of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

2. Valve Body: Bronze, Brass, or Cast-iron, side outlet with all wetted internal working parts made of stainless steel, brass, and elastomers with 125 PSIG working pressure and 250 deg. F maximum operating temperature. Brass valve seat with Glass and carbon-filled PTFE disc.

3. Valve Size: Compliant with Section IV of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set at full rated capacity of system at manufacturer's suggested working pressure.

4. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Amtrol, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
    f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2.8 THERMAL EXPANSION AND AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Amtrol, Inc.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
4. Wessels

B. Diaphragm Type Expansion tanks:

1. Tank:

    a. Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
    b. Include threaded system connection, system drain, and air charge taps.
    c. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
    d. Finish: factory painted corrosion and heat resistant enamel in manufacturer's standard color.

2. Diaphragm:

    a. Non-removable elastomeric diaphragm factory installed and rated for long term oxygen diffusion resistance at the conditions of service.

3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats, protective cover plug. Designed to pre-charge pressurized air between diaphragm and tank.

C. Air Separator Assemblies

1. Tangential Air Separator: Designed, constructed, and ASME stamped for 125 PSIG working pressure, 225 deg. F operating temperature minimum, and sized as noted on Drawings or, if not noted, for minimum air separation efficiency of 90 percent first pass.

a. Shell: Centrifugal flow air separation design with minimum three times nominal pipe connection diameter and welded steel construction with tangential flanged, grooved, or threaded connections, perforated air collector tube with threaded air separation fitting, blow down fitting, and hanger fittings.

b. Design Make: "Rolairtrol RL" by Bell & Gossett.

2.9 HYDRONIC PIPING ACCESSORIES

A. Pipe Sleeves:

1. Sleeve 6-Inches Diameter and Smaller: Schedule 40 galvanized, welded steel pipe, ASTM A53, Grade A.

2. Sleeves Larger than 6-inches: Galvanized sheet metal, 10 gauge, round tube with welded longitudinal joint.

3. Sleeves Installed In Masonry Or Cold Formed Metal Framing/Gypsum Board Construction: Galvanized sheet metal, 20 gauge, round tube with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Escutcheons: Chrome plated, stamped steel, hinged, split-ring escutcheons, with setscrew. Inside diameter closely fits pipe outside diameter or outside diameter of pipe insulation where piping is insulated. Outside diameter completely covers opening in floor, wall, or ceiling.

1. Manufacturer: Manufacturers offering acceptable products include Grinnell.

C. Mechanical Sleeve Seals: Modular mechanical type, consisting of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to fill annular space continuously between pipe and sleeve. Connected with bolts and pressure plates causing rubber sealing elements to expand when tightened, providing watertight seal and electrical insulation.

1. Manufacturer: Manufacturers offering acceptable products include Thunderline Corp.

D. Condensate Termination Strainers:

1. Threaded inlet on corrosion resistant body of galvanized steel, stainless steel, or impact resistant plastic. Minimum size shall be equal to drain outlet on equipment served.
2. 10 mesh stainless steel screen outlet, formed or molded into body, with minimum 0.032 inch diameter wire and 4 square inches of screen.
3. Similar to TriTech Suction Filter QF053010A and Titan 710-046 Inlet Suction Strainer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Closed Loop Hydronic Piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller,:

1. Type L drawn-temper copper tubing with wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, pressure sealed or brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe with welded, threaded, or mechanical grooved fittings and joints. [

B. Closed Loop Hydronic Piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and [mechanically grooved or]brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe with welded or mechanical grooved fittings and joints.

C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground: Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered pressure seal joints.

D. Air-Conditioning Condensate Gravity Drain Piping:

1. Type M or L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper drain fittings, and soldered joints.
2. Schedule 40 PVC or CPVC plastic pipe, DWV style fittings, and solvent-welded joints.
3. Schedule 40 galvanized steel where subject to damage from non-maintenance personnel.

E. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

F. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

G. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated piping locations and arrangements were used to size piping, calculate friction loss, expansion compensation, pump sizing, fill volume, and other design considerations. Install piping generally as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

C. Install piping in concealed locations except in equipment rooms and service areas, unless otherwise indicated on drawings: install in walls, pipe chases, utility spaces, above ceilings, etc.

D. Install piping orthogonal to building walls as possible within constraints required for sloped drainage, non-orthogonal building construction, etc. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections, unless otherwise specified.

1. Branches two or more sizes smaller than main may be weld-o-let welded to steel pipe and brazed to copper using listed mechanically formed outlets similar to “T-drill”.

2. Minor offsets in copper fin-tube piping required to segment enclosures along curved exterior walls may be created by smooth bends in annealed type L or K copper tube. Do not bend fin element.

3. Mitered elbows, "shaped" nipples, and job fabricated reductions are not acceptable.

4. Where corridors or other general construction meets at angles other than standard pipe fitting angles, provide custom bend angle elbows to match general construction and maintain piping orthogonal to building.

F. Install piping so as to provide for positive drainage and air elimination.

1. Install straight piping free of sags and bends. Do not install bent piping – remove from site.

2. Install gravity drain lines at uniform slope down in direction of flow. Maintain maximum slope feasible up to one quarter inch rise per foot of run, but not less than 1% (approximately one eight inch per foot). Where height restrictions do not allow for minimum required slope, provide for pumped condensate removal as shown.

3. Install pressurized pumped flow piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow or at otherwise indicated slopes.

4. Avoid local high and low points where possible.

5. Install branch connections out the top of mains to serve equipment above mains, and out the bottom of mains to serve equipment below, or otherwise as required to provide drainage and venting with a minimum of drain and vent fittings.

6. Provide eccentric pipe size reducers and increasers, installed so as to allow for both positive drainage and air elimination. In general, where piping is sloped up in direction of flow, reduce pipe sizes with level side up and increase pipe sizes with level side down.

G. Install piping allowing for proper servicing of hydronic systems.

1. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

2. Install piping and specialties with sufficient clearance to allow application of specified insulation.

3. Install valves with sufficient clearance and orientation to permit both ease of operation and servicing.

4. Install dis-assemble able unions, flanges, or mechanical joints on equipment side of isolation valve**,** as required to remove and service all serviceable components without system drain-down or cutting piping. Install unions and flanges in piping.

   a. Provide unions for NPS 2 and smaller, flanges for NPS 2-1/2" and larger.

   b. Install adjacent to control valves, at final connections of equipment, as required to adjust threaded pipe joints after fixed (non-rotatable) joints are made, and elsewhere as indicated.

   c. Install out of the line of coil pull, tube bundle removal access space, etc.

   d. Install so sensor wires, thermometers, gauges, etc., need not be rotated, removed, or disconnected to service equipment.

   e. Install within two feet of control valves with no elbows between valve and union as required for ease of replacement.

   f. One dis-assemble able fitting may be used for two components (ex., both control valve and equipment service) if they are separated by no soldered, brazed, or welded elbows and no more than three feet of pipe.

H. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

I. Install escutcheons for exposed piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

J. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. General Pipe Joint Construction:

1. Cut all pipe ends square.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes removing burrs past original pipe wall to restore full pipe ID.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from both inside and outside of piping and fittings before assembly.
4. Remake leaking joints using new materials.

B. Threaded Joints:

1. Provide threaded pipe ends in conformance with ANSI B1.20.1, tapered pipe thread standards

2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp cutting oil flooded dies.

3. Note internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends and proximity of internal seat or wall to determine pipe threading and align threads at point of assembly.

4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to the external pipe threads (except where dry seal threading is specified) and assemble joint “wrench-tight” with paired wrenches, one wrench on adjacent pipe and one wrench on valve end where pipe is threaded.

5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or fittings with torn, corroded or damaged threads.

6. Do not use portions of pipe where weld opens during cutting or threading operations.

C. Soldered Joints:

1. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook,"

2. Square cut tubing to correct length required to fill sockets.

3. Ream ends and clean surfaces of oils, grease, and oxidation to bright finish with fine sand cloth, cleaning pads, or special wire brush.

4. Apply thin film of solder flux to both surfaces to be joined. Do not clean, flux and assemble joint more than 3 hours before soldering, and do not use acid core, paste type solder, or solder flux combinations.

5. Remove heat-sensitive portions of components prior to soldering. Provide wet rag strip heat sink wrapped around stem and seat of valves and protect all components for soldering heat damage. Replace any components with any evidence of heat damage.

6. Heat joint uniformly and rapidly and fill completely with solder while minimizing external and internal over-soldered dripping.

7. Disassemble joints for inspection of solder penetration as directed. Remake faulty joints at no additional cost.

D. Brazed Joints:

1. Comply with the procedures contained in AWS "Brazing Manual", using qualified processes and brazing operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
2. Remove stems, seats, and packing of valves and accessible internal parts at piping specialties before brazing.
3. Fill the pipe and fittings with an inert gas (i.e. nitrogen or carbon dioxide) during brazing to prevent formation of scale.
4. Heat joints using oxyacetylene torch. Heat to proper and uniform temperature.
5. Completely fill sockets with braze materials, and make neat fillets on butt joints.

E. Welded Joints:

1. Comply with the requirements of ASME Code B31.9 - "Building Services Piping", ASME B16.25, and AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

2. Machine-chamfer all pipe ends for butt welded joints.

3. Remove cutting beads and do not allow welding beads to form.

F. Grooved Joints:

1. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness.

2. Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts in accordance with fitting manufacturers written instructions.

3. Install rigid couplings for normal straight pipe runs.

4. Install flexible type couplings for branch take-offs, elbows, as part of the thermal expansion compensation system design, as vibration isolation flexible connections where specified for that, and as otherwise directed.

G. Flanged Joints:

1. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application.

2. Install gasket concentrically positioned, and dielectric kits if flanges join dis-similar piping materials.

3. Align flanged surfaces parallel.

4. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

5. Make initial contact of flanges and gaskets flat and parallel with bolts only finger tight, then tighten bolts using alternating sequential pattern, gradually and uniformly to full torque using torque wrench.

H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Welded Joints:

1. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672.

2. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

3. Square cut and ream pipe ends to correct length.

4. Clean exterior of pipe and interior of fittings with rags and water and dry thoroughly before solvent cleaning with primer.

5. Check dry fit for interference fit to ensure pipe can be pushed at least 1/3 of way into fitting by hand. Ensure pipe that “bottoms” is snug.

6. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.

7. Use only approved cement and primer suitable for types of pipes and fittings used and suitable for intended service, including temperature, pressure pipe size, and fluids served. Use only fresh cement; do not use thickened, lumpy, or "jelly like" cement.

8. Clean pipe and fitting with cement manufacturer's primer or cleaner. Use contrasting color primer and cement

9. Stir or shake cement before use. Apply thin coat of cement in socket, then evenly coat pipe end to socket depth. Avoid puddling, especially on thin walled pipe.

10. Assemble joint by twisting pipe 1/4 turn while pushing to full socket depth. Provide adequate anchorage and leverage to assemble pipe to full socket depth of fittings; hand pressure is inadequate and not acceptable for larger sizes. Hold pressure for 30 seconds or as required avoiding push out. Allow additional time for cement to set in colder weather to ensure cement film cures without blisters. Wipe off excess cement between socket and pipe with clean, dry rag.

11. Keep cement cool in hot weather and work as quickly as possible to avoid cement setting up before joint is assembled. Keep lid on cements, cleaner, and primers when not in use. Do not mix cleaner or primer with cement.

12. Use 3/4-inch dauber on small diameter pipes, 1-1/2 inch dauber up through 3 inch pipe, and natural bristle brush, swab, or roller 1/2 pipe diameter on pipes 4 inch and up.

I. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints:

1. Use manufacturer-recommended tools and procedure.
2. Insure alignment dimples are properly oriented and visible after brazing.
3. Braze joints using approved procedures and brazers.

J. Pressure-Sealed Joints:

1. Make copper and copper alloy press connections in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Fully insert the tubing into the fitting with a visible mark on the tubing showing proper insertion. Align the tubing as required.
3. Check the fitting alignment against the mark on the tubing to assure the tubing is fully engaged (inserted) in the fitting. Leave insertion marks visible on pipe after assembly.
4. Press the joints using the tool(s) approved by the joint manufacturer in a manner to assure tubing remains properly aligned.
5. Remove and replace misaligned, kinked, or otherwise damaged tubing installations. .

3.4 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. At each system local or global low point, both in piping and heat transfer elements, and as required for complete system drainage, install drain consisting of a tee fitting and drain valve as described in Section 23 05 23 – General Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.

B. At each system local or global high point, both in piping and heat transfer elements, at the end of each horizontal run before a drop in elevation, and elsewhere as required for complete and serviceable venting of system air, install vent consisting of a tee fitting and air vent as described in Section 23 05 23 – General Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.

C. Install strainers on inlet side of each pump, pressure-reducing valve, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 ball valve (match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers with smaller blowoff tappings) with hose thread connection and brass cap in blowdown connection of strainers.

D. Install AC condensate termination strainers where AC condensate drips to any exterior point of indirect waste disposal.

E. Install expansion compensation as shown on drawings and in all straight piping runs eighty (80) feet long and longer, at least one (1) expansion loop per one hundred twenty (120) feet of straight run. Install anchors and pipe alignment guides for each expansion loop. Install expansion compensation, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Sections 23 05 29 – Hangers and Supports for HVAC Components and 23 05 43 – Mechanical Vibration and Movement Control.

F. Install all components of Energy Management and Control System (EMCS) into hydronic systems as required for complete EMCS installation and as required by this section maintaining integrity if hydronic systems. Coordinate all locations and quantities with contractor responsible for the EMCS – refer to Section 23 09 00 – Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

1. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment or as otherwise shown, with dis-assemble able connections.
2. Install wells for pressure, temperature, and other sensors as shown on details and as called for by the sequence of operations.

G. Install ports and wells for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

H. Install pressure / temperature test ports (P/T plugs) at the supply and return of every heat transfer element, and as otherwise called for on drawings.

I. Install piping to pumps. Details of near pump piping are specified in Section 23 21 23 – Hydronic Pumps

J. Install air separator where shown. Install blowdown piping full size of air separator drain connection, with full-port ball valve; extend full size to point of collection.

K. Install horizontal type expansion tanks above the air separator. Pre-charge air pressure in tank to scheduled pressure or if not scheduled to pressure directed by engineer.

1. Provide supports with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water.

L. Install vertical expansion tanks on concrete housekeeping pad on the floor. Pre-charge air pressure in tank to scheduled pressure or if not scheduled to pressure directed by engineer. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

3.5 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install General Duty Valves (isolation valves, check valves, balancing valves, air vent valves, and drain valves) as specified in section 23 05 23 – General Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.

B. Install safety valves on chiller, and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, on the pressure vessel side of any equipment isolation valves. Pipe safety valve discharge independently to nearest floor drain full size without valves or as otherwise indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

C. Install pressure-reducing valve at hydronic system makeup water connection with three valve bypass consisting of two in-line globe valves to isolate PRV with full port gate valve to bypass it, with pressure gauge piped with three gauge valves to read pressure before and after PRV, and open to atmosphere for purpose of zeroing gauge.

D. Install reduced pressure zone backflow prevention valves at makeup-water connection to hydronic heating and/or cooling systems with two gate isolation valves. Pipe discharge full size to drain.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Size supply and return piping run-outs to equipment connections same as shown on the drawings. Where connecting to existing piping run-outs, use same size as existing unless shown otherwise. Transition to equipment connection size close to equipment. If equipment connection size is smaller than piping shown, transition to piping size shown immediately with no elbows (except reducer elbows) or other fittings closer to the equipment than the required transition fitting.

B. Provide for thermal movement of piping adjacent to terminal equipment, using flexible hose connections, swing joints, etc.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.

2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.

3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.

4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.

5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.

2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.

3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.

4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."

5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.

6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13

SECTION 23 21 23 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
2. Pump Accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.
C. SiC: Silicon Carbide.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves. Demonstrate equal or better performance to basis of design equipment in terms of construction, efficiency, dimensions, system connections, etc.

2. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include dimensioned setting drawings for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.

3. Motor Data: Motor horsepower, electrical characteristics, and construction details demonstrating compliance with requirements.

4. Machinist’s qualifications.

5. Pump alignment report.

B. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Machinist Qualifications: Pump alignment machinist shall be a mechanic specializing in machine alignment and set-up with demonstrable training and experience achieving the tolerances specified, employed independently of the pump manufacturer or selling representative**.** Include specifications and calibration for alignment equipment proposed for use on this project's alignment work.

C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to specification Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL PUMP REQUIREMENTS

A. Materials: Provide materials suitable for fluid, pressures, temperatures, and conditions for each application.

B. Performance: Minimum of design make throughout operating ranges, including capacity, head, NPSHR, and efficiency.

C. Configuration and Characteristics

1. Provide dynamically balanced pumps for all applications.
2. Provide tapped connections for pressure gauges at inlet and outlet, and vent and drain taps at high and low points.
3. Arrange for independent machinist to align each base mounted pump.

D. Motors:

1. Capable of running continuously without undue noise, heat, sparking, or overloading.

2. Extra quiet operating, EPAC "Plus" premium efficiencies for base-mounted pumps and custom premium efficiency for inline pumps.

3. Sized as non-overloading at 60 Hz with pump operating at any point on the impeller curve.

4. All three phase motors for use with variable speed drives shall be special application, inverter duty design of cast iron TEFC construction. Inverter duty design features shall include an inverter grade Class F insulation system meeting NEMA MG-1, Part 31, Class F thermostats, one per phase, premium efficiency design. Motors shall meet all other requirements of this document, the equipment manufacturer, and the adjustable speed drive manufacturer, and be rated for this service with the drive and voltage intended.

2.2 VERTICAL (OR HORIZONTAL) IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers: Basis of design is as scheduled. Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Series 4360, 4380 and 4300 by Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Series e-90, e-80, and e-80SC by ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
3. Series VL and VLS by PACO –Grundfos CBS Incorporated.

B. Inline Centrifugal Pumps: Factory assembled and tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled or split coupled as scheduled, in-line (180 degree opposed connections with common axis) pump designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Internal components capable of servicing without disturbing piping connections, designed for continuous operation between 40 deg. and 250 deg. F.

1. Volute: Single stage, radially split, grade 30 cast iron body, bronze fitted construction, replaceable bronze wear rings, designed for installation in the horizontal or vertical axis position in horizontal or vertical piping. Equal size suction and discharge flanges provided with separate tapped flush line and pressure gage connections suction and discharge.

2. Impeller: ASTM B 584 bronze or stainless steel, precision vacuum cast, closed design with pressure balancing internal flush holes, precision machined and finished on all surfaces removing burrs and casting irregularities resulting in smooth hydraulically efficient surfaces, trimmed as required to meet capacity scheduled, dynamically balanced after trimming to ANSI/HI 9.6.4 grade 6.3, secured to shaft with key and locking stainless steel cap screw.

3. Shaft: Heat-treated alloy steel or stainless steel shaft integral with motor. Alloy steel shafts equipped with replaceable SS shaft sleeve covering all wetted shaft areas including mechanical seal area.

4. Motors:

   a. Integral HP three phase motors: Standard NEMA JM or JP ring mounted motor with extended keyed shaft and heavy-duty re-greaseable grease lubricated ball bearings sized for extended service at the maximum load for which the pump is designed, inverter duty as described above. Motor mounted on precision-machined cast iron motor bracket ensuring positive concentric alignment between motor and volute.

5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

6. Mechanical Seal as described above.

7. Split Coupling Motor Connection: split coupled pumps connected to motor through precision machined high tensile aluminum split type space coupling permitting servicing of the mechanical seal without disturbing pump, motor, or electrical wiring and protected by an OSHA approved guard. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.

8. Supports: Pump volute and motor bracket supported independent of piping with motor supported by motor bracket.

2.3 PUMP ACCESSORIES

A. Provide pump discharge valve for each pump as specified in specification Section 23 05 23 – General Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
B. Provide a pressure gauge for each pump as specified and as detailed. Refer to specification Section 23 05 19 – Meters and Gauges for HVAC Systems for details.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which pumps are to be installed and notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Correct unsatisfactory conditions as required, and do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.

1. Insure equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations are in compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work and service access.

2. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

3. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

B. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions required to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's specific recommendations and in accordance with all related sections of technical specifications. Obtain manufacturer's instructions and follow them, using the instructions written below as a minimum standard for comparison.

B. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Support piping adjacent to pump connections independently of pumps such that load from piping is not transmitted through pumps.

1. Support piping adjacent to inline pumps securely as required to support pumps from piping. Support with piping supports as specified, with continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolators of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.

D. In-line pump mounting:

1. Install in-line pumps weighing under 30 pounds supported from adjacent piping.

2. Provide additional independent supports for in-line pumps weighing 30 pounds and over, similar to flange supports or volute base bracket mountings as recommended by pump manufacturer.

3. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E. Adjust GPM of each pump to capacity called for during balancing.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install isolation valves on both suction and discharge that are same size as piping shown approaching the pumps, prior to any size change required at pump connections.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Check piping connections for tightness.

3. Clean strainers on suction piping.

4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

a. Verify bearing lubrication.

b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.

c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.

6. Start motor.

7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps. Refer to specification Section 01 79 00 - "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 23 21 23

SECTION 23 29 00 – VARIABLE FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes separately enclosed, pre-assembled, combination VFCs (variously referred to as VFC, ASD, VSD, or VFD), rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

1. "Micro-drive": VFC for use with motors of 1HP or less (unless scheduled otherwise), capable of and designed for driving three phase motors with single phase or three phase input line power, as required.

2. "General Purpose" VFC for use with motors > 1HP (unless scheduled otherwise)

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ASD: Adjustable Speed Drive, same as VFC.
B. BAS: Building automation system
C. CPT: Control power transformer.
D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
E. EMC: Electromagnetic Compliance.
F. IGBT: Insulated-gate bipolar transistor.
G. LAN: Local area network.
H. LED: Light-emitting diode.
I. MCP: Motor-circuit protector.
J. NC: Normally closed.
K. NO: Normally open.
L. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
M. Output: Variable frequency output power and wiring between the VFC and the load (motor).
N. PCC: Point of common coupling.
O. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
P. Power: source electrical power input wiring to the VFC.
Q. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
R. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
S. Signal: Remote generated electrical signal causing controlled variation in VFC output.
T. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion.
U. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
V. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.
W. VFD: Variable Frequency Drive, same as VFC.
X. VSD: Variable Speed Drive, same as VFC.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: VFCs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

B. Design and Performance Requirements

1. Designed to convert 60 Hz input power to adjustable frequency output power with constant and/or variable volts/Hz ratio output power. Output frequency and drive voltage adjustable determined by design parameters of driven motor.

2. Capable of operating any standard squirrel cage induction motor with load rating within capacity of adjustable speed drive. Allows substitution of standard motor in field without requiring modification of adjustable speed drive.

3. Designed and manufactured in accordance with applicable current NEMA and IEEE recommendations and designed for installation per NEC. Includes equipment with UL and CSA approval as applicable.

4. Suitable for installation in altitudes up to 3300 ft with ambient temperature range from 32 deg F to 104 deg F

5. Designed with dedicated variable torque design for specified use with centrifugal loads.

6. “Micro-Drive” includes all of above features plus:

a. Capable of and designed for converting single-phase input to three phase output.

7. “General Purpose” Drive includes all of above features plus:

a. Suitable to serve as starter and disconnect.

b. Designed with surface-mount construction regulator circuits.

c. Provided with UL-listed electrical components in basic ASD, including but not limited to contactors, overload relays, pushbuttons, pilot devices, and other control devices.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Procedural Requirements: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

B. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated. Include features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, shipping and operating weights, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include output cabling.

C. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections; and conduit entry locations and sizes, mounting arrangements, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment.

1. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:

a. Each installed unit's type and details.
b. Factory-installed devices.
c. Enclosure types and details.
d. Nameplate legends.
e. Short-circuit current (withstand) rating of enclosed unit.
f. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each VFC and installed devices.
g. Specified modifications.

2. Schematic and Connection Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Harmonic Analysis Study and Report: Comply with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification and IEEE519 Guidelines for both Current and Voltage Distortion in a distribution system; identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at each VFC to specified levels. Include measurements taken on the line side of the main distribution transformer coordinated with local electrical utility, or if not possible from the load or low voltage side of that same transformer.

B. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around VFCs. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

D. Product Certificates: For each VFC, from manufacturer.

E. Source quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
2. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
3. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
4. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.

C. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.

D. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test VFC according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packing and Shipping: Furnish all equipment in cartons and within shrink-wrapped plastic to Project in ample time for installation. Properly tag and identify equipment furnished.

B. Storage and Protection: Store all equipment between delivery and installation in secure location that is dry, permanently enclosed, heated, and air conditioned as required to eliminate any condensation, moisture, heat or cold related damage.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation, capable of driving full load without derating, under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 14 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F
3. Humidity: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
4. Altitude: Not exceeding 3300 feet.

B. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electrical service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, load characteristics, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Torque, speed, horsepower, overall power, and other electrical requirements of the load.
2. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
3. Distance of VFC from load and conditions of signal cable installation.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.13 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.

4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. ABB.
2. AC Technology International Ltd (AC Tech); part of the Lenze Group.
3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
4. Yaskawa America, Inc; Drives Division.

B. General Requirements for VFCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508C.

C. Application: Variable torque.

D. VFC Description: Variable-frequency power converter (rectifier, dc bus, and IGBT, PWM inverter) factory packaged in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."

2. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."

3. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

F. Output Rating: Three-phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

G. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.

4. Minimum Efficiency: 97 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 42 kA.
7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 14 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
8. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F
9. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
10. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet.
11. Vibration Withstand: Comply with IEC 60068-2-6.
12. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
13. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
14. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent.
15. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 12 minimum kHz.
16. Minimum 0.14µs Dt rise time or other improved technology which limits transient voltage spikes; such as soft switching.
17. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, high slip and dc injection braking.

H. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 32 bit, isolated from all power circuits.

I. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.

J. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.

K. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.

2. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.

3. Under- and overvoltage trips.

4. Inverter overcurrent trips.

5. VFC and Motor Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad; NRTL approved.

6. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.

7. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.

8. Loss-of-phase protection.

9. Reverse-phase protection.

10. Short-circuit protection.

11. Motor overtemperature fault.

L. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

M. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.

N. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

O. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

P. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
2. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
3. Auxiliary Contacts: NO/NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
5. NO alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

2.2 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

A. All VSDs:

1. Adjustments accessible from a keypad integral to VSD.

2. Auto/Manual, Start/Stop, and speed selection accessible on the front of the controller.

3. Power-on, run and trip monitor indications displayed by backlit LCD on the front of the controller.

4. Linear timed acceleration and deceleration, individually adjustable with 0.1 - 600 seconds range.

5. Minimum 40:1 controlled speed range.

6. Minimum 0.1-120 Hz output frequency range.

7. Adjustable Volts/Hz ratio with both factory preset and custom tunable options. Voltage boost adjustable in addition to V/Hz ratio.

8. Controller capable of restarting with the motor coasting in either forward or reverse direction without tripping.

9. Minimum Hertz (0-50 percent), maximum Hertz (50-100 percent).

10. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display VFC status, alarms, and energy usage. Allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration; settings retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.

    a. Network Communications Ports: Ethernet and RS-422/485.
    b. Embedded BAS Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135 BACnet and/or Echelon LonWorks; protocols accessible via the communications ports.

B. All "General Purpose" drives, optional for "Micro" drives:

1. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:

    a. Power on.
    b. Run.
    c. Overvoltage.
    d. Line fault.
    e. Overcurrent.
    f. External fault.

2. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.

    a. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.

    b. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.

        1) Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.

3. Historical Logging Information and Displays:

    a. Real-time clock with current time and date.
    b. Running log of total power versus time.
    c. Total run time.
    d. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.

4. Indicating Devices: Digital display mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:

    a. Output frequency (Hz).
    b. Motor speed (rpm).
    c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
    d. Motor current (amperes).
    e. Motor torque (percent).
    f. Fault or alarming status (code).
    g. PID feedback signal (percent).
    h. DC-link voltage (V dc).
    i. Set point frequency (Hz).
    j. Motor output voltage (V ac).

5. Control Signal Interfaces:

    a. Electric Input Signal Interface:

        1) A minimum of 2 programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA dc.
        2) A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.

    b. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BAS or other control systems:

        1) 0- to 10-V dc.
        2) 4- to 20-mA dc.
        3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
        4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.

    c. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of 2 programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA dc), which can be configured for any of the following:

        1) Output frequency (Hz).
        2) Output current (load).
        3) DC-link voltage (V dc).
        4) Motor torque (percent).
        5) Motor speed (rpm).
        6) Set point frequency (Hz).

    d. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:

        1) Motor running.
        2) Set point speed reached.
        3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
        4) PID high- or low-speed limits reached.

6. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display VFC status and alarms and energy usage. Allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration; settings retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.

    a. Network Communications Ports: Ethernet and RS-422/485.
    b. Embedded BAS Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135 BACnet and/or Echelon LonWorks; protocols accessible via the communications ports.

2.3 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING

A. Input Line Conditioning: Provide 3 percent AC line reactor between the line and the drive.
B. Output Filtering: For lead lengths over 50 feet, provide 5 percent AC load reactor between the drive and the load.
C. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

2.4 PROTECTION

A. All VSDs:

1. Lockable enclosure containing drive, line reactor, and fused exterior disconnect protecting all components. Enclosure large enough to facilitate ease of service, configured to fit in available mounting location and allow for rapid change-out of micro drive.

2. Includes capability of riding though power dips up to 2 seconds without a controller trip depending on load and operating condition. During ride through, drive uses energy generated by the rotating load as a power source for all electronic circuits.

3. Instantaneous electronic trip when the current demands of the invertor exceed its intermittent rating, 300 percent maximum.

4. Electronic overload circuit to protect AC motors operated by the VSD output from extended overload operation on an inverse time basis UL and NEC recognized as motor protection.

5. Enclosure, fuses, circuit breakers, and contactors as required allowing use as motor protection per strictest of regulatory requirements having jurisdiction.

6. Minimum 75 percent input line under voltage trip; average 120 percent over voltage.

7. Line-to-line and line-to-ground short circuit protection.

B. All “General Purpose” drives, optional for “Micro” drives:

1. Lockable exterior disconnect.

2. Internal disconnect to isolate the drive for service when in bypass operation.

3. Includes capability of riding though power dips up to 10 seconds without a controller trip depending on load and operating condition. During ride through, drive uses energy generated by the rotating load as a power source for all electronic circuits.

4. Minimum 42,000 RMS AISC fault withstand capability.

5. Electronic trip when the current demands of the inverter exceed its intermittent rating for 3 seconds, 150 percent maximum.

6. Electronic overload circuit to protect AC motors operated by the VSD output from extended overload operation on an inverse time basis UL and NEC recognized as motor protection.

7. Fuses, circuit breakers, and contactors as required allowing use as motor protection per strictest of regulatory requirements having jurisdiction.

8. Minimum 80 percent input line under voltage trip; average 110 percent over voltage.

9. Line-to-line and line-to-ground short circuit protection.

10. Input 3-phase AC line reactor (DC link not acceptable).

2.5 BYPASS SYSTEMS

A. "Micro" Drive: No bypass required. Provide "Spare" drives as follows:

1. For each building in project where "Micro" drives are utilized, provide one spare drive of each unique configuration (voltage/phase/HP) "Micro" Drive installed as part of project, minimum two if only one configuration is used. Deliver spare drives to Owner and provide Architect with letter signed by owner confirming receipt of spare "Micro" drives.

B. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.

C. Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or automatic control system feedback.

D. Bypass Controller: Three contactor bypass or two-contactor-style bypass that allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC-rated contactor.

2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC-rated contactor.

3. Input Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC-rated contactor.

4. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

E. Bypass Contactor Configuration:

1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.

2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.

3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.

4. Control Circuits: 120-V ac.

5. Manufacturers typically integrate overload functions into the microprocessors of VFCs and use separate thermal or solid-state overload relays only if specifying a bypass system. Retain one or more of first three subparagraphs below if specifying a bypass system. If retaining more than one, show on Drawings where each type is required. See Editing Instruction No. 6 and "Overload Protection" Article in the Evaluations for additional guidance.

6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.

a. Solid-State Overload Relays:

1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
2) Sensors in each phase.
3) Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
5) Analog communication module.

b. NO isolated overload alarm contact.

c. External overload reset push button.

2.6 OPTIONAL FEATURES

A. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications, when overload protection activates.

1. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.

2. Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.

3. Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.

B. Damper control circuit with end of travel feedback capability.

C. Sleep Function: Senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal and stops the motor. On an increase in speed-command signal deviation, VFC resumes normal operation.

D. Motor Preheat Function: Preheats motor when idle to prevent moisture accumulation in the motor.

E. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from the firefighter's control station, this password-protected input:

1. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).
2. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed.
3. Forces VFC to transfer to Bypass Mode and operate motor at full speed.
4. Causes display of Override Mode on the VFC display.
5. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal automatically.

F. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.

G. Remote digital operator kit.

H. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.

2.7 ENCLOSURES

A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor Locations: or Type 1.
2. Exterior Locations: Type 4x.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VSD enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated. Pilot Lights: LED types; colors as required; push to test.

B. Reversible NC/NO bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).

C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.

E. Supplemental Digital Meters:

1. Elapsed-time meter.
2. Kilowatt meter.
3. Kilowatt-hour meter.

F. Cooling Fan and Exhaust System: As required for NEMA 250, Type 12; UL 508 component recognized: Supply fan, with composite or stainless steel intake and exhaust grills and filters; 120 -V ac; obtained from integral CPT.

G. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.

H. Output Cable: Provide sufficient special purpose VFC output cable for all power wiring between all VFCs and their respective loads, sized per the stricter of NEC, drive and motor manufacturer's recommendations, or as shown on drawings.

1. Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire.

2. VFC Cable: Type TC-ER low-capacitance shielded VFC cabling with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation over tin-coated high strand count conductors, spiral-wrapped foil plus full coverage braided shields in direct contact with symmetrical ground conductors (one per power conductor), and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

3. Capacitance value core to core less than 75pF/m, core to shield less than 150pF/m.

4. Basis of design: Amercable TC-ER VFD cable, or equal by Beldon or Carol.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.

1. Test each VFC while connected to a motor that is comparable to that for which the VFC is rated.
2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.

B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.
B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.
D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
E. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of VFCs with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required access, workspace clearances, and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels. Install VFCs in an upright position.

B. Install VFCs including all transformers, line reactors, bypass enclosures and other accessories, on walls or equipment racks level, upright, with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall or floor. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

C. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Systems."

D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONTROL AND POWER WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices and facility's central-control system. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

B. Bundle, train, and support line, load, and control wiring in separate enclosures.

C. Install output cabling in strict accordance with manufacturers' recommendations. Provide for strain relief and cabling protection from damage. Verify cable length prior to installation and provide output line reactor if length exceeds that specified.

D. Connect selector switches and other automatic control devices where applicable.

1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.

2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.

2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.

3. Test continuity of each circuit.

4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Construction Manager before starting the motor(s).

5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.

6. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

   a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Completion and Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

   b. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

   c. Re-tighten all connections as required.

   d. Generate report for inclusion in close-out documentation including color thermography printouts showing acceptable results.

   e. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

F. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Provide services of a manufacturer's factory –authorized service representative to inspect complete installation, start and adjust each drive, and train the Owner in drive operation, maintenance, and adjustment.

B. Coordinate services of adjustable speed drive factory –authorized service representative, TAB Agency, and Controls Technicians to insure proper coordinated operation and system control.

C. Complete additional installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Submit letter from manufacturer's factory –authorized service representative attesting to the satisfactory completion of installation and startup, with attached start-up / calibration forms for each drive with all appropriate adjustment settings itemized.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.

B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.

C. Fully adjust each adjustable speed drive including maximum and minimum speeds, rates of speed change, calibration, testing, and as otherwise required to meet the operational intent and all control sequences.

D. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Architect before increasing settings.

E. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.

F. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.

B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

1. Submit letter from factory-authorized service representative attesting to the satisfactory completion of Owner’s training, signed by Owner’s representatives.

END OF SECTION 23 29 00

SECTION 23 31 00 - DUCTWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sheet metal duct materials and construction.
2. Sheet metal duct fittings materials and construction.
3. Ductwork ancillary components materials and construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Aspect Ratio: The ratio of duct width to height.

B. Hydraulic Radius: The ratio of duct cross section area to perimeter, or practically, a term used to define flow resistance of duct with differing aspect ratios, with resistance to flow being approximately proportional to hydraulic radius.

C. NRC: Noise Reduction Criteria

D. Offset: A change in the duct centerline location but not direction occurring within one piece of duct.

E. RGD: Registers, Grilles, and/or Diffusers

F. STC: Sound Transmission Class

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide duct system able to withstand the loads and stresses described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and these contract documents.

B. Fabricate outdoor duct and casings to withstand wind load and snow load indicated on Structural series drawings and specifications. Calculate the snow load as a negative pressure on the top duct surface.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

B. Identify in writing, any proposed deviations from contract Drawings and Specifications.

1. Highlight all changes from plans required by obstructions and job conditions.

2. Bring any proposed deviations from contract plans and specifications to Architect's attention in writing, by separate letter attached to submittal with proposed deviations, along with samples for clarification, demonstrating benefit to Owner.

C. Product Data: Submit for approval annotated Shop Construction Standards showing upgrades as required for conformance in detail to specifications for all factory and shop fabricated air ducts, components, and accessories.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. Prepare and submit 1/4" = 1’ scale or larger shop drawings for all areas within 30 days after contract award unless Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner agree in writing upon another shop drawing schedule. Refer to section 01 33 00 – Submittals for additional information.

a. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
b. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
c. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and SMACNA pressure class required for all duct.
d. Indicate duct elevation above floor (top and bottom of ducts), bottom of structure especially at critical passages, and ceiling height for each room.
e. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
f. Fittings.
g. Reinforcement and spacing.
h. Seam and joint construction.
i. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
j. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
k. Indicate locations and sizes of all dampers, turning vanes, and panels, and other required accessories.
l. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 77 00 – Closeout Procedures, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "Operating and Maintenance Data" manual described in that section.

B. Field quality-control reports – duct leakage, duct cleanliness.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide ductwork by experienced and approved workers specializing in sheet metal fabrication and installation in accordance with the stricter of the below referenced standards and the requirements outlined in these contract documents.

B. Referenced Standards

1. The latest editions of the publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

2. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)

   a. ASHRAE / ANSI 62.1 – Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.
   b. ASHRAE / ANSI 90.1 – Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

3. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

   a. A167 99 Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat Resisting Chromium Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

   b. A653-09 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip process

   c. A1011-09a Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot rolled, Carbon, structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength

   d. B209 07 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

   e. C1071-05e1 Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)

   f. D6386 Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting

   g. D7803 Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Powder Coating

   h. E84-09a Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

4. National Air Duct Cleaners Association (NADCA):

   a. ACR “Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems”, for duct cleanliness standards.

5. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA):

   a. HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible
   b. HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

6. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):

   a. 181 Factory Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors
   b. 555 Standard for Fire Dampers

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUCT MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated.

2. Provide sheet metals per mill specs and free of pits, voids, seam or roller marks, stains, discolorations, inadvertent bends and kinks, and other imperfections.

B. Standard Supply, Return and Exhaust: Galvanized steel, ASTM A-653/653M G90, lock forming quality, unless otherwise specified.

C. Standard Supply, Return and Exhaust duct which will be exposed to view in the finished project and will not be externally insulated or painted: Galvannealed steel, ASTM A-653/653M G90, lock forming quality, unless otherwise noted.

D. Standard Supply, Return and Exhaust duct which will be exposed to view in the finished project and will be painted: Galvannealed steel, ASTM A-653/653M G90, lock forming quality, prepared for painting via mill phosphatizing and subsequent heat treatment in accordance with ASTM D6386 and ASTM D7803 as applicable, unless otherwise noted.

E. Ducts serving Locker Rooms and Locker Room Toilets, Natatoriums, Shower Rooms, Crawlspaces, Dryer Vents, and Other High Humidity Areas: ASTM B-209 Aluminum alloy 3003 with H14 temper, with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials, and use stainless steel fasteners.

2.2 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Conform to appropriate SMACNA rectangular duct reinforcement tables and figures for the velocity-pressure classification duct construction required as defined in part three of this document, and additionally as follows.

1. Seal all joints and seams in accordance with SMACNA seal classification required for duct in question.

    a. Additionally, seal field assembled longitudinal seams for seal class B duct.

2. Transverse Joints: in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure for "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints".

    a. For all duct requiring reinforcement, provide SMACNA T-24 or T-25 type flanged duct connection system at traverse joints.

        1) Joints may be factory manufactured slip on type or integrally shop fabricated onto the duct sheet metal on machinery designed for that purpose. Corner closure pieces are required at each corner.

        2) Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering pre-manufactured slip on reinforcement products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

            a) Ductmate Industries, Inc, or equal.
            b) Lockformer TDC or equal.
            c) Nexus PDQ type G or J or equal.

3. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

4. Tie rods are not permitted on duct or plenums narrower than 72”. Where an option for tie rod or heavier gauge sheet metal / shorter joint length / higher category reinforcement is presented in table, the heavier, shorter, more reinforced duct with no tie rods is required.

B. Offsets:

1. Where offset dimension is equal to or less than 0.2 times duct dimension in plane of offset, offset may be angled at maximum 15 degrees (SMACNA type 1).

2. Where offset dimension is greater than 0.2 times duct dimension in plane of offset (example: 10 x 20 duct offset in plane of 10" dimension greater than 2 inches), offset to consist of paired curved elbows, each of the required angle, combined into one fitting (SMACNA type 3).

    a. Conform to elbow requirements as indicated below.

b. Offset may be replaced with paired curved elbows if required for installation, otherwise provide combined fitting.

C. Transitions of shape or cross section:

1. Reductions in cross section shall have a maximum included cone angle of 60 deg., with a maximum single side angle of 45 deg. from axial, unless otherwise specified in writing.

2. Transformations of section without a net reduction of cross section shall have no section of reduced hydraulic radius nor any local expansion of more than 15 deg. net included cone angle, as defined by ASHRAE and SMACNA.

3. Expansion sections, unless specifically drawn and noted otherwise, shall have:

a. No section of reduced hydraulic radius
b. No section of local expansion of more than 15 deg. net included cone angle.
c. No single side expansion angle of more than 15 deg. from axial unless otherwise specified in writing.

D. Elbows:

1. Make all changes in direction (as opposed to offsets above where direction remains the same) regardless of angle with elbow fittings unless specifically drawn and noted otherwise.

2. Curved Rectangular Elbows:

a. Along critical pressure drop paths, provide curved rectangular elbows.

1) Critical pressure drop paths shall be as indicated on drawings or if not indicated shall be considered to be entire duct run from air handling unit along mains to or from furthest terminal. Systems with more than one main branch shall be considered to have more than one critical pressure drop path.

2) Provide critical path elbows with throat radius not less than dimension of duct in plane of radius or use smaller inner radius elbows with splitter vanes such that the ratio of inner to outer radius of curvature of any section of the elbow shall not be less than 1/2.

b. Along non-critical pressure drop paths, curved rectangular elbow radius requirements may be relaxed to a throat radius not less than one half the dimension of the duct in plane of radius or use smaller inner radius with splitter vanes such that the ratio of inner to outer radius of curvature of any section of the elbow shall not be less than 1/3.

c. Construct all curved elbows of increasing or decreasing cross section in accordance with critical pressure drop path criteria.

d. Fabricate splitter vanes per SMACNA Duct Manual construction standards.

3. Mitered rectangular elbows

    a. Only elbows not along critical pressure drop path may be of curved or mitered construction.
    b. Mitered rectangular elbows with angle of bend under 15 deg. may have miter at duct end similar to SMACNA type 1 offset.
    c. Provide turning vanes in mitered rectangular elbows with angle of bend over 15 degrees.
    d. Mitered elbows with angle of bend over 100 deg. or less than 80 deg. shall not use commercially available 90 deg. turning vanes

E. Duct Branches:

1. Install branches, inlets, and outlets so that air turbulence is reduced to a minimum and air volume properly apportioned. Install airflow adjustment devices at all junctions to permit adjustment of the amount of air entering or leaving the branch.

2. Where a duct branch is to handle more than 25 percent of the air handled by the duct main, use a complete elbow as specified, assembled into a single fitting with the main duct. Size the separate branch and remaining main as shown on the drawings, and partition the division of the combined duct such that each of the branch and main have the same velocity, with cross sectional area proportional to the respective airflow. Join the leading / trailing edge where the branch and main meet airtight via welding or brazing.

3. Where a duct branch is to handle less than 25 percent of the air handled by the duct main, construct the branch connection with a 45 degree side take-off with volume damper in branch line close to takeoff. Round branches off of rectangular main, use 45 deg. entry takeoff with integral transition to round.

    a. Supply: increase duct dimension on upstream side of branch by 25 percent, minimum 4 inch.
    b. Return: increase duct dimension on downstream side of branch by 25 percent, minimum 4 inch.
    c. Multiple flow direction takeoffs: provide twin entries or bell mouths.

4. Where an air-diffusion device is shown as being installed in close proximity to (less than one main duct width) the side, top, or bottom of a duct, provide a commercially manufactured vaned volume extractor fitting to allow adjustment of the air quantity and to provide an even flow of air across the device it services.

F. Duct Entries

1. Wherever air does not enter the duct system from grilles, registers, or louvers, but instead enters directly from an enclosed or exposed plenum space, provide a duct entry transition with a minimum area ratio of inlet to nominal duct size of 2:1 unless otherwise specifically shown and noted.

2. Duct entry may be angled (pyramidal or conical) or with bell-mouth radius.

   a. Provide angled duct entries with a maximum single side angle to axial of 30 deg. Any combination of sides, top, and bottom may be angled (or conical for round duct) to suit space restrictions, but maintain the specified area ratio.

   b. Provide bell-mouthed entries with radius as required maintaining the specified area ratio.

3. Provide entry grille or if not shown, provide at minimum 1/2 inch welded wire mesh (WWM) secured over the large side of the opening of all duct entries.

2.3 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Spiral lock-seam duct, joints, and fittings:

      1) Lindab Inc.
      2) McGill AirFlow LLC.
      3) SEMCO Incorporated.
      4) Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
      5) Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

   b. Longitudinal fusion-welded duct, joints, and fittings as described in appropriate SMACNA manuals and herein – shop fabricated.

   c. 26 ga. G-60 longitudinal snap-lock construction duct, joints, and fittings.

B. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible", and as follows:

1. Spiral lock seam duct:

   a. Machine locked spiral seams with or without formed standing reinforcement ribs.
   b. Leakage through the duct wall and joints certified no greater than design make.
   c. Provide minimum 12 ft. long un-joined lengths, except where interrupted by fittings.

2. Longitudinal seam duct shall have fusion-welded butt seams.

   a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

3. Snap-lock seam duct:

a. Limit snap-lock construction components and systems to concealed round duct run-outs to individual diffusers, registers, and grilles, in sizes 12 inch and under, with all transverse and longitudinal seams sealed.

b. Longitudinal seams field assembled by interlocking machine formed sprung tabs, with sealant brushed on before and after assembly.

c. Provide minimum 10 ft. long un-joined lengths, except where interrupted by fittings or shorter lengths are required to work through existing structure.

C. Transverse Joints - Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible", and as follows:

1. 24 in. diameter and less: slip fit collars or sleeve couplings, reinforced by rolled beads, insertion length 2 inch. Secure with hexagon head drill point screws or other approved mechanical fasteners 6 inch o.c. max and duct sealant.

D. Elbows:

1. Fabricated to a centerline radius of minimum 1.5 times the cross-section diameter.

a. Where space constrictions do not allow specified centerline radius or where shown as such on drawings only, provide mitered elbow of fully welded construction with single thickness turning vanes spaced 3 inch o.c. max.

2. For use with snap-lock round duct, where allowed as described above: Gored adjustable elbows, seal adjustable joints after installation.

3. For standard bends (ex. 45 deg. and 90 deg.), diameters through 9 inch: Two-section stamped and welded 22 ga. elbows.

4. Diameters 10 inch through 30 inch, any angle: Gored standing seam construction similar to United McGill “UNI-SEAM”. Less than 36 deg. - two gores, 36 deg. to 72 deg. - three gores, over 72 deg. - five gores.

E. Tees and Lateral Branches: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible", and as follows:

1. Bull-Headed Tees:

    a. Provide wye fitting with subsequent partial bend elbows for critical run bull-headed tees.
    b. Provide capped main and twin lateral branches as described below for general purpose bull-headed tees.
    c. Provide "bird-mouthed" fitting with turning vanes only where space restrictions require and where specifically shown as such on the drawings.

2. Fabricate lateral tees and all branches with fittings as described herein:

    a. Fabricate to longitudinal welded duct standards. Where possible, provide gored standing seam construction similar to United McGill "UNI-SEAM", otherwise stitch or button welded or riveted. Seal all joints.

    b. Fitting entrance free of weld build-up or spatter, burrs, or irregularities, not projecting into either the main or branch runs.

    c. Provide manual volume damper at all branch connections.

    d. Typical round branch connections to round main duct, provide 45 deg. reducing lateral takeoff fitting, with subsequent elbow resulting in required branch angle to main.

        1) Where space restrictions do not permit this combination, provide 90 deg. angled oval to round takeoff fitting or conical takeoff with similar loss coefficient.

        2) For critical run (ie. maximum pressure drop) round branch connections to round main ductwork, provide high performance 45 deg. reducing conical lateral takeoff fitting, with subsequent elbow resulting in required branch angle to main.

        3) Exposed, duct side mounted register connections may be tapped into side wall of length of duct.

F. Offsets:

1. All offsets to consist of paired curved elbows, each of the required angle, combined into one fitting.

G. Transitions of shape or cross section and duct entries:

1. As described for rectangular duct above.

2.4 EXTERIOR DUCT

A. Construction as detailed above with the additional requirements listed herein.

B. Seal all exterior duct completely water tight, including all longitudinal and transverse seams, fittings, and branch connections. Seal both during assembly and from the exterior. Use only exterior all weather grade gaskets and sealants. Apply sealants neatly, avoiding exposed sealant on surface. Where sealant must be exposed for function apply in neat fillets.

C. Fabricate all transverse joints using an **INTEGRAL** standing flange reinforcement similar to SMACNA T-24 or T25 as described in the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards Manual. Use of "slip-on" reinforcing flanges not permitted.

D. Install all exterior duct with minimum 1 inch per 10 ft pitch to avoid standing water puddles on top surface.

2.5 EXPOSED DUCT SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

A. Provide aluminum (as required above) or paintable galvanized steel for all exposed supply, return and exhaust duct which will not be externally insulated. Mill phosphatizing in accordance with ASTM A2092 is acceptable material. Use forming lubricants which are compatible with specified painting systems and provide painters with factory recommendations for appropriate and compatible solvents, primers, etc...

B. Welds: exposed welds ground smooth and all weld spatter scraped or ground off.

C. Sealants: use only paintable sealants, applied neatly, avoiding exposed sealant on surface. Where sealant must be exposed for function apply in neat fillets.

D. Avoid all shipping and handling damage to surfaces. Replace pieces that are damaged and not repaired so that repair is not visible.

E. Joints: rotate all spiral seams of round duct so as to form continuous helical spiral. Carefully coordinate installation of exposed duct side mounted register connections as required.

F. Provide tapered "ramp" couplings for joints where allowed by size.

2.6 DUCTWORK ANCILLARY COMPONENTS

A. In general, duct accessories associated with specialized requirements which are called out and / or scheduled on the drawings are specified in section 23 33 00 – Air Duct Accessories. The ancillary components included in this section are generally required in all air duct systems, need not be specifically called for on the drawings other than by specification or standard symbols and abbreviations, and are required to be detailed in the shop standards submittal.

B. Acoustical and Thermal Duct Liner:

1. Refer to specification section 23 07 00 – HVAC Insulation for duct liner specifications.

2. Where duct liner is used, enlarge ductwork in both directions by double the nominal duct liner thickness to size required to provide for free area dimensions as shown on the drawings.

3. Duct liner used for sound attenuation purposes only to be minimum 1 inch thick or thicker as specified on the drawings.

4. Duct liner used in lieu of external thermal insulation is required to meet the insulation value and associated thickness requirements of section 23 07 00.

5. Duct liner materials and installation, as specified in section 23 07 00, may be submitted under either this section or in section 23 07 00.

C. Duct Connectors

1. Flange Connectors

a. Refer to flange reinforced transverse joint system described under duct construction above. Flanged connections to system components other than adjacent duct sections may be fabricated similar to a transverse joint. If required to connect to equipment or components of different configuration provide flanged connector custom fabricated of reinforcement shapes as specified.

b. Material: Match adjacent duct.

2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.

2. Tape Width: 4 inches.

3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.

4. Water resistant.

5. Mold and mildew resistant.

6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.

7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.

8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.

10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.

2. Type: S.

3. Grade: NS.

4. Class: 25.

5. Use: O.

6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Provide complete system of Air Duct Hangers and Supports as required by the Air Duct systems included. Refer to Section 23 05 29 – "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Components" for details of Hanger and Support requirements for Air Ducts and associated components.

B. Provide complete system of Air Duct Vibration and Movement Control as required by the Air Duct systems included. Refer to Section 23 05 43 – "Mechanical Vibration and Movement Control" for details of vibration isolation and movement control requirements for Air Ducts and associated components.

C. Flexible Duct Supports and Accessories:

1. Elbow Supports: UL listed for plenum installation molded fiber reinforced plastic elbow support at connections to ceiling mounted devices designed to maintain tension in flex duct and eliminate collapsed elbows. Basis of design: Thermaflex FlexFlow elbows.

2. Flexible Duct Supports: UL listed for plenum installation molded fiber reinforced plastic 1-1/2" wide straps adjustable for 4" to 16" diameter flex duct, supports duct without damaging vapor barrier or collapsing soft insulation or duct. Basis of design: Thermaflex FlexTie straps.

3. Clamps: Re-usable stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size, or single use "zip-tie" strap of plenum rated plastic, sizes 3 through 10 inches diameter maximum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions under which duct work is to be installed for compliance with requirements for proper installation.

1. Check all drawings for detailed information and locations and field verify all conditions affecting installation.
2. Notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before fabrication of any changes in size required by obstructions and job conditions.
4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.
5. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 DUCT FABRICATION

A. Fabricate and install as shown on Drawings and in manner coordinated with all construction requirements.

B. Sizes shown on plans are clear inside duct dimensions representing the design hydraulic radius of the duct. Generally, fabricate ductwork of sizes shown on plans. During field verification, confirm that duct of aspect ratio shown fits within general construction constraints coordinated with all other trades. Adjust aspect ratio, joint spacing, reinforcement, etc., as required during coordination process to fit duct of equivalent hydraulic radius where shown. If duct of reduced hydraulic radius is required due to field conditions, submit RFI for direction before proceeding.

C. Flexible Connections: Provided at intake and discharge connections to all motor powered fan air handling equipment and other vibration isolated air handling component connections.

D. Fabricate all ductwork to the SMACNA pressure classification reinforcement standards shown on the drawings and to the following minimum standards.

1. Conform to special duct pressure classification requirements for all duct between air handler blowers and last fire or fire/smoke damper in series, and duct after the last fire or fire/smoke damper in series up to the next 90 deg. turn:

a. Fabricate to the SMACNA pressure classification reinforcement standards required by the system supply or return blower dynamic stall pressure; assume the larger of 200% of external operating pressure scheduled or 150% of fan total pressure listed as a minimum. VIF with approved equipment fan curves and adjust pressure classification values accordingly.

2. Where there are no fire or fire / smoke dampers and past the 90 degree turn mentioned above, complete to the last branch duct volume damper, VAV box, induction unit, or other pressure restricting device, fabricate duct to pressure classification as required by the system supply or return operating pressure listed on the drawings, minimum plus or minus two (2) inch water column.

3. Fabricate branch run-out duct between the last pressure restricting device and the air terminal register, grille, or diffuser to minimum plus or minus one (1) inch water column pressure classification.

E. Deliver and store all duct with duct interior clean and all openings sealed with film designed for the purpose of keeping uninstalled duct clean. Unless section of duct is being actively extended during construction, keep all openings and RGD properly sealed and prevent entrance of dust, dirt, construction debris, etc.

F. Extend all access openings, damper rods, and levers to outside of external insulation for convenience of operation and maintenance.

G. Provide all necessary transitions, fittings, aspect ratio changes, etc., as required to install duct work. Where aspect ratio changes are required to fit within structural or other existing construction constraints, provide duct of equal or larger hydraulic radius.

3.3 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install concealed in general construction unless otherwise specified or indicated on Drawings.

C. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

D. Provide all necessary openings, sleeves, hanger inserts, chases, recesses, etc., in general construction work. Coordinate duct openings provided by others in ample time to avoid delays.

E. Provide collars to trim all duct openings in general construction work.

F. Make final ductwork connections to equipment where indicated on the drawings.

G. Install ductwork in all spaces as high as possible and in locations to avoid interference with recessed lights, piping, general construction, etc.

H. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

I. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

J. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

K. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

L. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

M. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

N. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults, electrical equipment rooms and enclosures, and stairwells.

O. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

P. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire or combination fire-smoke dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

Q. Where duct passes through exterior walls and roofs from interior to exterior, provide water and airtight penetration detailing as required, preserving the thermal, moisture, and vapor penetration resistance of the surrounding assembly.

R. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds and surrounding heat affected zone to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.5 DUCT SEALING

A. Make system air tight / water tight as required and approved, replacing any poor joints or careless work. Fabricate ductwork to the following SMACNA leakage standards:

1. Seal Class A - Greater than 2 inch w.g. and for air and water tight ductwork described below.
2. Seal Class B – 2 inch w.g. and less general supply, return, and exhaust ductwork.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the requirements of the following:

1. SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
2. Section 23 05 29 – Hangers And Supports for HVAC Components.
3. Section 23 05 43 – Mechanical Vibration and Movement Control.

B. Comply with the additional requirements below:

1. SMACNA load tables do not provide for external loads on duct: provide for 200 lb external load on all duct hangers and supports. Increase hanger and support sizes from SMACNA tables accordingly:

   a. Minimum band size 20ga. x 1 inch.

   b. Duct 48” wide and larger; provide trapeze style support of metal channel framing or angle iron, suspended from threaded rods.

   c. Hanger bands to extend down sides and turn under bottom 1 inch minimum for all duct sizes. Minimum (2) #10 sheet metal screws per hanger (one each on side and bottom), (2) screws minimum on sides for duct over 12 inches tall, 12 inches on center max.

2. Hangers Exposed to View:

   a. Rectangular duct: threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
   b. Round duct: twin half round bands 14 ga min., and threaded rods.

3. Provide hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

4. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

5. Do not allow flexible duct to rest on general construction. Support flexible duct at maximum 3 feet on center.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections at all intake and discharge connections between duct and vibration producing equipment with fans, including BCU, AHU, RTU, FCU, etc.., where duct passes through building expansion joints, and as shown on the drawings, with flexible connectors as specified.

1. Round connections: Adhesive and approved metal draw bands; ends tightly bolted together.

2. Rectangular flanges: Material securely held in grooved seam, tightly clipped or screwed on 6 inch centers.

3. Connections not over 2 inch between duct and equipment, with at least 1 inch excess material.

4. Install neatly so as not to interfere with air flow through connection. Provide round metal center ring or rectangular metal center collar to prevent flex fabric collapse inside of nominal connected duct dimensions.

B. Registers, Diffusers, and Grilles:

1. Install flexible duct connections to registers, diffusers, and grilles with no more than 20 degree unsupported bend in flex. Where horizontal duct connects to vertical axis collar (ex., ceiling mounted diffuser), provide elbow support as specified or hard elbow.

2. Exposed, duct side mounted: Mount outlet outside of air stream with extension collars full size of register or grille frame outside margin, with turned in duct flange and turned out terminal mounting flange. Provide vaned air extractor with internal mechanism / external rotating knob adjuster.

3. Exposed ductwork hard piped connections: per Duct Manual.

3.8 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 - "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

END OF SECTION 23 31 00

SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Control dampers.
3. Fire dampers.
4. Turning vanes.
5. Duct-mounted access doors.
6. Flexible connectors.
7. Flexible ducts.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control damper installations.

d. Fire-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    c. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    d. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    e. Nailor Industries Inc.
    f. Ruskin Company.
    g. Trox USA Inc.
    h. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.

3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

4. Frames:

    a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch minimum thickness.
    b. Mitered and welded corners.
    c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.

6. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.

7. Bearings:

    a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    e. Ruskin Company.
    f. Trox USA Inc.
    g. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

4. Frames:

    a. Hat shaped.
    b. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
    c. Mitered and welded corners.
    d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.

6. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.

7. Bearings:

    a. Molded synthetic.
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.

9. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.

10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

11. Accessories:

    a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

C. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 1-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

D. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.3 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
7. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
10. Ruskin Company.
11. Vent Products Company, Inc.
12. Young Regulator Company.

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Airfoil, multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized steel.
4. 0.064 inch thick.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; stainless steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Stainless-steel sleeve.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.4 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
7. Prefco; Perfect Air Control, Inc.
8. Ruskin Company.
9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
10. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 4000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.

2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.6 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

E. Vane Construction: Single wall.

F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
4. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
5. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
7. Nailor Industries Inc.
8. Ventfabrics, Inc.
9. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."

1. Door:

   a. Double wall, rectangular.
   b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
   c. Vision panel.
   d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
   e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.

3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

   a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
   b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.

2.8 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.

C. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.9 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where air terminal units are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.

H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.

2. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

3. Elsewhere as indicated.

I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

J. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

SECTION 23 34 00 - HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
3. In-line centrifugal fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.
B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Roof curbs.
6. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.
B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for commercial kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Breidert Air Products.
2. Carnes Company.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Loren Cook Company.
5. PennBarry.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

D. Grille: Aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories:

1. Fan-Speed Controller: Wired in series with fan motor. For balancing only.
2. Disconnect switch.
3. Motor starter.
4. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.

2.2 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corporation.
2. Breidert Air Products.
3. Carnes Company.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
6. Loren Cook Company.
7. PennBarry.

B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

C. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

D. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.

E. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed drive.

2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.

3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.

4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.

5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

6. Vibration Isolators:

a. Type: Elastomeric hangers.
b. Static Deflection: 1 inch.

2.3 ROOFTOP CENTRIFUGAL EXHAUST FANS

A. Unit Description: UL listed exhaust fan specifically designed for outdoor installation and service, shipped fully assembled and factory tested prior to shipment.

1. Housing:

a. Spun 16 gauge minimum weather tight marine grade aluminum two piece upper housing, with reinforced rolled edges. Down-blast, up-blast, or wall mounted out-blast type housing as scheduled.

a. Motor and drive isolated from discharge air stream in forced-air cooled compartment.

b. Power Assembly mounted on minimum 14 gauge plated steel structure, supported on housing with rubber isolators loaded in combination shear and compression.

c. Belt drive systems:

1) Drive Sheaves: Cast iron, adjustable with machined grooves.

2) Impeller Shaft: Anti-corrosion treated with re-lubricable pillow block style ball bearings rated for L-50 200,000 hr life at maximum cataloged operating speed under conditions of service.

3) Drive Belts: premium notched belts, sized for 1.5 times motor horsepower. Provide spare belt, secured to dome of motor compartment.

d. Motors:

1) Refer to section 23 05 13 Common Electrical requirements for HVAC Components for additional information.

2) Variable Speed Operation:

a) Three Phase: Open drip-proof type with sealed, permanently lubricated ball bearings; pre-wired through to disconnect switch mounted under fan cover with sufficient legs to break all leads to motor. Suitable for inverter duty operation with 10:1 variable torque speed range without damage. Provide with thermal overloads (RTD's, 2 per phase, embedded into the motor windings) for connection to VFD for motor thermal protection at low speed operation.

b. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.

c. Bird Screen: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.

d. Motorized Dampers: Refer to 23 33 00, Air Duct Accessories.

e. Factory fabricated insulated roof curb meeting the requirements above and of section 23 05 29 – Hangars and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment.

2. Manufacturers: Cook, Greenheck, Penn Ventilator, Twin Cities, or Approved Equal.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
B. Furnish insulated roof curb for installation by Roofing Contractor.
C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and elastomeric hangers or spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch.
F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
G. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.

2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.

3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.

4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.

5. Adjust belt tension.

6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.

8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.

9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.

10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.

11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
B. Adjust belt tension.
C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 34 00

SECTION 23 37 00 – AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior Outlets and Inlets:

   a. Registers, grilles, and diffusers

2. Exterior Outlets and inlets:

   a. Air louvers
   b. Roof Top hoods

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Design Requirements

1. Registers, Grilles, and Diffusers: Provide all supply, return and exhaust grilles, registers, and diffusers required for all systems.

2. Air Louvers: Provide AMCA-rated louvers for all fresh air intake and exhaust openings, except as otherwise shown or specified in Contract Documents. Cross- reference dimensions of each louver shown on heating drawings with those on the architectural drawings. Notify architect in writing of any discrepancies prior to submitting on louvers.

3. Roof Top Hoods: Provide fresh air intake and exhaust / relief openings, as shown or specified in Contract Documents. Cross- reference dimensions of each penthouse/ hood shown on heating drawings with those on the architectural drawings. Notify architect in writing of any discrepancies prior to submitting on equipment.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Interior Outlets and Inlets: Provide outlets and inlets with aspiration ability, temperature mixing, and velocity traverses and decay with distance, throw, pressure drop, and noise criteria ratings equal to or better than specified products.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product literature, technical specifications, performance data, installation instructions, and similar information required to demonstrate compliance with specified requirements. Annotate all selected options, cross referenced to specification and drawing designations. Include tabulated data for all proposed outlets and inlets, showing size, type, cfm, aspiration ability, water entrainment, temperature mixing, and velocity traverses and decay with distance, throw, pressure drop, noise criteria ratings and any other applicable data demonstrating performance equal to or better than specified products.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing sizes, construction details, mounting details, capacity, and air flow characteristics for all equipment. Include complete tabulated schedules as indicated below for each of RGD, Louvers, and Roof Top Hood.

1. Registers, Grilles, and Diffusers (RGD): Include complete tabulated schedule showing locations for each RGD, type, size, capacity as shown on Drawings, and performance data for each RGD furnished, including throw and noise criteria ratings. Indicate selections on data.

2. Air Louvers, and Roof Top Hoods: Include complete tabulated schedule showing locations for each Louver, and Roof Top Hood showing type, size, wall and/or roof rough opening size, capacity as shown on Drawings, and performance data for each including pressure drop and water entrainment specifications. Include all this data on coordination drawings and special Mechanical Penetrations of General Construction Envelope coordination drawing.

D. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 77 00, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "Operating and Maintenance Data" manual described in that section.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Deliver Exterior Outlets and Inlets (Louvers, Roof Top Hoods) to project in sufficient time for installation in walls as wall construction progresses.

1. Coordinate unit selection to meet requirements of other equipment and installation details (automatic dampers, back draft dampers, etc.).
2. Verify all opening sizes, locations and mounting arrangements prior to installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REGISTERS, GRILLES, AND DIFFUSERS

A. General

1. Provide registers, grilles, and diffusers with border systems that are compatible with adjacent wall and ceiling systems, and that are specifically manufactured to fit into ceiling modules with accurate fit and adequate support. Refer to general construction drawings and specifications for details of adjacent systems.

2. All performance criteria equal to or better than design make as specified and tagged on drawings.

3. Provide factory baked white enamel finish for steel materials and clear or color anodizing for aluminum material as base bid standard finish unless otherwise specified or noted.

4. Provide products by one of the following:

   a. Krueger or equal.
   b. Price or equal.
   c. Anemostat or equal.

B. Registers:

1. TYPE "R-A": Double deflection wall supply register; vertical front and horizontal rear vanes with 3/4" spacing between blades, rubber gasket to prevent streaking, vanes individually adjustable; extruded aluminum construction, clear anodized finish. Similar to Krueger “5880V”, “5880H (horizontal front)”, “R5880” (round duct register with mounting as shown and as required).

2. TYPE "R-B": Double deflection wall supply register; vertical front and horizontal rear vanes with 3/4" spacing between blades, rubber gasket to prevent streaking, vanes individually adjustable; steel construction. Similar to Krueger “880V” or “880H (horizontal front)”.

3. TYPE "R-D": Double deflection wall supply register; extruded aluminum alloy airfoil cross section vertical front and horizontal rear vanes with 1-1/4", 2”, or 3” spacing between and depth of blades, vanes individually adjustable and secured against vibration noise and inadvertent movement with spring wire or nylon tensioning mechanism; 18 gauge mitered steel or extruded aluminum frame with rubber gasket on frame to prevent streaking. Finish shall be custom color baked enamel. Similar to Krueger “6880V” or “6880H (horizontal front)”.

C. Grilles

1. TYPE "G-A": Eggcrate return grille; 1/2 inch x1/2 inch x1inch deep squares; fabricated aluminum core; flat frame; white baked enamel finish to match ceiling. Neck size and accessories as noted on drawings. Provide frame to fit lay-in ceiling grid or hard ceiling as required. Similar to Krueger “EGC-15”.

2. TYPE “G-B”: Fixed blade return grille, ¾” blade spacing with 35° deflection, steel construction, horizontal blades, standard white finish. Similar to Krueger “S580”.

D. Supply Diffusers:

1. TYPE "D-A": Ceiling air diffuser with stamped steel construction, stamped three ring removable core, 24 inch square face, 4 way pattern, integral round neck of size as noted on drawings. Anti smudge design to prevent streaking. Flush T-bar mount to fit lay-in ceiling grid, coordinate with G.C. Similar to Krueger “1400”.

2.2 AIR LOUVERS

A. Intake and Exhaust Louvers (Fixed Type)

1. Standard Construction Requirements:

a. Factory constructed high performance drainable (frame, blades, and head as scheduled) aluminum louvers with storm resistant blades of AMCA rated performance equal to or better than the design make.

b. Frame and blades constructed of extruded aluminum, alloy 6063-T5. Nominal wall thickness of 0.081 inches, depth to be 4 inches as noted on drawings.

c. Blade angle of 37-1/2 degrees, centered nominally at 5-3/32 inches for the 4 inch deep louvers. Hidden vertical supports shall allow continuous line appearance up to 120 inches.

d. Stainless Steel 1/2 inch mesh x 0.063 inch bird screen secured in a removable frame with SS tamperproof fasteners, on interior face of louver. Finish same as louver.

e. Extended sills constructed of aluminum, alloy 6063 – T5 with a nominal wall thickness of 0.060 inches in a style selected by Architect.

f. Provide welded construction for all factory assembled louver components. Provide stainless steel fasteners for all field assembled components.

g. Size, type and location as shown on drawings.

h. Provide scheduled factory finish as detailed below.

1) Anodize: Electrolytically deposited color anodized finish complying with Aluminum Association code AA-C22A44. Finish shall be applied to 0.7 mils minimum thickness onto chemically etched and pretreated aluminum extrusion. Color to be selected by Architect.

i. Provide products by one of the following, with performance as scheduled:

1) Greenheck
2) Ruskin
3) American Warming and Ventilating

2.3 ROOF TOP HOODS

A. Dome Style Roof Top Hoods:

1. Rated for snow and wind load shown on Code Compliance Drawings.

2. Designed for intake or exhaust (relief), as shown on the drawings.

    a. Intake hoods shall have minimum free area at inlet equal to twice the throat cross section.
    b. Exhaust hoods shall have minimum free area at outlet equal to the throat cross section.
    c. Provide closed cell insulation adhered to underside of exhaust /relief hoods to prevent condensation.

3. Heavy gauge (0.060 inch) aluminum construction.

4. All vertical seams continuously welded. Tops stressed and sloped for drainage with standing lock-formed seams; slope by cross breaking only of flat top not acceptable. All mechanical fasteners stainless steel.

5. Provide hinged joint between hood and base for ease of service access.

6. Provide 1/2 inch aluminum bird screen, secured in removable frame to underside of opening.

7. Curb: Furnish units with minimum 12 inch high insulated curb or higher curb as scheduled; factory fabricated similar to Pate "Model PC-5A".

8. Size and capacity as shown on the drawings.

    a. Provide scheduled factory finish as detailed below:

        1) Standard mill finish.

9. Provide products by one of the following:

    a. Cook "G" series or equal.
    b. Greenheck "Fabra Hood" or equal.
    c. Twin City Fans and Blowers, "MG" series or equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which air outlets and inlets are to be installed and notify a Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.

1. Air Louvers: Coordinate unit selection to meet other equipment and installation details (automatic dampers, back draft dampers, etc.). Verify all opening sizes, locations and mounting arrangements prior to installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install air outlets and inlets in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommended installation instructions for applications shown on Drawings.

B. Registers, Grilles and Diffusers (RGD): Install all RGDs in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and SMACNA installation manual at locations indicated on Drawings.

1. Adjust each type of RGD as required to achieve even air distribution throughout occupied space, generally free of objectionable drafts and dead air pockets. Demonstrate adjustments of distribution to Owner and additionally adjust as requested by Owner's representative during or subsequent to initial adjustments. As RGD adjustment and Testing and Air Balancing work affect each other, make preliminary adjustment to all RGDs prior to balancing, and make final RGD adjustment during TAB work in cooperation with TAB agency. Refer to section 23 05 93 – TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC for more detail.

2. Provide final balancing in accordance with SECTION 23 05 93.

3. Furnish to Owner, with receipt, 3 operating keys for each type of air outlet and inlet that requires them.

C. Air Louvers: Comply with manufacturer's specifications and recommendations for assembly and installation of air louver units, hardware, operators, and other components.

1. Set units plumb, level, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames. Anchor securely in place. Separate aluminum and other corrodible metal surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials. Use stainless steel fasteners.

2. Make suitable provision for thermal expansion in assembly of groups of units.

3. Set head, jamb, and sill members in bed of compound as shown, or with joint fillers or gaskets as shown to provide weather tight construction.

4. Provide suitable gaskets or coating where dissimilar metals are in contact.

5. Clean aluminum surfaces promptly after installation of units. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

D. Roof-Mounted Hoods

1. Provide roof curbs in sufficient time to coordinate with construction schedule.

2. Verify all opening sizes, locations, and mounting arrangements prior to installation. Provide structural support frame around all roof deck penetrations 12 inches x 12 inches and larger, unless specifically indicated otherwise elsewhere on the Contract Documents..

3. Comply with applicable requirements of SECTION 23 05 29 – Hangars and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment.

4. Comply with manufacturer's requirements for securing to curbs. Use appropriate weather proof gasketing and stainless steel fasteners as required meeting loading requirements specified above.

END OF SECTION 23 37 00

SECTION 23 62 13 – UNITARY AIR CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Split System Air Conditioners.

B. Products Furnished but not Installed Under this Section

1. Associated refrigerant piping and condensate drain piping.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Design Requirements

1. Cooling performance rated in accordance with AHRI Testing.

2. Unit efficiencies meet scheduled performance and exceed Energy Code Requirements.

3. Units listed and labeled by UL and ETL.

4. All refrigeration equipment and related installation provided to comply with Safety code for Mechanical Refrigeration ASHRAE Standard 15-1994 and ANSI Refrigeration Safety Code B 9.1.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's specification data for each unit, showing operating weight, all sizes, dimensions, capacity, operating and performance characteristics, motor horsepower, and other pertinent data including color chart.

C. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 77 00, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "Operating and Maintenance Data" manual described in that section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUCTLESS SPLIT COOLING ONLY OR HEAT/COOL AIR CONDITIONING UNIT

A. Unit Description: Unit bearing AHRI Certification Symbol and listed by ETL Testing Laboratories, Inc. consisting of outdoor unit which contains refrigerant compressor and can provide cooling only or heating and cooling of spaces, indoor unit connected by insulated copper refrigerant tubing with flare type fittings. System equipped with factory-installed solid core filter drier, large capacity suction accumulator, low ambient controls, and other accessories as specified and as scheduled.

1. Cooling only units similar to ductless heat/cool heat pump units without capability for reversing heat flow – ie., no reversing valve and associated controls.

2. Refrigerant Run Capability: 130 feet of lift with maximum tubing length of 130 feet of interconnecting piping for up to 1.5 ton capacity unit, and 50 feet of lift with maximum tubing length of 164 feet for unit with greater than 1.5 ton capacity up to 3.5 ton capacity.

3. Refer to drawings for capacities and performance ratings.

B. Refrigerant: Sufficient R-410A refrigerant provided in outdoor unit to charge complete system.

C. Outdoor Condensing Unit: Outdoor with inverter driven compressors (Variable Frequency Drive) which provides efficient cooling and heating performance.

1. General data:

a. Factory assembled and pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls.

b. Refrigeration circuit consisting of a digital scroll compressor, motors, fans, condenser coil, electronic expansion valve, solenoid valves, 4 way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, service isolation valves, oil separators, service ports, liquid receivers and accumulators.

c. Both liquid and suction lines must be individually insulated between the outdoor and indoor units on heat pump units. Liquid line insulation is not required on cooling only units.

d. The outdoor unit can be wired and piped with outdoor unit access from left, right, rear or bottom.

e. The sound pressure at rated conditions: maximum of 58 decibels dB(A) at 3 feet from the front of the unit. Provide with night operation mode capable of operating at further reduced noise.

f. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost, thus eliminating the need for re-programming.

g. The outdoor unit shall be modular in design and should allow for side-by-side installation with minimum spacing.

h. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit; high pressure switch, control circuit fuses, crankcase heaters, fusible plug, high pressure switch, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protectors for compressor and fan motors, over current protection for the inverter and anti-recycling timers, and sub-cooling feature. Oil recovery cycle shall be automatic occurring 1 hour after start of operation and then every 6 hours of operation.

i. The outdoor unit shall be capable of heating operation at 0°F dry bulb ambient temperature without additional low ambient controls.

2. Unit Cabinet:

a. The outdoor unit shall be completely weather proof and corrosion resistant. The unit shall be constructed from rust-proofed mild steel panels coated with a baked enamel finish.

3. Fan:

a. The outdoor unit shall consist of one or two propeller type, direct-drive fan motors that have multiple speed operation via a DC inverter.
b. The outdoor unit fan motor shall have multiple speed operation of the DC inverter type, controlled to modulate as required to maintain head pressure.
c. The fan motor shall have internal thermal overload protection and permanently lubricated bearings and be mounted on rubber in shear isolators.
d. Provide a fan guard to prevent contact with moving parts, constructed of welded wire and plated or painted for corrosion resistance.

4. Outdoor Coil:

a. Manufactured from copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins to form a mechanical bond.
b. The coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and high heat exchanger, rifled bore tube design to ensure highly efficient performance.
c. The coils shall be complete with corrosion treatment of an acrylic resin type. The thickness of the coating must be between 2.0 to 3.0 microns.

5. Compressor:

a. The scroll compressor shall be variable speed (PWM inverter) controlled, changing speed to follow the variations in total cooling load as determined by the suction gas pressure as measured in the condensing unit.

b. The inverter driven compressor in each condensing unit shall be of highly efficient reluctance DC, hermetically sealed scroll type with a maximum speed of 6,480 rpm.

c. Neodymium magnets shall be adopted in the rotor construction to yield a higher torque and efficiency in the compressor instead of the normal ferrite magnet type. At complete stop of the compressor, the neodymium magnets will position the rotor into the optimum position for a low torque start.

d. The capacity control range shall be modulating from 14% to 100%.

e. Each compressor shall be equipped with a crankcase heater, high pressure safety switch, and internal thermal overload protector.

f. Oil separators shall be standard with the equipment together with an oil balancing circuit.

g. The compressor shall be mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.

6. Electrical:

a. The power supply to the outdoor unit shall be in voltage and phasing as shown on the drawings, with a tolerance of +/- 10% from nominal indicated.

b. The control voltage between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be low voltage control wiring compatible with the energy management and control system as specified in section 23 09 00. The control wiring shall be a multiplex communication system, making it possible to connect multiple indoor units to one outdoor unit with one cable, thus simplifying the wiring operation.

D. Indoor Unit – Wall Mount Unit

1. General: The indoor unit shall be a wall mounted fan coil unit, operable with refrigerant R410A, for installation onto a wall within a conditioned space, with a white casing. Computerized control shall be used to maintain room temperature within 1°F. A mildew-proof, polystyrene air filter and condensate drain pan shall be included as standard equipment. The indoor units sound pressure shall range from 32 dB(A) to 35 dB(A) at low speed measured at 3.3 feet below and from the unit.

2. Indoor Unit:

a. The indoor unit shall be completely factory assembled and tested. Included in the unit is factory wiring, piping, electronic proportional expansion valve, control circuit board, fan motor thermal protector, flare connections, condensate drain pan, self-diagnostics, auto-restart function, 3-minute fused time delay, and test run switch. The unit shall have an auto-swing louver which ensures efficient air distribution, which closes automatically when the unit stops. The remote controller shall be able to set five (5) steps of discharge angle. The front grille shall be easily removed for washing. The discharge angle shall automatically set at the same angle as the previous operation upon restart. The drain pipe can be fitted to from either left or right sides.

b. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes will be charged with dehydrated air prior to shipment from the factory.

c. Both refrigerant lines shall be insulated from the outdoor unit.

d. Return air shall be through a resin net mold resistant filter.

e. The indoor units shall be equipped with an insulated corrosion proof condensate pan under the coil capturing and controlling all condensate.

f. Provide a condensate pump with a 21 inch lift located below the coil in the condensate pan, complete with a built in safety high level alarm and interlock.

g. The indoor units shall be equipped with a return air thermistor.

h. The indoor unit will be separately powered with 208~230V/1-phase/60Hz.

i. The voltage range will be 253 volts maximum and 187 volts minimum.

3. Unit Cabinet:

a. The cabinet shall be affixed to a factory supplied wall mounting template and located in the conditioned space.
b. The cabinet shall be constructed with sound absorbing foamed polystyrene and polyethylene insulation.

4. Fan:

a. The fan shall be a direct-drive cross-flow fan, statically and dynamically balanced impeller with high and low fan speeds available.
b. The fan motor shall operate on 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz with a motor output range 0.054 to 0.058 HP.
c. The air flow rate shall be available in high and low settings.
d. The fan motor shall be thermally protected.

5. Coil:

a. Coils shall be of the direct expansion type constructed from copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins to form a mechanical bond.
b. The coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and high heat exchange, rifled bore tube design to ensure highly efficient performance.
c. The coil shall be a 2 row cross fin copper evaporator coil completely factory tested.
d. The refrigerant connections shall be flare connections and the condensate will be 1-1/4 inch outside diameter PVC.
e. A thermistor will be located on the liquid and gas line.
f. A condensate pan shall be located in the unit.

6. Electrical:

a. A separate power supply will be required of 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The acceptable voltage range shall be 187 to 253 volts.
b. Transmission (control) wiring between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be a maximum of 3,280 feet (total 6,560 feet).

c. Transmission (control) wiring between the indoor and remote controller shall be a maximum distance of 1,640 feet.

7. Control:

a. The unit shall have controls to perform input functions necessary to operate the system.
b. The unit shall be compatible with interfacing with connection to LonWorks or BACnet networks and as required interfacing with EMCS.

E. Manufacturers:

1. Carrier / Toshiba
2. Daikin
3. Mitsubishi
4. Sanyo.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which unitary air conditioning equipment is to be installed and notify affected Contractors and Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.

1. When conditions are confirmed to be acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to Architect written confirmation. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as follows.

1. Provide combination equipment / piping curb in proper position on roof, secured and leveled as recommended by manufacturer. Provide sufficient portals in pipe penetration portion of curb for refrigerant, electrical power, and control wiring.

B. Provide all required supports, attachment devices, vibration isolators, gasketing, sealants, and accessories needed to insure stable, quiet, leak free operation.

C. Run insulated condensate drain line to approved point of indirect waste disposal. Pitch drain line continuously in direction of flow. If gravity drain is not possible, provide condensate removal pump as specified, piped to nearest approved point of indirect waste disposal.

D. Provide manufacturers recommended pipe enclosure to conceal exposed refrigerant tubing and provide a finished appearance.

3.3 FACTORY START UP AND FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide authorized factory representative to start-up unit, check following items, and furnish report:

1. Measure and check voltage of components.
2. Check removal of shipping bracing.
3. Proper connection of drains.
4. Check control circuitry, operation, and performance during all modes of operation.
5. Fan check (RPM, motor amps, rotation, belt tension, etc.).
6. All wiring circuits.
7. All accessory equipment operation, such as filters, controls, condensate drain, etc.

END OF SECTION 23 62 13

SECTION 23 64 26 - ROTARY-SCREW WATER CHILLER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Packaged, air-cooled chiller.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system, also known as Energy Management and Control System (EMCS).

B. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.

C. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in terms of Btu/h to the total power input given in terms of watts at any given set of rating conditions.

D. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated per the method defined by ARI 550/590 and referenced to ARI standard rating conditions.

E. kW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity in tons at any given set of rating conditions.

F. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated per the method defined by ARI 550/590 and intended for operating conditions other than ARI standard rating conditions.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Cooling Performance Tolerance: In accordance with the AHRI-550/590 standard for each of the following:

1. Allowable Capacity.
2. Allowable EER.
3. Allowable IPLV.

B. Acoustic Performance: Certified in accordance with ARI-370 standards, with data reported as absolute sound power generated by unit in each of 8 octave bands, and also in sound pressure reported directionally in dBA on each of four sides of unit at 30ft distance open field. Allowable tolerance:

1. Sound power in any octave band no greater than design make equipment.
2. Sound pressure on any side no greater than design make equipment.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor will be provided with detailed shop drawings of Owner's chiller showing detailed rigging and installation details.
B. Startup service reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. AHRI Certification: Certify chiller according to ARI 590 certification program.

B. AHRI Rating: Rate chiller performance according to requirements in ARI 550/590.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15 for safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
2. ASHRAE 147 for refrigerant leaks, recovery, and handling and storage requirements.

D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label chiller to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, and include an ASME U-stamp and nameplate certifying compliance.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with requirements of UL and UL Canada and include label by a qualified testing agency showing compliance.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Materials Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of chillers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Extended warranties include the complete chiller, specifically including but not limited to, parts and labor for the following:

a. Complete refrigerant circuits, including compressors, piping, heat exchangers, and all specialties including refrigerant and oil charge and loss of charge for any reason.

b. Complete electrical power, control, and drive assemblies.

c. Complete heat rejection system with fans, airflow direction control, and non-refrigerant condenser coil components.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKAGED, AIR-COOLED CHILLER

A. Manufacturer: Trane.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and run-tested chiller complete with base and frame, condenser casing, compressors, compressor motors and motor controllers, evaporator, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, electrical power, controls, and accessories.

1. Finish: Coat base, frame, and casing with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 500-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117.

2. Sound-reduction package designed to reduce sound level without affecting performance and consisting of the following:

a. Acoustic attenuation enclosure around compressors, with weatherproof nylon cover.
b. Flexible connections and attenuation material applied to all suction and discharge refrigerant piping.
c. Reduced-speed fans with acoustic treatment.

C. Compressors:

1. Description: Positive displacement hermetically sealed.
2. Casing: Cast iron, precision machined for minimum clearance about periphery of rotors.
3. Rotors: Manufacturer's standard one- or two-rotor design.
4. Each compressor provided with suction and discharge shutoff valves, crankcase oil heater, and suction strainer.

D. Service: Easily accessible for inspection and service.

E. Capacity Control: On-off compressor cycling and modulating slide-valve assembly or port unloaders combined with hot-gas bypass, if necessary, to achieve performance indicated.

1. Maintain stable operation throughout range of operation. Configure to achieve most energy-efficient operation possible.
2. Operating Range: From 100 to 15 percent of design capacity.

F. Oil Lubrication System: Consisting of pump if required, filtration, heater, cooler, factory-wired power connection, and controls.

1. Provide lubrication to bearings, gears, and other rotating surfaces at all operating, startup, shutdown, and standby conditions including power failure.
2. Thermostatically controlled oil heater properly sized to remove refrigerant from oil.
3. Factory-installed and pressure-tested piping with isolation valves and accessories.
4. Oil compatible with refrigerant and chiller components.
5. Positive visual indication of oil level.

G. Vibration Control:

1. Vibration Balance: Balance chiller compressors and drive assemblies to provide a precision balance that is free of noticeable vibration over the entire operating range.

   a. Overspeed Test: 25 percent above design operating speed.

2. Compressor Isolation: Mount individual compressors on restrained neoprene vibration isolators.

3. Chiller Isolation: Mount entire chiller on eight individual restrained neoprene vibration isolators specifically tuned to this chillers mass distribution and vibration modes, tagged for specific locations on chiller frame.

H. Compressor Motors:

1. Hermetically sealed and cooled by refrigerant suction gas.
2. High-torque, induction type with inherent thermal-overload protection on each phase.

I. Compressor Motor Drive Controllers:

1. All RTAE chillers utilize Trane's Adaptive Frequency Drive, 3rd Generation (AFD3) technology for controlling the compressors. AFD3 is a family of new generation adaptive frequency drives specifically designed for Trane water chillers. AFD3 incorporates the Trane communication protocol enabling seamless integration with the unit controller. AFD3 data such as drive status, temperatures, modes and diagnostic information are accessible to the unit controller and through the Tracer TU service tool.

2. AFD3 contains technology that enables the drive to last longer and with less down time. The technology enables operation on various power systems including alternative energy sources. AFD3 will protect itself and the compressor motor from over current, low or high line voltage, phase loss, incoming phase imbalance, and over temperature due to loss of drive cooling or loss of panel ventilation. AFD3 incorporates improved serviceability and troubleshooting tools to identify the issue quickly and get the chiller back up and running.

3. All AFD3 control circuits are powered with class 2 low voltage - separate from main power allowing service on the controls with the panel door open. Additionally, the main electronic control modules can be serviced with the standard Trane screw driver. The AFD3 further incorporates another Trane service tool to allow for firmware upgrades through Tracer TU.

J. Refrigerant Circuits:

1. Refrigerant: R513a as indicated on Drawings.

2. Classified as Safety Group A1 according to ASHRAE 34.

3. Refrigerant Compatibility: Chiller parts exposed to refrigerants shall be fully compatible with refrigerants, and pressure components shall be rated for refrigerant pressures.

4. Refrigerant Circuit: Each shall include a thermal- or electronic-expansion valve, refrigerant charging connections, a hot-gas muffler, compressor suction and discharge shutoff valves, a liquid-line shutoff valve, a replaceable-core filter-dryer, a sight glass with moisture indicator, a liquid-line solenoid valve, and an insulated suction line.

5. Pressure Relief Device:

   a. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15 and in applicable portions of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
   b. ASME-rated, spring-loaded pressure relief valve; single- or multiple-reseating type.

K. Evaporator:

1. Description: Shell-and-tube design.

   a. Direct-expansion (DX) type with fluid flowing through the shell, and refrigerant flowing through the tubes within the shell, or
   b. Flooded type with fluid flowing through tubes and refrigerant flowing around tubes within the shell.

2. Code Compliance: Tested and stamped according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

3. Shell Material: Carbon steel.

4. Shell Heads: Removable carbon-steel heads located at each end of the tube bundle.

5. Fluid Nozzles: Terminated with grooved mechanical-coupling or flanged end connections for connection to field piping.

6. Tube Construction: Individually replaceable copper tubes with enhanced fin design, expanded into tube sheets.

7. Heater: Factory-installed and -wired electric heater with integral controls designed to protect the evaporator to minus 20 deg F.

L. Air-Cooled Condenser:

1. Plate-fin coil with integral subcooling on each circuit, rated at 450 psig.

   a. Construct coil casing of galvanized or stainless steel.
   b. Construct coils of copper tubes mechanically bonded to aluminum fins.

2. Fans: Condenser Fans are direct-drive vertical discharge. The condenser fan motors are permanent magnet motors with integrated drive to provide variable speed fan control for all fans and are designed with permanently lubricated ball bearings, internal temperature and current overload protection, and customer fault feedback as a standard product offering. The fan impeller is a nine bladed-shrouded fan made from heavy-duty molded plastic specifically designed for ultra quiet low turbulence operation.

3. Wide ambient units will start and operate between 15.0 F to 125.0 F ambient when heat transfer solution is present in the evaporator. If there is sufficient glycol in the evaporator to prevent freezing, operation down to ambient temperatures of 0.0 F is acceptable.

4. Fan Guards: Steel safety guards with corrosion-resistant coating.

M. Electrical Power:

1. Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a multipoint, field-power connection to chiller.

2. House in a unit-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure with hinged access door with lock and key or padlock and key.

3. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.

4. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a raceway.

5. Field-power interface shall be to NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, non-fused disconnect switch.

   a. Disconnect means shall be interlocked with door operation.
   b. Minimum withstand rating shall be as required by electrical power distribution system, but not less than 65,000A.

6. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:

   a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-4-1.

   b. NEMA AB 1, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit-trip set point.

7. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

8. Overload relay sized according to UL 1995 or an integral component of chiller control microprocessor.

9. Phase-Failure and Undervoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing with adjustable settings.

10. Provide power factor correction capacitors to correct power factor to 0.95 at full load.

11. Control Transformer: Unit-mounted transformer with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.

    a. Power unit-mounted controls where indicated.
    b. Power unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.

12. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

13. For chiller electrical power supply, indicate the following:

    a. Current and phase to phase for all three phases.
    b. Voltage, phase to phase, and phase to neutral for all three phases.
    c. Three-phase real power (kilowatts).
    d. Three-phase reactive power (kilovolt amperes reactive).
    e. Original power factor, correction capacitor specifications, and corrected power factor.
    f. Running log of total power versus time (kilowatt-hours).
    g. Fault log, with time and date of each.

N. Controls:

1. Standalone and microprocessor based.

2. Enclosure: Share enclosure with electrical power devices or provide a separate enclosure.

3. Operator Interface: Multiple-character digital or graphic display with dynamic update of information and with keypad or touch-sensitive display located on front of control enclosure. In either imperial or metric units, display the following information:

    a. Date and time.
    b. Operating or alarm status.
    c. Operating hours.
    d. Outdoor-air temperature if required for chilled-water reset.
    e. Temperature and pressure of operating set points.
    f. Entering and leaving temperatures of chilled water.
    g. Refrigerant pressures in evaporator and condenser.
    h. Saturation temperature in evaporator and condenser.
    i. No cooling load condition.
    j. Elapsed time meter (compressor run status).
    k. Pump status.
    l. Antirecycling timer status.
    m. Percent of maximum motor amperage.
    n. Current-limit set point.
    o. Number of compressor starts.

4. Control Functions:

    a. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.

b. Entering and leaving chilled-water temperatures, control set points, and motor load limits. Chilled-water leaving temperature shall be reset based on outdoor-air temperature.

c. Current limit and demand limit.

d. External chiller emergency stop.

e. Antirecycling timer.

f. Variable evaporator flow.

g. Automatic alarming from unit mounted flow meter for low flow condition.

h. Thermal storage.

5. Manually Reset Safety Controls: The following conditions shall shut down chiller and require manual reset:

a. Low evaporator pressure or high condenser pressure.
b. Refrigerant high pressure.
c. High or low oil pressure.
d. High oil temperature.
e. Control device failure.

6. Trending: Capability to trend analog data of up to five parameters simultaneously over an adjustable period and frequency of polling.

7. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: view only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.

8. Control Authority: At least four conditions: Off, local manual control at chiller, local automatic control at chiller, and automatic control through a remote source.

9. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display chiller status and alarms.

a. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) or other approved industry-accepted, open-protocol communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely control and monitor the chiller from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at chiller control panel shall be available through the BAS.

O. Insulation:

1. Material: Closed-cell, flexible elastomeric, thermal insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.

3. Factory-applied insulation over cold surfaces of chiller components.

   a. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and applied to 100 percent of insulation contact surface. Seal seams and joints.

4. Apply protective coating to exposed surfaces of insulation to protect insulation from weather and animals.

P. Accessories:

1. Factory-furnished, chilled-water flow switches for field installation.
2. Individual compressor suction and discharge pressure gages with shutoff valves for each refrigerant circuit.

Q. Capacities and Characteristics as scheduled.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform functional tests of chiller before shipping.

B. Factory run test each air-cooled chiller with water flowing through evaporator.

C. Factory performance test air-cooled chiller, before shipping, according to ARI 550/590.

1. Test the following conditions:

   a. Design conditions indicated.
   b. Reduction in capacity from design to minimum load in steps of 25% with condenser air at design conditions.

2. Prepare test report indicating test procedures, instrumentation, test conditions, and results. Submit copy of results within one week of test date.

D. Air-cooled chiller shall have acoustic sound power and sound pressure level performance certified in accordance with AHRI 370.

1. Report calculations at the following conditions:

   a. Design conditions indicated.
   b. Chiller operating at calculated worst-case sound condition.
   c. At two point(s) of varying part-load performance to be selected by Owner at time of test.

E. Factory test and inspect evaporator and condenser according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine chiller before installation. Document any damage with Owner prior to proceeding with installation work. Damage subsequent to joint inspection shall be the responsibility of the contractor.

B. Examine roughing-in for equipment support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting chiller performance, maintenance, and operations before equipment installation.

1. Final chiller locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CHILLER INSTALLATION

A. Install chiller on support structure indicated.

B. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

C. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

D. Connections:

1. Coordinate piping installations and specialty arrangements with schematics on Drawings and with requirements specified in piping systems.

2. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3. Install piping adjacent to chiller to allow service and maintenance.

4. Evaporator Fluid Connections: Connect to evaporator inlet with shutoff valve, strainer, flexible connector, thermometer, and plugged tee with pressure gage. Connect to evaporator outlet with shutoff valve, balancing valve, flexible connector, flow switch, thermometer, plugged tee with shutoff valve and pressure gage, and drain connection with valve. Make connections to chiller with a flange or mechanical grooved coupling. Include full size chiller bypass with valve.

5. Connect each chiller drain connection with a union and drain pipe, and extend pipe, full size of connection, to glycol fill station. Provide a shutoff valve at each connection.

6. Extend relief piping from outlet of evaporator pressure relief device full size of connection to glycol fill station.

E. Attend and video record the factory representative's demonstration and training sessions. Turn over high quality video recordings of training session, showing detailed sharp images pertinent to all of the training in question.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Coordinate with the factory-authorized service representative who will perform the following startup service:

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and chiller has been leak tested. Charge chiller with refrigerant and fill with oil if not factory installed.

3. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.

4. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.

5. Operate chiller for run-in period.

6. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.

7. Verify that refrigerant pressure relief device is properly vented outdoors.

8. Verify proper motor rotation.

9. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during chiller startup and shutdown.

10. Verify proper integration with building energy management and controls system. Recommend and confirm proper integration of all control point data required for Owner's and Service Technician's diagnostic and control strategies.

11. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for proper assembly, installation, and connection.

C. Inspect insulation on all cold surfaces for condensation. Repair and/or provide additional insulation as specified and as required to eliminate all surface condensation under operating conditions.

D. Prepare test and inspection startup reports.

E. Demonstration

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chiller.

END OF SECTION 23 64 26

SECTION 23 71 00 – THERMAL STORAGE ICE TANKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes complete installation of thermal ice storage tanks and associated accessories and controls.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Complete manufacturers data on the ice storage system, plate heat exchanger, glycol make up system, including all product materials specifications, building load profiles, proposed build and discharge rates as integrated with the system electric chiller, avoided cost profiles, piping connections required, pressure drop vs. flow vs. temperature curves, etc.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections and mounting details.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For Thermal Storage Ice Tanks to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide CALMAC Manufacturing Corp.; Levload IceBank or comparable product.

2.2 ICE TANK SYSTEM

A. Ice Tanks

1. Constructed of high density polyethylene or double wall fiberglass reinforced resin.

   a. Polyethylene Tanks: Minimum thickness of 3/8 inch, 2 offset layers of 1 inch thick expanded polystyrene insulation, and an outer skin of .032 inch aluminum.
   b. Fiberglass Tanks: Minimum thickness of 1/8 inch per wall, 2 inch gap between walls, with foamed in place urethane insulation between the walls.

2. Weight of Filled Tank: Not to exceed 500 psf.

3. Insulated to a minimum R value of 10 on sides and bottom and 16 on top.

4. Designed to operate at 100 deg. F or higher if inactive.

5. Capacity: Nominal 190 ton-hours each minimum.

B. Ice Tank Heat Exchanger

1. Spiral wound heat exchanger, consisting of 5/8 inch OD polyethylene tubing arranged in multiple parallel circuits with opposite direction of flow in adjoining tubes.

2. Designed for a minimum operating pressure of 90 PSIG and burst pressure of 360 PSIG, tested at 150 PSIG.

3. Ice Thickness on Coils Not exceed 3/4 inch when the unit is fully charged.

4. Tubing to terminate in a header system designed to equalize the flow through the individual tubes. Header to terminate in a 2-1/2 inch flanged or hose barb adapter sized to fit flexible rubber hose described below.

5. Capability to freeze solid without damage.

C. Header System

1. 2-1/2 inch header system with specialties as shown on the Drawings and as listed below. Provide the following:

   a. Line size butterfly or ball valves at the inlet and outlet of each tank.

   b. 2-1/2 inch balancing valve for each tank.

   c. Three foot long minimum, 2-1/2 inch ID, 4-ply rubber hose installed between the close-off valves and the storage tank(s). Increase hose length as required to allow a minimum of 1 inch vertical movement between the piping and the storage tank(s) connections.

2. Flanged or union connections to allow individual disconnection of the tank(s) from the shut-off valves.

3. Header pipe size, type and arrangement to be as noted on the Drawings.

4. All external piping and specialties to be insulated as described in Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

5. Alternatively, provide tanks factory manifolded in groups of two or three as shown on Drawings. Manifolded tanks shall be self-balancing internally. Manifold connections shall be 4 inch flanged connections. Provide 4 inch isolation valves and balancing valve for each manifolded group of tanks.

D. Controls

1. Provide an ice inventory measuring device as an integral part of the system, as follows:

a. Local readout by means of an analog meter or digital percentage meter, mounted on adjacent boiler room wall where shown on Drawings.

b. Remote electronic readout shall provide the Building System Controls (BSC) with either a 0-10 Vdc or 4-20 mA output signal, and the factory literature shall include calibration curves in factory literature if required for interface.

c. Capable of +/- 5% accuracy and precision, both locally and remote. Balance the glycol flow through the tanks so that the accuracy and precision of the inventory device is for total storage and not just for the tank on which the meter is installed.

d. Provide power for the inventory meter shall be provided as part of the installation requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where thermal storage ice tanks to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install tanks where shown on Drawings, on level concrete slab as shown on Drawings.

B. Provide a minimum clearance of 48 inch above all tank(s). Install piping off to side of tanks so lids may be vertically removed.

C. Fill tank(s) between shell and heat exchanger core with tap water to the level specified by the manufacturer. Provide approved chemical additive for the stagnant water in each tank to prevent algae and bacteria growth.

1. Fill heat exchanger tubing and other associated hydronic piping with approved glycol solution as called for in Division 23. Install piping so as to be able to clean and flush system piping before connection to storage tanks by bypassing at the flexible connections. Clean and flush before connection. Note there is no drain in design make tank glycol tubing, and as such tap water shall not be permitted to enter tubing. Protect from entry of foreign matter until connection to cleaned system piping and fill only with approved glycol solution.

D. Pressure test the heat exchanger(s) with air and check for leaks.

3.3 TRAINING

A. Provide installation and maintenance instructions for the Owner's operating manual.

B. Provide startup and system integration training for owner's representatives by factory trained and authorized personnel. These persons shall be fully briefed by the tank manufacturer's representative in the proper maintenance and care of the ice tank(s).

END OF SECTION 23 71 00

SECTION 23 73 13 - MODULAR INDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Constant-air-volume, single-zone air-handling units.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding 133 percent of internal static pressures indicated, without panel joints exceeding a deflection of L/200 where "L" is the unsupported span length within completed casings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit indicated.

1. Unit dimensions and weight.

2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.

3. Fans:

a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
c. Fan construction and accessories.
d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.

4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.

5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

6. Filters with performance characteristics.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
2. Support location, type, and weight.
3. Field measurements.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.
B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
C. AHRI Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to AHRI 430, "Central-Station Air-Handling Units," and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.
D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
B. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: Three set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Carrier
2. McQuay International
3. Trane
4. Venmar CES.

2.2 AIR HANDLING UNITS

A. Description: Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

B. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch thick foil-faced glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.

1. Fire-Hazard Classification: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Drain Pans: Stainless steel. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture, with baked-enamel finish and removable access panels.

E. Cabinets: Steel with baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's standard paint color.

1. Mixing Plenum: Sheet metal plenum finished and insulated to match the chassis with outdoor- and return-air, formed-steel dampers.
2. Dampers: Galvanized steel with extruded-vinyl blade seals, flexible-metal jamb seals, and interlocking linkage.

F. Filters: Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

1. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: MERV13.

G. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.

H. Direct-Driven Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, multispeed motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and painted-steel or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.

I. Belt-Driven Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the cabinet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and painted-steel or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.

1. Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Electrical Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2. Size / design for mid-life filter resistance equal to the average of the as specified clean filter resistance at the design flowrate and the filter manufacturer's recommended maximum (in need of changing) filter resistance at the design flow rate.

J. Provide unit with terminal control interface for field installed controls. Devices and operational sequence are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC".

K. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

1. Provide unit with disconnect switch by unit manufacturer.

2.3 MODULAR, CUSTOM INDOOR AIR HANDLING UNIT (AUDITORIUM AHU-16HS)

A. General

1. Provide factory fabricated Air Handling Unit with capacity as indicated on the schedule. The unit consists of factory assembled components as shown on drawings, including but not limited to fan and motor assemblies, all necessary dampers, plenums, filters, drain pans, wiring, controls and other accessories as outlined in the schedule, enclosed in a multiple piece casing as shown on the mechanical drawings.

2. Unit shall be provided with factory mounted and wired controls to satisfy the sequence of operation.

3. Unit shall be wired for single-point power connection by the Manufacturer unless otherwise outlined in the schedule. Unit shall have overall dimensions as indicated and fit into the space available with adequate clearance for service as determined by the Engineer.

4. Tags and decals to aid in service or indicate caution areas shall be provided.

5. Electrical wiring diagrams and Installation, Operation and Maintenance Instructions Manual shall be attached to the control panel access doors within each unit.

6. Unit shall be UL or ETL listed.

7. Unit shall be shipped in split modules to accommodate field assembly.

B. Unit Base and Floor

1. Unit perimeter base shall be completely welded and constructed from (6" [152 mm]) structural tubing and shall accommodate floor installation as shown on drawings.

2. Unit base floor shall be constructed from 14 gauge hot rolled steel (HRS). Floor panels shall be welded to each other, creating I-beams at each floor panel junction.

3. Unit floor shall be insulated from underneath with 3" [76.2 mm], R20 polyurethane closed cell spray foam and protected with 24 gauge galvanized steel liners.

4. Unit floor construction shall include two-stage thermal break, using gasket between base floor framing and liners underneath and floor membrane on top.

5. Unit base and floor shall be factory covered with top coat industrial grade membrane to ensure air- and water-tightness as well as walk-on grip.

6. Floor membrane shall be high performance, sprayed, plural-component pure polyurea elastomer, based on amine-terminated polyether resins, amine chain extenders and prepolymers. Floor membrane shall be flexible, tough, resilient monolithic membrane with good water and chemical resistance and shall resist to temperatures up to 250°F.

7. Floor membrane materials shall be free of solvents and VOC's, shall be suitable for use in compartments handling conditioned air.

8. Single wall floor construction with glued and pined insulation and no subfloor is not acceptable; non-insulated floor construction is not acceptable.

9. Entire base frame is to be painted with a phenolic coating for long term corrosion resistance.

C. Rigging Provision – Multiple Piece Units

1. Unit shipped in multiple sections shall be engineered for field assembly. The unit section base frame shall include lifting lugs located at the corner of the unit (and along the sides as required by design) and sized to allow rigging and handling of the unit. Rigging shall be performed using all lifting lugs at all times and in strict accordance with the instructions provided within the Installation, Operation and Maintenance Instructions Manual.

2. Peripheral lifting lugs may be removed after rigging; however, bolts shall be set back in place after lug removal. Lifting lugs located along a section side corresponding to a unit section split shall be removed without bolts being set back in place afterwards.

3. Unit shall be provided with all necessary gaskets, caulking, hardware and instruction for assembly on site by Installing Contractor. Compression points shall be provided at the base frame, along the sides at 18" increments and at the top for aligning and joining section splits.

D. Unit Casing

1. Unit wall and roof rigid frame shall consist of 16 gauge pre-painted galvanized formed steel corner posts and 16 gauge G90 galvanized formed steel (1" x 2" [25 x 51 mm]) intermediate frame posts, providing stable construction allowing for removal of any panel without affecting unit structural integrity.

2. Units without framed type of construction are not acceptable. Exterior casing panels shall be attached to the gasketed (1" x 2" [25 x 51 mm]) steel frame with corrosion resistant fasteners.

3. Air Handling Unit casing shall be of the no-through-metal design. Casing shall incorporate insulating thermal breaks as required so that, when fully assembled, there is no path of continuous unbroken metal to metal conduction from inner to outer surfaces. Provide necessary support to limit casing deflection to L/200 of the narrowest panel dimension. If panels cannot meet this deflection, additional internal reinforcing is required.

4. Unit shall be designed for indoor installation as indicated on the schedule.

5. Unit shall have a flat roof.

6. All panel seams shall be caulked and sealed for an air-tight unit. Leakage rates shall be less than 1% at design static pressure or 9" w.c., whichever is greater.

E. Double Wall Construction

1. Unit shall entirely be made of double wall construction. Single wall construction with coated insulation is not acceptable. Exposed insulation edges in the airstream are not acceptable. Unit panels shall be made of 18 gauge galvanized steel outer liners and 24 gauge galvanized steel inner liners.

F. Insulation

1. Unit wall and roof panels shall be insulated with 3" thick, R12.5, 1.5 lb./cu. ft. non-compressed fiberglass insulation. Unit internal partition (dual air tunnel units) shall be insulated with 2" thick, R8.3, 1.5 lb./cu. ft. non-compressed fiberglass insulation. Insulation shall meet the erosion requirements of UL 181 facing the airstream and fire hazard classification of 25/50 (per ASTM-84 and UL 723 and CAN/ULC S102-M88). All insulation edges shall be encapsulated within the panels. All perforated sections shall have insulation with black acrylic coating.

G. Access Doors

1. Full size access door(s) allowing for periodic maintenance and inspections shall be provided for all serviceable components as shown on the plans. Removable panels are not acceptable.

2. Doors shall be solid double wall insulated construction. Insulation shall be the same as unit panels. Both the inner and outer liners shall be made of the same material as unit cabinet outer liner construction.

3. The door hinge assembly shall be die cast zinc with stainless steel pivot mechanism, completely adjustable. Hinges shall allow doors to open at 180° with no shear effect on the hinge side of the perimeter gasket.

4. The door frame shall be extruded aluminum with a built-in thermal break barrier and full perimeter gasket. The door gasketting shall employ a double seal comprising of an adhesive neoprene compressible foam gasket on the outer door panel and an "automotive style" neoprene bulb gasket fixed onto the inner door frame for out-swing doors, "rippled" foam for in-swing doors. There shall be a minimum of two heavy duty cast, UV rated, nylon handles per door.

5. On all access doors where moving parts could cause injury, an ETL, UL 1995 and OSHA approved tool operated safety latch shall be provided.

H. Condensate/Drain Pans

1. IAQ style drain pans shall be provided. Drain pans shall be fabricated from 18 gauge stainless steel, except under coils, where drain pans shall be fabricated from 14 gauge stainless steel.

2. All drain connections shall be piped and trapped separately for proper drainage. Drain pans shall be sloped at a minimum of 1.5% with a threaded drain pipe connection ending through the side of structural base frame. Drain pipe shall be schedule 40, 1¼" nominal, PVC. All drain pan corners shall be welded.

I. Fan

1. The fan array shall consist of multiple, direct driven, plenum fans spaced in the airway tunnel cross section to provide a uniform airflow and velocity profile across the entire airway tunnel cross section and components contained therein. The fan array shall be constructed per AMCA requirements for the duty specified, (Class I, II, or III). All fans shall be selected to deliver design airflow at the specified operating TSP at the specified motor speed and as scheduled. The fan array shall be selected to operate at a system Total Static Pressure that does not exceed 95% of the specified fan's peak static pressure producing capability at the specified fan speed.

2. Fan array shall consist of multiple fan and motor "cubes", spaced in the airway tunnel cross section to provide a uniform airflow and velocity profile across the entire airway tunnel cross section and components contained therein. Each fan/motor assembly shall be removable through a 30" wide open area. Access door located on the discharge/inlet side of the fan array.

3. The fan array shall be provided with a silencer for sound absorption. The silencer will reduce the bare fan discharge sound power levels as noted below and/or in the plans. Unless otherwise specified, the acoustical silencers shall reduce the bare fan discharge sound power levels by a minimum of 15 dB, re 10^{-12} watts with center frequencies of 125, 250, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 4,000 and 8,000 Hz when compared to the same unit design without the silencers.

4. All motors shall be IEEE inverter duty, premium efficiency TEAO T-frame motors selected at the specified operating voltage, rpm and efficiency as specified or scheduled elsewhere. All motors shall include permanently sealed bearings and shaft grounding means to protect the motor bearings from electrical discharge machining due to stray shaft current. Motors provided with hybrid ceramic bearings, when specified, do not require shaft grounding devices.

5. Motors shall be equipped with current sensors (for each individual motor), factory wired to terminal strips for field connection to BCS.

6. Each fan/motor assembly shall be dynamically balanced to meet AMCA standard 204-96, for fan application class BV-5, to meet or exceed a rotational imbalance Grade 0.55, producing a maximum rotational imbalance of 0.022" per second peak, filter in [0.55 mm per second peak, filter in]. 'Filter in' measurement indicates that the specified balance grade must be achieved at the submitted design operating speed for the fan(s).

7. The discharge and inlet bare fan sound power levels for each individual octave band shall **not** exceed the values specified or scheduled for the fan array. Alternate Manufacturers must submit acoustical data for review and approval prior to the bid indicating that the proposed alternate equipment can meet all specified performance requirements without impacting the equipment performance or design features including duct connection location, unit weights, acoustical performance or specified total fan horsepower for each FWT array. Proposals submitted which indicate a higher connected fan horsepower and higher sound power levels than specified or scheduled will **not** be accepted.

8. Manufacturers of alternate fan/motor assemblies, provided in lieu of the specified fan array(s), shall provide a spare motor and fan assembly for each type and size of fan/motor assembly, as well as a five year parts and labor warranty for replacement at no additional expense to the Owner. Such warranty coverage shall include the cost of any cranes or lifting devices, unit disassembly and reassembly, fan balancing, etc., as required.

9. Provide a complete electrical system required to run the fan array system including all equipment, material, electrical enclosure and electrical components. fan array designs shall be in accordance with specific system requirements. Please see system requirements before electrical design of fan system is to commence. Fan array electrical designs shall be in accordance with the NEC, CEC, UL 1995 and Local Codes.

a. Motor Current Protection: All motors in the fan array shall be provided with individual motor protection for thermal overload protection. All motor circuit protectors shall be located in main enclosure.

J. Coils:

1. Coils shall be submerged in water and tested to a minimum dry air/nitrogen pressure of 300 psig standard copper tube coils.

2. Coils shall display a tag with the Inspector's identification as proof of testing. Tubes shall have a nominal thickness of 0.020" unless otherwise specified.

3. Fins shall be made of 0.0075" thick aluminum unless otherwise specified. Tubing, return bends and headers shall be made of seamless UNS 12200 copper meeting ASTM B75 and ASTM B251 Standards. Coil return headers shall be equipped with factory installed 1.2" FPT air vent connections placed at the highest point available on the face of the header.

4. Casings and endplates shall be made of 16 gauge galvanized steel, meeting ASTM A527 Standard unless otherwise noted. Double flanged casings on the top and bottom of finned height shall be provided to allow for coil stacking. Piping, control valve and valve operator shall be supplied and field installed.

5. Hydronic coils shall be designed to withstand 250 psig maximum operating pressure and a maximum water temperature of 300°F [149°C] for standard duty copper tube coils. Standard construction fluid MPT connections shall be made from red brass meeting ASTM B43 Standard or Schedule-40 steel pipe as a minimum. Provide intermediate drain pans on all stacked cooling coils. The intermediate pan shall drain to the main drain pan through a copper downspout.

K. Filters

1. Factory fabricated filter sections shall be of the same construction and finish as the unit. Outside and return air inlets shall be equipped with galvanized steel racks that permit filter slide out removal (side access) for units equal or less than 78" tall and universal holding frames with upstream access (face loading) for units taller than 78" . Face loaded pre and final filters shall have Type 8 frames as manufactured by AAF, FARR or equal.

2. Side service filter sections shall include hinged access doors. Internal blank-offs shall be provided by the air unit Manufacturer as required to prevent air bypass around the filters.

3. The filters shall be as manufactured by Farr, Purolator, AAF or equal. Filters shall be in compliance with ANSI/UL 900: *Test Performance of Air Filters*. Filter air velocity shall not exceed 500 fpm through each filter bank. Units shall be equipped, to a minimum, with 2" thick, MERV 13 efficiency pleated filters.

L. Electrical and Control

1. All wiring and electrical connections shall be of copper wires, copper bus bars and copper fittings throughout. Power supply terminals shall be identified with permanent markers.

2. All high voltage wiring conduit shall consist of flexible metal conduit. All low voltage and signal wiring shall be minimum 22 gauge or as recommended by manufacturer.

3. When unit section splits are present, low voltage wiring shall be split using quick connectors for quick and easy field installation. Additionally, for each set of quick connector, the male branch in one unit section and the corresponding female branch in the next unit section shall be identified with the use of a color coded or numbered label. At each high voltage line split, a junction box shall be provided in one of the sections; the wiring in the section where the junction box is located and the matching wiring in the next section shall be identified with the use of a color coded or numbered label.

4. The unit shall feature a mounted permanent nameplate displaying, at a minimum, the Manufacturer, serial number, model number, date of manufacture and current and voltage readings. The unit must have an ETL or UL Listing and bear the appropriate mark.

5. A remote electrical control compartment shall be factory-furnished. The compartment shall be constructed to NEMA 3R requirements for outdoor units or NEMA 1 requirements for indoor units, provided with a hinged access door and a locking device. All components, except those not mounted directly in the unit, shall be factory mounted and wired to a labeled terminal strip. All components shall be identified using printed self-adhesive labels, consistent with the numbering used in the wiring diagrams. Control components shall include, but are not limited to, single-point connection power distribution block, sub and control circuit fuses or circuit breakers, control transformers, motor starters and overloads for single-speed operation. The control system shall be factory mounted in the control compartment and shall be a stand alone microprocessor-based Direct Digital Control system, with necessary sensors and interfaces to monitor and operate all functions as outlined in the equipment/control schedule, flow schematic, sequence or required for complete unit operation. A unit mounted intelligent programmable interface device shall be included for communication, display and setpoint control. Control panel compartment heaters and thermostats or cooling fans with grilles or registers shall be provided if control panel components cannot be protected from their minimum or maximum ambient temperature ratings. For automatic unit start-up an external dry contact must be provided. (ex: building management system (BMS), BACnet, time clock, etc.). The DDC controller shall be factory programmed and factory run tested prior to shipment to verify functions and logic.

6. A flow schematic with sensor and component identification and location, interlocks and sequence of operation shall be included with submittals.

7. A wiring schematic and a bill of materials shall be completed in ladder/logic format, with component labeling according to line numbers, once a release for production has been received. The wiring schematic, bill of materials and flow schematic shall be included within the units control compartment.

8. Control Systems

    a. Units shall be provided with temperature controls. Hot water or chilled water valves shall be field-installed and wired.

b. The control system shall include all safety and operating controls required to meet the equipment's ETL or UL listing and the requirements of UL 1995. Controls to include branch and sub-circuit fusing, contactors, relays and pressure controls. Panel to be constructed to NEMA 3R requirements for outdoor units or NEMA 1 requirements for indoor units and will have hinged access panels.

c. The unit shall be provided with a Direct Digital Control system, including provisions for remote start/stop and setpoint reset. Local display of all setpoints and other user adjustable parameters will be provided. All safety controls shall be manual reset.

d. Each unit shall be furnished complete with all operational controls. All controls shall be factory installed and wired except for room sensors which shall be field installed by the Temperature Control Subcontractor. The control system shall be a DDC control system consisting of space control and economizer control.

e. Airflow Control – Supply Fan

1) The supply fan's speed will be adjusted through the keypad or communication protocol by others. VFD for balancing only.
2) Unit shall be provided with a circuit breaker mounted within the control enclosure with a door interlocked handle on the exterior.
3) The DDC controller shall be native BACnet MS/TP.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
E. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting: Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified elsewhere in Division 23.

B. Suspended Units: Suspend units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified elsewhere in Division 23.

C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.

E. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gages on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to air-handling unit to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B 88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

F. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
2. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.

3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.

4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.

5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.

6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.

7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.

8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.

9. Install new, clean filters.

10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.

2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.

3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 23 73 13

SECTION 23 74 00 - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:

1. Hydronic heating and cooling coils.
2. Filter sections.
3. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
4. Roof curbs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.
B. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.
C. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

1.4 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
B. Warranty: Executed special warranty specified in this Section.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AAON, Inc.
2. Carrier Corporation.
3. McQuay International.
4. Trane

2.2 PACKAGED OUTDOOR CENTRAL STATION AIR HANDLING EQUIPMENT

A. General:

1. Unit layout and configuration shall be as defined in project plans and schedule.

B. Casing:

1. Unit manufacturer shall ship unit in segments as specified by the contractor for ease of installation in tight spaces. The entire air handler shall be constructed of galvanized steel.

2. Casing finished to meet ASTM B117 250-hour salt-spray test.

3. The removal of access panels or access doors shall not affect the structural integrity of the unit.

4. All removable panels shall be gasketed.

5. All doors shall have gasketing around full perimeter to prevent air leakage. Contractor shall be responsible to provide connection flanges and all other framework that is needed to properly support the unit.

6. Floor panels shall be double-wall construction and designed to support a 300-lb load during maintenance activities and shall deflect no more than 0.0042 per inch of panel span.

7. Unit casing panels shall be 2-inch double-wall construction, with solid galvanized exterior and solid galvanized interior, to facilitate cleaning of unit interior.

8. Unit casing panels (roof, walls, floor) and external structural frame members shall be completely insulated filling the entire panel cavity in all directions so that no voids exist. Panel insulation shall comply with NFPA 90A.

9. Unit Paint - External surfaces of all outdoor unit casings shall be prepared and painted with a minimum 1.5 mil thick water based polyurethane finish or equal. Paint shall be able to withstand a salt spray test in accordance with ASTM B117 for a minimum of 500 consecutive hours.

C. Weather Hoods:

1. Outside and exhaust air weather hoods shall be fabricated from the same material as the unit exterior. Hoods shall extend past the perimeter of the unit casing opening to ensure the hood does not obstruct the airflow path. Hoods shall be painted with the same paint requirements identified for the external casing herein.

2. Outside air inlet hoods for each outside damper shall be provided with a high performance moisture eliminator to prevent entrainment of water into the unit from outside air. Exhaust hoods shall be provided on exhaust air openings and shall include a bird screen.

3. All hoods shall be sized for 100 percent of nominal damper capacities and with bird screens or similar protection to prevent nesting and entry into AHU inlet or exhaust paths.

D. Roofcurb:

1. Provide manufacturers insulated roof curb.
2. Roof curb shall support the full perimeter of the air handling unit, including pipe chases.
3. A 2" x 4" nominal wood nailing strip shall be supplied attached to the roof curb. Wood nailing strip shall be of #4 Spruce or #4 Yellow Pine.

4. Roof curb shall include frame work necessary to support supply and return duct installation prior to unit placement.
5. Roof curb shall be shipped loose for field installation prior to unit placement.

E. Piping Cabinet:

1. The AHU manufacturer shall provide external pipe cabinet assemblies as indicated on the drawings.

2. External pipe cabinets shall be factory assembled and shipped with the units for field mounting.

3. Pipe cabinets shall have a minimum internal depth suitable for piping connections including valves and fittings as indicated on respective coil connection details..

4. Cabinet walls and doors shall be the same double-wall construction and exterior color/finish as the unit wall panels. Cabinet roofs shall be sloped away from the unit for water drainage.

F. Access Doors:

1. Access doors shall be 2-inch double-wall construction. Interior and exterior shall be of the same construction as the interior and exterior wall panels.

2. Gasketing shall be provided around the full perimeter of the doors to prevent air leakage.

3. Door hardware shall be surface-mounted to prevent through-cabinet penetrations that could likely weaken the casing leakage and thermal performance.

4. Access doors shall be hinged and removable without the use of specialized tools. Hinges shall be interchangeable with the door handle hardware to allow for alternating door swing in the field to minimize access interference due to unforeseen job site obstructions.

G. Drain Pans:

1. All cooling coil sections shall be provided with an insulated, double-wall, galvanized drain pan.

2. The drain pan shall be designed in accordance with ASHRAE 62.1 being of sufficient size to collect all condensation produced from the coil and sloped in two planes, pitched toward drain connections, promoting positive drainage to eliminate stagnant water conditions when unit is installed level and trapped per manufacturer's requirements.

3. The outlet shall be located at the lowest point of the pan and shall be sufficient diameter to preclude drain pan overflow under any normally expected operating condition.

4. All drain pan threaded connections shall be visible external to the unit. Threaded connections under the unit floor shall not be accepted.

H. Fans:

1. Fan sections shall have a minimum of one hinged and latched access door located on the drive side of the unit to allow inspection and maintenance of the fan, motor, and drive components.

2. Direct drive plenum fans with integral frame motors, shall be mounted on isolation bases. Fan shall be dynamically balanced throughout the operating range to a BV-3 (0.20 in/s) per AMCA 204 test standard.

3. Fan and motor shall be internally isolated with spring isolators.

4. A flexible connection shall be installed between fan and unit casing to ensure complete isolation. Flexible connection shall comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181 requirements.

I. Drives and Motors:

1. Motors shall meet or exceed all NEMA Standards Publication MG 1 - 2006 requirements and comply with NEMA Premium efficiency levels when applicable. Motors shall comply with applicable requirements of NEC and shall be UL Listed.

2. Fan Motors shall be heavy duty, open drip-proof operable at 460 volts, 60Hz, 3-phase. If applicable, motor efficiency shall meet or exceed NEMA Premium efficiencies.

3. Motors shall have a +/- 10 percent voltage utilization range to protect against voltage variation.

4. Unit shall be provided with a factory pre-mounted and wired variable speed drive. Refer to Section 23 29 000 Variable Frequency Motor Controllers for additional information.

5. Provide unit with factory mounted and wired fused disconnect switch.

J. Hydronic Coils:

1. Supply and return header connections shall be clearly labeled on unit exterior such that direction of coil water-flow is counter to direction of unit air-flow.
2. Coils shall be proof-tested to 300 psig and leak-tested to 200 psig air pressure under water.
3. Headers shall be constructed of round copper pipe or cast iron.
4. Tubes shall be 1/2-inch .016 copper, with aluminum fins.
5. Hydronic coils shall be supplied with factory installed drain and vent piping to the unit exterior.

K. Integral Face and Bypass:

1. Integral face and bypass coils shall be provided as indicated on the schedule and drawings.

2. Coils shall meet performance as defined on the schedule. Coils shall consist of a built-in series of finned heating, and bypass areas, with mechanically interlocked dampers.

3. Coils to be constructed of 14-gage galvanized steel, with fins shall be no less than .010-inch thick aluminum, and tubing with minimum .035-inch thick copper tubing.

4. Coils shall be certified to, and bear the AHRI 410 Standard label.

5. Dampers shall be arranged to completely enclose and isolate heating elements. Coils shall include mixing baffles to minimize downstream mixing distance to 24-inches. At minimum distance, leaving air temperature shall vary no more than +/- 5 deg F from the average leaving air temperature.

L. Filter Section:

1. Provide factory-fabricated filter section of the same construction and finish as unit casings. Filter section shall have side access filter guides and access door(s) extending the full height of the casing to facilitate filter removal.

2. Provide MERV 13 rated filters.

3. Manufacturer shall provide one set of startup filters.

M. Dampers:

1. All dampers, with the exception of external bypass and multizones (if scheduled), shall be internally mounted. Dampers shall be premium ultra low leak.

2. Blade arrangement (parallel or opposed) shall be provided. Dampers shall be Ruskin CD60 double-skin airfoil design or equivalent for minimal air leakage and pressure drop. Leakage rate shall not exceed 3 CFM/square foot at one inch water gauge complying with ASHRAE 90.1 maximum damper leakage and shall be AMCA licensed for Class 1A. All leakage testing and pressure ratings shall be based on AMCA Standard 500-D.

N. Controls:

1. Provide field mounted and wired control components as described elsewhere and in conformance with the sequence of operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of AHUs.
B. Examine roughing-in for AHUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where AHUs will be installed.
D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
E. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Furnish manufacturers roof curb in a timely manner to roofing sub-contrctor for installation.
B. Unit Support: Install unit level on curbs. Secure AHUs to curb per manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
B. Install piping adjacent to AHUs to allow service and maintenance.
C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
4. Inspect internal insulation.
5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.

6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
10. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
11. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
12. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
13. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
14. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
15. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain AHUs. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 23 74 00

SECTION 23 82 00 – TERMINAL HEATING AND COOLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of Terminal Heating and Cooling Equipment, associated accessories, and their installation:

1. Fan Coil Units (FCU),
2. Unit Heaters (UH),
3. Air Coils (CC, HC or RHC),

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control test reports.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan-coil units, unit heaters, and air coils to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

C. Warranty: Executed special warranty specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake and relief dampers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Airtherm; a Mestek Company.
2. Engineered Air Ltd.
3. McQuay International.
4. Rosemex Products.
5. Ruffneck Heaters; a division of Lexa Corporation.
6. Trane.

B. Description: An assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in horizontal discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers.

C. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.

D. General Coil Requirements: Test and rate hot-water propeller unit heater coils according to ASHRAE 33.

E. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, minimum 0.025-inch wall thickness, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 325 deg F, with manual air vent. Test for leaks to 350 psig underwater.

F. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.

G. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

H. Accessories:

1. Manufacturer's standard disconnect switch and starter.
2. Manufacturer's recommended vibration isolators.

2.2 FAN COIL UNIT

A. General

1. Unit shall be factory assembled and tested.
2. Unit shall include all factory wiring, piping and associated controls.
3. Unit shall be provided with a 3-prong male primary electrical power cord.

B. Unit Cabinet

1. Composed of high impact polymers.
2. Internally insulated to ensure quiet operation.

C. Fan Motor

1. Voltage rating as indicated on schedule.
2. Fan motor shall be 3-speed, direct drive and PSC type.
3. Totally enclosed.
4. Internal overload protection.

D. Blower Wheel

1. Dynamically balanced.

E. Water Coil

1. 3/8" copper tubing mechanically bonded to aluminum fins.
2. Maximum operating pressure: 150 psi.
3. Maximum water temperature: 160°F.

F. Drain Pan

1. Molded with high impact polymers.
2. Exterior of drain pan shall be insulated with closed cell insulation.
3. Pans shall contain flexible drain tubing accessible from back of unit.

G. Filter

1. Washable

H. Controls

1. Factory wired and tested
2. Unit shall include a circuit board and wireless infrared remote controller with wall bracket and 24v thermostat.
3. All controls shall be 24v.

2.3 HEATING AND COOLING COILS FOR AIR SYSTEMS

A. General:

1. Size: Size for face velocity and maximum pressure drops scheduled. If not scheduled, size to provide maximum of 500 fpm face velocity for cooling coils, 650 fpm face velocity for heating coils, or higher only if restricted by maximum coil size that can fit within existing units.

2. All coils to be computer optimized as to size and arrangement to meet requirements listed on drawings. Include computer selection sheets in submittal.

3. Certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 410.

4. Rate coils for the type and percentage of glycol solution called for, where applicable.

B. Hydronic Heating and Cooling Coils:

1. Coils shall have all performance characteristics as scheduled or otherwise required as a minimum, including size, sensible and latent capacity, number of rows, tubing and circuits, headers, connection sizes, and water and air pressure drops.

2. Casings: Constructed of 16 gauge channels with fins tight against or recessed into the channels to minimize air bypass. Channels to have 3/8" holes on 6" centers for flanged to duct mounting. Where required by different existing duct connection conditions, provide flange mounting arrangement to match existing.

   a. Heating coils shall have continuously galvanized steel casing frames.

   b. Cooling coils shall have 300 series stainless steel casing frames, with additional external casings similar to that described in the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards. External casing shall be exterior to the headers and return bends, include an integral waterproof double sloped stainless steel or reinforced plastic drain pan under and extending past the coil, shall be guaranteed to retain and drain all condensate at the air flow velocity scheduled. External casing shall be insulated so as to prevent any condensation external to the casing, either with external board insulation or internal flexible foam insulation as further described in SECTION 23 07 00 – HVAC INSULATION. Casing may be factory or field provided, and noted as such on the submittal in coordination with the prime contractor.

3. Headers:

   a. Provide copper, steel, or cast iron headers as required to achieve capacity, even discharge air temperatures, and water pressure drop scheduled.

      1) Seamless extra heavy wall copper tubing with brazed brass threaded supply and return connections.

      2) Gray cast iron hydrostatically tested to 400 PSIG before assembly. Headers 12 inch and larger shall be tapered to assure uniform distribution to all tubes. Provide threaded or flanged connections.

3) Provide system connection sizes same size as connected piping as shown on drawings, unless otherwise scheduled.

4) Provide drain and vent connections in headers.

4. Tubes, unless otherwise scheduled:

a. Seamless, 5/8” O.D., 0.024 inch min. wall copper tube primary surface, expanded into the fin collars for a permanent fin tube bond and brazed copper header into the header for a leak tight joint at 250 PSIG air pressure under water.

b. Return bends shall be .035" min. wall machine die formed and wrinkle free at the bend I.D.

5. Fins:

a. Continuously configured .006" min. plate type fins with full fin collars for accurate spacing and maximum fin - tube contact.
b. General heating coil fin material: aluminum.
c. Cooling coil, and as otherwise noted on drawings, fin material: Heresite coated aluminum or copper.

6. The complete coil core shall be tested with 315 psi min. air (or nitrogen) pressure under warm water and guaranteed for 250 psig working pressure.

7. Bronze spring type turbulators shall be used where necessary to attain required capacity at the available GPM and entering water temperature, without increase in scheduled water pressure drop.

8. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Carrier or equal
b. Enviro-tec or equal
c. Heatcraft Refrigeration Products LLC; Heat Transfer Division.
d. McQuay or equal.
e. Super Radiator Coils.
f. Trane or equal
g. USA Coil & Air.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit installation.
B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install equipment in compliance with NFPA 90A.
B. Install equipment level and plumb.
C. Suspend motorized equipment from structure with threaded steel rods and minimum 0.25-inch static-deflection, elastomeric vibration isolation hanger.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Install piping adjacent to coils to allow service and maintenance.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, install shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

3. Connect piping to equipment using specialties as detailed on drawings, with at minimum isolation valves, unions, and P/T test ports supply and return, with control valve on return as specified.

4. Pipe cooling coil condensate through properly sized accessible p-trap to approved point of indirect waste discharge. Coordinate location of discharge with Owner and Architect in field.

B. Connect supply and return ducts to ducted equipment with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories". Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct connections.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Ensure Manufacturers provide:

1. Thorough instruction of installing Contractor’s personnel in installation of units.
2. Instruction for Owner's personnel in operation and care of equipment.
3. Maintenance brochure.
4. Adjustment of air discharge pattern to suit each room as directed and approved.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. After installing equipment, inspect for damage to finish. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning and damaged units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 23 82 00

SECTION 26 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section and to all of Divisions 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements applicable to components and systems included in Electric Contract.

B. Products Installed but Not Furnished Under This Section

1. Make electrical connections to equipment shown on Drawings and furnished by other Contractors. Obtain approved wiring diagrams and location drawings for roughing in and final connections from Contractor furnishing equipment.

1.3 REFERENCES

A.	AIA	American Institute of Architects
B.	ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act
C.	AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
D.	ANSI	American National Standards Institute
E.	ASTM	ASTM International
F.	IBC	International Building Code
G.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The)
H.	IES	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
I.	NEC	National Electrical Code
J.	NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
K.	NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
L.	NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
M.	UL	Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. “Existing”: Equipment depicted on Drawings with an “E” designation denotes existing equipment to remain.

B. "RL": Equipment depicted on Drawings with an "RL" designation denotes existing equipment to relocate. Disconnect equipment, remove circuitry to a point beyond demolition and tag for reuse, store equipment for reuse and reinstall as specified in Contract Documents. Modify/extend circuitry to new equipment locations and reconnect. The Contractor is responsible for protecting equipment from damage during removal, storage and reinstallation.

C. "Replace": Equipment depicted on Drawings with an "R" designation denotes existing equipment to replace. Refer to relevant Project Manual Specification for additional information and requirements.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Inspection of Existing Systems: Inspect each existing system scheduled for modification in presence of Authorized Owner's Representative and issue a deficiency report to Owner and Architect listing conditions found prior to any removals, relocations, or additions. Modified systems include (but are not limited to):

1. Power distribution.
2. Power generation system.
3. Lighting.
4. Sound system.
5. Public Address System
6. Emergency lighting.

B. Design Requirements - Provide complete systems, properly tested, balanced, and ready for operation including necessary details, items and accessories although not expressly shown or specified, including (but not limited to):

1. Wiring and raceway for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

2. Electrical devices and equipment for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

3. Systems included, but not limited to:

    a. Electrical distribution.
    b. Electrical connections.
    c. Power generation system.
    d. Lighting.
    e. Sound systems.
    f. Public Address System
    g. Emergency lighting.

C. Electric Layouts: Arrange panels; disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, equipment, raceways, and similar components neatly, orderly and symmetrically. Provide 3/4-inch fire treated, gray painted plywood backboards for surface mounted panels, disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, and similar equipment. Arrangements shown on Drawings are diagrammatic only; provide and adjust raceways, wiring, and other components as required.

D. Power Interruptions and Scheduled Outages: Coordinate scheduling of all power interruptions and outages with Owner. Confirm with Owner prior to interruption of power, which building systems are considered critical and must remain operational during the interruption. If a scheduled power outage is to extend beyond one standard workday, provide temporary power to operate critical building systems (including, but not limited to fire alarm system, security system, building access control system, and building energy management control system).

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General Division 26 submittal requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 – SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES and as modified below.

2. Product Data: Submit product data for items listed in individual technical section. Clearly identify manufacturer, pertinent design, function, materials, construction and performance data specifically addressing specification description and Contract Document requirements of item. Strike out products that are not applicable to item being submitted, where more than one product is indicated on manufacturer product literature.

   a. Cover Sheet: Attach cover sheet, identified in Section 01 33 00, to Product Data of each item submitted. Provide cover sheet for only one type of item with related accessories, equipment with related components. Do not combine unrelated items under the same cover sheet.

   b. Specified Equivalent Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information including product literature, technical specifications and descriptions, performance data and, and similar items to demonstrate compatibility with Basis-of-Design Equipment as specified in the "Part 2 – Products" of each technical section.

3. Shop Drawings: Submit detailed drawings for electrical equipment layouts, showing exact sizes and locations for approval before beginning work.

   a. Do not proceed with installation of systems in each area until agreement is reached with all concerned on exact arrangements for each room or area, unless otherwise directed by Architect. If Contractor proceeds prior to resolving conflicts, Contractor shall modify installed Work as required to permit other systems to proceed with a coordinated installation.

   b. Specified Equivalent Drawings: Submit detailed drawings of proposed Specified Equivalents, indicating proposed installation of equipment and showing maintenance clearances, required service removal space other pertinent revisions to arrangement and configuration shown in Contract Documents.

4. Samples: On all submittals, indicate standard factory color and factory finish surfaces. Where more than one color is available, selection will be made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors. Electronically transmitted color samples are not acceptable.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sleeves and sleeve seals. Include rated capacities, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1. Penetration firestopping materials.
2. Penetration firestopping assembly drawings.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Codes and Standards: Comply with applicable Federal, State and local building and electrical codes, laws, ordinances, and regulations, and comply with applicable NFPA, National Electrical Code and utility company requirements and regulations. Provide Underwriters Laboratories Seal on all materials.

2. Permits and Inspections: Obtain approvals, tests, and inspections required by Architect, Engineer, local electrical inspector, agent or agency specified in Project Manual, or National, State, or local codes and ordinances.

   a. Schedule electrical inspection by an agency acceptable to the local authority having jurisdiction and submit final inspection certificate to Architect.
   b. Furnish materials and labor necessary for tests and pay costs associated with tests and inspections.
   c. Conduct tests under load for load balancing and where required by codes, regulations, ordinances, or technical Specification.

3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Storage and Protection:

1. Take precautions to store materials and products to protect finishes and not permit dust and dirt to penetrate equipment.
2. Replace equipment damaged beyond reasonable repair as required by Architect.
3. Refinish any equipment with marks, stains, scratches, dents, and other aesthetic damage that doesn't impede operation of equipment as required by Architect.

1.10 COORDINATION OF WORK

A. New Construction:

1. Openings, Chases, Recesses, Sleeves, Lintels and Bucks (required for admission of Electric Contract systems and components): Coordinate requirements with General Contractor for inclusion in General Contract. Furnish necessary information (e.g. locations and sizes) to General Contractor in ample time for installation of systems and components included in Electric Contract.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to Contractor responsible for General Work anchor bolts required for Electric Contract construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Contract.

3. Locate settings, check locations as installation in General Contract progresses, and provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

B. Existing Construction:

1. Unless otherwise specified, employ Contractor responsible for General Work for all cutting, patching, repairing and replacing of general work required for installation of systems and components included in Electric Work. Secure approval from Architect's representative before cutting.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to Contractor responsible for General Work anchor bolts required for Electric Work construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Contract. Provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

3. Access Doors: Provide access doors shown on Drawings, or as required for access to pull boxes, junction boxes, relays and other electrical devices requiring periodic inspection, adjustment or maintenance, where located above or within inaccessible walls or ceilings, and including cutting and patching of adjacent walls and ceilings to match existing materials and finishes.

1.11 ALTERATION PROCEDURES

A. In locations where existing devices are indicated to be disconnected and removed and existing power circuit or communications cable is not scheduled to be reused:

1. Remove circuit conductors back to source.

2. Modify panel directory for that circuit.

3. Remove all existing exposed and unexposed accessible raceway.

4. Provide blank cover plates or wall infill (as indicated on plans) and as described below:

a. For single gang and multi-gang switch boxes in public or occupied spaces; stainless steel coverplates.

b. For single gang and multi-gang boxes in un-occupied spaces; stainless steel, galvanized steel or PVC coverplates.

c. For boxes larger than standard switch boxes in public or occupied spaces; remove existing box and provide wall infill, matching existing sub-surface and finished surface conditions. Paint wall to match surrounding finishes.

d. For boxes larger than standard switch boxes in un-occupied spaces; 18 gage galvanized sheet metal coverplate with machined edges. Prime and paint to match surrounding finish conditions.

5. Patch and paint existing walls where disturbed by the electrical work.

B. In locations where existing devices are to remain in place, ensure circuits feeding such devices remain operational. Modify existing circuits as required to allow new construction to occur and to maintain necessary circuitry to existing devices for complete and proper operation.

C. In locations where entire existing system is being removed or modified:

1. Refer to individual system specification sections for documentation and inspection requirements prior to any alteration work on any system.
2. Take all necessary measures to ensure that down time will not compromise safety.
3. Notify Owner, Architect and other Contractors not less than 2 weeks prior to interruptions in service.
4. Coordinate work schedule to minimize duration of system outage during hours when building is occupied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping”.

B. Submit Manufacturers Product Data Sheets for each type of product selected. Certify that Firestop Material is free of asbestos and lead paint, and complies with local regulations.

1. Certification by firestopping manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) and are nontoxic to building occupants.

C. Submit system design listings, including illustrations from qualified testing and inspection agency that is applicable to each firestop configuration.

D. Submit a project specific Penetration Firestopping Schedule indicating where each firestop configuration will be used.

2.2 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink, non-metallic, high strength grout, suitable for interior and exterior, above and below grade applications.

1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.3 SEALANTS

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in non-fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

B. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus.
b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.

2.4 PAINT AND FINISHES

A. Refer to Division 09 for painting and finishing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Do not cut waterproofed floors or walls for admission of any equipment or materials and do not pierce any structural members without written permission from Architect.

B. Furnish and install sleeves, inserts, panels, raceways, boxes, and similar infrastructure., ahead of general construction work and maintain Contractor personnel at Site during installation of general construction work to be responsible for and to maintain these items in position.

C. Unless otherwise noted elsewhere in Contract Documents, bear expense of cutting, patching, repairing or replacing of work of other trades made necessary by any fault, error or tardiness on part of Electrical Contract or damage done by Electric Contract. Employ and pay Contractor whose work is involved.

3.2 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for electrical equipment base bearing surfaces, other equipment base plates, and anchors.
B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
G. Place grout around anchors.
H. Cure placed grout.

3.3 SEALANTS

A. Install sealants according to the requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping according to the requirements specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Applied Fireproofing:

1. Coordinate the installation of hangers, supports and accessories from the structural steel with the fireproofing installation. Install all hangers and supports prior to installation of fireproofing.

2. Repair or replace existing fireproofing removed as a part of Electrical Work installation.

    a. Employ the services of an approved fireproofing contractor to repair or replace the fireproofing by patching any areas that have been removed or damaged due to the installation of work after the completion of the fireproofing.

C. Repaired or replacement fireproofing shall match the fireproofing adjacent to the repaired area. All warranties shall be maintained.

END OF SECTION 26 05 00

SECTION 26 05 01 – HAZARDOUS MATERIAL DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section and to all of Divisions 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Selective removal and subsequent off-site disposal of the following hazardous waste:

   a. PCB containing light ballasts.
   b. Mercury containing fluorescent light tubes.

2. Quality assurance requirements including personnel training and certification.

3. Requirements for transport and disposal of hazardous waste materials by legal and appropriate means.

B. Related Sections

1. Supplementary Conditions: Additional insurance requirements for hazardous waste disposal.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Regulatory Requirements

1. United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

   a. 40 CFR 260 - Hazardous waste management system: General
   b. 40 CFR 261 - Identification and Listing of Hazardous Waste.
   c. 40 CFR 262 - Standards Applicable to Generators of Hazardous Waste.
   d. 40 CFR 263 - Standards Applicable to Transporters of Hazardous Waste
   e. 40 CFR 264 - Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities
   f. 40 CFR 265 - Interim Status Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities
   g. 40 CFR 266 - Standards for the Management of Specific Hazardous Wastes and Specific Types of Hazardous Waste Management Facilities
   h. 40 CFR 268 - Land Disposal Restrictions
   i. 40 CFR 270 - EPA Administered Permit Programs: The Hazardous Waste Permit Program
   j. 40 CFR 761 - Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) Manufacturing, Processing, Distribution In Commerce, and Use Prohibitions.

2. United States Department of Transportation (DOT)

   a. 49 CFR 171 - General Information, Regulations, and Definitions.
   b. 49 CFR 172 - Hazardous Materials Table, Special Provisions, Hazardous Materials Communications, Emergency Response Information, and Training Requirements.
   c. 49 CFR 173 - Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packaging.
   d. 49 CFR 174 - Carriage by Rail.
   e. 49 CFR 175 - Carriage by Aircraft.
   f. 49 CFR 176 - Carriage by Vessel.
   g. 49 CFR 177 - Carriage by Public Highway.
   h. 49 CFR 178 - Specifications for Packaging.
   i. 49 CFR 179 - Specifications for Tank Cars.
   j. 49 CFR 180 - Continuing Qualification for Maintenance of Packaging.

3. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (DEC)

   a. 6 NYCRR 360 - Solid Waste Management Facilities
   b. 6 NYCRR 364 - Waste Transporter Permits
   c. 6 NYCRR 370 - Hazardous Waste Management System: General.
   d. 6 NYCRR 371 - Identification and Listing of Hazardous Wastes.
   e. 6 NYCRR 372 - Hazardous Waste Manifest System and Related Standards for Generators, Transporters and Facilities.
   f. 6 NYCRR 373-1 - Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage and Disposal Facility Permitting Requirements.
   g. 6 NYCRR 373-2 - Final Status Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage and Disposal Facilities.
   h. 6 NYCRR 373-3 - Interim Status Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waster Facilities.
   i. 6 NYCRR 376 - Land Disposal Restrictions.

1.4 HAZARDOUS WASTE GENERATOR STATUS

A. Owner is a Small Quantity Generator as defined by 6 NYCRR 371 and 40 CFR 26. Schedule removal, on-site storage, and transport as required to maintain Owner’s status as a Small Quantity Generator.

B. Owner is a Conditionally Exempt Small Quantity Generator as defined by 6 NYCRR 371 and 40 CFR 26. Schedule removals, on-site storage, and transport as required to maintain Owner’s status as a Conditionally Exempt Small Quantity Generator.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Remove and legally dispose of items except those indicated to be reinstalled, salvaged, or to remain Owner's property.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.

B. Proposed Schedule: Submit schedule indicating proposed sequence of operations for removal and disposal to Owner's Representative for review prior to start of removal operations. Include coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services as required, together with details for dust and noise control protection.

1. Provide detailed sequence of removals to ensure uninterrupted progress of Owner's on-site operations, including starting and ending dates for each activity.
2. Coordinate with Owner's continuing occupation of portions of existing building and with Owner's partial occupancy of completed new addition or structure, as applicable.
3. Include details for use of elevator and stairs and locations of temporary partitions and means of egress.

C. Photographs or Videotapes: Obtain photographs or videotape recordings of existing conditions of structure surfaces and equipment to remain and adjacent structures and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage related to removal operations. Submit photographs or videotapes to Owner's Representative prior to start of Work.

D. Transport and Disposal Data

1. Prior to removal, transport or disposal, submit copies of:

a. Valid Waste Transporter Permit issued by New York State Department of Environmental Conservation.

b. Written communication from designated treatment, storage or disposal facility that it:

1) Is authorized to receive and dispose of waste products generated by this Project;
2) Has capacity to receive and dispose of waste products generated by this and;
3) Will provide or assure that ultimate disposal method indicated on manifest for particular hazardous waste(s) will be followed.

c. Instruction regarding requirements for distribution of waste manifest as completed at time of shipment.

2. Post Disposal Submittals

a. Completely executed waste manifest.

b. Documentation of Hazardous Waste Determination, consisting of:

1) Test results;
2) Waste analyses or
3) Other hazardous waste determination information.

c. Landfill Records: Submit landfill records indicating receipt and acceptance of hazardous waste(s) by landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous waste(s).

E. Quality Control Submittals

1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by applicable subcontractor, Contractor and manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with applicable "Qualifications" requirements specified below in "Quality Assurance" article.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. Hazardous Material Disposal Subcontractor: Engage experienced firm that has successfully completed hazardous material disposal similar to that indicated for this Project and provides training as required by USEPA, USDOT, NYSDEC and OSHA.

B. Pre-Disposal Conference - Prior to beginning hazardous material disposal, conduct conference at Site to review requirements and conditions for hazardous material disposal with attendance by at least the following:

1. Contractor's representative.
2. Hazardous material disposal subcontractor representative, if applicable.
3. Owner's representative.
4. Architect's representative.

1.8 PROJECT SITE

A. Existing Conditions

1. Building Occupancy: Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to areas of hazardous material removal operations. Conduct removal operations in manner that will minimize need for disruption of Owner's normal operations. Provide minimum of 72 hours advance notice to Owner of removal activities that will affect Owner's normal operations.

2. Utility Services: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during hazardous material removal operations.

a. Do not interrupt utilities service occupied or used facilities, except when authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to governing authorities.

b. Maintain fire protection services during removal operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

A. Labeling and Packaging Materials: Provide labeling and packaging materials as required by 49 CFR 173 Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packaging.

B. Hazardous Waste Disposal Vehicles: Provide vehicles for transporting hazardous waste possessing valid Industrial Waste Hauler Permit and equipped with appropriate placards affixed as prescribed by United States Department of Transportation regulations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions (by Hazardous Material Disposal subcontractor): Examine conditions under which hazardous material disposal is to be conducted in coordination with Hazardous Materials Disposal Installer and notify affected Contractors and Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely hazardous material disposal. Do not proceed with disposal until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Hazardous Material Disposal Installer.

1. When Hazardous Material Disposal Installer confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to Architect written confirmation from applicable Installer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to Hazardous Material Disposal Installer.

2. Survey existing conditions and coordinate with hazardous material disposal requirements indicated to determine extent of hazardous material disposal required.

3. Inventory and record condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.

4. Survey condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during hazardous material disposal operations.

B. Perform additional surveys as hazardous material disposal progresses to detect hazards resulting from hazardous material disposal activities.

3.2 REMOVAL, PACKAGING, TRANSPORTATION AND DISPOSAL PROCEDURES

A. Removal: Remove light ballasts and fluorescent light tubes whole and intact. Do not release PCBs or mercury to the environment.

B. Packaging: Package, label, and mark all hazardous waste materials in accordance with applicable requirements of 49 CFR 173, 178 and 179.

C. Temporary On-Site Storage and Protection: Provide storage on site of hazardous materials removed from service and scheduled for disposal to prevent damage or vandalism.

D. Hazardous Waste Determination: Provide analysis required by Treatment, Storage or Disposal facility to document hazardous waste determination.

E. Hazardous Waste Manifests

1. Maintain manifest from date of transport until date of disposal, destruction or recycling.

2. Return fully executed manifests to Owner within 60 days of date waste accepted by initial transporter.

3. Use following type of manifest as applicable:

a. If waste is to be disposed of in New York State or if waste is to be disposed of in state not requiring use of specific manifest form, use New York State Uniform Hazardous Waste Manifest;

b. If the waste is to be disposed of in state other than New York State and that state requires use of specific manifest form, use manifest required by state where waste is to be disposed in lieu of New York State Uniform Hazardous Waste Manifest.

4. Complete manifest and deliver to Owner for review and signature.

5. Retain copies of manifest required to remain with hazardous waste shipment and deliver remaining copies to Owner.

6. Advise Owner regarding required distribution of manifest, both verbally and in writing.

F. Disposal - Transport hazardous waste to treatment or disposal facility that:

1. Is permitted, licensed or registered by state to dispose of hazardous waste;

2. Has interim status to dispose of hazardous waste;

3. Is authorized to manage hazardous waste under Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) or

4. Is facility which:

a. Beneficially uses or reuses, or legitimately recycles or reclaims its waste; or
b. Treats its waste prior to beneficial use or reuse, or legitimate recycling or reclamation.

3.3 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

A. At least weekly, remove from building site debris, rubbish, and other materials resulting from hazardous material disposal operations.

1. If additional hazardous materials are encountered during hazardous material disposal operations, comply with applicable regulations, laws, and ordinances concerning removal, handling, and protection against exposure or environmental pollution.

2. Burning of removed materials not permitted on Project Site.

3. Transport materials removed and legally dispose off-site.

B. Sweep building broom clean at end of each workday and on completion of hazardous material removal operations.

C. Upon completion of hazardous material removal, remove tools, equipment, and demolished materials from Site. Remove protections and leave interior areas broom clean. Change filters on air-handling equipment to remain.

END OF SECTION 26 05 01

SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Building wires and cables rated 2000 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 2000 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
3. General Cable Corporation.
4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
5. Southwire Company.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable used in VFC circuits.

E. Conductors: Copper complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.

1. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN/THWN-2 and Type XHHW-2.

F. Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for metal-clad cable, Type MC with ground wire.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
6. Ideal Industries/Buchanan

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1. Conductors No. 8 AWG and smaller: Screw on, wing nut wire connectors with fixed square wire threads and wide throated skirt. UL 486C Listed.

2. Conductors No. 6 AWG to 3/0 AWG: Bolt on type or crimped type compression, seamless copper connectors using hand or hydraulic tool, color coded to wire size. Connector shall be electro-tin plated to resist electrolytic corrosion. UL 486A and UL 486B Listed.

3. Conductors No. 4/0 AWG and larger: Compression type solderless connector, long barrel seamless copper with minimum 2 pressure points per conductor. Fully compatible with industry standard crimping tool-die sets. Color coded to wire size and electro-tin plated to resist electrolytic corrosion. UL 486A Listed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper; stranded.
B. Branch Circuits: Copper, stranded.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Wire and Cable Installation: Install all wire and cable in approved raceway with exit light circuits, emergency lighting circuits, and special systems wiring installed in separate raceways. Use UL approved lubricants for wire pulling. Tag all feeders, subfeeders, special system wiring and branch circuit wiring at each pull box, junction box, and gutter space indicating point of origin and termination. Install green grounding wire in all raceways for connection to equipment, motors, transformers, and similar equipment. Install low voltage cables as detailed in individual sections.

B. Splices and Terminations: Make all splices accessible. Insulate all splices, taps, and connections to insulation value of conductor. Follow all instructions and recommendations of splice material manufacturer. Terminate low voltage cables with termination blocks as described in individual sections.

1. Common Neutral Conductor: Do not use common neutral for multiple branch circuits.

C. Pull all conductors together where more than one is being installed in raceway.

D. Do not exceed maximum pulling tension of wire being installed. Use pulling compound or lubricant, where necessary. Use compound that will not deteriorate conductor or insulation.

E. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable or rope that cannot damage raceway or wire.

F. Replace wiring damaged during installation.

G. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

H. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

I. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

J. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

K. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway.

L. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

M. Support cables according to Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

N. Metal Clad Type "MC" Cable:

1. Install MC cable, parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or structural members following surface contours, where possible.

2. Do not use MC cable for home runs (from panel to first device in branch circuit).

3. Do not install exposed metal clad cable in any areas, including mechanical and electrical spaces.

4. Do not penetrate floor slabs with MC cable.

5. Metal clad cable may be used for switch, receptacle, light fixture, device and fixture branch circuit wiring above ceilings and in walls beyond corridor walls.

6. MC cable shall include a neutral, whether used or not, to a light switch location.

7. Above corridor ceilings, use MC cable for 6 foot light fixture whips.

8. Maintain a clearance of at least 6 inches from hot water and other high temperature pipes and telecommunications conduits, and at least 12 inches from unshielded telecommunications cables.

9. Support MC cable every 6 feet, and within 1 foot of every box, fitting, and cable termination. Do not support MC cable on hung ceilings or on ceiling support wires. The use of cable ties to support MC cable is prohibited.

10. Use MC cable in branch circuit wiring in movable metal partitions and movable gypsum partitions. Install conductors in accordance with partition manufacturer's recommendations.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

D. Splices:

1. Conductors No. 8 AWG or Smaller: Use spring type pressure connectors or indent type pressure connectors with insulating jackets (except where special type splices are required).

2. Conductors No. 6 AWG or Larger: Use un-insulated indent type pressure connectors. Fill indentations with electrical filler tape and apply insulation tape to insulation equivalent of the conductor, or insulate with heat shrinkable splices.

3. Gutter Taps in Panelboards: Install gutter tap, fill indentations with electrical filler tape and apply insulation tape to insulation equivalent of the conductor, or insulate with gutter tap cover.

4. Damp Locations: As specified for dry locations, except apply moisture sealing tape over entire insulated connection (moisture sealing tape not required if heat shrinkable splices are used).

5. Wet Locations: Use un-insulated indent type pressure connectors and insulate with resin splice kits or heat shrinkable splices. Exception: Totally enclosed splices above ground protected in NEMA 3R, 4, 4x enclosures may be spliced as specified for damp locations.

E. Terminations:

1. Conductors No. 10 AWG or Smaller - Use terminals for:

F. Connecting control and signal wiring to terminal strips.

G. Connecting wiring to equipment designed for use with terminals.

1. Conductors No. 8 AWG or Larger - Use compression or mechanical type lugs for:

H. Connecting cables to flat bus bars.

I. Connecting cables to equipment designed for use with lugs.

1. For Conductor Sizes Larger than Terminal Capacity on Equipment: Reduce larger conductor to maximum conductor size that terminal can accommodate (reduced section not longer than one foot). Use compression or mechanical type connectors suitable for reducing connection.

J. Provide insulated green ground conductor for each branch and feeder circuit.

K. Isolated Ground Conductors: Insulated with green-colored insulation with yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, use colored tape, alternating bands of green and yellow tape to provide a minimum of three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

L. All connections and terminations installed according to manufacturer's recommendations.

M. All bolted or screw-type terminations specifically torqued to setting specified by manufacturer.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:

B. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.

C. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:

1. A low-resistance ohmmeter.
2. Calibrated torque wrench.
3. Thermographic survey.

D. Inspect compression applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.

E. Inspect for correct identification.

F. Inspect cable jacket and condition.

G. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor with respect to ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.

H. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.

I. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.

1. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

J. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

K. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

L. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

M. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: No. 6, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.

6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, pressure type with at least two bolts.

1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Non-reversible compression or exothermic-type, copper or copper alloy.

F. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.

G. Ground Rod Clamps: Non-reversible compression or exothermic-type, copper or copper alloy.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad, sectional type; 10 feet by 3/4 inch (3 m by 19 mm) in diameter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install stranded conductors for all sizes unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum unless indicated otherwise on drawings.

1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.

C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Pad-Mounted Transformers: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.
7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Signal and Communication Equipment: In addition to grounding and bonding required by NFPA 70, provide a grounding system complying with requirements in TIA/ATIS J-STD-607-A.

1. For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.

2. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-4-by-12-inch (6.3-by-100-by-300-mm) grounding bus.

3. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

E. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.

2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

D. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.

2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.

3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

E. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

3.5 LABELING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" Article for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.

B. Install labels at the telecommunications bonding conductor and grounding terminal bar and at the grounding electrode conductor where exposed.

1. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.

b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

B. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare and submit all test and inspection reports.

D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
3. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
4. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
B. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of [**five**] times the applied force.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified together with Division 3 section ‘Cast-in-Place Concrete and as shown on details on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
c. ERICO International Corporation.
d. GS Metals Corp.
e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.

3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.

4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.

5. U-Channel Strut Systems: Provide 16 gauge steel U-channel strut system for supporting electrical equipment of types and sizes indicated with 9/16-inch diameter holes at 8 inches on center on top surface, with standard galvanized or PVC finish and following fittings that mate and match with U-channel:

a. Fixture hangers.
b. Channel hangers
c. End caps
d. Beam clamps
e. Wiring stud.
f. Thin-wall raceway clamps.
g. Rigid conduit clamps.
h. Raceway hangers.
i. U-bolts.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

    a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Hilti Inc.
        2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
        3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
        4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

    a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
        2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
        3) Hilti Inc.
        4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
        5) MKT Fastening, LLC.

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.

4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.

5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.

6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.

7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

2.3 MANUFACTURED SUPPORTING DEVICES

A. General: Provide supporting devices, complying with manufacturer's standard materials, design and construction in accordance with published product information, and as required for complete installation, and as specified in this Section. Where more than one type of device meets indicated requirements, select device according to Contractor's option.

1. Fasteners:

a. Standard Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, regular hexagon head.
b. Lag Bolts: FS FF-B-561, square head type.
c. Machine Screws: FS FF-S-92, cadmium plated steel.
d. Machine Bolts: FS FF-B-584 heads; FF-N-836 nuts.
e. Wood Screws: FS FF-S-111 flat head carbon steel.
f. Plain Washers: FS FF-W-92, round, general assembly grade carbon steel.
g. Lock Washers: FS FF-W-84, helical spring type carbon steel.
h. Toggle Bolts: Tumble-wing type; FS FF-B-588, type, class and style as required to sustain load.
i. Stainless Steel Fasteners: Type 302 for interior Work; Type 316 for exterior Work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

E. Install hangers, supports, clamps and attachments to support raceway properly from building structure. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal raceways to be supported together on trapeze type hangers where possible.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

D. Fasteners

1. Materials:

   a. Dry Locations: Use cadmium or zinc coated anchors and fasteners.
   b. Damp and Wet Locations: Use hot dipped galvanized or stainless steel anchors and fasteners.
   c. Corrosive Atmospheres or Other Extreme Environmental Conditions: Use fasteners made of materials suitable for conditions.

2. Types (unless otherwise specified or indicated):

   a. Use cast-in-place concrete inserts in fresh concrete construction for direct pull-out loads such as shelf angles or fabricated metal items and supports attached to concrete slab ceilings.

   b. Use anchoring devices to fasten items to solid masonry and concrete when anchor is not subjected to pull out loads, or vibration in shear loads.

   c. Use toggle bolts to fasten items to hollow masonry and stud partitions.

E. Attachment Devices

1. Make attachments to structural steel or steel bar joists wherever possible. Provide intermediate structural steel members where required by support spacing.

2. Make attachments to steel bar joists at panel points of joists.

3. Do not drill holes in main structural steel members.

4. Use "C" beam clamps for attachment to steel beams

5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.

7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate

8. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

F. Raceway Support

1. Use pipe straps and specified method of attachment where raceway is installed proximate to surface of masonry construction.

2. Use hangers secured to surface with specified method of attachment where raceway is suspended from the surface.

3. Use "C" beam clamps and hangers where raceway is supported from steel beams.

4. Use channel support system supported from structural steel for multiple parallel raceway runs.

5. Where raceways are installed above ceiling, do not rest raceway directly on runner bars, T-bars, etc.

   a. Raceway Sizes 2-1/2 Inches and Smaller: Support raceway from ceiling supports or from construction above ceiling.
   b. Raceway Sizes Over 2-1/2 Inches: Support raceway from beams, joists, or trusses above ceiling.

G. Light Fixture Support

1. Do not support fixtures from ceilings or ceiling supports unless specified or indicated on Drawings.

   a. Comply with NEC, Article 410.36 – Means of Support.
   b. Support fixtures with hanger rods attached to beams, joists, or trusses–of largest standard diameter-that fits in mounting holes of fixture.
   c. Where approved, channel supports may span and rest upon lower chord of trusses and be used to support lighting fixtures.
   d. Where approved, channel supports may span and be attached to underside of beams, joists, or trusses and be used to support lighting fixtures.

2. Use 2 nuts and 2 washers on lower end of each hanger rod to hold and adjust fixture (one nut and washer above top of fixture housing, one nut and washer below top of fixture housing).

    a. Where adequately supported outlet box is specified to support fixture or be used as one point of support, support box so that box may be adjusted to bring face of outlet box even with surface of ceiling.

3. Ceiling Mounted Lighting Fixtures: Provide at least following number of supports with additional supports when recommended by fixture manufacturer or shown on Drawings.

    a. Support individual fluorescent fixtures less than 2 feet long at 2 points.

    b. Support continuous row fluorescent fixtures less than 2 feet wide at points equal to number of fixtures plus one. Uniformly distribute points of support over row of fixtures.

    c. Support individual fluorescent fixtures 2 feet or wider at 4 corners.

    d. Support continuous row fluorescent fixtures 2 feet or wider at points equal to twice number of fixtures plus 2. Uniformly distribute points of support over row of fixtures.

    e. Use adequately supported outlet box as one point of support for fixtures weighing less than 50 pounds.

    f. Support recessed mounted fixtures directly from suspension system of suspended acoustical ceilings and securely fasten fixtures to framing members of ceiling using lock clips, wirelashing or leveling supports. Support each fixture weighing more than 50 pounds (including lamps) independent of suspended ceiling grid.

4. Wall Mounted Lighting Fixtures: Provide at least following number of supports with additional supports when recommended by fixture manufacturer or shown on Drawings.

    a. Support individual fluorescent fixtures 2 feet long or less at 2 points.
    b. Support individual fluorescent fixtures over 2 feet long at 3 points.
    c. Support continuous row fluorescent fixtures at points equal to twice number of fixtures. Uniformly distribute points of support.
    d. Adequately supported outlet box may be used as one point of support for fixtures weighing less than 50 pounds

H. Channel Support System: Channel supports may be used, as approved, to accommodate mounting of equipment with following material and finish.

1. Dry Locations: 16-gage steel channel support system with standard finish.
2. Damp and Wet Locations: 16-gage steel channel support system with hot dipped galvanized or PVC finish

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 5 – Metal Fabrications for site fabricated metal supports.
B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions for approved equipment but not less 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than the supported unit. Anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from the edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 3 Cast-in –Place Concrete**,** are shown on construction details on Drawings and as required per equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base:

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
D. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
E. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit
F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways and metal wireways.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT, TUBING AND FITTINGS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Alflex Inc.
3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
5. Electri-Flex Co.
6. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
7. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit (GRC): Rigid, hot dipped galvanized steel with galvanized threaded malleable iron fittings and bushings with insulated throat (galvanized steel). ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

C. Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT): Metallic galvanized steel tube with galvanized steel compression or setscrew type fittings and bushings with insulated throat (galvanized steel). ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

D. Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC): Flexible, interlocked aluminum metal strip with galvanized screw-in type steel fittings. UL 1.

E. Liquid Tight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC) : Liquid-tight flexible metal raceway with single, flexible, continuous, interlocked and double-wrapped steel core galvanized inside and outside, coated with liquid tight jacket of flexible polyvinyl chloride (PVC). UL 360.

F. Fittings:

1. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

2. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.

3. Fittings for EMT:

a. Material: Steel
b. Type: Setscrew or compression.

4. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.

G. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.

3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. ElecSYS, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Co.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. RACO; a Hubbell Company.

B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. RNC: NEMA TC 2, UL 651,Type EPC-40-PVC**,** with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit.

D. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.

E. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

F. LFNC: UL 1660.

G. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

H. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Square D; Schneider Electric.

B. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1, 12, 3R, as indicated.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type or as indicated with manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Hubbell, Inc.
b. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
c. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
d. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Butler Manufacturing Company; Walker Division.
b. Enduro Systems, Inc.; Composite Products Division.
c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems Division.
d. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
e. Panduit Corp.
f. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
g. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

D. Tele-Power Poles:

1. Material: Aluminum with clear anodized finish.

2. Fittings and Accessories: Dividers, end caps, covers, cutouts, wiring harnesses, devices, mounting materials, and other fittings shall match and mate with tele-power pole as required for complete system.

2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.

2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.

C. Outlet Boxes

1. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

2. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy**,** Type FD, with gasketed cover.

3. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

4. Materials

a. Recessed Applications and Exposed Applications in Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized, stamped steel.

b. Boxes in stud walls shall be 4” square, 2 1/8” deep boxes with raised covers for power circuits. Provide “Far-Side” box support to keep box alignment parallel with wall face.

c. Boxes in masonry walls shall be 3 ½” deep masonry boxes, single or multigang as required

d. Exposed Applications: In finished spaces requiring exposed applications, provide boxes to match surface raceway system. In situations where surface mount conduits are allowed, condulet style boxes shall be used. Where surface mount devices are provided as components of specific systems, provide surface mount box from same manufacturer to match device.

e. Concrete and Wall in Wet Locations: Heavy duty cast aluminum, thermoset protective silver grey finish, with threaded mounting posts.

f. Weatherproof Outlet Boxes: Corrosion-resistant cast metal weatherproof outlet wiring boxes of appropriate type, shape, size and depth, with threaded conduit ends and cast metal face plates with cover suitably configured for each application~~,~~ and including face plate gaskets and corrosion resistant fasteners. Do not compromise outlet weatherproof integrity when attachment plug is inserted.

g. Junction and Pull Boxes: Galvanized code gauge sheet steel boxes with screw-on covers, of appropriate type, shape and size suitable for box location and installation with welded seams and equipped with stainless steel nuts, bolts, screws and washers.

5. Size: As required for number and size of raceways and conductors. Depth to suit wall depth and device installed.

6. Covers: Design and style for each type, outlet, junction box, etc.; NEMA rated for each location.

D. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.

E. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

F. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: sheet metal.

2. Type: Fully adjustable.

3. Shape: Rectangular.

4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

2.6 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND CABLING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.

2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering of system contained within.
6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

C. Source Quality Control for Underground Enclosures

1. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

2. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.

3. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.

4. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Raceway Installation: Securely support raceway from building construction, separately from outlet boxes and junction boxes. Secure to masonry surfaces with expansion anchors. Use galvanized hanger rods, inserts and hangers. Conceal all raceway runs except in mechanical rooms, storage room ceilings, and areas above suspended ceilings. Run exposed raceway neatly, parallel and level, to ceilings, walls and floors. Make necessary offsets and bends to comply with construction. Install expansion fittings at all building expansion joints. Support all raceways with clamps per National Electric Code

1. GRC Installation: Use GRC in concrete slabs, below concrete slabs, below grade, damp locations, exterior locations and in hazardous locations. Where exposed leaving concrete slabs, extend minimum 6 inches above and below slabs. Use GRC elbows when penetrating concrete slab from PVC raceway below or in slabs.

2. RNC: Use for underground applications, in slabs, and below slabs. Provide rigid raceway when extending through slabs. Install in accordance with requirements of Article 352 of NEC. Make solvent-cemented joints in accordance with recommendations of manufacturer.

3. EMT: Use EMT for non-hazardous, dry locations above grade. As a minimum, use EMT in corridor ceilings, for home runs and in all unoccupied exposed interior areas. Surface mounted EMT shall not be used in finished areas without written permission from the Architect or Owner.

4. FMC: Use flexible metal conduit for final connections to motors, step-down transformers, vibrating machines, etc. Terminate with clamp type connectors and anti-short bushing. Maximum length of three feet.

5. LFMC: Use a maximum of two feet of liquid tight flexible conduit for connection of motors and for other electrical equipment where subject to movement and vibration and also where subjected to one or more of the following conditions:

    a. Exterior location.
    b. Moist or humid atmosphere where condensate can be expected to accumulate.
    c. Corrosive atmosphere.
    d. Subjected to water spray.
    e. Subjected to dripping oil, grease or water

6. LFNC: Use a maximum of three feet of liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit for connection to video cameras and other electrical equipment with extreme bending requirements and also where subjected to one or more of the following conditions:

    a. Exterior location.
    b. Corrosive atmosphere.

7. All non-metallic or flexible conduit shall contain a separate grounding conductor in addition to the circuit conductors.
8. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

9. Do not secure branch circuit wiring to ceiling support wires. Provide independent support wires dedicated only to electrical raceways.

10. Use roughing-in dimensions of electrically operated units furnished by supplier. Set conduit and boxes for connection to units only after receiving dimensions and after checking location with other trades.

11. Provide nylon pull cord in empty raceways. Test empty raceways with ball mandrel. Clear any raceway that rejects ball mandrel. Restore raceway and surrounding surfaces to original condition.

12. Fasten raceway terminations in sheet metal enclosures by 2 locknuts and terminate with bushing. Install locknuts inside and outside of enclosure.

13. Do not cross pipe shafts or ventilating duct openings with raceways.

14. Keep raceways at least 6 inches from parallel runs of flues, hot water pipes or other sources of heat. Wherever possible, install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

B. Concealed Raceways

1. Paint raceway threads in metallic raceways installed underground, in floors below grade, or outside with corrosion-inhibiting compound before assembling couplings. Draw coupling and raceway sufficiently tight to ensure water tightness.

2. For floors-on-grade, install raceways under concrete slabs.

3. Install underground raceways minimum of 18 inches below finished grade.

4. Provide raceway in furniture and any other cavity to effectively create a raceway system from the ceiling space to the outlet.

5. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

   a. Use EMT for raceways.
   b. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

C. Raceways in Concrete Slabs: Do not embed pipes other than electrical raceway in structural concrete and provide steel sleeves for raceway passing through concrete. Obtain Architect's approval for any variation from following requirements unless shown on Drawings. Request Architect's approval in writing accompanied by suitable sketch.

1. Place raceways between bottom reinforcing steel and top reinforcing steel.
2. Place raceways either parallel or at 90 degrees to main reinforcing steel.
3. Place nearly parallel raceways apart at least six times O.D. of raceway used.
4. Restrict O.D. of raceway in solid slabs to 1/4 of slab thickness with raceway placed in middle of that thickness.
5. Do not use raceway coating, except galvanizing or equivalent coating.
6. Do not cut or displace any reinforcement.

D. Install raceways to avoid damage or penetration of structural members. Avoid horizontal or cross runs in building partitions or sidewalls.

E. For raceway larger than 2 inches, provide minimum 2 inches between raceways vertically penetrating elevated concrete slabs. Provide fire-stopping and spray-on fireproofing at locations where raceways penetrate surface of floor slab that is part of fire rating required for construction.

F. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

G. Exposed Raceways

1. Use exposed raceway on exterior surfaces and interior finished spaces only when raceway type and routing are approved by Architect and Owner's representative.

2. Install exposed raceway in unfinished spaces, crawl spaces, pipe spaces, or in areas with existing exposed raceway. In areas where walls/ceilings are to be painted, exposed raceways shall be painted to match.

3. Install exposed raceways and extensions from concealed raceway systems neatly, parallel with, or at right angles to walls of building.

4. Do not run raceway through walls with plaster finish or through masonry walls or floors. Install pipe sleeves for raceway runs through these areas.

5. Install exposed raceway to avoid interfering with ceiling inserts, lights or ventilation ducts or outlets.

6. Support exposed raceways using hangers, clamps or clips. Support raceways on each side of bends and space not more than 6 ft. O.C. for 1-inch raceway and not more than 8 ft. O.C. for 1-1/4-inch raceway.

7. Provide exposed raceways for outlets on waterproof walls and set anchors supporting raceway in waterproof cement.

8. Support multiple raceway runs on trapeze style assemblies. Do not support raceway or cable from pipe, ductwork, or other raceway systems.

9. Apply exposed raceways requirements specified above to raceways installed in space above hung ceilings and in crawl spaces.

10. Do not install raceway directly on floors.

H. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch (16-mm)

I. Surface Raceways: Use surface raceways in finished spaces to conceal new cabling that cannot be installed above accessible ceiling or within walls. Use surface raceway only when raceway type and routing are approved by Architect and Owner's representative. Securely support from building construction and secure to masonry surfaces with expansion anchors. Mount at heights at locations shown on Drawings; obtain approval from Architect and Owner's representative for all routing not indicated on Drawings. Do not run surface raceway through walls with plaster finish or through masonry walls or floors. Install pipe sleeve with junction boxes or adapter fittings for raceway runs through these areas. In existing construction, run raceway along top of baseboards, taking care to avoid telephone and other signal wiring around doorframes and other openings. Run raceway on ceiling or walls perpendicular to or parallel with walls and floors.

J. Raceways for Future Use (Spare Raceways and Empty Raceways): Draw fish tape through raceways in Architect's presence to demonstrate that raceway is clear of obstructions. Leave pulling-in line in each spare and empty raceway.

K. Raceway Installation in Special Areas

1. Raceways Exposed to Different Temperatures: Where portions of interior raceway system are exposed to widely different temperatures, seal interior and exterior of raceway to prevent circulation of air from warmer to colder section through raceway installation.

2. Refrigerated Rooms: Install raceway body or junction box in raceway system on warm side of refrigerated room. After cables are installed, seal raceway interior at raceway body or junction box.

3. Heated Areas to Unheated Areas: After cables are installed, seal raceway interior at nearest raceway body, outlet or junction box in heated area adjoining unheated area.

L. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Provide locknuts for securing raceway to metal enclosure with sharp edge for digging into metal and ridged outside circumference for proper fastening.

2. Provide bushings for terminating raceways smaller than 1-1/4 inches with flared bottom and ribbed sides with smooth upper edges to prevent injury to cable insulation.

3. Install insulated type bushings for terminating raceways 1-1/4 inches and larger with flared bottom and ribbed sides and with upper edge with phenolic insulating ring molded into bushing.

4. Provide screw-type grounding terminal for standard or insulated type bushing.

5. Provide miscellaneous fittings such as reducers, chase nipples, 3-piece unions, split couplings and plugs specifically designed for their particular application.

M. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).

2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

   a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
   b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
   c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.

5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

N. Fittings and Accessories Installation

1. Use zinc electroplate or hot dipped galvanized steel fittings and accessories in conjunction with ferrous raceways in dry and damp locations.

2. Use hot dipped galvanized fittings and accessories in conjunction with ferrous raceways in wet locations.

3. Use caps or plugs to seal ends of raceways until cable is installed (to exclude foreign material).

4. Use deflection fittings where raceways cross expansion joints that move in more than one plane.

5. Use 2 locknuts and insulated bushing (plastic bushing on 1/2-inch raceway and 3/4-inch raceway) on end of each raceway entering sheet metal cabinet or box in dry or damp locations. Terminate raceway ends within cabinet/box at same level.

6. Use watertight hub on end of each raceway entering cabinets or boxes (in wet locations) not constructed with integral threaded hubs.

7. Specific Applications:

   a. Galvanized Rigid Conduit: Use threaded fittings and accessories. Use 3-piece raceway coupling where raceway cannot be rotated.
   b. Flexible Metal Raceway: Use flexible metal raceway connectors.
   c. Liquid Tight Flexible Metal Raceway: Use “seal-tite” connectors.

8. Rigid Nonmetallic Raceway, Metal Surface Raceway, and Wireways: Use manufacturer's standard fittings and accessories.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter or as detailed on drawings.

2. Install backfill as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

   a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.

   b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.

D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.4 EXISTING RACEWAYS

A. Conditions for Re-Use of Existing Raceways:

1. Existing raceway is adequately sized for new cables.
2. Remove existing cables.
3. Demonstrate to Architect that existing raceway is clear of obstructions and in good condition.
4. Install insulated bushings to replace damaged or missing bushings. Replace non-insulated bushings with insulated bushings on raceway sizes 1 inch and larger.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on drawings or in this article are stricter.

B. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

SECTION 26 05 44 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 “Penetration Firestopping”.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.

2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).

b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. CALPICO, Inc.
c. Metraflex Company (The).
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
e. Proco Products, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of raceway. Include type and number required for raceway material and size of raceway.

3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.

4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

2. Sealant shall have VOC content of 40 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.

4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.4 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR FIRE RATED ASSEMBLY PARTITIONS

A. Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

B. Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and sleeve seals with appropriate firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section “Penetration Firestopping”.

END OF SECTION 26 05 44

SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning labels and signs.
6. Instruction signs.
7. Equipment identification labels.
8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
B. Comply with NFPA 70.
C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

D. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

F. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

G. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.

1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

2.2 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

E. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

F. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.

1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

2.3 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

A. 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

2.4 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Tape:

1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.

2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.

3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

4. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.

5. Overall Thickness: 5 mils (0.125 mm).

6. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).

7. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).

8. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf (311.3 N), and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).

B. Color and Printing:

1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE.
3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.

2.5 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.

C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).

D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:

1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.

2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.

3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).

E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

2.6 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.

1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

2.7 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

B. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

C. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

2.8 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one-piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one-piece, self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

H. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

I. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.

J. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify raceways and the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. Emergency Power.
2. Exit lights
3. Power.
4. UPS.

B. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.

1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.

b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

1) Phase A: Black.
2) Phase B: Red.
3) Phase C: Blue.

c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

1) Phase A: Brown.
2) Phase B: Orange.
3) Phase C: Yellow.

d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use write-on tags.

D. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.

E. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.

F. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.

1. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

H. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

I. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels:

1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Power transfer switches.
b. Controls with external control power connections.

J. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

K. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.

L. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.

b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label, Stenciled legend 4 inches (100 mm) high.

c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.

b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.

c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.

d. Switchgear.

e. Switchboards.

f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.

g. Substations.

h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.

i. Enclosed switches.

j. Enclosed circuit breakers.

k. Enclosed controllers.

l. Variable-speed controllers.

m. Push-button stations.

n. Power transfer equipment.

o. Contactors.

p. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53

SECTION 26 08 00 - COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1. See especially Section 01 08 00, “General Commissioning Requirements” for general commissioning process requirements and Commissioning Coordinator responsibilities.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for Lighting Control Systems, which are described in more detail in the technical Specification 26 09 23 Lighting Control Devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CxA: Commissioning Authority.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall comply with the requirements of the Construction Contract Clauses, Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" and the individual sections specifying the work.
B. Pre-functional checklists of readiness.
C. Pre-functional checklists of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.
D. Certificates of readiness and completion of installation.
E. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
F. Corrective action documents.
G. Functional Performance Test Procedures

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Lighting Control Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform Lighting Control Construction Pre-functional Checklist verification tests and demonstrations, functional performance tests and demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

1. Journey-level or equivalent skill level in Electrical Testing or Installation. Vocational School four-year program graduate or an Associate’s degree in electrical systems, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience in servicing electrical systems in the HVAC or Electrical industry.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Provide Electrical work in accordance with contract document requirements for Lighting Control Systems.

B. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.

C. Attend construction phase coordination meetings.

D. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.

E. Participate in Lighting Control systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.

F. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.

G. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.7 CxA'S AUTHORITY

A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual Lighting Control systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.

B. Directing commissioning.

C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.

D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.8 COMMISIONING DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:

1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for Lighting Control system to be verified and tested.
4. Pre-functional Checklists certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Pre-functional checklists certifying that Lighting Control systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
7. Corrective action documents.
8. Verification of testing and adjusting reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

A. Certify that Lighting Control systems have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
B. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. The CxA in cooperation with the Electrical Contractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Lighting control systems.

3.3 LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEMS FUNCTIONAL TESTING PROCEDURES

A. Lighting Control System Functional Testing and Acceptance Procedures:

1. Occupancy Sensor Controls:

a. Certify that the occupant sensor has been located and aimed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

b. Each occupancy sensor, shall be tested, where applicable.

1) Verify the correct operation of occupant sensor controls status indicators.
2) Verify the controlled lights turn off or down to the permitted level within the required time.
3) Verify the lights turn on to the permitted level when an occupant enters the space for auto-on occupant sensor controls.
4) Verify the lights turn on only when manually activated for manual-on occupancy sensors.
5) Verify the lights are not incorrectly turned on by movement in adjacent areas or by HVAC operation.

2. Time-switch Controls

a. Verify that the time-switch control is programmed with accurate weekday, weekend and holiday schedules.

b. Provide documentation to the owner of time-switch controls programming including weekday, weekend, holiday schedules, and set-up and preference program settings.

c. Verify the correct time and date in the time-switch.

d. Verify that any battery back-up is installed and energized.

e. Verify that the override time limit is set to not more than 2 hours.

f. For Exterior Lighting Control:

1) Verify and document the following:

a) All lights can be turned on and off by their respective area control switch.
b) Manual Override switches only turn on and off lights in their respective control area.

3. Daylight Responsive Controls

a. Verify control devices have been properly located, field calibrated and set for accurate setpoints and threshold light levels.
b. Verify daylight controlled lighting loads adjust to light level set points in response to available daylight.
c. Verify the locations of calibration adjustment equipment are readily accessible to authorized personal.

B. Provide documentation and certification to the CxA.

C. Lighting Control systems are shown on the contract drawings.

END OF SECTION 26 08 00

SECTION 26 09 23 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Photoelectric switches.
2. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching controls.
3. Indoor occupancy sensors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.

1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDOOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products manufactured by the following:

1. Crestron Electronics, Inc.
2. Steinel

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Wall- or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.

3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.

4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.

5. Mounting:

a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.

7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.

1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. NSi Industries LLC; Tork Products.
4. Tyco Electronics; ALR Brand.

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.

3. Time Delay: Fifteen second minimum, to prevent false operation.

4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.

5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

C. Description: Light Fixture Mounted, solid state, with **SPST** dry contacts rated for 1800 VA, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Lightning Arrester: Air-gap type.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complying with NEMA C136.10, with base.

2.3 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 3/4 inch.
B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

A. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
c. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4 .
e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.

2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.

3. Finishes:

a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.

b. Back Boxes: Surface mount, same finish as panels and trim. Flush mount, galvanized steel.

4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

B. Incoming Mains Location: Top or bottom as required.

C. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors

3. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter

4. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.

D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.

E. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

G. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker, fused switch, lugs only, as indicated on drawings.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only, as indicated on drawings.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).

3. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).

4. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:

   a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.

   b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.

   c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

   d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.

   e. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.

   f. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.

   g. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and after ensuring the operating handle of the top-most switch or circuit breaker, in on position, is not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above the finished floor or grade.

C. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

D. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

F. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.

G. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

H. Stub two 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub two 1-inch empty conduits below slabs not on grade.

I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

b. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.

1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.

2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.

3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.

4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
3. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
B. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
C. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
D. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranded building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; 5351 (single), CR5362 (duplex).
b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), HBL5352 (duplex).
c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
d. Pass & Seymour; 5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

1. Straight blade, feed and non-feed-through type.
2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; VGF20.
b. Hubbell; GFR5352L.
c. Pass & Seymour; 2095.
d. Leviton; 7590.

2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Single Pole:

1) Cooper; AH1221.
2) Hubbell; HBL1221.
3) Leviton; 1221-2.
4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC1.

b. Two Pole:

1) Cooper; AH1222.
2) Hubbell; HBL1222.
3) Leviton; 1222-2.
4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC2.

c. Three Way:

1) Cooper; AH1223.
2) Hubbell; HBL1223.
3) Leviton; 1223-2.
4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC3.

d. Four Way:

1) Cooper; AH1224.
2) Hubbell; HBL1224.
3) Leviton; 1224-2.
4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC4.

C. Pilot-Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Cooper; AH1221PL for 120 and 277 V.
   b. Hubbell; HBL1201PL for 120 and 277 V.
   c. Leviton; 1221-LH1.
   d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1RPL for 120 V, PS20AC1RPL7 for 277 V.

2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "off."

D. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Cooper; 1995.
   b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
   c. Leviton; 1257.
   d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.

2.6 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

C. Cover Plates:

1. Stainless Steel Cover Plates: Type 302 or 304, satin finish, 0.040 inch thick, accurately die cut, protected with release paper. Flush mounting plates shall be beveled with smooth rolled outer edge. Surface mounting plates shall be beveled and pressure formed for smooth edge to fit box. Single and combination plates as required to match types and sizes of specified wiring devices.

2. Weatherproof Cover Plates: Receptacles in wet locations shall be installed with a hinged outlet cover/enclosure clearly marked “Suitable For Wet Locations While in Use” and “UL Listed”. There must be a gasket between the enclosure and the mounting surface, and between the hinged cover and the mounting plate/base to assure proper seal. The installation shall be in compliance with NEC Article 410-57(b). Specification Grade die cast aluminum (copper free alloy 360)as manufactured by Hubbell Corp. (or approved equal).

3. Dust Tight Cover Plates: Receptacles in non-hazardous, high dust environments shall be installed with a gasketed, spring door cover that closes tightly automatically to protect receptacle from dust and dirt when not in use. With plug inserted, a heavy-duty gasket in the throat of the receptacle shall seal around the plug body to keep out dust and dirt. The cover shall be suitable for mounting to standard FS/FD surface or flush mounted boxes. Suitable for all NEMA configuration receptacles and toggle switches. Appleton FSK-W series or approved equal.

D. Material for unfinished spaces: Galvanized steel.

2.7 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Type: Modular, flush type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.

B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.

C. Service Plate: Round, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.

D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for UTP cable complying with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

2.8 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Pass & Seymour/Legrand.
3. Square D/Schneider Electric.
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
5. Wiremold/Legrand.

B. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service-outlet assembly.

2. Comply with UL 514 scrub water exclusion requirements.

3. Service-Outlet Assembly: Pedestal type with services indicated complying with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

4. Size: Selected to fit nominal 3-inch (75mm) cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.

5. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.

6. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 3-inch (75 mm) cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.

7. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of two, four-pair cables that comply with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

2.9 CORD REEL

A. Cord Reel For Receptacle

1. Standard duty cord reel constructed with oversize main shaft, bearings, and main spring; heavy gauge cable drum and housing. High capacity slip rings, oversize brushes, and copper graphite contact points, anchored in floating brush holder.

2. Instant action automatic lock providing positive foolproof stop at desired point, regardless of mounting position or speed of retraction

3. Convert easily to constant tension by rotating external control

4. Lead-in and working cables of No. 14 AWG 250 volt oil resisting safety yellow SJO cord.

5. Large internal radius of cable guide casting to prevent snubbing and abrasion of cable.

6. External tension adjustment to permit spring tension to be increased or decreased to meet job requirements.

7. Lifetime lubricated, self-contained main motor springs.

8. Declutching feature to eliminate breakage on rewind.

9. 35 ft. of 3-conductor cable.

10. Similar to “Cord Reel No. 990” by Daniel Woodhead Company.

2.10 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Gray unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.

B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.

2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.

3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.

4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.

2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.

3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.

4. Existing Conductors:

a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.

2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.

3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.

4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.

5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.

6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.

7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.

8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.

9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.

2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 5 percent or higher is unacceptable.

3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.

4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.

5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.

6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

SECTION 26 51 00 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior luminaires.
2. Exit signs.
3. Luminaire supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

2. Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices" for manual wall-box dimmers for incandescent lamps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
C. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
D. LED: Light-emitting diode.
E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
F. Luminaire: Complete luminaire, including ballast housing if provided.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of luminaire including dimensions.

2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.

3. Energy-efficiency data.

4. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.

5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.

    a. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and luminaires to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All luminaires lamps and ballasts submitted shall be on the Consortium for Energy Efficiency (CEE) High Performance List or meet CEE High Performance Specifications where the luminaires lamp or ballast application/type is so listed or specified.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining years.

2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Five years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining years.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 50 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
B. Drivers: One for every 50 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING LUMINAIRES AND COMPONENTS

A. All luminaires LEDS shall be on the Consortium for Energy Efficiency (CEE) High Performance List or meet CEE High Performance Specifications where the luminaires lamp or ballast application/type is so listed or specified.

B. Recessed Luminaires: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed luminaires.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
b. UV stabilized.

2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

G. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:

a. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
b. TM 30 report.

2.3 LED LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.

2. California Title 24 compliant.

3. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

4. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

5. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

6. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

7. User Replaceable Lamps:

a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

C. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.

D. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.

E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

F. Internal driver.

G. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

H. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear Insert color powder-coat finish.

2.4 LED LIGHTING

A. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
B. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 1 percent of maximum light output.
C. Internal driver.
D. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 to 277 volts.
E. In-line Fusing: On the primary for each luminaire.
F. Internal battery pack for emergency lighting when indicated.

2.5 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:

1. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

2. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.

a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.

b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.

c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.

e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

3. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:

a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in battery for power connection to remote unit.

b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

C. Self-Luminous Signs: Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for 10 years.

D. Self-Luminous Signs: Using strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Provide with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gauge.
D. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gauge.
E. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
F. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SCHEDULE

A. Refer to Luminaire Schedule on Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Luminaires:

1. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install lamps in each luminaire.

B. Location:

1. Evenly proportioned in room except adjusted to conform to ceiling pattern as described below and except where otherwise shown or dimensioned.
2. Edges of luminaires parallel with walls.

C. Plaster Frames:

1. Provide for all recessed luminaires in plaster & gypsum board type ceilings.
2. Install in cooperation with General Contractor.

D. Temporary Lighting: If it is necessary, and approved by Architect, to use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting, install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires, disassemble, clean thoroughly, install new lamps, and reinstall.

E. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.

F. Mounting:

1. Install all luminaires to hang true to vertical, free from finger marks, flaws, scratches, dents or other imperfections

2. Take care when hanging luminaires to not deface in any way, ceilings or walls.

3. Install continuous rows of luminaires in straight line; all luminaires at same level. Do not rotate luminaires about longitudinal axis with respect to one another.

4. Mount surface luminaires tight to surface without distorting it.

5. Provide proper mounting equipment and trim for recessed luminaires to adapt them to the ceiling or wall construction and to prevent light leaks around trim.

6. Provide special means for supporting luminaires as hereinafter specified, as shown on Drawings, or as required. Provide supports for each fixture capable of supporting 4 times fixture weight. Similar to rod hangers and clamps manufactured by Caddy Co.

7. Do not support outlet boxes by conduit.

8. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches from luminaire corners.

9. Support all fluorescent lay-in and troffer light luminaires (1 x 4, or 2 x 2 and larger) at all four corners with fixture support clips, Caddy #515 (or approved equal). For seismic protection, provide a #8 ceiling system support wire on all four corners of each fixture.

10. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting luminaires and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.

11. Luminaires of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support luminaires independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.

12. Conduit and threaded rod hangers not permitted in finished spaces.

G. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
5. Hang all stem mounted luminaires level with self-aligning hangers in canopies.
6. Gymnasium high-bay lighting luminaires shall be mounted so that fixture lens is at same elevation as bottom chord of roof truss, unless noted otherwise on drawings.

H. Mechanical Coordination:

1. Coordinate location of all hangers in rooms without ceilings with duct work, plumbing piping, sprinkler piping, etc.

2. Coordinate location of all hangers in rooms without ceilings with duct work, plumbing piping, sprinkler piping, etc.

3. Make all necessary offsets and extensions so that stems and luminaires avoid beams, pipes, ducts, etc.

4. Do not install in fan, storage, and equipment rooms until after all other mechanical work is in place.

5. Where luminaires are located below heating, ventilating, and air conditioning units, and/or ductwork and piping, provide trapeze hangers around obstruction and suspend fixture from trapeze hanger.

I. Architectural Coordination:

1. Locate all hangers at intersections of joints or at centers of blocks in rooms with acoustical tile or other patterned type of ceiling materials.

2. Space continuous row luminaires to conform with corresponding joint intersections.

3. Coordinate all ceiling layouts with general contractor and ceiling subcontractor and obtain architect's approval before proceeding.

4. Coordinate all ceiling layouts with general contractor and ceiling subcontractor and obtain architect's approval before proceeding.

5. Contractor responsible for electrical work: Verify ceiling construction and report in writing any discrepancies between ceiling type and fixture type before releasing luminaires for manufacture.

6. Coordinate all under cabinet lights with Architect before roughing.

J. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1. Wire the emergency lighting units and “Night Light” luminaires to the un-switched lighting circuit supplying the space served by the emergency lighting unit.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.

B. Verify that self-luminous exit signs are installed according to their listing and the requirements in NFPA 101.

C. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

D. Remove and replace with new, all broken glassware, plastic or luminaires damaged before final acceptance at no additional expense to Owner.

E. No allowance made for breakage or theft before final acceptance.

F. Immediately prior to occupancy, damp clean all diffusers, glassware, fixture trims, reflectors, lamps, and replace burned- out lamps.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.

END OF SECTION 26 51 00

SECTION 26 56 00 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Poles and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
B. CRI: Color rendering index.
C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

B. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft., applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.

C. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet high or less is 100 mph.

a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
c. Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.

2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.

3. Details of installation and construction.

4. Luminaire materials.

5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, drivers, and accessories.

    a. Testing Agency Certified Data:Photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency.

    b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

6. LED Drivers, including energy-efficiency data.

7. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.

8. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.

9. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.

10. Anchor bolts for poles.

11. Manufactured pole foundations.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

2. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: 2 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: 2of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

G. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

H. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces of luminaires by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.
B. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
C. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.

1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: 5 year from date of Substantial Completion.

2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: 5 year from date of Substantial Completion.

3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

4. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than 1 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.

C. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

D. CRI as indicated in luminaire schedule.

E. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.

F. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

G. Internal driver.

H. Nominal Operating Voltage: as indicated on drawings.

I. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.

J. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

K. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

L. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

M. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

N. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect driver when door opens.

O. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.

P. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

Q. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

R. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

S. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

T. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

2. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.

1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.

2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.

D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Pre-cast, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange.

2.4 ALUMINUM POLES

A. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: Square, straight.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation.

B. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

C. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

D. Mast Arms: Aluminum type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.

E. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

2. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Install lamps in each luminaire.
B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.

B. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.

1. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
2. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.

C. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

END OF SECTION 26 56 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This section includes control systems for performance lighting and house lighting.

B. Section Includes:

1. Work in the following space:
    a. Proscenium Theatre
2. Scope Includes:
    a. New relay panels, faceplates and distributed circuits
    b. New console, and control system including faceplates and distributed receptacles.
    c. New house light control with dimmers
    d. New LED lamps for all house light fixtures and new amber glass shades for the chandeliers and wall sconce fixtures. Lamps shall be compatible with dimmers provide and demonstrate a smooth dimming curve both up and down. Lamps are a combination of medium and mogul bases.
3. Systems:
    a. Relay Panels
    b. Electronics Racks
    c. Control Consoles and Accessories
    d. House Light Control Systems
    e. Data Communications Devices
    f. Performance Lighting Distribution and Control Faceplates
4. Provision of materials, components, modifications, assemblies, equipment and services as specified herein. These include, but are not limited to:
    a. Verification of site dimensions and conditions
    b. Plan control system run lengths with the Electrical Contractor. Submit length take off with shop drawings. Provide cost for in-line switches and repeaters with the bid.
    c. Submittals as required by the Contract Documents
    d. Engineering of equipment and systems as required by the Contract Documents
    e. Manufacture of equipment and systems as required by the Contract Documents
    f. Coordination with the System Integrator as required by the Contract Documents
    g. Scheduling, sequencing and coordination with other trades
    h. Installation and supervision for equipment and systems specified herein and elsewhere in the Contract Documents
    i. Testing and demonstration of equipment and systems as specified herein and elsewhere in the Contract Documents

C. Products Supplied But Not Installed Under This Section:
   1. TBD

D. Products Installed But Not Supplied Under This Section:
   1. TBD

E. Related Sections:
   1. Division 11: Equipment:
      a. Section 11 61 33: Theatrical Rigging
      b. Section 11 61 91: Theatrical Lighting Instruments and Accessories
   2. Division 26: Electrical
      a. Section 26 51 13: Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts

1.2 REFERENCES

A. Reference Standards:
   1. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Publication: National Electrical Code, NFPA70
   2. Underwriters Laboratories Standards:
      a. UL498, Electrical Attachment Plugs and Receptacles
      b. UL508, Electrical Industrial Control Equipment
      c. UL891, Dead-front Electrical Switchboards
      d. UL1573, Stage and Studio Lighting Units
   3. United States Institute for Theatre Technology Standard: DMX512-A (2008), Digital Data Transmission Standard for Controlling Lighting Equipment and Accessories
   4. ANSI Standards:
      a. ANSI E1.11 - 2008 (R2013) Entertainment Technology - USITT DMX512-A, Asynchronous Serial Digital Data Transmission Standard for Controlling Lighting Equipment and Accessories
      b. E1.17-2015 Entertainment Technology - Architecture for Control Networks
      c. E1.20-2010 Entertainment technology – Remote Device Management over DMX512 Networks
      d. E1.27-2-2009 (R2014) Entertainment Technology – Recommended Practice for Installing Control Cables
      e. E1.30-7-2009, EP129 - Allocation of Internet Protocol Version 4 Addresses to ACN Hosts
      f. E1.31-2016 Entertainment Technology - Lightweight streaming protocol for transport of DMX512 using ACN
   5. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.:
      a. Standard: 802.3
      b. Standard: 802.11 b or g
   6. National Electric Code

7. American National Standards Institute
8. International Building Code

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AHJ: Authority Having Jurisdiction

B. DMX: Digital Multiplexing

C. NEC: National Electric Code

D. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

E. USITT: United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.

F. ESTA: Entertainment Services and Technology Association

G. FURNISH: Deliver and hand over to others for installation

H. INSTALL: Set in place and connect

I. PROVIDE: Furnish and Install

1.4 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Substitutions, changes, or deletions from the plans and specifications will not be allowed without the prior written approval of the Architect.
   1. Substitution proposals from manufacturers not listed herein shall be accompanied by sufficient catalogue data, specifications, technical information, shop drawings, and samples to prove equivalence or superiority of the proposed substitution.
   2. If any additional wiring or conduit is required due to an accepted substitution, the Control System Manufacturer shall contract with the General Contractor to perform this additional work at no cost to the Owner.

B. Proposals to submit bids for specific equipment by manufacturers listed herein which have been modified or improved will be considered, provided they are submitted to the Architect for approval.
   1. Proposals shall be accompanied by sufficient catalog data, specifications, technical information, and samples to permit proper evaluation.

C. All questions regarding these plans and Specifications shall be referred to the Architect.

1.5 SUBMITTALS WITH BIDS

A. In addition to the submittals required under the General Conditions of these Specifications, all bidders shall submit with their bids the following:
   1. Current specifications and catalog cuts for the stage lighting and house lighting equipment
   2. Current specifications and catalog cuts for the house light control system.
   3. Current specifications and catalog cuts for the stage lighting control console.

4. The specifications and catalog cuts furnished shall be those which were in effect on the date of issue of this Specification.
5. Documentation demonstrating the existence of a seven (7) day, twenty-four (24) hour field service organization staffed by more than one (1) full time factory-trained service technician capable of making field service repair visits.
    a. Manufacturer's representatives and/or outside technicians cannot be listed as members of the field service organization.
6. A list of at least ten (10) systems of similar scope and size which have been in service for at least one (1) year.
7. A schedule with the following time estimates:
    a. Length of time required to prepare shop drawings.
    b. Length of time required to supply all equipment.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide submittals in accordance with General and Special Conditions. Submit submittals in a timely manner, allowing sufficient time for adequate review and possible resubmittal without jeopardizing the project schedule.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Submit shop drawings within sixty (60) days of award of contract, unless otherwise indicated in Division 1.
2. Drawings for fabrication and installation of all products; Drawings will show all information necessary to explain fully the design features, appearance, function, fabrication, installation and use of system components in all phases of operation.
    a. Show materials, thickness, gauges
3. Provide relay panel schedules based on the current information from the contract documents.
4. Fabrication, Installation, and Erection shall not commence until shop drawings have been approved by the Architect and the Theatre Consultant.
5. Submittal shall be drawn in an 11-inch by 17-inch format.
6. All sheets in the submittal shall be of the same size.
7. Submittal shall include a title sheet listing all sheets in the submittal.
8. Submittal shall include a complete bill of materials showing all items being supplied by the manufacturer and or supplier.
9. Coordinate and document the proposed control wiring signal runs to verify run distance and limitations. Provide run length takeoffs in the shop drawing riser.
10. Review control signal cable runs with the electrical contractor and provide guidance and wiring diagrams based on site conditions.
    a. Wiring diagrams shall identify cable runs in excess of standard lengths and locations for in-line switches and/or repeaters.

C. Wiring diagrams shall take advantage of control topologies to minimize conduit and cable runs.

D. Commissioning Documentation:

1. Certificates from the manufacturer's field engineer stating the installed system is operating properly and complies with manufacturer's recommendations
2. Ethernet cable run certification
3. Schedule of all tested and certified Ethernet cable run lengths

E. Record Drawings and Maintenance Manuals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals (O&M) shall include:
   a. As-built drawings
   b. Final dimmer, relay and associated panel schedules including DMX, sACN and EDMX addressing
   c. Contact information for pertinent manufacturers
   d. Safety and Operational Instructions
   e. Complete parts and subassembly list
   f. Software version information
   g. Wiring diagrams and termination schedules
   h. Periodic Maintenance Schedule
   i. A maintenance procedure for finishes
   j. Certificates of compliance with applicable codes
   k. Records of final testing and log
   l. Spare parts list and source information
   m. Warranty documentation
   n. Provide the above in universal electronic format files; pdf file type is preferred, as full-size printable sheets. Submit files on standard pc format USB clearly labeled including project name, project architect, theatre consultant, contractor name, date of submittal.
2. Bind all O&M documentation separate from general building sections so they can be turned over to the users after approval.
3. Provide draft copy of completed manuals for review to the Theatre Consultant before the start of commissioning.
4. Include diagrams depicting the system layout and interconnections. Reduced size, 11 by 17 inch preferred.
5. Provide three (3) copies of operation manuals
6. Provide two (2) copies of each system configuration on USB flash drives

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer: A firm who has been continuously engaged in the production of theatrical lighting and control equipment for at least fifteen (15) years and in the manufacture of theatrical control and dimming systems for a minimum of ten (10) years.

2. Installer: Skilled technicians who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and best industry practices for the proper installation of the work

B. Manufacturer shall provide a twenty-four (24) hour emergency service phone line.

1. A field service engineer shall respond to an emergency call on this line within thirty (30) minutes.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver equipment and controls securely wrapped in factory fabricated wooden or fiberboard containers.

B. Handle equipment and controls carefully to prevent breakage, denting and scoring finish. Do not install damaged equipment and controls; replace and return damaged units to equipment manufacturer.

C. Acceptance at Site: Contractor shall accept and inventory all equipment upon delivery and provide copies of the inventory to the architect.

D. Storage and Protection: Store equipment in a secure, environmentally controlled location. Place no equipment until that location is substantially completed, free from construction dust, and “broom clean.” Store in original cartons and protect from dirt, physical damage, weather, and construction traffic.

E. The Control System Manufacturer shall coordinate delivery of all equipment with the Electrical Contractor.

1. If required by the Electrical Contractor, control system equipment shall be delivered in a minimum of three (3) separate shipments based on Electrical Contractor requirements.

2. Minimum shipment increments shall include:

a. Shipment #1: All items in which conduit is terminated. This shall include dimmer racks, relay cabinets, line voltage and control station back boxes.

b. Shipment #2: All items in which wiring is terminated. This shall include control station faceplates, etc.

c. Shipment #3: All items that are not required until the system activation by the Control System Manufacturer's field service representative. This shall include dimmer modules, electronics modules, control consoles, monitors, focus remote, cables, portable control stations, etc.

d. Control System Manufacturer shall schedule shipment #3 based on discussions with the Owner.

e. If shipment #3 items are delivered to the job site prior to the agreed upon schedule, the Control System Manufacturer shall be responsible for providing storage for these items until they are required.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Contractor is to verify all dimensions as they relate to requirements of the specification and manufacturer’s requirements and is to notify the Owner’s Representative of any variations, which would affect the installation and safe operation of the systems.

1. Coordinate the proposed control wiring signal routes to verify run distance and limitations.

1.10 SCHEDULING AND SEQUENCING

A. Provide a project schedule at time of contract award, indicating critical path for installation of these systems and coordination with other trades.

B. Coordinate with Electrical contractor for the provision of conduit for electrical power and control wiring.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty:

1. Provide warranty for systems and equipment to be free of defective components, faulty workmanship, and improper adjustment for a period of two (2) years from the date of substantial completion or acceptance by the Owner, whichever is later. Paint and exterior finishes are excluded. Replace items showing evidence of defective materials or workmanship (including installation workmanship) within thirty (30) days after notification. Make replacements without cost to the Owner.

2. Rectify conditions that might present a hazard to human life, well-being, or property within forty-eight (48) hours of notification.

B. Designate warranties on manufactured equipment to the Owner to commence on the date of system acceptance.

1.12 COMMISSIONING

A. Provide demonstration and testing of systems described in this section.

1.13 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance Service: Provide maintenance service for a period of two (2) years after final acceptance of the installation. This service shall cover parts and labor. This service consists of at least two (2) half-yearly visits to the site for checking and adjusting of equipment. Perform the first visit six (6) months after the system has been accepted.

B. Continuing Service Proposal: At time of bid, provide a separate proposal for continuing annual service visits to the installation for inspection and maintenance of the supplied systems.

1. Provide a proposal for the first visit to occur two (2) years after the date of hand-over and to continue for five (5) years after the date of commencement.

2. The proposal shall remain valid and extended until the date of hand-over, at which time the Owner may accept or reject the proposal without prejudice.

3. Warranty site visits, as specified in the Contract Documents, are specifically excluded from the Continuing Service Proposal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide the control systems from components (except where otherwise stated) that are the products of one of the following manufacturers:
   1. Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., Middleton, WI - (608) 831-4116
   2. MA Lighting (managed by A.C.T. Lighting), Hackensack, NJ – (201) 996-0884

2.2 SPECIALTY SUBCONTRACTORS

A. The systems described herein shall be provided by a single contractor. The following subcontractors are pre-approved bidders for work contained in this specification:
   1. Barbizon Lighting, John Gebbie, New York, NY – (212) 586-1620
   2. Barbizon Lighting, Scott Stipetic, Woburn, MA – (781) 935-3920
   3. Candela Controls, Bill Ellis, Winter Garden, FL – (407) 654-2420
   4. High Output, Mark Shore, Canton, MA – (781) 364-1812
   5. Main Stage, Tripp Oliver, Pensacola, FL – (800) 851-3618
   6. Vincent Lighting Systems, Bill Groener Solon, OH – (216) 475-7600
   7. Starlite, Moorestown, NJ – (800) 738-7400

B. Other Contractors wishing to bid must submit qualifications to the Architect, Theatre Consultant, and Client for approval prior to bid.
   1. Requirements:
      a. Specialty Subcontractor and the individuals responsible for installation in the field shall have been continuously engaged in the sales and integration of power distribution and control equipment similar to that specified herein for a minimum of ten (10) years and shall have completed at least eight (8) installations of this type and scope.
      b. Specialty Subcontractors shall have at time of bid and continuously maintain throughout the project and warranty period a Specialty Contractor’s license appropriate for work in this Section.

2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. DMX Driven Relay Panels (Intelligent Panel Board System)
   1. General:
      a. Breaker Panels shall be UL Listed and labeled.
      b. Breaker Panels shall consist of a main enclosure with breaker subpanels, integral control electronics, and provision for accessory cards.
      c. Up to three accessory cards shall be supported per breaker panel
      d. Panel shall be network enabled
      e. Panel shall have ride thru option
      f. Provide signage on the relay panels with the following attributes:

i. Material: 1/8 inch black lamacoid

ii. Finish: Black with white fill

iii. Engraving: 3/8 inch high characters with non-yellowing white fill

iv. Indicate the following on the sign:

Project:	Project Name
Theatre Consultant:	Theatre Projects
Manufacturer:	Company Name city, state and service telephone number

v. Rivet to front on one (1) relay panel in each dimmer/relay room.

2. Control Features:

a. Standard control format is DMX-512.

i. Addressing shall be set via the user interface button keypad with any circuit patched to any DMX control address.

ii. The breakers shall respond to control changes (DMX or Stations) in less than 25 milliseconds. DMX512 update speed shall be 40Hz.

iii. Setting changes shall be able to be made across all, some, or just one selected breaker in a single action from the face panel

iv. DMX data loss shall allow for levels/breakers to be held for ever or for a specified time before switching to a lower priority source

b. Initial Panel setup

i. The breaker panel shall automatically detect the type of breaker installed in each location without need for manual configuration of the physical arrangement.

ii. Quick rack setup shall be available to apply address settings across all circuits for rack number, DMX Start Address, sACN universe, and sACN start address.

iii. Emergency Setup Menu shall provide optional delays when emergency is activated or deactivated, and option to turn off non-emergency circuits shall be available. Record function shall allow circuits that are turned on to be added to the emergency setting.

3. User Interface:

a. The user interface shall contain a graphical display with button pad to include numeric entry, navigation arrows and enter.

b. Test shortcut button shall be available for local activation of preset, sequence and set level overrides.

c. The user interface shall have a power status LED indicator, a DMX status LED indicator, a network status LED indicator, and an LED indicator for errors.

d. Ethernet interface shall be installed and shall default to automatic IP through link local and DHCP. Upon receiving IP address, the address of the Network Interface Card (NIC) shall display in the about menu. Static address and settings shall also be possible.

e. The control interface shall support a USB memory stick interface for uploads of configurations and software updates.

4. Functional:

a. Panel setup shall be user programmable. The control interface shall provide the following breaker setup features (per circuit):
    i. Type (1 pole, 2 pole, or 3 pole)
    ii. Name
    iii. Circuit Number
    iv. DMX address
    v. sACN address
    vi. Space Number
    vii. Circuit Modes
    viii. Include in UL924 emergency activation
b. Breaker panels shall support discrete addressing of each breaker.
    i. The panel shall be capable of switching 6 poles on or off at once, or in a user-selectable delay per breaker using a period of 0.1 to 60 seconds, in 0.1 second increments
    ii. Control electronics shall report the following information per branch circuit:
        a. Breaker state (On/ Off)
        b. Breaker state (Open/ Closed)
        c. Current draw (In Amps)
        d. Voltage
        e. Energy usage
    iii. Built in Control shall include:
        a. Ability to record up to 16 presets from the control panel, connected control stations, or timed events
        b. Presets shall be programmable by recording current levels (as set by DMX or connected control stations), by entering levels on the control panel directly, manually selecting breaker state on each breaker, or a combination of these methods.
        c. Indication of an active preset shall be visible on the control panel display.
        d. One 16-step sequence per space for power up and power down routines
        e. The panel shall have a UL924-listed contact input for use in Emergency Lighting systems. The panel shall respond to the contact input by setting included breakers to “on”, while setting non-emergency breakers “off”. Each breaker can be selected for activation upon contact input.
        f. Upon data loss, the system shall provide options to hold last look infinitely or hold for a configured time period set by the installing technician then fade/switch to the input of the next available priority.
        g. Control electronics shall respond directly to control stations for zone, preset, and sequence control. Systems that require secondary control systems for this functionality are not acceptable.

h. After power loss, electronics shall be capable of holding the system in its previous state until new level data (DMX, architectural presets, sequences and zones, or local overrides) is received to make each breaker change state.

5. Electrical:
   a. Breaker Panels shall support power input from:
      i. 120/208V three phase 4-wire plus ground
   b. Breaker:
      i. Bus connection type: Stab on
      ii. 1, 2, or 3 poles
      iii. 15 amp, 20 amp, or 30 amp
      iv. 22,000 SCCR; 65,000A series rated w main breaker
      v. High inrush trip curve
      vi. Maintains trip curve through entire thermal range
      vii. Guaranteed not to trip at full load
      viii. Load lugs accept 6-18awg load wiring
      ix. Multi-conductor rated output terminal
      x. Integral mechanically held air gap relay
      xi. Manual control of relay state using breaker handle w/o power
      xii. Integral current sensing
      xiii. Integral position and trip sensing
      xiv. Control and status provided by contact pads directly at bottom of the breaker case. No external wires or connections required for control or feedback
      xv. The breaker panel shall support a maximum feed size
         a. 400 Amps at 48 circuits
   c. Breaker panels shall support main circuit breaker options:
      i. Main breaker options shall be available
      ii. Main breakers shall be field installable
      iii. Main breakers shall allow the following range of wire sizes:
         a. Up to 300kcmil at 100A and 200A
         b. Up to 600kcmil at 400A
      iv. Main Lug input shall support up to 2x200kcmil
6. Accessories for use as emergency lighting panel
   a. Provide power loss sensing device, by-pass option, UPS battery backup and other accessories to configure standard relay panel for use on a normal/emergency feed.
   b. At time of power loss relay panel control module shall switch all relays within that panel on.
   c. Refer to the electrical drawings for relay panel assignments to emergency lighting use.

7. Acceptable Products:
    a. Electronic Theatre Controls - Sensor IQ Intelligent Panelboard System
    b. Electronic Theatre Controls – Unison Echo Relay Panel
        i. Feedthrough
        ii. Mains Feed

B. Control Consoles
1. General:
    a. Control consoles to be provided by same manufacturer as control system.
    b. Provide console for the (assigned theatre); one operating as the master console and the second operating as backup.
        i. Console shall be live on the network at all times to allow seamless backup.
        ii. Network shall advise the user when problems occur and shall notify for switch to back up.

            Switch to back up shall not automatic.
    c. Provide software current at time of installation.
        i. Provide a minimum two (2) year subscription to update all performance lighting console software such as fixture libraries, visualization software, and related lighting paperwork.
    d. Console shall be configured to be a node on the lighting network and shall be ACN compatible.
    e. Software Features:
        i. Capacity to display the following screens
        ii. Stage (live) - Levels currently active on stage
        iii. Preview (blind) - Levels recorded in a preset
        iv. Softpatch - Patching information
        v. Setup configuration - Basic operating parameters
        vi. Disk read, write and format
        vii. Clear show
        viii. Setup Parameters
        ix. Default Fade Time
        x. Dimmer configuration
        xi. Channel configuration
        xii. Hardware configuration
        xiii. Print Functions:
            a. Stage Display
            b. Cues
            c. Submasters

d. Patch

xiv. Patching:

a. Proportional patching of dimmers to channels of control

xv. Recording

xvi. Channel list constructed with AND and THROUGH functions

xvii. Proportional adjustment of current channel list with level wheel

xviii. Setting of levels with AT function

xix. Release of channel list without modification

xx. Recording of stage or blind settings

xxi. Cue numbers between 000.1 to 999.9

xxii. Non-sequential recording

xxiii. Cue time fades of 1 to 99 seconds

xxiv. Split fade up and down times

xxv. Cue linking allowing cues to automatically follow each other

xxvi. Link delay time

f. Playback:

i. Pairs simultaneously timed cross fades, pile-on fades, and split fades

ii. Last action within each fader pair

iii. Highest level between fader pairs

iv. Capacity to override, halt, or release halted fades

v. Discrete overriding of each half of a fader pair

g. Submasters:

i. Totals specified herein shall be for physical faders. Digital “soft” submasters or pages of submasters shall not count to the total specified.

ii. Submasters are overlapping in a highest takes precedence fashion.

iii. Each submaster has a bump button which forces channels assigned to that submaster to their recorded level.

iv. Submasters are recorded live or blind.

v. Proportional control of assigned levels

vi. Capacity to build cues from submasters

h. Effects package including:

i. Effects built from submasters

ii. Variable one (1) to six (6) part chase

iii. Level and rate control of chase

i. On-line help information

2. 500 Channel Performance Lighting Console

a. Minimum Basic Capacities:
   i. One thousand twenty-four (1,024) outputs
   ii. Five hundred (500) control channels
   iii. Ten thousand (10,000) cue memory capacity
   iv. Forty (40) submasters
b. Hardware Features:
   i. One (1) remote focus port
   ii. One (1) Ethernet port
   iii. Operating software stored in upgradeable, internal non-volatile memory.
   iv. Show data storage in battery backed up random access memory
   v. One (1) internal hard drive unit for library storage
   vi. Extended numeric keypad for entering dimmer, channel, submaster, preset, level, time and link instructions
   vii. One alpha-numeric keyboard for notating cue information
   viii. Display keypad to provide access to display settings
   ix. Level wheel (or pad) for proportional intensity control over user selectable channels
   x. Two (2) electronically timed cross faders with manual override, each with a fade time status display, HOLD, CLEAR, GO BACK and GO functions
   xi. Proportional Grand master
   xii. Receptacles for plug-in dimmer control cables
   xiii. AC power cable and a set of 25'-0" control cables with connectors
c. Acceptable products:
   i. Electronic Theater Controls – Element 2
      a. Supply with two (2) black 19-inch external LCD flat panel touch screens

3. Console Desk:
   a. Provide castered console stand suitable for use at lighting control room observation window.
      i. Provide one (1) monitor arm for each local console monitor. Design monitor arm to allow the easy repositioning of the monitors above the console.
      ii. Minimum desk platform shall be 48” x 29”
      iii. Height shall be variable from 33” to 48”
      iv. Tabletop finish shall be black oak. Frame finish shall be black powder coat.
   b. Acceptable Products:
      i. Basis of Design: Luxor High Speed Crank Adjustable Stand Up Desk
         a. Model: STANDUP-CF48-BK/BO
4. Dust Covers:
   a. Provide standard dust covers

i. Provide for each console

ii. Provide for each video monitor/display.

b. Acceptable Products:

i. Basis of Design:

a. OEM

5. Refer to the schedule herein for quantities

a. Worklight:

i. Provide one (1) console powered worklight per console.

b. Uninterrupted power supply (UPS)

i. Power filtration/line regulation/battery backup with the following minimum capacities:

a. Input voltage < 132 V AC

b. Output voltage 115 V AC ± 5 percent

c. Transfer voltage 103 V AC

d. Surge energy 240 J

e. Surge current 6500 A peak

f. Surge response time 0 ns (instantaneous)

g. Noise filtration, full time EMI/RFI suppression, 100 kHz to 10 MHz, > 60 dB

h. Audible low battery signal

i. Minimum of ten (10) minutes back-up time

C. House Light Control System

1. General:

a. Provide an integrated House/Work Light Control system. The system is capable of controlling performance and house lighting through local and master control stations.

i. Coordinate with Electrical Engineer, Architectural Lighting Designer and System Integrator (if any) for DMX addressing requirements. Provide processors with capacity for the total of all DMX assignments required for controlling architectural LEDs to their finest resolution.

b. House Light Controls and Control Console have simultaneous “pile on” control of dimmers and relays as shown on the Drawings.

c. System is programmable using a laptop computer or designated LCD touch screen control stations.

d. User interface is through pushbutton and or LCD touch screen control stations.

e. Provide relays and circuit breakers based on zone designations. Relays shall not be ganged on individual circuit breakers.

2. Standard Operating Features:

a. Control system shall allow cross fading between presets within each of multiple rooms.

b. Presets can mirror between stations.

c. System parameters are user configurable. These parameters include but are not limited to current date, current time, dimmer type, high level limit, control station name, preset names, presets, mirror designation, lockout modes, dimmer assignments per channel, preset master names, station numbers, channel levels, and station names.

d. System accepts dry closures from external sources. Closures shall be momentary alternate action turning channels or presets on or off.

e. Fade times on each preset are adjustable from 0 - 999 seconds.

f. Preset masters are available to control groups of presets throughout the system.

g. Preset masters shall also provide “template” ability whereby station activation or control parameters maybe changed.

h. System provides storage of configuration and lighting data.

i. Provide Architectural lighting program to owner for future changes to system configuration.

3. Pushbutton Stations:

a. Provide pushbutton stations with the following minimum capabilities and equipment:

i. Each pushbutton may be configured to control a single channel or a single preset as required.

ii. Each pushbutton may be configured either to toggle a preset or channel on and off or to initiate a crossfade to another preset as required.

iii. Each pushbutton may be configured to allow resetting of the channel or preset intensity by holding the pushbutton until the preset or channel fades to the desired level and releasing the pushbutton to store the new level.

iv. Faceplate signage is screened as per Contract Documents. Each pushbutton station may be configured to control multiple channels or presets as required by the different states for which the system is configured.

v. Station shall fit into a standard gang sized wall box for recessed installation per the drawings.

vi. Provide painted steel backbox sized to faceplate dimensions for surface installation.

vii. Provide LED indicators programmable as locator lights, station active pilot lights, or station enabled pilot lights.

4. Houselight Control Panel:

a. Provide Houselight Control Station with the following minimum capabilities and equipment:

i. The panel shall contain (12) pushbuttons labeled "Preset 1," "Preset 2", "Preset 3," "Preset 4," "Preset 5," "Show," "Work," "Reh," "Night," "Manual," "Record," and "Off."

ii. Additionally, the panel shall contain six (6) sliders plus one (1) master.

iii. The panel shall provide up to 128 presets.

iv. Access to all dimmers/relays in the systems shall be provided by the PC-based set up program.

v. Station shall be able to address individual dimmers/relays within a preset and modify levels and fade times.

vi. Multiple control stations shall mimic and control shall be last action takes precedence with lockout capability.

vii. Provide wall mounted panels to fit standard gang back box as indicated on the Drawings.

5. LCD Touch Screen Stations:
   a. LCD touch screens:
      i. 7 inch Active Matrix type screens
   b. Custom configure LCD touch screens to project requirements.
   c. Station shall provide up to 128 presets.
   d. Station shall be able to address individual dimmers and relays within a preset and modify levels and fade times.
   e. Multiple LCD touch screen control stations shall mimic and control shall be last action takes precedence.
   f. Provide programming, patching and recording ability from Lighting Control Room stations.
   g. Provide LCD Screen graphics and functionality as shown on the Contract Drawings.
   h. Provide painted steel backbox appropriately sized for recessed installation.
   i. Provide painted steel backbox sized to faceplate dimensions for surface installation.
6. LCD Touch Screen Station with “Master States Buttons:”
   a. Provide integrated LCD touch screen station as specified above.
   b. Provide momentary action rear LED illuminated push buttons wired to closure stations to interface to house/work light control system.
   c. Large LED backlit push buttons as shown on Drawings shall activate preset master states.
   d. All pushbuttons shall stay illuminated while in dedicated “state.”
   e. Master states shall be user configurable via external PC and shall include the ability to:
      i. Lock out or enable control stations
      ii. Establish low trim settings for any dimmer
      iii. Turn on, turn off, or lock out any dimmer or DMX-controlled relay
   f. Provide cable sets and connectors as required for station installation and use.
7. Portable LDC touch screen (portable consolette):
   a. Provide portable panel in a tabletop consolette with 25 foot control cable for each space with a dedicated house worklight control system.
   b. Master states shall be user configurable via external PC and shall include the ability to:
      i. Lock out or enable control stations
8. Control Station Material and Finish:
   a. Material: 1/8 inch aluminum
   b. Finish: “Black” or “Custom” as indicated on the Drawings.
      i. Black finish: 120 grit, horizontally brushed black anodized

ii. Special finish: Powder coat painted finish

c. Legends: Engraved and paint filled as shown or as directed.

d. Reinforce faceplate as needed to minimize deflection.

9. Configure the system to provide no delay time between the toggle "on" position and the illumination of the lighting fixture and the reporting back to the station.

10. Acceptable Products: Subject to the above requirements, provide one of the following products:

a. Electronic Theatre Controls Unison/Paradigm

D. Control (Aux) Rack

a. Provide standard wall-mounted, hinged 19 inch control rack(s) with sufficient space to accept devices as shown on the drawings.

b. Control Rack Accessories

i. 2U drawer

ii. Locking door

iii. Regressing brackets to permit the door to close with connectors patched to devices.

iv. 10U of spare rack space

v. Blank panels to fill all spaces

c. Provide signage on the Aux rack with the following attributes:

i. Material: 1/8 inch black lamacoid

ii. Finish: black with white fill

iii. Engraving: 3/8 inch-high characters with non-yellowing white fill

iv. Indicate the following on the sign:

Project:	Project Name
Theatre Consultant:	Theatre Projects
Manufacturer:	Company Name City, state and service telephone number

v. Rivet to front on one (1) Aux rack in each dimmer/relay room.

d. Uninterrupted power supply (UPS)

i. Power filtration/line regulation/battery backup with the following minimum capacities:

a. Input voltage < 132 V AC

b. Output voltage 115 V AC ± 5 percent

c. Transfer voltage 103 V AC

d. Surge energy 240 J

e. Surge current 6500 A peak

f. Surge response time 0 ns (instantaneous)

g. Noise filtration, full time EMI/RFI suppression, 100 kHz to 10 MHz, > 60 dB

h. Audible low battery signal

i. Minimum of ten (10) minutes back-up time

E. Data Communications

1. Provide a fully functioning Performance lighting Ethernet system. Install the system in conformance with the latest ESTA and IEEE 802.3 standards and the control console manufacturer's requirements.
2. Coordinate the wireless Ethernet protocols with other areas of theatrical production (Sound, Rigging and Automation, and Administration) to ensure that the theatrical lighting system has its own dedicated secured channel and does not broadcast SSID information that would allow the system to be compromised. Set up MAC address filtering if nearby networks require it.
3. 24+2 Gigabit Ethernet Switches-PoE / Patch Panels:
   a. Provide managed switches and patch panels of a high quality from a company with five or more years of experience manufacturing this equipment.
   b. All Gigabit Ethernet switches shall be Power-over-Ethernet units capable of operating standard and fast Ethernet protocols.
   c. The switch shall include the following connections:
      i. Qty. 24, 10/100/1000BaseT ports with 802.3af Power over Ethernet
      ii. Qty. 2, 10/100/1000BaseT ports
      iii. Qty. 2, mini-GBIC (SFP) ports fitted with 1000BaseSX Fiber Optic module
   d. Label switches and patch panels with the locations of the field boxes and as labeled in the box schedules.
   e. Provide proper quantity of Category 6 patch cables to patch all field devices to hubs/switches.
   f. All wireless switches must comply with latest IEEE 802.3 b/g standards and are to be installed using best industry practices.
   g. Provide web browsable switches that can be accessed through any commercially available web browser.
   h. Provide in-line switches based on proposed and actual cable run lengths.
   i. Acceptable switch manufacturers:
      i. Hewlett-Packard – Procurve series, 3000 Hanover Street, Palo Alto, CA
      ii. Cisco Systems – 300 series, 170 West Tasman Drive, San Jose, CA
4. Ethernet Nodes:
   a. Provide the latest products available from the control console manufacturer at the time of installation.
   b. Ethernet Nodes to be sACN compatible.
   c. Provide control cable packages as listed in the schedule in Part 3 of this section.
   d. Acceptable Products:
      i. Electronic Theatre Controls – MK2 Gateways

F. Distribution and Control Faceplates and Back Boxes

1. Provide line voltage and control faceplates and back boxes as shown in the TL-series drawings.

2. General:
    a. For surface mounted conditions faceplate and back box dimensions are equal.
    b. Remove sharp edges and burrs on faceplates.
    c. In all cases faceplate screw color is to match faceplate color.
3. Distribution (Line Voltage) Faceplates:
    a. Material: Minimum 14-gauge steel
    b. Finish: “Black” or “Custom” as indicated on the Drawings
        i. Black finish: Powder coat flat black enamel
        ii. Special finish: Powder coat painted finish to match Architect’s sample
    c. Provide terminal strips as needed for connection of wiring within pigtail boxes.
    d. Reinforce faceplates as needed where deflection may occur under heavy use.
    e. Provide a removable label on the faceplate designating the box number as shown in the drawings.
    f. Label each faceplate with circuit numbers as shown on the Drawings and Schedules.
        i. Material: 1/8 inch black lamacoid
        ii. Finish: Black with non-yellowing white fill
        iii. Engraving: 1/2 inch high characters with non-yellowing white fill
        iv. Attach labels to the faceplate with appropriate adhesive and rivet to faceplates.
        v. Label faceplates for duplicate circuits as follows:
            a. Material: 1/8 inch OSHA safety yellow lamacoid
            b. Finish: OSHA safety yellow with black fill
            c. Engraving: 1/2 inch high characters with black fill
    g. Label the outside top of each box with a removable OSHA yellow sticker with a minimum of 1-inch high lettering indicating the "up" position.
    h. Fill unused pre-drilled mounting holes.
    i. Label each pigtail connector with circuit number, unless otherwise indicated.
        i. Directly engrave into cover of connector in 1/2 inch high characters with non-yellowing white fill.
    j. Flexible Cable:
        i. Type SO sized to accommodate the maximum load of the terminating connector
        ii. Color: Black
4. Control Faceplates:
    a. Material: 1/8 inch aluminum
    b. Finish: “Black” or “Custom” as indicated on the Drawings
        i. Black finish: 120 grit, horizontally brushed black anodized
        ii. Special finish: Powder coat painted finish to match Architect’s sample
    c. Reinforce faceplate as needed to minimize deflection.

d. Legends: Engraved and paint filled as shown or as directed.

e. Provide a removable label on the faceplate designating the box number as shown in the drawings.

f. Faceplate shall fit into standard sized gang wall box for recessed installation.

g. Provide painted steel backbox sized to faceplate dimensions for surface installation.

h. Receptacles

i. XLR

a. Neutrik DL series black metal housing XLR with silver contacts or equal

ii. Ethernet

a. Neutrik etherCON D Series black metal housing RJ45 or equal

5. Acceptable Manufacturers:

a. Electronic Theatre Controls

b. TMB Associates

c. Lex Products

d. Union Connector

G. DMX isolated Splitter

1. Five (5) outputs minimum
2. Termination switch
3. 2500V opto isolation between input and output signals
4. 250V fault protection
5. Provide pipe mount accessories
6. RDM compatible
7. Acceptable Manufacturers:

a. Pathway Connectivity Solutions

b. Doug Fleenor Design

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Provide two (2) copies of associated manuals.

B. Configuration Documentation:

1. Provide two (2) copies of each system configuration on USB flash drive.

2.5 SUPPLEMENTARY

A. Provide equipment and hardware in addition to the items specified previously that are necessary to provide a fully working system in conformance with the intent of the Contract Documents.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where performance controls are to be installed and to verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation and comply with manufacturer’s requirements and those specified in this section.

B. Lighting control electronics shall not be installed in rooms where the interior finishes are not complete.

1. Control rooms and performance electrical rooms shall be broom clean and free of debris.

2. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Examine drawings and confirm that number, size, and location of conduits are adequate for proposed system.

D. Review the network cables runs and provide in-line switches and power for runs exceeding 300 feet.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install performance lighting and controls where shown, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and with recognized industry practice to ensure that performance lighting equipment complies with applicable requirements of NEC and UL standards and with the applicable portions of NECA's "Standard of Installation."

B. All load circuit conductors shall be continuous from the performance electrical rooms to the back box without splices or connectors.

C. All data wiring shall be continuous from termination point to termination point. No splices or connectors allowed.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Provide or facilitate the following tests or inspections. Correct deficiencies and retest deficient items.

B. Visual and Mechanical Inspections: Include the following:

1. Inspect each receptacle, and other loose items of equipment for defects, finish failure, corrosion, physical damage, labeling, and nameplate.

2. Exercise and perform operational tests on mechanical parts and operable devices according to manufacturer’s instructions or routine functional operation.

3. Check tightness of electrical connections with torque wrench calibrated within the previous six (6) months. Use manufacturer’s recommended torque values.

4. Verify proper protective device setting and fuse types and ratings.

C. Electrical Tests: Perform according to manufacturer’s instructions. Exercise caution testing devices containing solid state components.

1. Operational and continuity tests of all circuits. Perform an outlet by outlet operational test of the relay circuits to determine proper wiring and exact correspondence between the circuit numbers and the receptacle labels.
2. Operational tests of Ethernet runs: Test each Ethernet wiring run for proper operation in conformance with the IEEE standard. Document the length of each run.

D. Manufacturer's Field Service:

1. Provide the services of a qualified service representative, employed regularly and full time by the manufacturer of the control system(s), to check the installation of the control system(s) and ensure its proper operation. Do not energize any part of the control system until their check is complete and the service representative is present to observe the turn-on procedure.
2. Provide manufacturer's technician to configure house/work lighting control system as directed prior to system commissioning. One (1) set of changes to the initial operating configuration may be required subsequent to commissioning. One (1) set of changes will be required following acceptance.

E. Pre-Commissioning Test

1. Organize and conduct a test of the DMX addressing for the house and work light system.
2. Verify fixtures and racks have been addressed according to the coordinated DMX addressing table.
3. Schedule the pre-commissioning test upon completion of the DMX addressing.
4. Notify the architect fourteen (14) days prior to the test.
5. Provide field technicians and equipment required to address fixtures to their assigned resolution. The computer, if used in place of the console, shall have the ability run timed, simultaneous fades of all DMX addresses.
6. Store finalized DMX addressing scheme on the control processor and at an off-site location.

F. System Commissioning:

1. Upon completing installation, other tests, and manufacturer's check-out, schedule an inspection and operating test with the Architect and Theatre Consultant. Facilitate such tests as may be required to ensure that all equipment is in compliance with the intent of the specification.
2. Upon completion of the installation, and before scheduling the system inspection with the Architect, Theatre Consultant and Architectural Lighting Designer, the Electrical Contractor shall confirm the following in writing:
    a. Theatrical load circuits have been tested and are operational.
    b. Data circuits have been tested and are operational.
    c. Architectural control stations installed and are operational.
    d. Architectural lighting loads are terminated, operational and assigned addresses per the contract documents.
    e. Loose equipment is on site and located in the control room for each performance space. Equipment should be secured within these control rooms to prevent theft, or damage from construction debris.
    f. If any of the above items are found to be incomplete after receipt of notification, the Electrical Contractor shall reimburse expenses including labor, travel, hotel and meals.

3. Comply with the following conditions required for commissioning:
    a. Provide documentation to Theatre Consultant certifying all Ethernet outlets adhere to IEEE standards.
    b. Loose equipment provided under this section to be on site and available for testing.
    c. All architectural lighting fixtures wired to the control system shall be installed and lamped.
    d. Provide full and uninterrupted access to stage, auditorium, and technical areas required for commissioning tests. Blackouts of lighting will be required.
    e. Contractor's project representative to be present during tests as required.
    f. Provide Manufacturer technicians for final programming of all systems.
    g. Manufacturer's factory field technician to be present during tests and inspections.
    h. Provide personnel to operate equipment and perform adjustments as necessary.
    i. Provide access equipment as required.
    j. Provide four (4) stations of professional quality radio communication and battery charging station.
        i. Provide a headset for each station.
4. Contractor is required to facilitate the Consultant/Architect commissioning of the Control system. This commissioning will include but is not limited to the following items.
    a. Verify that loose and installed equipment quantities are as contracted.
    b. Inspect all system components individually for conformance to specification.
    c. Test each branch circuit for operation, correct circuit identification, and proper arrangement of hot, neutral, and ground conductors.
    d. Spot test selected branch circuits at maximum load.
    e. Verify operation of all worklight and houselight fixtures. Test operation of all worklight and houselight control devices. Verify that logical operation of controls is as specified.
    f. Verify operation of all portable control and portable display devices from all associated receptacle locations.
    g. Using a DMX source, verify operation of DMX distribution network.
    h. Confirm the proper operation of the lighting Ethernet system.
    i. Review operation, maintenance, and instruction manuals. Review warranty certificate.
    j. Confirm that user training has/will occur per specification.
5. Notification to the Architect a minimum of fourteen (14) days prior to date of inspection that installation is complete and that all building systems and conditions have been met for complete testing is required before a specific commissioning date will be confirmed.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Remove paint spatters and other spots, dirt, and debris.

B. Repair scratches and mars of finish to match original finish.

C. Clean devices and equipment internally and externally using methods and materials as recommended by manufacturers.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION

A. The manufacturer of the dimming/relay system shall provide a minimum of two (2) hours of training in the operation of the control console, architectural control system, and other related systems specified herein. These sessions shall consist of one (1) – two (2) hour session at times separate from the check-out of the systems. Training time to be arranged with the staff of the facility and shall take place over the first six (6) months after building acceptance.

B. Provide copy of digital video of training for Owner's use in future training sessions.

3.6 CONTROL EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE

A. Installed equipment: See drawings

B. The following schedule includes off-the-shelf equipment for the lighting control system. Provide equipment and hardware in addition to the items specified that are necessary to provide a fully working system.

1. Provide unit pricing for items noted in the following schedule.

Item #	Description	Unit Pricing Required	Theatre
Console			
1	**250 channel lighting console**		1
2	19-inch flat screen touch panels		2
Console Accessories			
3	Worklight		1
4	Cable set		1
5	UPS		1
6	Rolling Console Desk		1
7	Spare Relay Modules		1
Network			
Cable			
8	25-foot Network cable TMB CAT6A Neutrik EtherCon connectors		2
9	75-foot Network cable TMB CAT6A Neutrik EtherCon connectors		1
10	50-foot DMX Cable TMB PC224P Neutrik 5pin XLR		2
DMX Accessories			
11	Portable LCD touch screen (portable consolette)		1
House lights			
12	New LED lamps as required for chandeliers		lot
13	New amber glass cylinder shades for chandeliers		lot

Item #	Description	Unit Pricing Required	Theatre
14	New LED lamps and amber glass shades for wall sconces as required		lot
15	New LED lamps for remaining house lights as required		lot

END OF SECTION 26 61 11

SECTION 27 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section and to all of Divisions 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements applicable to components and systems included in Electric Contract.

B. Products Installed but Not Furnished Under This Section

1. Make electrical connections to equipment shown on Drawings and furnished by other Contractors. Obtain approved wiring diagrams and location drawings for roughing in and final connections from Contractor furnishing equipment.

1.3 REFERENCES

A.	AIA	American Institute of Architects
B.	ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act
C.	AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
D.	ANSI	American National Standards Institute
E.	ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials International
F.	IBC	International Building Code
G.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
H.	IES	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
I.	NEC	National Electrical Code
J.	NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
K.	NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
L.	NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
M.	UL	Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. “Existing”: Equipment depicted on Drawings with an “E” designation denotes existing equipment to remain.

B. "Move": Equipment depicted on Drawings with an "M" designation denotes existing equipment to relocate. Disconnect equipment, remove circuitry to a point beyond demolition and tag for reuse, store equipment for reuse and reinstall as specified in Contract Documents. Modify/extend circuitry to new equipment locations and reconnect. The Contractor is responsible for protecting equipment from damage during removal, storage and reinstallation.

C. "Replace": Equipment depicted on Drawings with an "R" designation denotes existing equipment to replace. Refer to relevant Project Manual Specification for additional information and requirements.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Inspection of Existing Systems: Inspect each existing system scheduled for modification in presence of Authorized Owner's Representative and issue a deficiency report to Owner and Architect listing conditions found prior to any removals, relocations, or additions. Modified systems include (but are not limited to):

1. Power distribution.
2. Power generation system.
3. Lighting.
4. Theatrical Lighting system.
5. Fire alarm system.
6. Clock system.
7. Computer network system.
8. Telephone system.
9. Sound system.
10. Public Address System
11. Television system.
12. Security system.
13. Emergency lighting.
14. Lightning protection system.

B. Design Requirements - Provide complete systems, properly tested, balanced, and ready for operation including necessary details, items and accessories although not expressly shown or specified, including (but not limited to):

1. Wiring and raceway for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

2. Electrical devices and equipment for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

3. Systems included, but not limited to:

   a. Electrical distribution.
   b. Electrical connections.
   c. Power generation system.
   d. Lighting.
   e. Fire alarm system.
   f. Clock system.
   g. Computer network system.

h. Telephone system.
i. Sound systems.
j. Public Address System
k. Television system.
l. Security system.
m. Emergency lighting.
n. Lightning protection system.

C. Electric Layouts: Arrange panels; disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, equipment, raceways, and similar components neatly, orderly and symmetrically. Provide 3/4-inch fire treated, gray painted plywood backboards for surface mounted panels, disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, and similar equipment. Arrangements shown on Drawings are diagrammatic only; provide and adjust raceways, wiring, and other components as required.

D. Power Interruptions and Scheduled Outages: Coordinate scheduling of all power interruptions and outages with Owner. Confirm with Owner prior to interruption of power, which building systems are considered critical and must remain operational during the interruption. If a scheduled power outage is to extend beyond one standard workday, provide temporary power to operate critical building systems (including, but not limited to fire alarm system, security system, building access control system, and building energy management control system).

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General Division 27 submittal requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.

2. Product Data: Submit product data for items listed in individual technical section. Clearly identify manufacturer, pertinent design, function, materials, construction and performance data specifically addressing specification description and Contract Document requirements of item. Strike out products that are not applicable to item being submitted, where more than one product is indicated on manufacturer product literature.

   a. Cover Sheet: Attach cover sheet, identified in Section 01 33 00, to Product Data of each item submitted. Provide cover sheet for only one type of item with related accessories, equipment with related components. Do not combine unrelated items under the same cover sheet.

   b. Specified Equivalent Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information including product literature, technical specifications and descriptions, performance data and, and similar items to demonstrate compatibility with Basis-of-Design Equipment as specified in the "Part 2 – Products" of each technical section.

3. Shop Drawings: Submit detailed drawings for electrical equipment layouts, showing exact sizes and locations for approval before beginning work.

a. Do not proceed with installation of systems in each area until agreement is reached with all concerned on exact arrangements for each room or area, unless otherwise directed by Architect. If Contractor proceeds prior to resolving conflicts, Contractor shall modify installed Work as required to permit other systems to proceed with a coordinated installation.

b. Specified Equivalent Drawings: Submit detailed drawings of proposed Specified Equivalents, indicating proposed installation of equipment and showing maintenance clearances, required service removal space other pertinent revisions to arrangement and configuration shown in Contract Documents.

4. Samples: On all submittals, indicate standard factory color and factory finish surfaces. Where more than one color is available, selection will be made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Codes and Standards: Comply with applicable Federal, State and local building and electrical codes, laws, ordinances, and regulations, and comply with applicable NFPA, National Electrical Code and utility company requirements and regulations. Provide Underwriters Laboratories Seal on all materials.

2. Permits and Inspections: Obtain approvals, tests, and inspections required by Architect, Engineer, local electrical inspector, agent or agency specified in Project Manual, or National, State, or local codes and ordinances.

a. Schedule electrical inspection by an agency acceptable to the local authority having jurisdiction and submit final inspection certificate to Architect.
b. Furnish materials and labor necessary for tests and pay costs associated with tests and inspections.
c. Conduct tests under load for load balancing and where required by codes, regulations, ordinances, or technical Specification.

3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Storage and Protection:

1. Take precautions to store materials and products to protect finishes and not permit dust and dirt to penetrate equipment.
2. Replace equipment damaged beyond reasonable repair as required by Architect.
3. Refinish any equipment with marks, stains, scratches, dents, and other aesthetic damage that doesn't impede operation of equipment as required by Architect.

1.9 COORDINATION OF WORK

A. New Construction:

1. Openings, Chases, Recesses, Sleeves, Lintels and Bucks (required for admission of Electric Contract systems and components): Coordinate requirements with General Contractor for inclusion in General Contract. Furnish necessary information (e.g. locations and sizes) to General Contractor in ample time for installation of systems and components included in Electric Contract.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to Contractor responsible for General Work anchor bolts required for Electric Contract construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Contract.

3. Locate settings, check locations as installation in General Contract progresses, and provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

B. Existing Construction:

1. Unless otherwise specified, employ Contractor responsible for General Work for all cutting, patching, repairing and replacing of general work required for installation of systems and components included in Electric Work. Secure approval from Architect's representative before cutting.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to Contractor responsible for General Work anchor bolts required for Electric Work construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Contract. Provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

3. Access Doors: Provide access doors shown on Drawings, or as required for access to pull boxes, junction boxes, relays and other electrical devices requiring periodic inspection, adjustment or maintenance, where located above or within inaccessible walls or ceilings, and including cutting and patching of adjacent walls and ceilings to match existing materials and finishes.

1.10 ALTERATION PROCEDURES

A. In locations where existing devices are indicated to be disconnected and removed and existing power circuit or communications cable is not scheduled to be reused:

1. Remove circuit conductors back to source.

2. Modify panel directory for that circuit.

3. Remove all existing exposed and unexposed accessible raceway.

4. Provide blank cover plates or wall infill (as indicated on plans) and as described below:

a. For single gang and multi-gang switch boxes in public or occupied spaces; stainless steel coverplates.

b. For single gang and multi-gang boxes in un-occupied spaces; stainless steel, galvanized steel or PVC coverplates.

c. For boxes larger than standard switch boxes in public or occupied spaces; remove existing box and provide wall infill, matching existing sub-surface and finished surface conditions. Paint wall to match surrounding finishes.

d. For boxes larger than standard switch boxes in un-occupied spaces; 18 gage galvanized sheet metal coverplate with machined edges. Prime and paint to match surrounding finish conditions.

5. Patch and paint existing walls where disturbed by the electrical work.

B. In locations where existing devices are to remain in place, ensure circuits feeding such devices remain operational. Modify existing circuits as required to allow new construction to occur and to maintain necessary circuitry to existing devices for complete and proper operation.

C. In locations where entire existing system is being removed or modified:

1. Refer to individual system specification sections for documentation and inspection requirements prior to any alteration work on any system.
2. Take all necessary measures to ensure that down time will not compromise safety.
3. Notify Owner, Architect and other Contractors not less than 2 weeks prior to interruptions in service.
4. Coordinate work schedule to minimize duration of system outage during hours when building is occupied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping”.

B. Submit Manufacturers Product Data Sheets for each type of product selected. Certify that Firestop Material is free of asbestos and lead paint and complies with local regulations.

1. Certification by firestopping manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) and are nontoxic to building occupants.

C. Submit system design listings, including illustrations from qualified testing and inspection agency that is applicable to each firestop configuration.

D. Submit a project specific Penetration Firestopping Schedule indicating where each firestop configuration will be used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Do not cut waterproofed floors or walls for admission of any equipment or materials and do not pierce any structural members without written permission from Architect.

B. Furnish and install sleeves, inserts, panels, raceways, boxes, and similar infrastructure., ahead of general construction work and maintain Contractor personnel at Site during installation of general construction work to be responsible for and to maintain these items in position.

C. Unless otherwise noted elsewhere in Contract Documents, bear expense of cutting, patching, repairing or replacing of work of other trades made necessary by any fault, error or tardiness on part of Electrical Contract or damage done by Electric Contract. Employ and pay Contractor whose work is involved.

3.2 DEMONSTRATION OF COMPLETE ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Thoroughly demonstrate and instruct Owner's designated representative in care and operation of electrical systems and equipment furnished and installed in Electric Contract.

1. System Operator: Maintain competent operator at building for at least 2 days in 2 consecutive weeks after Owner takes occupancy of major parts of building to operate systems and equipment in presence of Owner's representative.

2. Factory Representative: In addition to demonstration and instruction specified above, provide technically qualified factory representatives from manufacturers of major equipment, to train Owner's representatives in care and operation of applicable products as specified in applicable technical sections of Division 26.

3. Coordinate and schedule time and place of all training through the Architect at the Owner’s convenience.

4. Submit letters attesting to satisfactory completion of instructions, including date of completion of instruction, names of persons in attendance, and signature of Owner’s authorized representative.

5. Architect's representative must be present when Owner's representatives participate in instruction.

6. The following equipment and systems are included:

   a. Emergency generator.
   b. Theatrical Lighting system.
   c. Fire alarm system.
   d. Clock and program system.
   e. Sound systems.
   f. Computer network systems.
   g. Telephone system.

h. Security system.
i. Lightning protection system.

3.3 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping according to the requirements specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping.”

B. Applied Fireproofing:

1. Coordinate the installation of hangers, supports and accessories from the structural steel with the fireproofing installation. Install all hangers and supports prior to installation of fireproofing.

2. Repair or replace existing fireproofing removed as a part of Electrical Work installation.

a. Employ the services of an approved fireproofing contractor to repair or replace the fireproofing by patching any areas that have been removed or damaged due to the installation of work after the completion of the fireproofing.

C. Repaired or replacement fireproofing shall match the fireproofing adjacent to the repaired area. All warranties shall be maintained.

END OF SECTION 27 05 00

SECTION 27 15 00 - COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. 9/125-micrometer, single mode optical fiber cabling.
3. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
4. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
5. Cabling system identification products.
6. Cable management system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
B. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.
C. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
E. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
F. LAN: Local area network.
G. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.
H. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
I. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.
B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.

2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.

3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test optical fiber cables to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical loss test set.

2. Test optical fiber cables while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.

3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called a "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.

B. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1 when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Grounding: Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.3 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

2.4 UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

1. ADC.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. Draka Cableteq USA.
6. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
8. Superior Essex Inc.
9. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
10. 3M Communication Markets Division.
11. Tyco Electronics Corporation; AMP Products.

C. Description: Provide horizontal copper cable, UTP, 100 ohm in accordance with TIA-568-C.2, UL 444, ANSI/NEMA WC 66, ICEA S-90-661. Provide four each individually twisted pair, minimum size 24 AWG conductors, Category 6, with a blue thermoplastic jacket. Cable shall be imprinted with manufacturers name or identifier, flammability rating, gauge of conductor, transmission performance rating (category designation) and length marking at regular intervals in accordance with ICEA S-90-661. Provide plenum (CMP), communications rated cabling in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. Cables installed in conduit within and under slabs shall be UL listed and labeled for wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70.

2.5 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Dynacom Inc.
5. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
6. Leviton Commercial Networks Division.
7. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
8. Panduit Corp.
9. Siemon Co. (The).
10. Tyco Electronics Corporation; AMP Products.

C. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

D. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

E. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

F. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.

G. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in lengths a required; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

2.6 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

1. Belden Inc.
2. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
3. CommScope, Inc.
4. Corning Cable Systems.

5. CSI Technologies Inc.
6. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
8. Superior Essex Inc.
9. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
10. 3M Communication Markets Division.
11. Tyco Electronics Corporation; AMP Products.

C. Description: Multimode and single mode ,-micrometer, 12 strand-fiber, nonconductive, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

1. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following type:

a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.

D. Jacket:

1. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

2.7 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
5. Corning Cable Systems.
6. CSI Technologies Inc.
7. Dynacom Inc.
8. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
9. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
10. Siemon Co. (The).

C. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. expansion criteria.

D. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.

E. Cable Connecting Hardware:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604-2-B, TIA-604-3-B, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

2. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, type to match existing connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.

2.8 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

B. Workstation Outlets: Four-port-connector assemblies mounted in single gang faceplate.

1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."

2. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP work area cords.

a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

3. Legend: Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.

2.9 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.10 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
B. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.11 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

1. iTRACS Corporation, Inc.
2. TelSoft Solutions.

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
B. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

D. Factory test optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by the Owner.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Install cables in pathways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal pathways and cables except in unfinished spaces

1. Install plenum cable in all spaces.

B. Wiring within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."

3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.

4. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.

5. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.

6. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.

7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.

9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.

10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."
B. Comply with TIA-569-B, Annex A, "Firestopping."
C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 00 "Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

C. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.

2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.

3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).

4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.

b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

D. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

2. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.

3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.

4. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

5. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

    b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

        1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.

        2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

6. UTP Performance Tests:

    a. Test for each outlet. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:

        1) Wire map.
        2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
        3) Insertion loss.
        4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.

5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
8) Return loss.
9) Propagation delay.
10) Delay skew.

7. Optical Fiber Cable Performance Tests: Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

8. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.

   a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local and long distance telephone call.

   b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 27 15 00

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. The following Drawings shall be read in conjunction with and form part of this Specification. Architectural, electrical and other Drawings must also be read to coordinate the Performance Sound, Video and Communications (PSVC) systems installation with work of other trades.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. The term “or equivalent” indicates that an alternate for the referenced product will be considered for the referenced application, in the sole discretion of the Consultant.

1.3 SCOPE OF WORK

A. It is the responsibility of the PSVC System Contractor to provide complete and working sound systems to satisfy the project requirements and design intent, as stated in this Specification.

B. Except as noted, all equipment, labour and material required to supply, install, terminate, test, adjust and document the systems described herein shall be provided by the PSVC Systems Contractor.

C. The scope of Work shall include, but is not limited to:

1. Supply of all equipment described herein;
2. Removal of existing performance AV equipment and turnover to owner; existing public address to remain;
3. Delivery of all equipment to site;
4. Installation and termination of all equipment;
5. Provision of all necessary tools, installation equipment and support structures during the installation;
6. Site supervision of equipment and systems installation;
7. All supplementary design work as required to adapt the designs documented herein to the site conditions and to configure the equipment to perform as required;
8. Submittals of documentation as required herein;
9. Scheduling, sequencing and coordination with other trades and the Owner, including identification of unsuitable environmental or power conditions, special requirements for quiet conditions or high-SPL testing;
10. Programming and configuration of equipment;
11. Testing, alignment and demonstration of equipment and systems;
12. Supply and/or manufacture of all supplementary components and wiring, adapter assemblies and power supplies required to complete the systems, whether specifically described or enumerated herein or not;
13. Other requirements described herein.

D. The PSVC Systems Contractor’s scope of work relative to scopes of other contractors is described in the drawings.

1.4 OMISSIONS AND/OR ERRORS

A. Omissions and/or errors in the Tender Documents not reported at the time of response shall not relieve the successful respondent of the responsibility for fulfilling the requirements of the specification.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. The Sound Systems Contractor shall confirm that all dimensions, distances and site conditions are suitable prior to the installation of equipment. Report any discrepancies to the Consultant prior to installation.

B. The work shall be deemed substantially complete when it is fully functional, ready for operation by the Owner and has been tested and commissioned. The work shall be deemed 100 percent complete when all deficiencies are rectified, the system manuals have passed review by the Consultant and all contractual requirements are satisfied.

C. Acceptance of systems design and performance shall be at the sole discretion of the Consultant.

D. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall closely coordinate with the Consultant regarding any element of the sound systems that may have visual impact in the public or performance spaces.

E. The standards for quality of supply and installation shall be as stated herein and consistent with current trade practices, to the satisfaction of the Consultant.

F. Unless otherwise noted herein, all equipment supplied under this specification shall be new stock.

G. During the review drawing process, the PSVC Systems Contractor shall propose modifications to the cable specification types and quantities, as necessary to meet the requirements of the installed equipment, to the satisfaction of the Consultant.

H. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall coordinate with the Electrical Contractor regarding the installation of the conduit, raceway and back boxes to ensure it meets the needs of the systems specified herein.

I. Upon award of contract the Sound Systems Contractor shall review all reference drawings and site conditions and report any discrepancies, including conduit routing and sizing, to the Consultant. Measures to circumvent such discrepancies shall be incorporated in the review drawings.

1.6 EXTRA WORK

A. The PSVC Systems Contractor must receive written authorization to proceed with any work outside the fixed price contract(s). Should the PSVC Systems Contractor choose to proceed without written authorization he does so at his own risk.

B. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall advise the Owner of any extra work that is required to allow fixed price contract Work to proceed. This shall be done with adequate warning to allow arrangements to be made so that work is not delayed.

1.7 PERMITS, CODES AND REGULATIONS

A. All Work, methods, and materials must comply with all laws, statues, ordinances, codes, and regulations of the jurisdictions that pertain to the site, including those pertaining to seismic and fire performance, worker safety and hearing protection.

B. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall obtain at his or her expense all permits, registrations, licenses, training, equipment and insurance necessary to lawfully execute the work.

C. It is the PSVC Systems Contractor’s responsibility to inform its self of these requirements.

1.8 PROJECT SCHEDULE

A. The PSVC Systems Contractor is responsible to complete his/her activities according to the identified schedule milestones.

B. The PSVC Systems Contractor is to provide the necessary number of qualified personnel at such times as meet the above requirement.

C. After the scheduled finish of the Work, access to the site will be at the discretion of the Owner.

D. All Submittals shall be made in a timely manner, allowing two (2) weeks for review and two (2) weeks for possible resubmission, so as not to jeopardize the project schedule.

1.9 MATERIALS CONTROL AND CONDUCT OF WORK

A. The Performance Sound Systems Contractor shall provide his or her own secured job box(es) for all parts and tools.

B. The PSVC Systems Contractor is responsible for loss of any and all system equipment until it is permanently fastened to the building or signed over to the Owner and in the Owner's secure storage area.

C. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall maintain an orderly work area and ensure conditions meet industry standards and statutes for safety and work procedures.

D. Except as noted, the Sound Systems Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting and patching related to the specified work and shall make good all damages to the site that result from the PSVC Systems Contractor's activities.

E. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall ensure replacement and or restoration to original condition any damage or alteration to floors, ceiling, walls, furniture etc. caused by the installation process.

F. The PSVC Systems Contractor is responsible for removal from the site of all garbage resulting from his or her installation, at no additional cost to the client.

G. Access to the site will be granted only at the discretion of the Owner. The Sound Systems Contractor's site supervisor shall coordinate closely with the Owner's security service to ensure unobstructed access to the site.

1.10 GUARANTEE/WARRANTY AND SERVICE

A. The warranty period is one (1) year from final acceptance.

B. Warrant installation, systems and equipment to be free of defective components, faulty workmanship or improper adjustment. Replace items showing evidence of defective design, materials or workmanship (including installation workmanship). Make replacements without cost to the Owner.

C. Provide warranty service on site during the warranty period. Response time by phone will be within two (2) hours, 7AM to 11PM. Response time for on-site service will be provided within forty-eight (48) hours. Notwithstanding the foregoing, rectify conditions that might present a hazard to human life, well-being and or property within twenty-four (24) hours.

D. All equipment supplied under this contract shall be obtained through the distribution channels authorized by the equipment manufacturers. In this way, the equipment will be guaranteed by a distributor or representative and can readily be serviced.

E. Designate warranties on manufactured equipment to the Owner.

F. Some manufacturers of equipment supplied under this contract may offer warranties which exceed one (1) year in duration. The Sound Systems Contractor shall inform the Owner of such

warranties, via a letter to be included in the manual, and shall manage the servicing of the warranties at no charge to the Owner. However, the Owner will be responsible for transporting failed equipment to the premises of the Sound Systems Contractor for warranty service after the one-year warranty under this contract has expired.

G. All software shall have a Guarantee/Warranty. Any faults, inadequacies or deficiencies found during the first year of service (start date being at 100 percent completion award) shall be corrected at no cost to the Owner. The Sound Systems Contractor shall provide all necessary site labour to reinstall and fully test the revised software. All changes shall be reported to the Consultant.

H. All software updates shall be provided free of charge during the Guarantee/Warranty period.

I. Provide maintenance service for a period of one (1) year after final acceptance of the installation. This service consists of at least two (2) visits to the site for checking and adjusting of equipment. Perform the first visit six (6) months after the system has been accepted. Arrange visit to be at a time mutually agreeable to the Owner.

J. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing of the warranty period expiration date sixty (60) days prior to end date. Prior to warranty expiration the Contractor shall arrange a visit time mutually agreeable to the Owner and ensure all software or firmware installed on all sound systems is current with manufacturer's releases.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

A. Review ("Shop") Drawings

1. Review Drawings, Product Data Sheets and Samples shall be submitted in accordance with Division 1.
2. All Submittals shall be complete. No partial Submittals shall be allowed without the Consultant's prior written consent.
3. Drawings shall show all information necessary to explain fully the design features, appearance, function, fabrication, installation and use of system components in all phases of operation. These requirements are described in Part 3.
4. Fabrication, installation and erection shall not commence until review Drawings have been reviewed by the Consultant and Owner.
5. Notes or changes to the Review Drawings by the Consultant shall not alter the value of the work where equipment has not been added or deleted or where they are needed to meet the requirements of the Specification.
6. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall prepare and deliver two sets of hardcopy manuals, including Record Drawings, as described in Quality Assurance, for review by the Consultant as a portion of Acceptance and Commissioning. After review and revision, deliver four copies to the Consultant, prior to release of holdback. Two (2) copies will then be given to the Owner, one (1) to the Consultant and one (1) to the Sound Systems Contractor.

B. Test Report

1. Provide this report prior to commissioning by the Consultant.
2. Failure to provide this report in a timely manner may result in the postponement of commissioning, in the sole discretion of the Consultant.
3. Provide three (3) copies.

C. Record Documents

1. Record Documents shall be submitted in accordance with Division 1: General and Special Conditions.

2. In addition to the requirements referenced above, provide record copy Shop Drawings for archival and reference usage as part of the O & M manuals:
   a. Provide reduced size (11 by 17 inch preferred) hardcopy prints.
   b. Provide universal electronic format files (PDF file type is preferred) as full-size printable sheets. Submit files on standard pc format CD clearly labeled with project name, project architect, theatre consultant, contractor name, and date of submittal.
3. Include diagrams depicting the system layout and maximum load limitations (drawn not less than 1/4 inch = 1'-0".)
4. Provide three (3) bound copies of the Operations and Maintenance Manuals. Manuals shall include:
   a. Contact information and pertinent manufacturers
   b. Safety and Operational Instructions
   c. Complete parts and subassembly list
   d. Equipment design parameters such as safe working loads and duty cycles
   e. Periodic Maintenance Schedule
   f. Maintenance procedure for finishes
   g. Certificates of compliance with applicable codes
   h. Records of final testing and log
   i. Spare parts list and source information
   j. Warranty documentation
   k. Diagrams depicting the system layout and maximum load limitations, drawn not less than 1/4 inch = 1'-0"
5. Bind all O&M documentation separate from general building sections so they can be turned over to the users after approval.
6. Provide draft copy of completed manuals for review to the Theatre Consultant before the start of commissioning.
7. Provide three (3) hard copies of Shop Drawings, including updates or revisions to the original submission, to accurately reflect the installed system.
8. Provide complete copies of the following electronic files:
   a. Final Shop Drawings in their native electronic files (AutoCAD or similar) including all relevant x-refs bound into backgrounds as required.
   b. Submittal files, including Shop Drawings, in a PDF format
9. Submit files on standard pc format CD clearly labeled with project name, project architect, theatre consultant, contractor name, and date of submittal.

1.12 ACCEPTANCE AND COMMISSIONING

A. After the Consultant has received and inspected the Sound Systems Contractor's test report, the PSVC Systems Contractor shall, on or after the scheduled delivery date, at a time acceptable to the Consultant and other representatives of the Owner, provide at the PSVC Systems Contractor’s expense all the test equipment and technician assistance required to demonstrate all the tests described herein. During the same acceptance session, the PSVC Systems Contractor may also be required to repeat any portion or portions of the testing. Acceptance by the Consultant, in writing, shall constitute substantial completion.

B. Should the Work not be substantially complete at the scheduled time of inspection, the Sound Systems Contractor may be held responsible for any consulting and transportation costs incurred during subsequent inspection or inspections.

C. If the system does not fulfill all aspects of this Specification, the Sound Systems Contractor must make any adjustments, or any other changes required, to bring the installation into conformance with the specification.

D. Allow minimum four days on site, with two technicians with test equipment to demonstrate and adjust systems at the direction of the Consultant.

E. Prior to final acceptance, after notifying the PSVC Systems Contractor, the Owner may require use of the system for testing or other purposes. The PSVC Systems Contractor shall not waive any responsibility because of this temporary use of the system and it shall not be construed as evidence of acceptance.

1.13 INSTRUCTION

A. Qualified representative of the PSVC Systems Contractor shall:

1. Instruct the Owner's designated groups on the operation of the system for not less than eight hours, over two sessions, at the Owner's convenience.
2. Instruct the Owner's designated maintenance personnel on first line maintenance for not less than 8 hours, at the Owner's convenience.
3. Provide a Digital Signal Processing (DSP) programmer on site to make changes per owner's requirements for two days, at the Owner's convenience.
4. As a portion of this instruction, the PSVC Systems Contractor shall review the manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INTRODUCTION

A. This specification section describes the Sound and Video Systems required as part of the renovation of the theatre space, including lobbies and back-of-house areas.

B. All equipment will be installed within the boundaries of the building construction as shown on the drawings. All equipment installed to be of new stock.

C. See drawings for specific and/or typical details of equipment arrangements and connections.

D. Provide equipment as specified in the Equipment Schedule.

E. To ensure that the latest technology equipment is provided to the project, at the time of installation supply the latest model of the product which is available for each piece of equipment.

F. Should there be a difference in pricing between the equipment model cost at the time of bid and the pricing for the latest equipment model to be provide at the time of installation, the price differential will be compensated accordingly.

G. Materials: Supply materials and equipment that shall be new and shall meet of exceed the latest publish specifications of the manufacturer.

H. CUSTOM FABRICATION

1. Electrical Power Connections: Electrical power junction boxes and circuits will be provided by others. Provide required interconnections to the power system from these junction boxes to the equipment and equipment racks.
2. Remote Control Panels and Receptacle Plates. Fabricate with 1/8 inch thick #6061-T6 aluminum material. Finish brushed with 150 grit paper. Anodized finish to be approved by the General Contractor.
3. Equipment Rack: Provide power receptacle strips, with "U" ground outlets. Power receptacle strips shall be mounted on the rear interior of the rack space on the left side as viewed from the rear. Insulate power receptacle strips from the rack. Power receptacle strips shall be SGL Waber Company or approved equal. Provide UL-

approved incandescent work light mounted on the upper left interior panel of each equipment rack.

4. Project Information Label: Permanently mount, at the top facing edge of each equipment rack, an engraved plastic laminate plate, with filled lettering on contrasting background. Plate shall identify consultant and contractor.
5. Audio Transformers: Provide appropriate impedance ratio and power handling capacity for the function intended of audio transformers specified in the system.
6. Networks and Pads: Provide networks and pads as shown on the drawings or as required to achieve proper impedance matching and levels. Networks and pads shall be balanced. 0.5 watt, 5% composition resistors shall be soldered to fixed connection points at each end.
7. Labeling: Provide permanently mounted 1/32" thick by 1/4" high black lamicoid or anodized, brushed aluminum labels with 1/8" engraved lettering for each piece of equipment and every user-adjustable control and input on the audiovisual equipment.
8. Rack Mount Adapters and Security Covers: Provide the appropriate factory or custom rack mount adapters for equipment installed in the audiovisual equipment rack, whether specifically itemized or not. Provide security covers for equalizers, crossovers, signal delays, and other adjustable signal processors.
9. System Functional Diagrams: Provide reduced-size as-built functional diagram for the control, audio and video system. Frame with acrylic cover, or laminate drawing, and mount adjacent to equipment rack.
10. Seismic Safety: Mount and brace permanently installed equipment to the building structure to minimize potential damage to personnel or equipment from foreseeable seismic events. Physically bolt audiovisual equipment racks to the floor to prevent toppling. Brace hanging equipment such as loudspeakers, et cetera both to minimize sway and to prevent detachment from the overhead structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TECHNICAL STANDARDS

A. General

1. All equipment shall be installed so as to present no safety hazards to the public, to operating personnel, to equipment or to other trades.
2. All equipment must be adequately ventilated when operating under worst-case power dissipation.
3. Materials and equipment required for a complete system but not specified herein as to manufacturer or quality shall be of high commercial standard and quality.
4. The PSVC Contractor shall confirm all dimensions distances and placement prior to the installation of equipment. Report any discrepancies to the Systems Engineer.
5. All UPS and surge suppression equipment to provide sinusoidal output and must not bleed harmonics to ground.
6. All loudspeaker rigging shall employ a minimum 5:1 safety factor for static suspension. All rigging drawings shall be submitted for approval. All hardware shall be USA sourced and rated with full traceability available on request.
7. The PSVC Contractor is responsible for removal of all garbage resulting from his installation, from the site at no additional cost to the client.

3.2 PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

A. General

1. Meet the following performance standards with each system, unless restricted by the published specifications of a particular piece of equipment:
2. Audio Signal:
   a. Signal-to-Noise Ratio (including crosstalk): 55 dB minimum.

      Total Harmonic Distortion: 0.1% maximum from 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz.

      Frequency Response: + 1.0 dB, 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz.
3. Audio Reproduction:

      Signal-to-Noise Ratio (including crosstalk): 55 dB minimum.

      Total Harmonic Distortion: 1% maximum from 30 Hz to 15,000 Hz.
4. Frequency Response:
   a. Distributed Speech Reinforcement System with 8" diameter loudspeakers: + 1.5 dB, a flat response from 125 Hz to 2.5 Hz, rolling off at 6 dB/octave from 125 Hz to 80 Hz, 18 dB/octave below 80 Hz, and at 2 dB/octave above 2.5 kHz, as measured on axis of loudspeakers.
   b. Program Reproduction System Loudspeakers: + 2 dB, a flat response from 63 Hz to 6 kHz, decreasing uniformly from a relative level of 0 dB at 6 kHz to a relative level of -5 dB at 20 kHz as measured on axis of loudspeakers.
5. Sound Output Capability: Provide program levels of not less than 95 dB and speech reinforcement levels of not less than 85dB in the seating area without objectionable distortion, rattles, or buzzes, employing as test signals several different samples of recorded music and microphones applied at each system input.
6. Hum and Noise: Hum and noise shall be inaudible (below the background noise level of the space) under normal operation and as observed in normal seat locations.
7. Video Signal:
   a. Signal-to-Noise Ratio (peak to RMS) Unweighted DC to 4.2 MHZ: 55 dB minimum
   b. Crosstalk: Crosstalk (unweighted DC to 4.2 MHz): 45 dB minimum
   c. Frequency Response: Within plus-or-minus 0.5 dB to 4.2 MHz.
   d. Line and Field Tilt: 2% minimum
   e. Differential Gain: 3% maximum
   f. Differential Phase: 2o maximum
8. Video Timing:
   a. System Timing: Sync coincidence within 50 nanoseconds
   b. Color Timing: Within 2o at 3.58 MHz
9. Optical: Optical projection systems shall meet the following performance standards:
   a. The total averaged light output from a projector, in lumens, shall be within plus-or-minus 15% of that specified by the projector manufacturer.

b. The light fall-off from the center of the projected image to four corners, as measured at the projected image plane, shall not exceed 50% for video projector images nor 35% for slide projector images.

c. Projectors, lenses, and mirrors shall be solidly mounted and braced so that there will be no observable movement in the image induced by motor vibration or other mechanical operations.

B. Review Drawings

1. Notes or changes to the Review Drawings by the Systems Engineer shall not alter the value of the work where equipment has not been added or deleted or where they are needed to meet the requirements of the specification.

2. Review drawings are defined as those drawings necessary to build the job to the standards and detail as outlined in this specification and shall include:

a. Block diagrams showing the interconnection of all equipment. These drawings shall detail shield ground scheme. For each wire or wire group, show wire numbers and wire type. Identify device connection at each termination. For each device or device group, identify type, model and location. For each multi-pin connection, provide pin/conductor/function schedule.

b. Conduit/cable diagram(s) showing all system conduit, cable and cable numbering.

c. Schematic diagrams showing detailed wiring interconnections of all custom assemblies, terminal strips, terminal blocks, multi-pin connectors.

d. A master functional schematic drawing that demonstrates the functionality and signal flow of the system. This drawing is for use by operators for reference. This drawing shall be sized so that all wording is legible. The drawing shall be laminated and a copy mounted in each equipment room as well as in the SCR.

e. Include all Panel layouts and specifications.

f. All metal work assemblies where custom made by PSVC Contractor.

g. Equipment rack layouts and specifications including AC power distribution.

h. Portable rack layout and details where custom and made by PSVC Contractor.

i. Furniture layout and details where custom and made by PSVC Contractor.

j. For every loudspeaker type, provide an assembly drawing which shall describe or include at least the following: complete bill of materials with load ratings; dimensioning; relationship to architectural surrounding; all hardware; all frame and structural elements; rigging apparatus for suspending, aiming and adjusting the loudspeakers; method of providing “Safety line”; finish and color schedule.

k. Other drawings noted in the specification.

l. Complete testing checklists and documentation, ready for use in the field.

m. Any other diagram or information required for a complete description of the system(s).

3. Format and details of review drawings must meet the standards exemplified by the tender drawings. The tender drawings are available in electronic form upon request.

C. Record Drawings

1. Record drawings shall include:

a. Review drawings, revised to reflect as-built changes;

b. Other drawings noted in the specification

c. Any other diagram or information required for a complete description of the system(s).

D. System Manual

1. The System manual shall contain at least the following:

a. Detailed Table of Contents

b. Contacts and credit page

c. User operating instructions, which detail operation of the various systems for the day-to-day user (includes all control panel layouts, screen dumps etc.);

d. Include Technical manual(s), which detail service procedures for all systems:

a. Audio, Video

b. Program Sound

c. Amplifier control system

d. Hearing Assist

e. Computer

f. Digital systems

g. Software technical detail that covers all aspects of the GUI's, presets, modes of operation, and programming so that service personnel can fully understand and trouble shoot the system.

h. Include manufacturers' product manuals and product literature for all components.

i. Include clean copies of all shop and as built drawings as specified elsewhere.

j. Miscellaneous equipment drawings, custom fabrication drawings

k. Miscellaneous equipment manuals

l. Include a section with copies of all approvals, Engineer's stamps etc.

E. Record drawings

1. Designations and settings of all signal processing equipment (analogue and DSP based) and other controls.

2. Equipment manufacturers' operating instructions and maintenance manuals

3. Performance data on the completed system as specified under performance testing (Part 3.2); (One manual only) For any computer or microprocessor-based control or signal-processing systems for which custom programming is required: complete licensed development environment, compiler software and manuals and project-specific source code, custom or specially licensed executables and libraries; configuration, design or script files in uncompiled form, and set-up files on CD-ROM for modification and maintenance of this installation only, by the Owner.

4. On the cover page of the manual detail the names, addresses, phone numbers and contact names of all contracting, consulting and management firms involved in any aspect of the PSVC implementation.

5. The following is to be included in the system manual, on a separate page, immediately after the table of contents: “Hearing Damage Advisory – Various audio systems in this installation are capable of damaging the hearing of patrons, talent and staff if operated incorrectly and/or contrary to standards, such as OSHA, established and maintained for the protection of hearing. In particular, be advised that headphones (monitoring, intercom and hearing assistance) and sound reinforcement loudspeaker systems can cause rapid and permanent hearing damage if operated unsafely. All of the PSVC are to be operated and maintained only by qualified and authorized personnel.”

F. Software Standards – Writing and Documentation

1. All software programs and their associated hardware components must be fully installed, programmed and configured. Where a network system is used all connections to the hardware and software must be tested and fully operational.
2. Before the system is deemed complete and ready for final acceptance all software and hardware issues must be rectified.
3. All software programming must be performed by manufacturer trained and authorized personnel.
4. Where security features with passwords are employed the PSVC Contractor shall ensure that each level is properly assigned and that all the users have access as directed by the Systems Engineer. The PSVC Contractor must submit to the Systems Engineer for review all security features prior to commissioning. Unless otherwise noted the PSVC Contractor shall keep a set of passwords that permit full access to the system for future technical support to the client.
5. Where DSP systems replace any analogue equal loudspeaker-processing devices the PSVC Contractor shall consults the original manufacturer of the loudspeaker system to obtain the recommended factory settings for that loudspeaker system. The settings shall be implemented as algorithm ‘Blocks’ in the DSP. These settings shall be printed in a tabular format and included in the system manuals.
6. All software programming shall meet manufacturer’s recommendations and best industry practices. The PSVC Contractor can expect that the manufacturer may be requested to review their programming. At the discretion of the Systems Engineer, the PSVC Contractor may be directed to modify their program to the manufacturer’s directions.
7. Two complete copies of the software and programming shall be delivered to the Client and the Systems Engineer with the system manuals. The storage medium shall be CD-ROM.
8. All software and programming shall be warranted for a period of one (1) year from date of acceptance.

G. Software Standards – Approval and Testing

1. The PSVC Contractor shall submit proposed block diagrams that indicate functionality, logic flow and network connections. In the case of DSP systems these block diagrams shall also indicate signal flow.
2. All software shall be fully tested on the PSVC Contractor’s premises prior to testing on-site. A report shall be submitted regarding this shop testing. The Systems Engineer may choose to witness the testing or have the shop testing repeated, at his/her discretion.
3. All software programs must be fully functional and tested for interoperability and compatibility, which includes stand alone PCs and or those operating across a network.
4. Where a system includes operational screens, include diagrams or screen dumps that demonstrate all the Graphical User Interface (GUI’s) screens.

5. Prior to commissioning, the PSVC Contractor shall submit all software programming files to the Systems Consultant for review. The number of submissions required shall be at the discretion of the Systems Consultant.
6. The PSVC Contractor can expect several iterations of the review process before the Systems Engineer agrees to final configurations.
7. During software development, all software submissions shall be accompanied by documentation describing the following:
    a. The intent of the program
    b. Table of presets
    c. Logic function table
    d. Any problems related to the software and proposed solutions.
8. All software storage medium and storage containers shall be clearly labelled with the following:
    a. Project
    b. Date
    c. Program
    d. Contents and revision date
    e. Computer System Hardware
9. The computer system must not be installed on site during construction where there is dust and debris.
10. All computer system components shall be of premium quality and sourced from an established vendor.
11. The PSVC Contractor shall fully test the computer systems and software systems off site and a report submitted to the Systems Engineer. The Systems Engineer may choose to witness the testing or have the shop testing repeated, at his/her discretion.
12. All network cabling, connectors and components shall be tested for full bandwidth and proper functionality.

H. Control and Interface Hardware

1. Various systems and components may be controlled directly from a custom switch panel or via a dedicated control system. These devices are key components in delivering a usable system. Therefore, their successful implementation is of great importance.
2. All software standards and the review process as described previously shall apply to these systems.
3. All hardware components used to control and interface with the computer system or other hardware components shall be tested and fully functional prior to installation on site.
4. Unless otherwise noted, software programs that control operable machinery must require tally from the mechanism being controlled. The software program shall report the status of the mechanism to the user via a graphic display. Where injury or damage to equipment may occur the control program must include safety features that reverse motion or stop movement until the problem is rectified.

I. Spares and Miscellaneous

1. As part of this specification the PSVC Contractor shall provide the following:
   a. Where applicable provide cleaning kit(s) for all recording and playback devices.
   b. Provide spare set of bulbs for each lamp described or inferred in the specification.
   c. Extender cables for the console rails to permit servicing.
   d. Three sets of batteries as required by each battery powered device.

J. Definitions of Technical Performance Criteria

1. Technical Performance Criteria for loudspeakers as quantified in this specification are defined here:

Performance Criterion	Values	Definition
Maximum Sound Pressure Level (SPL)	See spec.	This is the maximum long term SPL capability as measured with a Sound Level Meter, A weighted, slow response (average) Measured on axis of loudspeaker Measured at ear height at intended listening position. Measured in free field (direct plus reverberant) with Omni microphone Measured after system is equalized to installed frequency response
Direct Sound Pressure Level (SPL)	See spec.	This is the maximum long term SPL capability as calculated from manufacturer's data and location design data using inverse square law or approved computer design package, A weighted, slow response (average) Measured on axis of loudspeaker Measured at ear height at intended listening position. Measured after system is "equalized" to flat frequency response
Coverage Area	See spec.	The area within which the off-axis attenuation of the direct sound of the loudspeaker is less than 6dB at 2kHz. Coverage of surfaces outside the stated listening area shall be strictly minimized.
Coverage Variation	See spec.	This is the variation in A-weighted SPL due to listener location within the coverage area of the loudspeakers As measured in the room free field Measured at ear height at intended listening position
Passband (Bandwidth)	See spec.	Nominal operating range of unequalized loudspeakers Determined by 3 dB down points of raw frequency response
Raw Frequency Response	See spec.	Anechoic response as published by manufacturer
Installed Frequency Response	See spec.	Measured on-site after optimization of aiming and equalization Unless stated otherwise, this shall be flat (maximum +1/-3dB on 1/3 octave intervals) within pass band at max. SPL
Loudspeaker Headroom	See spec.	Nominal long term power handling capability above that needed to achieve max desired SPL, expressed in dB
Amplifier Headroom	See spec.	The difference between the EIA power rating of power amplifier and the power required to achieve maximum SPL, expressed in dB

K. Wiring and Cable Termination

1. The PSVC Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to prevent electromagnetic and electrostatic interference. Care should be taken during wiring and installation to prevent damage to wire or equipment. It is expected that the PSVC Contractor will use best industry practices to ensure long-term reliability.
2. All terminations of shielded twisted pair cables, regardless of location, shall consist of a Teflon, PVC or neoprene sleeve covering the shield drain wire and an overall heat shrink or elastic neoprene sleeve covering the point at which the cable jacket and shield end. (This makes it very difficult to inadvertently ground a shield and is an important aspect of audio system wiring.) At the termination the unshielded leads shall be less than 50 mm in length but not so short as to present undo stress of the soldered joint.
3. All wiring entering the racks shall have a 2 m service loop (slack) folded after the cable has been terminated, allowing future rewiring. This slack wire shall be neatly harnessed into place.
4. All cable and cable bundles shall be neatly and logically routed and organized. Bundles of varying signal level shall be spaced at least 10 cm apart and secured to dedicated tie bars. Wiring in racks shall not be left unsupported.
5. The PSVC Contractor shall not attach cables to the fire-sprinkler system, electrical distribution of any system or any ancillary equipment or hardware. The cable system and support hardware shall be installed so that operation of any valves, fire panels, access doors, or control devices are not impeded.
6. Install all cables in continuous lengths from origin to destination. Splices are unacceptable.
7. Audio and control terminations shall be made with rosin-core solder or an approved mechanical connector. Temperature controlled soldering stations are recommended. Crimp only with manufacturer's recommended crimping tool having a controlled crimp cycle.
8. Mechanically connected XLR and phone plugs will not be allowed.
9. RF terminations shall be made with screw-on BNC connectors on cables and isolated thru-panel BNC-BNC connectors on panels.
10. As some audio signal cables may share a conduit with control cables (e.g. Paging Mics), take appropriate precautions to prevent pops and clicks in the system. Control circuits that require a reference shall not share audio shields as their reference.

L. Audio Interconnection

1. All microphone and line level wiring outside of racks shall be balanced and floating, unless otherwise indicated.
2. All microphone and line level wiring to be balanced, except where specified equipment has unbalanced terminations.
3. Unless otherwise noted, all microphone and line level connections to be via XLR connectors, except console inserts.

M. Control System

1. The control system shall consist of a touch panel and processor with low voltage, RS232, and network control capabilities.
2. The control system shall provide control for the devices shown in the riser diagram.
3. The control system shall provide an interface to the lighting control system via DMX-512 control protocol.

4. The control system shall have the following presets programmed:

	Projector	Projection Screen	Hot mics	House lighting	Perf Lighting
Movie	On	Down	off	Full/half/off plus dimming	off
Announcement	off	up	on	Full/half/off plus dimming	Snapshot programmed at time of commissioning
Lecture Small	on	down	On	Full/half/off plus dimming	Snapshot programmed at time of commissioning
Lecture Medium	on	down	On	Full/half/off plus dimming	Snapshot programmed at time of commissioning
Lecture Large	on	down	On	Full/half/off plus dimming	Snapshot programmed at time of commissioning
Performance	off	up	off	Full/half/off plus dimming	Off -console has control
Rehearsal mode	off	up	off	Full/half/off plus dimming	Off-console has control
Night mode	off	up	Off	Full/half/off plus dimming	off

5. Each device noted in the preset matrix shall be accessed via its own page and control shall be permitted in any mode.
6. Pages beyond the front page, where presets can be accessed are accessible only via a password.
7. Individual pages shall provide the full range of control possible with the device via RS-232 control.

N. Projection Screens

1. Large electrically operated, tab tensioned, extruded aluminum case. Projection screen with motor in roller. Case fully enclosed except for slot allowing viewing surface passage. Roller: 6 inches (152 mm) diameter steel tube. Viewing surface securely attached to roller at top and at bottom to weighted dowel. Provided with universal mounting brackets for ceiling or above ceiling mounting. Custom brackets as necessary to mount to batten.
2. Motor UL certified, rated 110-120V AC, 60 Hz, three wire, instantly reversible, lifetime lubricated with pre-set accessible limit switches.
3. Motor Screen Controls, UL certified.
    a. Low voltage control unit with three button 24V switches and cover plate to stop or reverse screen at any point, built-in RF receiver, built-in Video Interface Control trigger for 3V-28V, RS232, and dry contact relays.

4. Projection Viewing Surface:
5. TecVision XH900X Grey - On Axis gain of 0.9. 180 degree viewing cone. Provides very good contrast and color reproduction. Imaging Science Foundation certified. 4K ready. Dark backing or approved equal.
6. Tab-Tensioning System.
7. Viewing surface with integrated tabs and cable on each side of fabric to provide tension and ensure flat viewing surface. Viewing surface and tabs CNC cut as a single piece. Tabs RF welded to the back of viewing surface to prevent tab separation. Tab adhesives are not acceptable. Warranted for 5 years against tab separation. Viewing surface inserted into aluminum bottom dowel
8. Viewing Area: As shown in the drawings
9. 16:10 Format. Black masking borders standard.
10. 335 inch (8230 mm) diagonal, 177 inches x 284 inches (4496 mm x 5994 mm).
11. Provide an extra screen drop as shown in the drawings.
12. Provide an extra screen drop with an overall screen drop of ___ inches (___ mm) with a black masking top border.

O. Cable and Connectors

1. Terminate and connect wiring harnesses, as described under Equipment, to implement connection schemes as described in Audio Systems Design and Installation, P. Giddings (Focal Press) p. 236. Unless otherwise noted, all balanced audio wire to terminate to XLR3 or 3-pin Phoenix type connectors. If equipment is not fitted with XLR or Phoenix connectors, or if direct XLR connection contributes to a noise problem, PSVC Contractor to provide XLR adapter to match. Wiring modifications are made in this adapter only and shall be appropriately identified.
2. Unless otherwise specified herein, as indicated by an equipment model number, all audio line output impedances shall be less than or equal to 200 ohms and shall be capable of driving loads of 600 ohms. All audio line input impedances shall be greater than or equal to 600 ohms, and preferably ten times greater than the source impedance. Similarly, all microphone output impedances shall be less than or equal to 200 ohms and capable of driving loads of 1000 ohms or greater. All microphone input impedances shall be greater than or equal to 1000 ohms. The values specified here are measured rather than "nominal" values. The Systems Engineer must review exceptions to the above.
3. The polarity convention for connectors in balanced circuits shall be defined as follows. This polarity convention shall be clearly noted on each wiring diagram and in the manuals. The polarity and/or pin assignment schemes of all other connectors shall be detailed in the review drawings.

Connector Type	Shield	Hot (+)	Return (-)
XLR type connectors	Pin 1	Pin 2	Pin 3
One-quarter inch phone plugs and jacks	Sleeve	Tip	Ring

P. Video Interconnection

1. All BNC type video connectors shall be of high quality with a crimp style strain relief.
2. All other “line level” type video connectors shall be of high quality with the opposing mating surfaces composed of similar metal types.
3. Ensure that all Video transmission paths are properly terminated with the appropriate device.

4. Digital video to be terminated as per section P and Q below.

Q. Control and Data Interconnection

1. All data and control connectors shall be of high performance and quality.
2. All opposing mating surfaces shall be of similar metals.
3. All connections shall maintain telecommunication industry defined impedances for that particular circuit type and connection.
4. Ensure that all Data and Digital transmission paths are properly terminated with the appropriate device.

R. Fibre Optic Connections (Where specified)

1. All connectors shall be of premium quality and performance.
2. All terminations shall be made by field experienced personnel.
3. Only industry standard connection methods shall be permitted.

3.3 Physical Installation:

A. Firmly secure equipment in place unless requirements of portability dictate otherwise.

B. Mount permanently and/or provide a mechanical index insuring precise alignment of the projected image of optical projectors.

C. Provide adequate to support for fastenings and supports with a safety load factor of at least three.

D. Secure plumb and square boxes, equipment, etc.

E. Give consideration, not only to operational efficiency, but also to overall aesthetic factors in the installation of equipment and cable.

F. Cable Installation:

1. Mark cables, regardless of length, with permanent, non-handwritten number or letter cable markers within six inches of both ends. There shall be no unmarked cables in the system. Marking codes used on cables shall correspond to codes shown on drawings and/or run sheets.
2. Furnish screw-type terminal blocks, boards, strips, or connectors, for cables which interface with racks, cabinets, consoles, or equipment modules. Terminate wires terminating at screw-type terminals with crimp-on lugs. "Telephone-style" punch-down blocks are not acceptable for signal or data wiring.
3. Group cables according to the signals being carried. In order to reduce signal contamination, form separate groups for the following cables:
    a. Power cables
    b. Control cables
    c. Video cables
    d. Camera cables
    e. Audio cables carrying signals less than minus 20 dBm.
        1) Audio cables carrying signals between minus 20 dBm and plus 30 dBm.
    f. Audio cables carrying signals above plus 30 dBm.
    g. Broadband RF cables.

h. CAT-5/6 Data Cables

i. Fiber cables may be grouped with any of the other cable types.

G. As a general practice, run power cables, control cables, and high-level cables on the left side of an equipment rack as viewed from the rear. Run other cables on the right side of an equipment rack, as viewed from the rear.

H. Unless otherwise called for in these specifications and drawings, use the following cables, or their approved equals, in these systems:

1. Multi-mic Cable for stage Multi-Mic panels and stage snake boxes: Canare Star-Quad
2. Multi-Channel cable for portable console/rack systems: Canare MR202-32AT
3. Video cable for runs not exceeding 200 feet between active devices: Belden 8279
4. Video cable for runs exceeding 200 feet between active devices: Belden 8281
5. Plenum-rated video cable: Belden 88281
6. Microphone and line-level audio cable in conduit: Belden 1800B
7. Microphone and line-level audio cable for rack wiring: Belden 8761
8. Low-impedance speaker cable: Belden 8473
9. 70-volt speaker cable: Belden 8461
10. Plenum-rated 70-volt speaker cable: Belden 89740
11. RF cable for major vertical trunk runs: Jerrold CAC-6
12. RF cable for horizontal runs and outlet connections: Jerrold CAC-11
13. RF cable for head-end rack connections: CommScope F59-HEC
14. Camera cable: Belden 9232
15. Control cable: Belden 9740, 9156, 8690, 9157, 9159, 8691, 9161
16. Plenum-rated control cable: Belden 89740, 82489
17. Multi-Mode Fiber Optic Cable: CommScope LazrSPEED 150 Type 5M or equal
18. CAT–5/6 Cable Extron XTP DTP 24 or equal (shielded)

I. Cut cables (except video, camera and RGBS cables that must be cut to an electrical length) to the length dictated by the run. For equipment mounted in drawers or on slides, provide the interconnecting cables with a service loop of appropriate length.

J. Install no cable with a bend radius less than that recommended by the cable manufacturer.

K. Clearly identify cable terminated in a floor pocket with permanent, indelible labels within 6" of the cable connector. Provide strain relief for cables. Provide connectors with metal shell/casing. Provide a minimum of 3’ of free cable coiled in the floor pocket. Use spiral wrap to group similar cable types.

L. Use plenum-rated cable in plenum-rated spaces. Where plenum-rated cable is used, provide plenum-rated and approved tie-wraps and supports (Thomas & Betts #TYV525M, or approved equal).

M. Receptacle Plate Connectors:

1. Unless otherwise detailed herein, use the following types of panel receptacles on connection boxes, panels, plates, and wireways:

2. Audio (microphone): XLR (female) type, without locking tab, such as Switchcraft E3DSCB (No latch)
3. Audio input/output (line-level): 1/4 inch diameter tip/ring/sleeve type. Insulate from panel.
4. Audio (loudspeaker level): Neutrik Speak-on type. Insulate from panel.
5. Intercom: XLR-3 (male) type.
6. Video: BNC type. Insulate from panel.
7. RF: F type. Insulate from panel.
8. Fiber Optic: Neutrik Opticon
9. Camera: Digital CAT 6 with balun as indicated in the drawing.
10. Wired Remote Control (multiplex signal): XLR-6 (female) type.
11. R232-DB-9 connector Belden 9534
12. Wired Remote Control (relay contacts): Neutrik Neutricon.

N. Receptacle Plate Designation: Clearly engrave wall-mounted receptacle plates with alphanumeric identification of input type (i.e., mic, line, speaker, video etc) and corresponding audio or video patch field designation.

O. Patch Panel Assignments: Wire patch panels so that signal "sources" (outputs from) appear on the upper row of a row pair; and "loads" (inputs to) appear on the lower row of a row pair.

P. Patch Panel Designation Strips: Utilize alphanumeric identifications and descriptive information on audio and video patch panel designation strips. Number the jack positions in each horizontal row sequentially from left to right. Letter the horizontal jack rows sequentially from top to bottom. Include the alphanumeric identification of each jack on the functional block drawings, as well as on reproductions of these drawings which shall be mounted in an appropriate location near the patch bays.

Q. Grounding Procedures: In order to minimize problems resulting from improper grounding, and to achieve maximum signal-to-noise ratios, adhere to the following grounding procedures:

1. General: Because of the great number of possible variations in grounding systems, follow good engineering practice, as outlined above, and deviate from these practices only when necessary to minimize crosstalk and to maximize signal-to-noise ratios in the audio, video, and control systems.
2. System Grounds: Establish a single primary "system ground" for the systems in each particular area. Connect grounding conductors in that area to this primary system ground. Provide the system ground in the audio equipment rack for the area. The ground shall consist of a copper bar of sufficient size to accommodate secondary ground conductors.
3. Rack Ground:
    a. Connect the No.6 insulated copper wire connected to the earth ground to the primary system ground busbar in the Equipment Rack.
    b. Bond a No.12 TW stranded wire from the Equipment Rack frame to the primary system ground bus bar.
4. Equipment Grounds: Grounding methods used will be dependent upon individual equipment interconnection of chassis ground, circuit common, and power supply common within the units. Provide ground method for equipment types as follows:

Equipment having a 3-wire power cord with green wire of the power cord connected to chassis (Signal common is not internally connected to chassis): Make no connection from chassis ground to primary systems ground busbar in Equipment Rack.

Equipment having a 3-wire power cord with green wire of the power cord connected to chassis: Make no connection from chassis ground to primary system busbar, but do make connection with 14AWG insulated wire from circuit common to primary system ground busbar in Equipment Rack. Separate circuit common from chassis ground.

Equipment having a 2-wire power cord, no green wire, neutral is not tied to chassis, and circuit common is tied to chassis: Make connection from chassis to primary system ground busbar using 14AWG insulated wire.

R. Audio Cable Shields: Ground audio cable shields at one point only. There are no exceptions. For inter- and intra-rack wiring connect the shield at one end only, this shall be at the input to a device. The shield shall be lifted at the device output. For ungrounded portable equipment, such as microphones, the shield shall be connected at both ends but grounded at only one end.

S. Video Receptacles: Insulate video receptacles from the panel, outlet box, or wireway. Unless otherwise detailed herein, use insulated-from-panel type receptacles

3.4 MARKING

A. Equipment

1. Label all equipment as per drawings, so that every patch point can be immediately associated with a specific piece of equipment. That is to say the connector shall be identified with the device it is normally connected to.

2. All operating controls, switches, jacks, plugs shall be permanently marked in a clear logical manner utilizing engraved or screened letters, Brother P-Touch strips, or lamacoid label strips. Dymo or similar label strips or hand printed labels are not acceptable.

B. Wall Panels

1. Each wall panel including microphone, line, loudspeaker, video, intercom and control panel outlets shall be engraved and filled or silk screened to indicate the physical location of the outlet, its designation and the circuit numbers it terminates. Font shall be Bold Helvetica, 1/4 inch for panel location and designation and 3/16 inch for circuit numbers.

2. Alternatively, laser engraving and or die cut overlays may be used. The style or “look” must be uniform throughout the entire facility and must be submitted to the Systems Engineer for approval prior to manufacturing.

C. Jack fields and Rack Mounted Panels

1. Jack fields shall be labelled using CAD-generated label strips. The labels shall indicate the name and function or circuit number of each circuit. Font shall be Bold Helvetica, sized 1/8 inch or as space permits. Submit scheme to Systems Engineer for approval prior to manufacturing.

2. Patch field panels shall have a label strip as shown in the drawings, with a transparent retaining cover.

D. Wire

1. Without exception, all audio, video, data and control system cables to be individually, uniquely, logically and permanently marked by the PSVC Contractor. All wires shall be marked as documented on cable risers and system drawings. All spare wires shall be

marked "spare" at both ends and numbered consecutively. A "spare schedule" shall be provided on the risers indicating spare wire numbers, locations and types. Wires shall be marked with slip-on or other permanent type sleeves. Cloth or vinyl tape type markers are not adequate and should be replaced by a more permanent type such as Brady DATAB labels. All wiring shall be properly identified in junction boxes and at terminal blocks and wherever accessible.

3.5 EQUIPMENT PACKAGING

A. General

1. Unless otherwise noted, all equipment shall be securely mounted and fastened into racks using either the original manufacturer's rack mounting kits or custom fitted mounting kits. Unless otherwise noted, it shall be unacceptable to put equipment loosely on shelves or stacked on top of other rack-mounted equipment.

B. Panels

1. Blank and vent panels, shall be of consistent color and finish. Panels of four (4) or less Rack units high shall be used to enclose all remaining rack openings after equipment is installed. All panels shall have a black baked enamel or equal finish.

2. Provide perforated metal vent panels as required to implement rack ventilation scheme when convection cooling is required. If equipment is forced air-cooled blank panels between equipment shall be solid.

C. Portable Systems Racks (where specified)

1. Black steel complete with sides, top and back.

2. Cabinets shall not be more than 21-1/2" wide and 24 inches deep unless specified otherwise. Heights are as shown in the drawings. The top and bottom planes of the cabinet shall incorporate a recess on the rear edge to permit passage of cables while the cabinet is located against a surface to the rear.

3. Cabinets are to be fitted with convection-cooling vents; "PENN Manufacturing"-style spring-loaded self-retracting oversized handles; combination rack rails (punched to accommodate Hammond 10/32 clip nuts), front and back, as shown in the drawings, black enamel finish, drilled. External metallic fittings are not to be continuous (in contact) with rack rails or equipment. External metallic fittings are to be finished in black enamel.

4. Cabinets taller than 21 inches are to be fitted with four (4) high-quality, non-marring locking casters, 4 inches wheel diameter.

5. Cabinet finishes are to be of a common uniform stain, color to be "charcoal", with an overall dent and scratch resistant satin polyurethane finish. Provide color samples to the Architect for approval.

6. Provide an Approval drawing of this equipment for review prior to construction.

D. XLR and Multiconnector Panels (where specified)

1. Supply and install multichannel connector panels, as shown in the drawings. Provide balanced lines inside rack extending each channel to rack devices or patch bays. Except where lines are connected to patch bays, all cables to terminate to XLR of gender appropriate to direction of signal flow, including spares. Cut cable to harnessed length plus 24 inches.

2. Panels to be 19 inches by 2RU in height, of #16 C.R.S. folded back 1/2 inch top and bottom, with black enamel finish, having (24) XLRs rear-mounted in two rows of twelve (12) male and twelve (12) female respectively. Terminate the connectors to the multichannel connectors as shown in the drawings.

3. All panels regardless of type to have a self-contained integrated “tie-bar” to support cables at the rear of the panel.
4. All jack panel designations shall be silk-screened or include a label strip above each row.
5. Data ports shall be additionally designated with Neutrik or Redco colored panel connector washers, one color per signal as indicated in the drawings.

E. Installed (Fixed) Racks (where specified)

1. Where freestanding racks are required, provide modular steel equipment racks complete with pairs of formed dress panels, removable sides and a bottom dress skirt as required for a completed professional look and finish. Top panel shall be either solid or vented depending on equipment cooling requirements.
2. Where wall mounted racks are required, provide roll-out steel racks with locking front doors and louvered sides. Front door may be perforated depending on equipment cooling requirements.
3. Racks to have chip-resistant satin enamel finish, color black.
4. Each rack to have a permanent work light with switch mounted at rear top of rack to assist in service.
5. Each rack to have adjustable front and rear mounted rails tapped with #10-32 mounting holes.
6. Racks shall be fitted with isolated ground power distribution bars and ground busses (where isolated ground technical power is provided) as shown in the drawings Provide a standard 15A/120VAC duplex courtesy outlet at the front base of the rack uniquely identified as an isolated ground outlet.
7. Provide blank and or perforated metal vent panels, (dependent on cooling requirements) and install a one rack unit panel above and below each power amplifier if convection cooled. Provide blank and or perforated metal vent panels in all unused rack spaces at front of rack. Provide fine perforated metal security panels to cover all equipment with front mounted controls to prevent tampering with the final settings by inexperienced users.

F. Multichannel Cables (where specified)

1. All multichannel cables for audio, video and RF shall incorporate an individual jacket with shield for each circuit and an overall flexible outer jacket.
2. Where cables enter racks, secure the cable with Kellems-type strain relief grip mounted in a 16 C.R.S. panel, top and bottom folded back 1/2", finished in black enamel consistent with other panels in the system.
3. Provide an approval drawing of this equipment for approval prior to construction.

G. Line Level Patch bays (where specified)

1. As shown in the drawings and as required in this specification, supply and install TRS-type jack fields with hinged faces. Terminate the patch points to the multichannel connectors as shown in the drawings. Make normal connections between patch points as shown in the drawings and as directed by the Systems Engineer.
2. Cables shall be dress to the hinge area to allow smooth operation of the hinged face. Provide an approval drawing showing the cable harness scheme for approval prior to construction.
3. All jack panels shall be fitted with fully labelled designation strips contained in aluminum retaining channels permanently affixed above each row, except where designation strip impedes operation of the jack.
4. Provide "mults" and spares on jack field.

5. Supply TRS and or XLR patch cords 2 feet and 3 feet long or as required.

H. Power Amplifiers

1. Install power amplifiers in the appropriate equipment racks. Support the weight of the amplifier with angle brackets attached to the side rails of the equipment rack or with the rear support flanges provided with some amplifiers so that the front panel of the amplifier is not subjected to torsion. Attach a label, as specified elsewhere, to the faceplate of each amplifier to indicate its function.

I. Metal Work

1. All metal work shall be manufactured to a minimal dimensional tolerance of 0.63 mm (0.025 inches). All edges shall be smooth and free from burrs and other imperfections and shall have a minimum 0.005 inch radius. After manufacture, all panels shall have a permanent finish applied which is equal to or better than baked enamel and to the satisfaction of the Architect. Black anodized aluminum is acceptable. Finished panel surfaces shall be free of scratches, nicks, gouges and dents.
2. All connector panels will be black unless approved otherwise.
3. All aluminum panels shall be 0.125 inch stock. Anodized finishes shall be vertically brushed. All single, dual and triple gang plates shall have the same finish as the panels, except 70.7V attenuator plates which shall be vertically brushed stainless steel.

J. Fasteners

1. All exposed screws, such as rack and panel mounting hardware, shall be of quality finish, such as stainless steel or nickel plate. Standard Zinc plating is unacceptable. The fasteners shall be of premium grade Philips, Robertson, hex (Allen) head fasteners only. Black oxide finish is preferred. Nylon washers of equal color shall be used to protect the front face of all rack-mounted equipment.

K. Connector Mounting

1. XLR connectors shall be inserted into panels from the rear. Ensure that labelling strips do not interfere with operation of the connector release mechanisms. Holes shall be sized to suit male or female shell interchangeably.
2. On a given panel, all XLR latches shall be oriented to the top or to the left, as required.
3. On a given panel, all Speaker connectors shall be oriented with the large key up.

L. Multipin Connectors

1. All multipin connectors specified herein shall include a protective cap to protect the connector when not in use. Each cap shall be affixed to the same panel as the connector with a flexible chain. The chain shall not share fasteners with those used to mount the connector to the panel.
2. Where two mated multipin contacts are used both contacts shall be of the same material.
3. All inline multipin connectors shall contain an integrated cable strain relief.

M. Wireless Systems

1. The PSVC Contractor is responsible for the successful implementation of wireless systems specified herein.
2. The PSVC Contractor shall ensure that all RF systems whether part of a single system or multiple systems shall operate simultaneously without any system having an effect on an others performance. This includes both performance and communication systems.

3. The PSVC Contractor shall ensure that all connections and RF cables meet or exceed the manufacturer's recommendations.
4. All wireless antenna systems shall be tuned to the operating frequencies of the devices to which they are connected.
5. The PSVC Contractor shall ensure all devices in the RF signal path are tuned to the operating band for which they shall be used.
6. The PSVC Contractor shall consult with the manufacturer and provide a site survey to determine the best operating frequency range(s) for the facility. This information shall be documented and forwarded to the Systems Engineer prior to commissioning.

N. Power

1. Although all AC power cable and wiring installation on site is not the responsibility of the PSVC Contractor, the PSVC Contractor must verify that it is serving the needs of the systems and report any concerns to the Systems Engineer prior to the final acceptance testing.
2. The rack(s) shall be wired to dedicated AC circuits supplied by others for this purpose.
3. AC power distribution within the racks is the responsibility of the PSVC Contractor. In the case of fixed racks, this distribution shall be accomplished by means of junction boxes for supply termination and plug strips such as Wiremold, which shall be free of switches, fuses and circuit breakers (as found on some power bars, for example). AC circuits will be exclusively switched and protected by the AC Breaker in the Panelboard serving the rack.
4. All power cords of rack-mounted equipment shall be neatly bundled so that the plug can be immediately associated with a particular piece of equipment. If this is not possible, tag the plug to identify the equipment.

O. Grounding

1. It is imperative that the grounding methodology adopted be consistent throughout the entire installation.
2. Others shall permanently bond all conduits containing audio and visual systems wiring to the electrical safety ground.
3. All shielded signal cables to have their shields isolated from both the conduit system and any other shielded cables. Unless otherwise specified, shields shall be continuous from source to input points. Line level cable shields shall be connected at output (source) end only, with shields lifted at the input (load). Microphone wiring shall have continuous shields from the microphone outlet to the microphone patching point and, if passed through a normal jack, to a console microphone input, continuous to that point. This is to provide a safety ground for microphones and other equipment that users may come in contact with. No "doubling up" of ground points on multi-pin connectors or terminal blocks shall be allowed. Pin 1 on XLR type connectors shall not be connected to the connector case. Tie-line patches shall have continuous shield connections from one patch to another, with no permanent connection to the chassis ground.
4. All racks shall be isolated from conduit, building steel and all other conducting elements. Racks shall be grounded only by the isolated ground wire, which accompanies the power wiring.
5. All portable electronic equipment will exclusively receive its technical ground via the isolated equipment ground conductor run to all AC outlets.

P. Rigging

1. Suspend all system elements, as required, using load-rated metallic fittings, to achieve a designed load safety factor of eight. All fasteners shall be minimum grade eight steel.

2. All custom built rigging fixtures used for overhead suspension shall be stamped by a structural Engineer having jurisdiction in the province of that installation.
3. Provide review drawings detailing proposed suspension methods.

3.6 TESTING AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. General

1. The intent of tests performed is to ensure that a fully functional and operational system is delivered to the client, which reflects best industry practices. To this end we supply this document as a guideline. It is not the intention of the Systems Engineer to direct the PSVC Contractor to verify all manufacturers' performance specifications on an individual component level unless it is a necessary process to identify and resolve a fault in the system. The Systems Engineer will carry out system performance verification as part of the commissioning process using a random check method. All test set-ups and methods employed by the PSVC Contractor must be reproducible.
2. These adjustments and tests are to be completed by the PSVC Contractor using test equipment provided by the PSVC Contractor at his or her expense.
3. The Systems Engineer may elect to perform additional testing during the system commissioning, with the assistance of the PSVC Contractor.
4. Allow five days on site, with two technicians equipped with necessary tools and test equipment to adjust audio systems at the direction of the Systems Engineer.

B. Test Equipment

1. The PSVC Contractor shall have as a minimum the following test equipment available on site during testing and performance acceptance:
    a. Sound-level meter (peak and average reading) c/w calibrated microphone and calibrator.
    b. Low distortion audio signal generator capable of sine wave, square wave, swept sine and pink noise output. Include a complete selection of generator output to standard audio adapters.
    c. Digital dual trace oscilloscope, minimum 20 MHz; with selection of audio-to-BNC adapters and proper test probes in good working condition.
    d. High quality VOM capable of accurate AC measurement to 10 KHz.
    e. Impedance measurement device with digital display such as Gold Line ZM-1.
    f. CD player (includes cables and audio interface adaptors).
    g. Portable Random-noise generator.
    h. Systems Engineer will require a Dual Channel FFT measurement system such as EAW SmaartLive® or equivalent with all necessary interface electronics, adapters and cables. System should include the computer and measurement microphones with stand(s). During testing the PSVC Contractor shall have on hand at least one technician with a proficient understanding of the measurement equipment used. Other measurement methods will not be acceptable.
    i. "Pulse" type phase checker generator/receiver set.
    j. Include all necessary cables and specialty adapters.
2. Non-professional test equipment or "home-built kit" gear shall not be acceptable.

C. Documentation

1. As part of the shop-drawing package, submit forms, having the form of a checklist, of the testing activities to be undertaken for review and approval by the Consultant.
2. Prior to acceptance testing, forward to the Consultant a complete report on all testing specified in this section and referenced to it by section number. The report shall indicate that the systems conform to this specification and that the installation is complete in all details and is ready for inspection. The Contractor's Installation Supervisor shall sign the report.
3. At the time of submitting the test report, submit a list of equipment to be used on-site during system commissioning for the use of the Consultant and the Contractor.
4. Supply a list of all equipment in a tabular format that shall include model, manufacturer, serial number and location installed.
5. Test all wiring for continuity as well as shorts between conductors and shields. These tests shall also confirm isolation between all conductors, including shields and their associated back boxes or conduit systems through which they pass.
6. Ensure all industry standard connections and wire color codes are followed.
7. Test all wiring in raceway and conduits. Test results shall be documented using a report format based on project cable run lists.
8. Each cable must be accurately documented, and the Quality Control Technician is to initial the report for each area of testing. Submit photocopies of the resulting document as part of the test report.
9. Equipment that combines test functions in one sequence may be used. However, these devices must have the ability to test and display complete isolation as described.

D. Testing of Power, Cable Systems and Isolated Ground Integrity

1. The Contractor is responsible for ensuring the Electrical Contractor has installed a tested fully functioning electrical system. Once the Electrical Contractor has performed their system tests and notified the Contractor in writing that the electrical system is ready for use, verify Technical Power System ground integrity.
2. THESE TESTS MUST BE PERFORMED BEFORE EQUIPMENT IS CONNECTED and POWER APPLIED.
3. Test all AC outlets for correct phase, neutral and ground wiring.
4. With power removed from racks and system, MAINS POWER SWITCHED OFF AND LOCKED DOWN, perform a ground isolation test to verify isolated ground system integrity.
5. Test each wire in raceway, conduit within racks, and document results using a report format as described previously. Technician is to initial chart while testing. Submit photocopies of the resulting document as part of the test report.

E. Audio Systems

1. All testing of loudspeakers to be installed overhead should be tested thoroughly prior to installation. It is important that all rigging systems are inspected for structural integrity and that all fasteners are secured. Once installed, the loudspeaker will again need to be tested for proper polarity.
2. Verify that all audio systems are free of audible hums, buzzes, transient oscillations, clicks, thumps or other distortions in all configurations and phases of operation. Correct all deficiencies.

3. An oscilloscope with minimum bandwidth of 20 MHz and loudspeaker monitor shall be used to verify that the systems' outputs are free of spurious oscillation and RF pick-up. This shall be done at various lighting dimmer settings in each room.
4. Perform and document polarity testing to ensure that all portions of the audio system, including all microphone and tie-lines, loose cables, wiring, loudspeakers, loudspeaker wiring and cables are in-polarity.
5. Using broadband music, drive each audio system to one third of the rated output for 1 hour and ensure that the equipment ventilation is adequate to prevent front panels from becoming too hot to touch.
6. Using music, drive each system to its maximum long-term sound pressure level and eliminate any buzzing, audible distortion, rattles, and/or other undesirable noises. Repeat this procedure but substituting a slow sine wave sweep from 20 to 8000 Hz at about 15 dB below system rated output.
7. Adjust audio systems at the direction of the Systems Engineer.
8. Adjust gain of line level systems components to nominal unity. Assume console output to be +4dB. Using pink noise and dual channel FFT analyzer with calibrated microphone(s), or other approved measurement system, equalize the sound reinforcement system to flat, within the nominal flat frequency band of the loudspeaker system. Optimize the signal processing and amplifier gains for best system signal-to-noise ratio and consistent amplitude throughout the audience seating areas.
9. To ensure proper gain structures throughout the system perform an end-to-end system test with amplifiers turned off. Use an oscilloscope to measure the max output of the first gain stage(s) and compare those results with the final gain stage at the input of the amplifiers. Ensure that no distortion is introduced into the signal path at maximum levels.

F. Systems

1. Verify wireless microphones (if specified) are free of drop out and interference within the intended areas of operation. Change frequencies and/or relocate transmitters/antennas if necessary, to correct such problems.

G. Hearing Assistance System

1. Verify Hearing Assistance systems are free of drop out and interference within the intended areas of operation. Change frequencies and/or relocate transmitters/antennas if necessary, to correct such problems. Verify operation of all headsets and receivers.

H. Testing Control and Switching Systems

1. Verify each path of the switching and muting equipment. Verify logic functions.
2. Confirm communication and control functions between panels and switchboards for all controllable devices and sub systems.
3. Verify all camera lens and pan/tilt remote control functions.
4. Confirm software operational logic is as expected.

I. Testing Video System

1. Test Equipment Required:
    a. Waveform monitor.
    b. Test signal generator.
    c. Cable continuity meter

d. Multimeter

2. Check all video lines (including trunks) for continuity and shield integrity and confirm end-to-end specifications of typical paths.
3. Perform equipment alignment and timing calibration.
4. Ensure that all cables that are part of a set of analogue component video signals (such as RGB or RGBHV) are of the same electrical length.
5. Optimize and align viewing characteristics of monitors, projectors and screens.
   a. Use a color bar test signal as a source for NTSC video.
6. Check and adjust distribution amplifiers gain and cable length equalization.
   a. Use a Multiburst test signal as a source. Measure gain and frequency response on a Waveform Monitor; Adjust Video DA gain to unity and cable equalization for a flat frequency response to 6MHz at desired distance.
7. Configure all switchers and controls with basic operational set-ups. Confirm switcher continuity by testing path and switching performance from all inputs to one output, then from one output to all inputs.
8. Perform any other tests and adjustments recommended by the equipment manufacturers to optimize the overall performance.
9. Perform end-to-end tests on several typical paths.
10. Check all paths for differential gain and differential phase.
11. Document all tests performed with results, identifying signal paths, test signals and test conditions etc. to ensure repeatability of future tests.

J. Testing CCD Color Cameras

1. Test video levels.
2. Perform white and black balance and all other manufacturer recommended set-up procedures.
3. Perform all manufacturer recommended adjustments to optimize picture quality.
4. Verify PTZ operation, where provided.

K. Testing RF Systems

1. Check all RF lines for continuity and shield integrity and confirm end-to-end specifications of typical paths.
2. Test RF transmission levels.
   a. Adjust all Modulators RF outputs to their nominal level (+60dBmV typical).
   b. Terminate all unused RF Splitter outputs into 75-Ohm.
   c. RF drops (TV Receiver locations) should read 0 to 10dBmV. Adjust all RF Amplifiers' gain and respective attenuation pads accordingly.
3. Test complete RF systems with all other known local RF transmission systems operating. Check for cross talk and interference between systems.
4. Verify that a video signal, with associated audio, can be modulated at all the frequencies selected on the modulator.
5. Verify picture quality at each drop point by connecting a TV receiver and observing the picture.
6. Optimize and confirm alignment.

7. Confirm all patch points.
8. Perform any other tests and adjustments recommended by the equipment manufacturers to optimize the overall performance.

L. Test Distributed Audio System

1. Remove distributed audio line from output of distribution amplifiers.
2. Connect an impedance meter (Gold Line ZM-1) to the distributed loudspeaker line.
3. Using the meter, verify the total load of the distributed line. The line load shall not exceed the intended design limits.
4. The PSVC Contractor shall include test results in the system manual.

M. Digital Audio Signal Systems

1. Test Digital Audio signals for proper operation between devices. Ensure no additional noise is introduced into the analogue audio and digital signal paths when all devices are interconnected for normal operation.
2. Ensure all signals throughout the digital audio path are functioning at designed levels. Unless otherwise specified all DSP components shall function at +4dbu nominal with 0db FS at +22dbu.

N. Control Application

1. Verify operation of control system.
2. Ensure correct operation of all system presets.
3. Test all interface controls for proper operation.
4. Submit a copy of the control or DSP program and operator GUI to Systems Engineer prior to commissioning.

SCHEDULE 1 - SCHEDULE OF EQUIPMENT

Quantity	Description	Suggested Manufacturer	Suggested Model
Lot	Plates and Panels	Custom	See drawings
1	Lectern Unit	Oklahoma Sound	#800 Sound Lectern w/ LWM-6
1	Mixer	Allen & Heath	SQ-7
1	Dante Expansion Card	Allen & Heath	SQ Dante
3	Input	Allen & Heath	DT168
3	Rack mount kit	Allen & Heath	
1	Stage Box Input	Whirlwind	Medusa 16 send 4 return stage box to multi-pin
1	Multipin to fanout	Whirlwind	Custom
1	Portable wireless rack complete with sides/top, etc. and locking door.	Mid Atlantic	PTRK 14-26
1	Pull out 44ru rack	Mid Atlantic	WR-44-42
3	Rack Drawer 4ru	Mid Atlantic	TD5
1	Vent 1ru	Mid Atlantic	Vent
1 lot	Rack top and sides	Mid Atlantic	
1	Rack mount UPS	Furman	F1500 UPS

Quantity	Description	Suggested Manufacturer	Suggested Model
4	Brush grommet panel	Mid Atlantic	BR-1
2	Rack mount power conditioners	Furman	PI Pro
6	10 port Network POE Switch	Cisco	SG200-10FP
1	Wireless access point/router	Cisco-Linksys	E4200
1	Dante output adapter 2 channel	Audinate	AVIO
1	2 in/4 out USB interface	Focusrite	Clarett 2 Pre USB
1	Desk for mix position	HSR	High Rise Extended Roll top in dark oak finish
1	Floorbox	FSR	FSR 600 with carpet lid
2	Rolling height adjustable chairs with arms		
Assisted Listening			
32	Basic DSP Receiver	LR 3200	
8	Neck loop lanyard	LA-430	
32	Headphones/Earbuds	LA-405	
1	72 Mhz transmitter	LT-800-072	
1	Shot gun microphone	BP4073	
5	Pack of 12 earbud covers	LA-163	
1	Custom Microphone Hanger		
1	Phantom power supply	ART	PHANTOM I
Intercom			
1	Main Station	Clear Com	MS-702
8	Wired beltpacks	Clear Com	RS-702
8	Y-cable splitters for A/B channels	Clear Com	YC-36
8	Headsets	Clear Com	CC-300
8	15' XLR Cables		
8	25' XLR Cables		
5	50' XLR Cables		
lot	Required accessories		
Patchbay&Cables			
10	3’ CAT 5/6 patch cables		
10	6’ CAT 5/6 patch cables		
1	24 port CAT 6 patchbay	Bitree	
10	3’ long NL4 patch bay cables for amp patch		
30	Audio patch cables		
3	patch cord hanger racks		
3	Custom boxes with faceplates as shown in the drawings		

Quantity	Description	Suggested Manufacturer	Suggested Model
lot	Required accessories		
Processing			
1	A/D converters/DSP Processor	Yamaha	DME 24N
1	Dante Expansion Card	Yamaha	Dante MY16 AUD
Lot	Ethernet cable for network		
Paging			
1	Paging processor	QSC QSYS	Core 110F
1	2 channel 70v amplifier	QSC	CX-302
7	70v ceiling or wall mount loudspeakers	JBL	Control 25AV or 24CT
7	70V volume control	Atlas	AT100
2	Paging Stations	QSC	PS-1600H
Speakers and Amplifiers			
6	Left & right main speakers powered	JBL	VRX932LAP
3	Center cluster loudspeakers powred	JBL	VRX932LAP
2	Left & right subwoofers	JBL	VRX918SP
2	Aiming bar	Polar Focus	Z-beam Hawk
3	Speaker brackets	JBL	RHANG-101LA
Lot	Rigging hardware		
8	Powered monitor loudspeakers	JBL:	PRX812
4	XLR M to XLR M adapters		
4	XLR F to XLR F adapters		
8	¼” to XLR adapters balanced	HOSA	
4	M 1/8” stereo to 2 XLRF adapter	HOSA	
4	F 1/8” stereo to 2 XLR M adapter	HOSA	
2	USB to 3.5mm headphone adapter	Turtle Beach	
6	25-foot black extension cords 14ga		
2	Power strip / surge protector 10 outlets, black		
6	20' XLR to XLR speaker cables		
6	40' XLR to XLR speaker cables		
6	60' XLR to XLR speaker cables		
1	Audio Recorder	Tascam	SD-20M
Video			
1	8x8 Matrix Switch	Crestron	MD8x8 CPU3
8	Input cards	Crestron	DMC-4Z-C
1	Output cards	Crestron	DMC-STRO
3	Output cards	Crestron	DMC-4KZ-CO-HD
9	Wall plate transmitters	Crestron	
3	Wall plate receivers	Crestron	DM-RMC-4K-100-C-1G

Quantity	Description	Suggested Manufacturer	Suggested Model
1	Portable transmitter	Crestron	DM-TX-201-C
1	Portable receiver	Crestron	DM-RMC-4KZ-100-C
1	Blu ray player	Tascam	BD-MP1
5	1080 HD PTZ cameras	PTZ Optics	PT30X-NDI
1	1080 Projector WUXGA 13,000 lumen	Panasonic	PT-MZ13KU 3LCD
1	Projector lens	Panasonic	ET-EMT700
1	Electric projection screen w/ 4 feet backdrop matt white screen	Draper	Paragon Series E
1	Electric screen push button control	Draper	
1	Mounting kit for attachment to batten	Custom	
1	RS232 interface to screen motor	Draper	
1	HDMI audio de-embedder	Atlona	AT-HD570
Control System			
1	Processor	Crestron	AV-3
2	RS232 expansion cards	Crestron	CCOM-3
3	Touchpanel w/ desktop mount	Crestron	TSW -760
2	12 port POE switches	Cisco	SG200-10FP
1	19” flat panel display for use with laptop	Dell	Suitable for arm mounting
1	Video capture, control and edit software installed on laptop below	vMix	Pro
1	1 gaming laptop AMD Ryzen 7 4800H GTX 1660 TI or better graphic card minimum 15” display minimum 16GB Ram minimum 500GB SSD drive	Asus	Tuff Gaming A15
1	Stand for holding Surface at the top of the console.	Allen and Heath	Detachable stand
Lot	Mouse, HDMI cable, power supply, etc.		
Microphone package			
10	Lavalier Condenser (medium flesh)	Counryman	B3
4	Pressure Zone Microphone	Crown	PZM-6D
2	Condenser Microphone	AKG	C414
2	Dynamic Microphone	Shure	SM58
4	Choir mics	Audio-Technica	Pro-45
1	Piano mic kit	DPA	4099
1	Drum mic kit	Shure	DMK 57-52
4	Active Direct Box	BSS	AR-133
2	Passive Direct Boxes	Radial	ProD2
20	1 channel Wireless package	Shure	QLX-D124/85
5	Vertical Mic Stands	Atlas	MS12CE
3	Boom arms	Atlas	PB21XEB
1	20 XLR bundle cable to 20xlr for wire-		

Quantity	Description	Suggested Manufacturer	Suggested Model
	less mic rack		

8	25’ long Cat 6 ethernet cables Ether-con/Ethercon	ProCo	
8	50’ long CAT 6 ethernet cables Ethercon to Ethercon	ProCo	
4	100’ long CAT 6 ethernet cables Ethercon to Ethercon	ProCo	
10	10' XLR Mic Cables M/F		
20	25' XLR Mic Cables M/F		
20	50' XLR Mic Cables M/F		
10	75' XLR Mic Cables M/F		

END OF SECTION

END OF SECTION 274116.61

L:\17156-DOBBS FERRY\17156-99-2020-07-02-CD ISSUE\01-SPECS\17156-27 41 16.61-INTEGRATED AUDIO-VIDEO SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT.DOCX

SECTION 28 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section and to all of Divisions 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements applicable to components and systems included in Electric Contract.

B. Products Installed but Not Furnished Under This Section

1. Make electrical connections to equipment shown on Drawings and furnished by other Contractors. Obtain approved wiring diagrams and location drawings for roughing in and final connections from Contractor furnishing equipment.

1.3 REFERENCES

A.	AIA	American Institute of Architects
B.	ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act
C.	AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
D.	ANSI	American National Standards Institute
E.	ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials International
F.	IBC	International Building Code
G.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The)
H.	IES	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
I.	NEC	National Electrical Code
J.	NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
K.	NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
L.	NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
M.	UL	Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. “Existing”: Equipment depicted on Drawings with an “E” designation denotes existing equipment to remain.

B. "Move": Equipment depicted on Drawings with an "M" designation denotes existing equipment to relocate. Disconnect equipment, remove circuitry to a point beyond demolition and tag for reuse, store equipment for reuse and reinstall as specified in Contract Documents. Modify/extend circuitry to new equipment locations and reconnect. The Contractor is responsible for protecting equipment from damage during removal, storage and reinstallation.

C. "Replace": Equipment depicted on Drawings with an "R" designation denotes existing equipment to replace. Refer to relevant Project Manual Specification for additional information and requirements.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Inspection of Existing Systems: Inspect each existing system scheduled for modification in presence of Authorized Owner's Representative and issue a deficiency report to Owner and Architect listing conditions found prior to any removals, relocations, or additions. Modified systems include (but are not limited to):

1. Power distribution.
2. Power generation system.
3. Lighting.
4. Theatrical Lighting system.
5. Fire alarm system.
6. Clock system.
7. Computer network system.
8. Telephone system.
9. Sound system.
10. Public Address System
11. Television system
12. Security system.
13. Emergency lighting.
14. Lightning protection system.

B. Design Requirements - Provide complete systems, properly tested, balanced, and ready for operation including necessary details, items and accessories although not expressly shown or specified, including (but not limited to):

1. Wiring and raceway for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

2. Electrical devices and equipment for work specified in Project Manual and shown on Drawings.

3. Systems included, but not limited to:

   a. Electrical distribution.
   b. Electrical connections.
   c. Power generation system.
   d. Lighting.
   e. Fire alarm system.
   f. Clock system.
   g. Computer network system.

h. Telephone system.
i. Sound systems.
j. Public Address System
k. Television system.
l. Security system.
m. Emergency lighting.
n. Lightning protection system.

C. Electric Layouts: Arrange panels; disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, equipment, raceways, and similar components neatly, orderly and symmetrically. Provide 3/4-inch fire treated, gray painted plywood backboards for surface mounted panels, disconnect switches, enclosed breakers, and similar equipment. Arrangements shown on Drawings are diagrammatic only; provide and adjust raceways, wiring, and other components as required.

D. Power Interruptions and Scheduled Outages: Coordinate scheduling of all power interruptions and outages with Owner. Confirm with Owner prior to interruption of power, which building systems are considered critical and must remain operational during the interruption. If a scheduled power outage is to extend beyond one standard workday, provide temporary power to operate critical building systems (including, but not limited to fire alarm system, security system, building access control system, and building energy management control system).

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General Division 28 submittal requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.

2. Product Data: Submit product data for items listed in individual technical section. Clearly identify manufacturer, pertinent design, function, materials, construction and performance data specifically addressing specification description and Contract Document requirements of item. Strike out products that are not applicable to item being submitted, where more than one product is indicated on manufacturer product literature.

   a. Cover Sheet: Attach cover sheet, identified in Section 01 33 00, to Product Data of each item submitted. Provide cover sheet for only one type of item with related accessories, equipment with related components. Do not combine unrelated items under the same cover sheet.

   b. Specified Equivalent Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information including product literature, technical specifications and descriptions, performance data and, and similar items to demonstrate compatibility with Basis-of-Design Equipment as specified in the "Part 2 – Products" of each technical section.

3. Shop Drawings: Submit detailed drawings for electrical equipment layouts, showing exact sizes and locations for approval before beginning work.

a. Do not proceed with installation of systems in each area until agreement is reached with all concerned on exact arrangements for each room or area, unless otherwise directed by Architect. If Contractor proceeds prior to resolving conflicts, Contractor shall modify installed Work as required to permit other systems to proceed with a coordinated installation.

b. Specified Equivalent Drawings: Submit detailed drawings of proposed Specified Equivalents, indicating proposed installation of equipment and showing maintenance clearances, required service removal space other pertinent revisions to arrangement and configuration shown in Contract Documents.

4. Samples: On all submittals, indicate standard factory color and factory finish surfaces. Where more than one color is available, selection will be made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sleeves and sleeve seals. Include rated capacities, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1. Penetration firestopping materials.
2. Penetration firestopping assembly drawings.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Codes and Standards: Comply with applicable Federal, State and local building and electrical codes, laws, ordinances, and regulations, and comply with applicable NFPA, National Electrical Code and utility company requirements and regulations. Provide Underwriters Laboratories Seal on all materials.

2. Permits and Inspections: Obtain approvals, tests, and inspections required by Architect, Engineer, local electrical inspector, agent or agency specified in Project Manual, or National, State, or local codes and ordinances.

a. Schedule electrical inspection by an agency acceptable to the local authority having jurisdiction and submit final inspection certificate to Architect.
b. Furnish materials and labor necessary for tests and pay costs associated with tests and inspections.
c. Conduct tests under load for load balancing and where required by codes, regulations, ordinances, or technical Specification.

3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Storage and Protection:

1. Take precautions to store materials and products to protect finishes and not permit dust and dirt to penetrate equipment.
2. Replace equipment damaged beyond reasonable repair as required by Architect.
3. Refinish any equipment with marks, stains, scratches, dents, and other aesthetic damage that doesn't impede operation of equipment as required by Architect.

1.10 COORDINATION OF WORK

A. New Construction:

1. Openings, Chases, Recesses, Sleeves, Lintels and Bucks (required for admission of Electric Contract systems and components): Coordinate requirements with General Contractor for inclusion in General Contract. Furnish necessary information (e.g. locations and sizes) to General Contractor in ample time for installation of systems and components included in Electric Contract.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to Contractor responsible for General Work anchor bolts required for Electric Contract construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Contract.

3. Locate settings, check locations as installation in General Contract progresses, and provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

B. Existing Construction:

1. Unless otherwise specified, employ Contractor responsible for General Work for all cutting, patching, repairing and replacing of general work required for installation of systems and components included in Electric Work. Secure approval from Architect's representative before cutting.

2. Anchor Bolts: Deliver to Contractor responsible for General Work anchor bolts required for Electric Work construction that are to be installed in construction included in General Contract. Provide templates or holding fixtures as required to maintain proper accuracy.

3. Access Doors: Provide access doors shown on Drawings, or as required for access to pull boxes, junction boxes, relays and other electrical devices requiring periodic inspection, adjustment or maintenance, where located above or within inaccessible walls or ceilings, and including cutting and patching of adjacent walls and ceilings to match existing materials and finishes.

1.11 ALTERATION PROCEDURES

A. In locations where existing devices are indicated to be disconnected and removed and existing power circuit or communications cable is not scheduled to be reused:

1. Remove circuit conductors back to source.

2. Modify panel directory for that circuit.

3. Remove all existing exposed and unexposed accessible raceway.

4. Provide blank cover plates or wall infill (as indicated on plans) and as described below:

   a. For single gang and multi-gang switch boxes in public or occupied spaces; stainless steel coverplates.

   b. For single gang and multi-gang boxes in un-occupied spaces; stainless steel, galvanized steel or PVC coverplates.

   c. For boxes larger than standard switch boxes in public or occupied spaces; remove existing box and provide wall infill, matching existing sub-surface and finished surface conditions. Paint wall to match surrounding finishes.

   d. For boxes larger than standard switch boxes in un-occupied spaces; 18 gage galvanized sheet metal coverplate with machined edges. Prime and paint to match surrounding finish conditions.

5. Patch and paint existing walls where disturbed by the electrical work.

B. In locations where existing devices are to remain in place, ensure circuits feeding such devices remain operational. Modify existing circuits as required to allow new construction to occur and to maintain necessary circuitry to existing devices for complete and proper operation.

C. In locations where entire existing system is being removed or modified:

1. Refer to individual system specification sections for documentation and inspection requirements prior to any alteration work on any system.
2. Take all necessary measures to ensure that down time will not compromise safety.
3. Notify Owner, Architect and other Contractors not less than 2 weeks prior to interruptions in service.
4. Coordinate work schedule to minimize duration of system outage during hours when building is occupied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements for sealants in fire rated penetrations specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping”.

B. Submit Manufacturers Product Data Sheets for each type of product selected. Certify that Firestop Material is free of asbestos and lead paint and complies with local regulations.

1. Certification by firestopping manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) and are nontoxic to building occupants.

C. Submit system design listings, including illustrations from qualified testing and inspection agency that is applicable to each firestop configuration.

D. Submit a project specific Penetration Firestopping Schedule indicating where each firestop configuration will be used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Do not cut waterproofed floors or walls for admission of any equipment or materials and do not pierce any structural members without written permission from Architect.

B. Furnish and install sleeves, inserts, panels, raceways, boxes, and similar infrastructure., ahead of general construction work and maintain Contractor personnel at Site during installation of general construction work to be responsible for and to maintain these items in position.

C. Unless otherwise noted elsewhere in Contract Documents, bear expense of cutting, patching, repairing or replacing of work of other trades made necessary by any fault, error or tardiness on part of Electrical Contract or damage done by Electric Contract. Employ and pay Contractor whose work is involved.

3.2 DEMONSTRATION OF COMPLETE ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Thoroughly demonstrate and instruct Owner's designated representative in care and operation of electrical systems and equipment furnished and installed in Electric Contract.

1. System Operator: Maintain competent operator at building for at least 2 days in 2 consecutive weeks after Owner takes occupancy of major parts of building to operate systems and equipment in presence of Owner's representative.

2. Factory Representative: In addition to demonstration and instruction specified above, provide technically qualified factory representatives from manufacturers of major equipment, to train Owner's representatives in care and operation of applicable products as specified in applicable technical sections of Division 26.

3. Coordinate and schedule time and place of all training through the Architect at the Owner’s convenience.

4. Submit letters attesting to satisfactory completion of instructions, including date of completion of instruction, names of persons in attendance, and signature of Owner’s authorized representative.

5. Architect's representative must be present when Owner's representatives participate in instruction.

6. The following equipment and systems are included:

    a. Emergency generator.
    b. Fire alarm system.
    c. Clock and program system.
    d. Sound systems.
    e. Computer network systems.
    f. Telephone system.
    g. Security system.
    h. Lightning protection system.

3.3 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping according to the requirements specified in Section 07 84 13 “Penetration Firestopping.”

B. Applied Fireproofing:

1. Coordinate the installation of hangers, supports and accessories from the structural steel with the fireproofing installation. Install all hangers and supports prior to installation of fireproofing.

2. Repair or replace existing fireproofing removed as a part of Electrical Work installation.

    a. Employ the services of an approved fireproofing contractor to repair or replace the fireproofing by patching any areas that have been removed or damaged due to the installation of work after the completion of the fireproofing.

C. Repaired or replacement fireproofing shall match the fireproofing adjacent to the repaired area. All warranties shall be maintained.

END OF SECTION 28 05 00

SECTION 28 31 11 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM AND VOICE NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Scope:

1. At the Springhurst Elementary School and Dobbs Ferry JR/SR High School, extend existing fire alarm system as required to incorporate fire alarm work shown on the floor plans. At Springhust Elementary School relocate the existing remote annunciator and re connect to FACP. Provide programming for all new devices.

B. Section Includes:

1. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
2. System smoke detectors.
3. Notification appliances.
4. Magnetic door holders.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Comply with New York State Uniform Fire Prevention & Building Code.

B. Comply with U.S. Department of Justice – American Disabilities Act.

C. Acoustical Society of America (ASA)

1. ASA S3.2 Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech Over Communications Systems.

D. National Fire Protection Association Standards:

1. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
2. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm Code.
3. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.

E. Provide system and components listed by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) for use in fire protective signaling system under following standards as applicable:

1. UL 864 - UOJZ, APOU Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
2. UL 268 - Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

3. UL 268A - Smoke Detectors for Duct Applications.
4. UL 228 - Door Holders for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
5. UL 464 - Audible Signaling Appliances.
6. UL 1971 - Visual Signaling Appliances.
7. UL 38 - Manually Activated Signaling Boxes.
8. UL 1481 - Power Supplies for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. LED: Light-emitting diode.
B. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
C. LOC: Local Operating Console.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Non-coded, UL-certified addressable system, with automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors and multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

B. This work includes completion of design and providing a new, complete, fire alarm and voice notification system as described herein and on the contract drawings for the South Hangar (Plattsburgh Satellite Campus). Include in the system wiring, raceways, pull boxes, terminal cabinets, outlet and mounting boxes, control equipment, alarm, and supervisory signal initiating devices, alarm notification appliances, supervising station fire alarm system transmitter, and other accessories and miscellaneous items required for a complete operating system even though each item is not specifically mentioned or described. Provide systems complete and ready for operation.

C. Provide equipment, materials, installation, workmanship, inspection, and testing in strict accordance with the required and advisory provisions of NFPA 70, NFPA 72, except as modified herein. The system layout on the drawings show the intent of coverage and are shown in suggested locations. Submit plan view drawing showing device locations, terminal cabinet locations, junction boxes, other related equipment, conduit routing, wire counts, circuit identification in each conduit, and circuit layouts for all floors. Drawings shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 170. Final quantity, system layout, and coordination are the responsibility of the Contractor. A single fire alarm control panel is indicated with terminal cabinets at each floor, at each riser location.

D. Provide Common Intelligibility Scale (CIS) and sound pressure level calculations with the shop drawing submittal to confirm that intelligibility requirements will be met. CIS calculations shall be done with computer software intended for that purpose.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level IV minimum.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer′s documentation for all components of proposed fire alarm system required to demonstrate compliance with specified requirements, including (but not limited to) type, size rating, style, catalog number, manufacturer name, photograph, and catalog data sheet for each component.

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.

2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits with the system operating on battery power, with battery voltage to the system at 20 volts.

3. Include battery-size calculations.

4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.

5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

6. Include complete one-line riser diagrams showing all equipment locations and sizes, and point-by-point wiring diagram with type and number of all conductors.

7. Submit detailed drawing of FAVN Panel(s) including all module/component locations and panel point-to-point wiring diagrams including all field circuit termination points.

8. Submit floor plan layout of Graphic Display Panel indicating building zones, room numbers, and “You Are Here” location. Orient building floor plan on graphic to the location of person viewing the installed Graphic Display Panel, i.e. the direction the viewer is facing shall be toward the top of the graphic display.

D. Qualification Data:

1. Supervisor

a. NICET Fire Alarm Technicians to perform the installation of the system. A NICET Level 4 Fire Alarm Technician shall supervise the installation of the fire alarm system/voice notification system. The Fire Alarm technicians supervising the installation of equipment shall be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

2. Technician

    a. NICET Level III Fire Alarm Technicians with a minimum of four years of experience utilized to install and terminate fire alarm/voice notification devices, cabinets and panels. The Fire Alarm technicians installing the equipment shall be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

3. Installer

    a. Fire Alarm installer with a minimum of two years of experience utilized to assist in the installation of fire alarm/voice notification devices, cabinets and panels]. An electrician shall be allowed to install wire, cable, conduit and backboxes for the fire alarm system/voice notification system. The Fire Alarm installer shall be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

4. Test Personnel

    a. Fire Alarm Technicians with a minimum of eight years of experience (NICET Level III or , IV) utilized to test and certify the installation of the fire alarm/voice notification devices, cabinets and panels. The Fire Alarm technicians testing the equipment shall be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

5. Manufacturer's Representative

    a. The fire alarm and voice notification equipment manufacturer's representative shall be present for the connection of wiring to the control panel. The Manufacturer's Representative shall be an employee of the manufacturer with necessary technical training (NICET Level III or, [IV])on the system being installed.

6. Manufacturer

    a. Components shall be of current design and shall be in regular and recurrent production at the time of installation. Provide design, materials, and devices for a protected premises fire alarm system, complete, conforming to NFPA 72, except as otherwise or additionally specified herein.

E. Regulatory Requirements

1. Requirements for Fire Protection Service

    a. Equipment and material shall have been tested by UL and listed in UL Fire Prot Dir or approved by FM and listed in FM APP GUIDE. Where the terms "listed" or "approved" appear in this specification, they shall mean listed in UL Fire Prot Dir or FM APP GUIDE. The omission of these terms under the description of any item of equipment described shall not be construed as waiving this requirement. All listings or approval by testing laboratories shall be from an existing ANSI or UL published standard.

2. Fire Alarm/Voice Notification System

   a. Furnish equipment that is compatible and is UL listed, FM approved, or listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for the intended use. All listings by testing laboratories shall be from an existing ANSI or UL published standard. Submit a unique identifier for each device, including the control panel and initiating and indicating devices, with an indication of test results, and signature of the factory-trained technician of the control panel manufacturer and equipment installer. With reports on preliminary tests, include printer information. Include the NFPA 72 Record of Completion and NFPA 72 Inspection and Testing Form, with the appropriate test reports.

3. Fire alarm Testing Services or Laboratories

   a. Construct fire alarm and fire detection equipment in accordance with UL Fire Protection Dir, UL Electrical Construction, or FM APP GUIDE.

4. Contractor performing fire alarm system work shall be a licensed New York State fire alarm contractor. Contractor shall provide Fire Alarm Installation Certification with fire alarm system submittal.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.

2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.

3. Record copy of site-specific software.

4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:

   a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
   b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
   c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
   d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.

5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.

6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control panel.

7. Copy of NFPA 25.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm/Voice Notification System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm/Voice Notification system from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:

1. Coordinate and comply with the requirements of the local Fire Marshall, or Authority Having Jurisdiction, concerning the fire alarm system shutdown plans, procedures, and fire watch plans that will be implemented for system interruptions during construction. All existing fire alarm devices shall remain active until new cabling and devices are installed. Temporary interruptions are allowed while work is being done on the system. Work shall be coordinated so that system is fully functional at the end of the workday. If system is not fully functional at end of workday, Contractor shall provide personnel for fire watch as required by local Fire Marshall and shall be responsible for all associated costs.

2. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.

3. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Construction Manager and Owner’s written permission.

1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building. Coordinate and comply with the requirements of the local Fire Marshall, or Authority Having Jurisdiction, concerning the fire alarm system shutdown plans, procedures, and fire watch plans that will be implemented for system interruptions during construction.

B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 2 units.
2. Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 2 units.
3. Smoke Detectors: Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 units of each type.
4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to 2 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 units of each type.
5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked and tamper proofed components.
6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: Quantity equal to 5 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 2 units.
7. Fuses: Five of each type installed in the system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. NOTIFIER; a Honeywell company.
2. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
3. SimplexGrinnell LP; a Tyco International company.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:

1. Manual stations.
2. Smoke detectors.
3. Duct smoke detectors.
4. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm/voice notification appliances.

2. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control panel and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
5. Shut down heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment.
6. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
7. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
8. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
9. Record events in the system memory.

C. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm/voice notification control panel.
4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control panel internal circuits.
5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control panel.
6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
7. Failure of battery charging.
8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm/voice notification control panel or annunciator.

D. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Annunciate at fire-alarm/voice notification control panel and remote annunciators.

2.3 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control panel.

2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.

3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm at locations where indicated.

2.4 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.

2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.

3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control panel.

4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.

5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.

6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status.

7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control panel for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control panel.

    a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic shall be selectable at fire-alarm control panel for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
    b. Fixed-temperature sensing shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control panel to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
    c. Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control panel and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.

2. An operator at fire-alarm control panel, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control panel and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.

2. An operator at fire-alarm control panel, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.

4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.

5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.

6. Addressable Interface Device Fan Shutdown Relay: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.5 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. Fire Alarm/Voice Notification Speakers

1. Audible appliances shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 464. Appliances shall be connected into notification appliance circuits. Surface mounted audible appliances shall be factory painted red.

a. Speakers shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 1480. Speakers shall have six different sound output levels and operate with audio line input levels of 70.7 VRMs and 25 VRMs, by means of selectable tap settings. Tap settings shall include taps of 1/8, 1/4, 1/2, 1, and 2 watt. Speakers shall incorporate a high efficiency speaker for maximum output at minimum power across a frequency range of 150 Hz to 10,000 Hz, and shall have a sealed back construction. Sleeping room speakers must produce a 520 Hz signal temporal three (T3) signal in accordance with NFPA 72. Speakers shall be capable of installation on standard 100 mm square electrical boxes. Where speakers and strobes are provided in the same location, they may be combined into a single wall mounted unit. All inputs shall be polarized for compatibility with standard reverse polarity supervision of circuit wiring via the FAVN panel.

b. Provide speaker mounting plates constructed of cold rolled steel having a minimum thickness of 1.519 mm (16 gauge) or molded high impact plastic and equipped with mounting holes and other openings as needed for a complete installation. Fabrication marks and holes shall be ground and finished to provide a smooth and neat appearance for each plate. Each plate shall be primed and painted.

c. Speakers shall utilize screw terminals for termination of all field wiring.

B. Visual Notification Appliances

1. Visual notification appliances shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 1971 and conform to the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA). The lens of the fire alarm strobe, shall be located such that the entire lens is located not less than 2032 mm and not more than 2438 mm above the finished floor. Colored lens shall comply with UL 1638. The manufacturer shall have the color lens tested to the full UL 1971 polar plotting criteria, voltage drop, and temperature rise as stated in 1971. Fire Alarm Notification Appliances shall have clear high intensity optic lens, xenon flash tubes, and be marked "Fire" in red letters.

2.6 SMOKE DETECTOR REMOTE STATUS AND ALARM INDICATORS

A. Remote power/alarm indicator and key switch. Contains green and red LED power/alarm indicators and keyed test/reset switch mounted on a stainless steel plate.

2.7 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf (111-N) holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 120-V ac.
4. May be controlled directly from the FAVP or remotely via a local unswitched 120 volt circuit controlled by an addressable interface device.

B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.8 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Comtran Corporation.
2. Draka Cableteq USA.
3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
4. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corp.
5. West Penn Wire; a brand of Belden Inc.

B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, or twisted, unshielded pair, not less than No. 16 AWG. Refer to fire alarm system manufacturer for recommended sizes and shielding requirements.

D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS (BY INSTALLER)

A. Verification of Conditions (by Installer): Examine conditions under which fire alarm system is to be installed in coordination with Installer of materials and components specified in this Section and notify affected Contractors and Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

1. When Installer confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to Architect written confirmation from applicable Installer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to Installer.

3.2 PROTECTION

A. Protection: Provide dust covers on all detectors during construction.

3.3 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Install fire alarm system in accordance with applicable provisions of NEC, NFPA-70, Article 760 - Fire Protective Signaling Systems.

1. Contractor performing fire alarm system work shall be a licensed fire alarm contractor. Contractor shall provide Fire Alarm Installation Certification with fire alarm system submittal.

2. Since existing fire alarm systems are being replaced, Contractor performing fire alarm system work shall comply with the requirements of the local Fire Marshall concerning the fire alarm system shutdown plans, procedures, and fire watch plans that will be implemented for system interruptions during construction. All existing fire alarm devices shall remain active until new cabling and devices are installed. Temporary interruptions are allowed while work is being done on the system. Work shall be coordinated so that system is fully functional at the end of the workday. If system is not fully functional at end of workday, Contractor shall provide personnel for fire watch as required by local Fire Marshall and shall be responsible for all associated costs.

3. Provide all labor, materials, equipment and services to perform all operations required for complete installation of fire alarm system and related construction as shown on Drawings and specified in this Section.

4. Completely check, program and adjust all new and existing equipment on each system.

5. Label each addressable device with label indicating device's unique address. Label shall comply with Specification Section 26 05 53 Identification For Electrical Systems. Labels shall be installed so that they are visible without removing device from mounting base.

B. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections by testing 100% of system and submitting complete test reports.

1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of the building.

2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.

3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing equipment as necessary to extend existing functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.

C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:

1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches (1520 mm) of the exit doorway.

2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.

3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches (1060 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

D. Smoke-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
3. For smoke detectors, smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m).
4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A in NFPA 72.
5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet (1 m) from air-supply diffusers or return-air openings.
6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture.

E. Provide fan shutdown, duct smoke detectors in the supply and return air ductwork of all HVAC systems with air flow capacity of 1000 CFM or greater. Install the supply duct detector downstream of the air filters and ahead of any branch connections. Install the return duct detector between the air handling unit and any recirculation or fresh air inlet connection. Fan shutdown relay shall be wired to stop unit with any control switch in any position. Locate shut down relay within 3 feet of unit.

F. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.

G. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.

H. In areas where detection and notification devices may be subject to physical damage, devices shall have protective wire guards as manufactured by Safety Technology International (www.sti-usa.com). All guards shall be listed for the fire alarm system devices and appliances protected.

I. Install all devices on exterior of building in weatherproof enclosures supplied by device manufacturer.

J. In new construction, install all devices flush or semi-flush mounted, unless otherwise authorized by Owner.

K. In existing construction, install all interior surface mounted devices on surface mounted back boxes supplied by device manufacturer.

L. In locations where new device is replacing existing, contractor shall coordinate removal/replacement to allow re-use of existing backbox/conduits if possible.

M. In existing construction all devices shall be flush mounted with circuit wiring concealed within wall.

N. In locations where building construction prohibits flush-mounted installations, provide surface raceway. At such locations obtain written authorization from Owner's representative or Architect prior to providing surface raceway device.

O. Demolition of existing system:

1. Disconnect and remove existing fire alarm system in its entirety, inclusive of all wiring, devices, raceway, and controls.
2. Repair all damaged surfaces upon removal of existing devices and raceway. Repair and patch existing construction to match existing finishes.

P. Install all fire alarm pull stations at 48 inches AFF, to conform to ADA requirements.

Q. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.

R. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each duct detector, smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

S. Wire the Notification Appliance Circuits such that the audible alarm indicating devices can be turned off while the visual alarm notifications remain operational.

T. Locate audible/visible signaling devices in strict accordance with requirements of Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

U. Where combination audible/visible units used, place strobe light lens 80 inches minimum and 96 inches maximum above floor level. In locations where ceiling height is less than 90 inches AFF, place strobe light lens 6 inches below ceiling.

V. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

W. Fire-Alarm Control Panel: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.

X. Fire Alarm Graphic Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.

3.4 WIRING

A. Install Type FPLP plenum rated fire alarm cable for all initiating circuit wiring and notification circuit wiring, sized in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

F. Install all plenum cable above corridor ceilings bundled and tie-wrapped at 5 foot intervals and hung in saddle rings or J-hooks, supported to structure at 5 foot intervals.

G. Cable shall not be considered properly supported by lying over top of conduits, piping, or building supports or bracing. Approved saddle rings or J-hooks must be used.

H. For wall mounted devices in existing construction where wiring cannot be concealed, all wiring shall be installed in surface metallic raceway from device location to accessible ceiling space.

I. Install all wiring in approved surface metallic raceway or EMT conduit in the following locations:

1. Unfinished areas (EMT conduit).
2. Exposed areas (Surface metallic raceway).
3. Where subject to damage.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.

1. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.

B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet (1 m) from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.

1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
2. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control panel.

3.7 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control panel and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control panel.

3.8 ADJUSTING / CLEANING

A. Completely clean all smoke detectors, as instructed by authorized factory representative, when system is substantially complete and when authorized by Owner.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by Owners Representative and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.

b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. Perform 100 percent inspection and testing of all system devices.

   a. Provide complete panel real-time printout as documentation of device, date and time. Any acceptance test not accompanied by real-time printout requires retesting of entire system by Contractor, including both alarm activation tests and tests of supervisory circuit at each device.

   b. Provide inspection complying with requirements of applicable NFPA standards.

   c. Provide to Owner and Fire Sub Code Official complete typed list of every initiation, signaling, control, supervisory and auxiliary device with specific information regarding system address of device, location of device, date tested, manufacturer's model number, and serial number of all analog components, status of device and zone or point as related to system. Obtain from Owner, the Owner's room names/numbers that are to be assigned to each device.

3. Provide complete set of battery test results for panels including:

   a. Charger output voltage under normal conditions.
   b. Charger output current under normal conditions.
   c. Open battery voltage.
   d. Supply voltage and current under primary power failure.
   e. Supply voltage and current under primary power failure and system alarm that has activated all of panel's audible, visual and control circuits.
   f. Calculations using battery test data obtained to determine minimum battery capacity of 24 hours under normal conditions and 5-minute alarm condition.

4. Take voltage readings at end of line of each alarm signal circuit to insure minimum operational levels.

   a. If voltage drop exceeds the minimum rating of the last device in the circuit, while under full circuit load, rewire circuits with appropriately heavier gage wire as required to comply with specified requirements.

5. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.

6. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.

7. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.

D. Intelligibility Tests

1. Intelligibility testing of the System shall be accomplished in accordance with UFC 4-021-01, NFPA 72 for Voice Evacuation Systems, IEC 60268-16, and ASA S3.2. Following are the specific requirements for intelligibility tests:

    a. Intelligibility Requirements: Verify intelligibility by measurement after installation.

2. Ensure that a CIS value greater than the required minimum value is provided in each area where building occupants typically could be found. The minimum required value for CIS is 0.8

3. The contractor must submit a waiver letter for areas of the building they believe will not meet the minimum CIS value at the beginning of the shop drawing phase. Areas of the building provided with hard wall and ceiling surfaces (such as metal or concrete) that are found to cause excessive sound reflections may be permitted to have a CIS score less than the minimum required value if approved by the DOD installation, and if building occupants in these areas can determine that a voice signal is being broadcast and they must walk no more than 10 m to find a location with at least the minimum required CIS value within the same area.

4. Areas of the building where occupants are not expected to be normally present are permitted to have a CIS score less than the minimum required value if personnel can determine that a voice signal is being broadcast and they must walk no more than 15 m to a location with at least the minimum required CIS value within the same area.

5. Take measurements near the head level applicable for most personnel in the space under normal conditions (e.g., standing, sitting, sleeping, as appropriate).

6. The distance the occupant must walk to the location meeting the minimum required CIS value shall be measured on the floor or other walking surface as follows:

    a. Along the centerline of the natural path of travel, starting from any point subject to occupancy with less than the minimum required CIS value.
    b. Curving around any corners or obstructions, with a 300 mm clearance there from.
    c. Terminating directly below the location where the minimum required CIS value has been obtained.

7. Use commercially available test instrumentation to measure intelligibility as specified by ISO 7240-19 and ISO 7240-16 as applicable. Use the mean value of at least three readings to compute the intelligibility score at each test location.

E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system. Training shall consist of a total of 8 hours delivered in 2 hour blocks.

B. Provide copy of sign-in sheet of District staff receiving training in O&M Manuals.

END OF SECTION 28 31 11

SECTION 31 10 00 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Removing above and below-grade site improvements.
6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities
7. Temporary erosion and sedimentation-control measures.
8. Disposal of waste material.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

C. Topsoil (insitu): Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inchesin diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.

D. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

E. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

A. Except for stripped topsoil and other materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which site clearing is to be accomplished and notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely accomplishment. Do not proceed with site clearing until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises in location to be determined by Owner.

D. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.

E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.

F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:

1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.

H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

I. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.

B. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain. Flag each tree trunk at 54 inches above the ground.

C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.

1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

D. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Refer to Section 31 25 00, “Erosion and Sedimentation Controls”.

B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree or plant protection zones.

C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

A. General: Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in Section 31 25 00 "Erosion and Sedimentation Controls."

B. Should any trees or shrubs be damaged which are to be saved, arrange to have such damage treated by a licensed arborist or tree surgeon.

C. Protect tree and shrub root systems from smothering. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within plant protection zone. Do not permit vehicular traffic or parking within plant protection zone. Restrict foot traffic to prevent excessive compaction of soil over tree, shrub and turf root systems.

D. Trees or shrubs which die because of the Contractor's failure to conform to the Drawings and specifications shall be evaluated by a qualified organization selected by the Owner's Representative. The removal and replacement of the tree, and the evaluation expenses shall be paid for by the Contractor. Contractor shall be required to replace the damaged tree with plant material of comparable size and quality (i.e. damaged 12" caliper Red Maple shall be replaced by three 4" cal. or four 3" cal. Red Maples). Substitutions for variety shall be approved by the Architect.

3.4 EXISTING UTILITIES

A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed.

1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.

B. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.

C. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect not less than ten (10) working days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.

D. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.

1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
2. Grind down stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris to a minimum depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
3. Use only hand methods for grubbing within protection zones.
4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer in accordance with Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

C. Do not remove surplus topsoil from site.

D. Refer to Section 32 92 00 "Turfs and Grasses" for topsoil screening requirements.

E. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

F. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.

3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction including foundations, slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, retaining walls, aggregate base and other improvements.

1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically. Leave cut edge neat and square where existing material is cut to adjoin new work.

2. Remove asphalt concrete paving material to full depth and remove from site. Do not use asphalt materials for on-site fill.

3. Gravel and stone fill under removed sidewalks may be reused if suitable for the particular new use and if approved by the Architect.

4. Break up and completely remove miscellaneous concrete, such as small foundations. Remove concrete, retaining walls or foundations below grade to a minimum depth of 2’.

3.8 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 10 00

SECTION 31 20 00 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preparing subgrades for walks, pavements, and turf and grasses
2. Structural Fill: For backfill under structures, pavements, concrete pads, etc.
3. Granular Fill: Sub base for interior concrete slabs-on-grade, asphalt paving, concrete paving, etc.
4. Subsurface drainage fill for foundation drains, underdrains, etc.
5. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
6. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete
2. Section 31 10 00 - Site Clearing
3. Section 32 92 00 - Turf and Grasses
4. Section 33 41 00 – Storm Utility Drainage Piping

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Subbase: Granular aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade and pavement that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

G. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.

1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Geotechnical Engineer

2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.

3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Geotechnical Engineer or Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Geotechnical Engineer or Architect shall be without additional compensation.

H. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

I. Hazardous Soil Materials: Soils that are contaminated with petroleum product and/or hazardous chemicals, waste or industrial waste.

J. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:

1. Rock Excavation: Track-mounted excavator rated at not less than 222-hp flywheel power with weight of 70,000 lbs or greater and a 30-in wide short-tip radius rock bucket. (Ratings are based on Caterpillar's "Model No. 330B”.)

K. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

L. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below aggregate base, structural fill, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.

M. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

N. Non-Granular Fill: Soil fill material used to raise existing grades in areas that do not require granular or structural fill.

O. Well-Graded: Soils containing a good range of all representative particle sizes between the largest and the smallest. All sizes must be represented, and no one size should be either overabundant or missing.

P. Poorly-Graded: Soils which either contain a narrow range of particle sizes or have some intermediate sizes lacking.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

a. Geotextiles.
b. Warning tapes.

2. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

a. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.
b. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 1557.
c. Submitted material testing and analysis shall demonstrate that no unsuitable soil groups are present.
d. Submitted material testing and analysis shall demonstrate that no absorbent clays are present.

3. Delegated-Design Submittal:

a. For excavations greater than or equal to 20 feet in depth require engineered systems design per OSHA requirements, signed and sealed by a professional engineer, and submitted for review.

b. Plan for protection of persons passing excavations including diagram or description of means and methods to protect [all people] [the Cornell Community] from project hazards through the duration of the project shall be submitted for review.

4. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes or quantities indicated below:

a. Fill: One-half gallon by volume of material in sturdy container of each type of fill, naming source for each material.
b. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.
c. Warning Tape: 12 inches long; of each color.

5. Verification of Conditions: Written confirmation from installer that installation of Earthwork Materials installed in accordance with specifications.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

2. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, which might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Qualified Installers as defined below:

1. Earthwork Contractor Experience Requirements: Provide a list of at least four Earthwork projects of comparable size, scope, and quality completed successfully by the proposed Sub Contractor within the past two years that includes the date completed, project Owner's name and current contact information, including telephone numbers and e-mail addresses.

2. Natural Turf Athletic Field Installer Experience Requirements: For specifications regarding experience requirements for Natural Turf Athletic Field Installer, refer to Project Manual Section 32 92 00, TURF AND GRASSES.

B. Baseball / Softball Infield Installation Requirements: Infield Mix manufacturer's representative shall be onsite to inspect prepared infield subgrade and observe installation procedures for each new infield.

1. Turf Installer: Engage an experienced turf installation firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance.

2. Natural Turf Athletic Field Installer: Engage an experienced turf installation firm to perform athletic field work of this Section. Firm shall have completed athletic field work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance.

3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.

C. Civil / Structural Preconstruction Conference: Attend Civil / Structural Preconstruction Conference.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: If work includes improvements on adjoining property, written authorization for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.

1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.

C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.

D. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary and permanent erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, specified in Division 31 Section "Erosion and Sedimentation Control" are in place.

E. Do not commence earth moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Division 31 Sections "Erosion and Sedimentation Control" and "Site Clearing" are in place.

F. The following practices are prohibited within tree- or plant-protection zones:

1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
8. Directing vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
9. Heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

G. Existing Hazardous Materials:

1. If during the performance of the work suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. If present, hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Soil Materials:

1. General: Provide imported soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from onsite excavations.
2. Topsoil: Refer to Turf and Grasses Specification, Division 32.

B. Hazardous Materials:

1. Provide fill materials that are not contaminated with petroleum product, hazardous waste or industrial waste.

2. Contamination above federal, state or local requirements is not acceptable. Materials with a visible sheen or petroleum odor shall be rejected.

C. Unsuitable Soils: (Includes excavated native and imported non-granular, granular and structural fill materials)

1. Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.

a. Soils Materials shall not contain any absorbent aluminum phyllosilicates, including but not limited to: bentonite (sodium, calcium, or potassium), tonstein, montmorillonite, kaolinite. or other absorbent clays.

2. Unsuitable soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

3. Submitted material testing and analysis shall demonstrate that material classification meets ASTM-D2487 USC system criteria and that no unsuitable soil groups, or absorbent clays are present.

D. Non-Granular Fill: Material is to comply with NYSDOT requirements for Select Borrow and Select Fill with modifications shown below. This material is not allowed in areas where granular soils are required, including within the building footprint, below pavement areas or below a synthetic turf athletic field.

1. On-Site Non-Granular Fill

a. Submittal must be provided demonstrating that on-site soil material meets the criteria outlined in this Section for use as fill material.

b. Obtain approval of Architect before proceeding with use of on-site material.

c. Material is to have no particles greater than 3” in maximum dimension, no more than 70% by weight passing the #40 sieve and no more than 20% passing the #200 sieve.

d. Testing submitted is to demonstrate that proper compaction can be achieved as required in Part 3, Execution.

2. Imported Non-Granular Fill

a. Where quantity of approved non-granular fill materials required exceeds that available from on-site stock-piles, provide suitable material from off-site sources.

b. Obtain approval of Architect before proceeding with use of imported fill material.

c. Material is to have no particles greater than 3” in maximum dimension, no more than 70% passing by weight the #40 sieve and no more than 15% passing the #200 sieve.

d. Testing submitted is to demonstrate that proper compaction can be achieved as required in Part 3, Execution.

E. Structural Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand.

1. Type 1 Fill (NYSDOT ITEM No. 304.11 Granular Fill) gradation requirements:

Sieve Designation	**Percent by Weight Passing Square Mesh Sieves**
3 inch	100
2 inch	90 to 100
1/4-inch	30 to 65
#40	5 to 40
#200	0 to 10

F. Granular Fill: Import all granular fill types from off-site sources. Granular fill consists of stone, sand, and gravel, or blends of these materials, free of slag, complying with New York State Department of Transportation (NYSDOT) Standard Specification, Section 304, as modified below:

1. Type 2 Fill (NYSDOT ITEM No. 304.12 / Crushed / Blasted Ledge Rock Stone) Gradation Requirements.

Sieve Designation	**Percent by Weight Passing Square Mesh Sieves**
2 inch	100
1/4-inch	25 to 60
#40	5 to 40
#200	0 to 10

2. Type 4 Fill (NYSDOT ITEM No. 304.14 / Select Granular Fill) Gradation Requirements.

Sieve Designation	**Percent by Weight Passing Square Mesh Sieves**
2 inch	100
1/4-inch	30 to 65
#40	5 to 40
#200	0 to 10

G. Crushed Stone: Crushed stone to complying with New York State Department of Transportation (NYSDOT) Standard Specifications, Section 703-0201 which is product of mechanical crushing. Where indicated, provide the following fill materials, consisting of clean, free of slag, durable, sharp-angled fragments of rock of uniform quality. The crushed stone used as coarse aggregate for all items shall be obtained from sources conforming to the requirements of the NYSDOT as to sampling, testing methods, Quarry Reports and any other required procedures and complying with following requirements:

1. NYSDOT No. 1 Crushed Stone Gradation Requirements (NYSDOT 703-4 # 1 Stone):

Sieve Designation	Percent by Weight Passing Square Mesh Sieves
1 inch	100
1/2-inch	90 to 100
1/4-inch	0 to 15
#200	0 to 1

2. NYSDOT No. 2 Crushed Stone Gradation Requirements (NYSDOT 703-4 #2 Stone):

Sieve Designation	Percent by Weight Passing Square Mesh Sieves
1-1/2 inch	100
1 inch	90 to 100
1/2-inch	0 to 15
#200	0 to 1

H. Drainage Fill: Mixture of 50 percent NYSDOT No. 1 crushed stone and 50 percent NYSDOT No. 2 crushed stone, complying with New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications, Section 703-02.

Sieve Designation	Percent by Weight Passing Square Mesh Sieves
1-1/2 inch	100
1 inch	95 to 100
1/2-inch	25 to 60
# 4	0 to 10
# 8	0 to 5

I. Sand for general use and/or utility bedding: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate.

J. Sand for storm water quality sand filter: Clean (washed) AASHTO M-6/ASTM C-33 medium aggregate coarse concrete sand, with effective particle size (D10) between 0.3mm and 0.5mm, a uniformity coefficient (Uc) of < 4, and < 4% fines passing the 100 sieve.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

A. Separation/Filter Fabric - Nonwoven needle-punched polypropylene geotextile filter/separation fabric complying with the following:

Fabric Property	Value	Test Method
Grab Tensile Strength	120 lb	ASTM D 4632
Grab Tensile Elongation	50 percent	ASTM D 4632
Trapezoid Tear Strength	50 lbs	ASTM D 4533
CBR Puncture Strength	310 lbs min	ASTM D 6241
Apparent Opening Size	No. 70 sieve max	ASTM D 4751
Permittivity	1.7 sec^{-1}	ASTM D 4491
Flow Rate	135 gal min/ft^2	ASTM D 4491
UV Stability	70% after 500 hours	ASTM D 4355

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. TenCate Mirafi - 140N
    b. Amoco - 4547
    c. Geotex – 451

B. Soil Stabilization Fabric: Heavy duty, commercially manufactured woven polypropylene geotextile meeting the following properties:

Fabric Property	**Test Method**	**Unit**	**Typical Value**
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM D 4632	lbs	200
Grab Tensile Elongation	ASTM D 4632	%	15
Trapezoidal Tear Strength	ASTM D 4533	lbs	75 min.
CBR Puncture Strength	ASTM D 6241	lbs	700
UV Resistant after 500 hours	ASTM D 4355	% Strength	70
Apparent Opening Size	ASTM D 4751	US Sieve	40
Permittivity	ASTM D 4491	sec^{-1}	0.05
Water Flow Rate	ASTM D 4491	$gal/min/ft^2$	4.0

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. TenCate Mirafi - 500X
    b. US Fabrics, Inc. - US 200
    c. Carthage Mills – FX-55
    d. Propex – 200 ST

C. Soil Stabilization Geogrid:

1. Geogrid manufactured from a punched polypropylene sheet, which is then oriented in three substantially equilateral directions so that the resulting ribs shall have a high degree of molecular orientation, which continues at least in part through the mass of the integral node.

2. Heavy duty, commercially manufactured Geogrid meeting the following properties:

Fabric Property	**Test Method**	**Unit**	**Typical Value**
Rib Pitch - Longitudinal	ASTM D 4759-02	Inch (nom.)	1.60
Rib Pitch - Diagonal	ASTM D 4759-02	Inch (nom.)	1.60
Mid Rib Depth - Diagonal	ASTM D 4759-02	Inch (nom.)	0.05
Mid Rib Depth - Transverse	ASTM D 4759-02	Inch (nom.)	0.05
Mid Rib Width - Diagonal	ASTM D 4759-02	Inch (nom.)	0.04
Mid Rib Width - Transverse	ASTM D 4759-02	Inch (nom.)	0.04
Rib Shape	N/A	N/A	Rectangular
Aperture Shape	N/A	N/A	Triangular
Junction Efficiency	ASTM D 6637-10 ASTM D7737-11	%	93

Radial Stiffness @ Low Strain	ASTM D 6637-10	lb / ft @ 0.5% strain	15,430
Chemical Degradation Resistance	EPA 9090	N/A	100%
UV Light & Weathering Resistance	ASTM D 4355-05	N/A	70%

3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Tensar Corporation - Triax TX140.

D. Subsurface Drainage Geotextiles: Refer to Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which earthwork is to be accomplished in coordination with Installer of materials and components specified in this Section and notify affected Prime Contractors and Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely accomplishment. Do not proceed with earthwork until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

1. When Installer confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to Architect written confirmation from applicable Installer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to Installer.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.

1. Contractor is entirely responsible for strength and adequacy of bracing and shoring, and for safety and support of construction from damage or injury caused by lack of adequate protection or by movement or settlement.

2. Contractors are advised that they are required to comply with Occupational Safety and Health Administration’s (OSHA) standards pertaining to excavation.

3. All excavations must be barricaded at all times using either traffic or A-Frame type barricades. Gaps between barricades may be up to 6-inches wide and must be blocked with caution tape.

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.

C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.3 UNDERGROUND UTILITY SURVEY

A. An underground utility survey must be conducted prior to the start of any excavation. Call 811

3.4 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.

1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

3.5 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.6 SITE CLEARING

A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Site Clearing".

3.7 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Geotechnical Engineer. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.

1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.

a. Intermittent drilling; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock (refer to Definitions section: "Rock" paragraph above). Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:

a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.

c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.8 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

2. Protect trees and other plants in accordance with requirements in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" and Division 31 Section “Erosion and Sedimentation Control”.

3.9 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.10 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.

1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.

C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.

3. Cut and protect roots in accordance with standard nursery practice and Division 31 Section "Erosion and Sedimentation Control".

3.11 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
B. If Geotechnical Engineer determines that unsuitable soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

3.12 PROOF-ROLLING

A. Proof-roll subgrade below building slabs, concrete pads and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction and repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction with a minimum of six overlapping passes. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.

2. Excavate soft spots, unsuitable soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as identified by Geotechnical Engineer and as directed by Owner, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed. Notify Architect in writing of any required remediation.

3. Foundations: Proof-roll prior to excavation for foundations but after topsoil is stripped.

B. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities without additional compensation.

3.13 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. CLSM (flowable fill), per this specification section, may be used when approved by Architect.

1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit in accordance with this Section unless otherwise directed by Geotechnical Engineer.

3.14 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.15 SOIL STABILIZATION FABRIC

A. Install soil stabilization fabric: After subgrade has been compacted and proof-rolled, install soil stabilization fabric as specified by the manufacturer, including the following:

1. Lay fabric in the direction of traffic.
2. Overlap fabric side to side and end to end a minimum of two feet.
3. Insure that fabric lies flat during fill placement.

3.16 SOIL STABILIZATION GEOGRID

A. Install soil stabilization geogrid: After subgrade has been compacted and proof-rolled, install soil stabilization geogrid as specified by the manufacturer, including the following:

1. Unroll the geogrid in the direction of travel so that the long axis of the roll is parallel with channelized traffic patterns. Refer to manufacturer's installation requirements.

2. Overlap adjacent rolls along their sides and ends in accordance manufacturer's requirements.

3. Overlap geogrids in the direction the fill placement will be spread to avoid "peeling" of geogrid at overlaps by the advancing fill. Refer to manufacturer's installation requirements.

4. Refer to manufacturer's installation requirements for soil types requiring mechanical connection of adjacent geogrid rolls.

5. Insure that geogrid lies flat during fill placement.

6. Refer to manufacturer's installation requirements for geogrid tensioning and pinning, dumping and spreading of aggregate fill, and compaction.

3.17 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
4. Removing concrete formwork.

5. Removing trash and debris.
6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.18 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete.

D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section Cast-in-Place Concrete.

E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

F. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material or satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

G. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

I. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.

J. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.19 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows. Refer to Part 2 for material requirements and specific conditions for the use of each type of soil material. All fill materials to be approved by Architect per requirements noted in Part 2.

1. Under grass and planted areas:

   a. Use satisfactory non-granular fill material.

2. Under walks, pavements and exterior slabs:

   a. Use Structural Fill below subbase layer and Type 2 granular fill for subbase layer.

3. Under steps and ramps

   a. Use structural fill below subbase layer and Type 2 granular fill for subbase layer.

4. Under footings and foundations:

   a. Use structural fill.

5. Under catch basins, manholes, vaults or other underground structures.

   a. Use structural fill or as noted on drawings.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.20 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.

2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry density.

3.21 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Maximum layer depth before compaction:

1. Under Pavement: Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

2. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 12 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry weight density according to ASTM D 1557:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, synthetic turf and pavements and**,** running tracks:

a. Scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.

2. Under walkways:

a. Scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.

3. Under natural turf or unpaved areas:

a. Compact each layer of subgrade backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent. Compact all layers beneath the upper 2'-0" to at least 95 percent.

4. Utility trenches:

a. Compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.

5. Landscape Planting Areas:

a. Compact each layer of subgrade backfill or fill soil material at 75 percent.

6. Under catch basins, manholes, vaults or other underground structures.

a. Scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.

3.22 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:

1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge and within +0" / -1" tolerance of bottom of slab.

3.23 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

A. Drainage Tubing / Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".

B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench as shown in Drawings.

1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.

1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.

3.24 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

A. Place granular fill base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place granular fill base course under pavements and walks as follows:

1. Place base course material over subgrade under hot-mix asphalt pavement.

a. If separation geotextile is shown in details, install on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.

2. Shape base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.

3. Place base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.

4. Place base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.

5. Compact base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557.

3.25 SUB BASE FOR CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

A. Place sub base on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact sub base under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:

1. Place sub base 8 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
2. Place sub base that exceeds 8 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 8 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
3. Compact each layer of sub base to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 4254.

3.26 INSTALLATION OF SURFACE STONE MATERIAL

A. Place surface stone material (stone dust, cover stone, etc.) on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Compact so that surface stone layer is consolidated. During installation avoid bringing subgrade material to the surface. If subgrade material becomes intermixed with surface stone, remove contaminated surface stone material and reinstall new surface stone.

3.27 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections unless otherwise noted.

B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

C. Inspections and tests:

1. Geotechnical observations: Proof rolling procedures, site preparation, unsuitable soils removal, excavations, footing bearing, and fill placement.

2. Field Density Testing:

a. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Geotechnical Engineer.

b. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:

1) Fill under Footings: In each compacted fill layer, 1 compaction test for every 30 linear feet of wall may be taken. 1 compaction test may be made under each individual footing.

2) Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 50 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.

3) Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2,000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.

4) Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.

c. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3. Laboratory testing for on-site fills:

a. ASTM D 1557 Modified Proctor compaction curve including sieve analysis.

3.28 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Geotechnical Engineer or Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.29 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

[GEOTECHNICAL BORING MAPS AND LOGS

Appendix to Project Manual Section 31 20 00, EARTH MOVING]

SPRINGHURST ELEMENTARY SCHOOL

ATTACHMENTS

SITE LOCATION AND EXPLORATION PLANS

Contents:

Site Location Plan
Exploration Plans (2 pages)

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

SITE LOCATION

Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, NY
March 25, 2020 ■ Terracon Project No. JB195335

Terracon GeoReport

DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

TOPOGRAPHIC MAP IMAGE COURTESY OF THE U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
QUADRANGLES INCLUDE: NYACK, NY (1/1/1979), WHITE PLAINS, NY (1/1/1994), YONKERS, NY (1/1/1998) and MOUNT VERNON, NY (1/1/1995).

EXPLORATION PLAN

Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, NY
March 25, 2020 ■ Terracon Project No. JB195335

DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

EXPLORATION PLAN

Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, NY
March 25, 2020 ■ Terracon Project No. JB195335

Terracon GeoReport

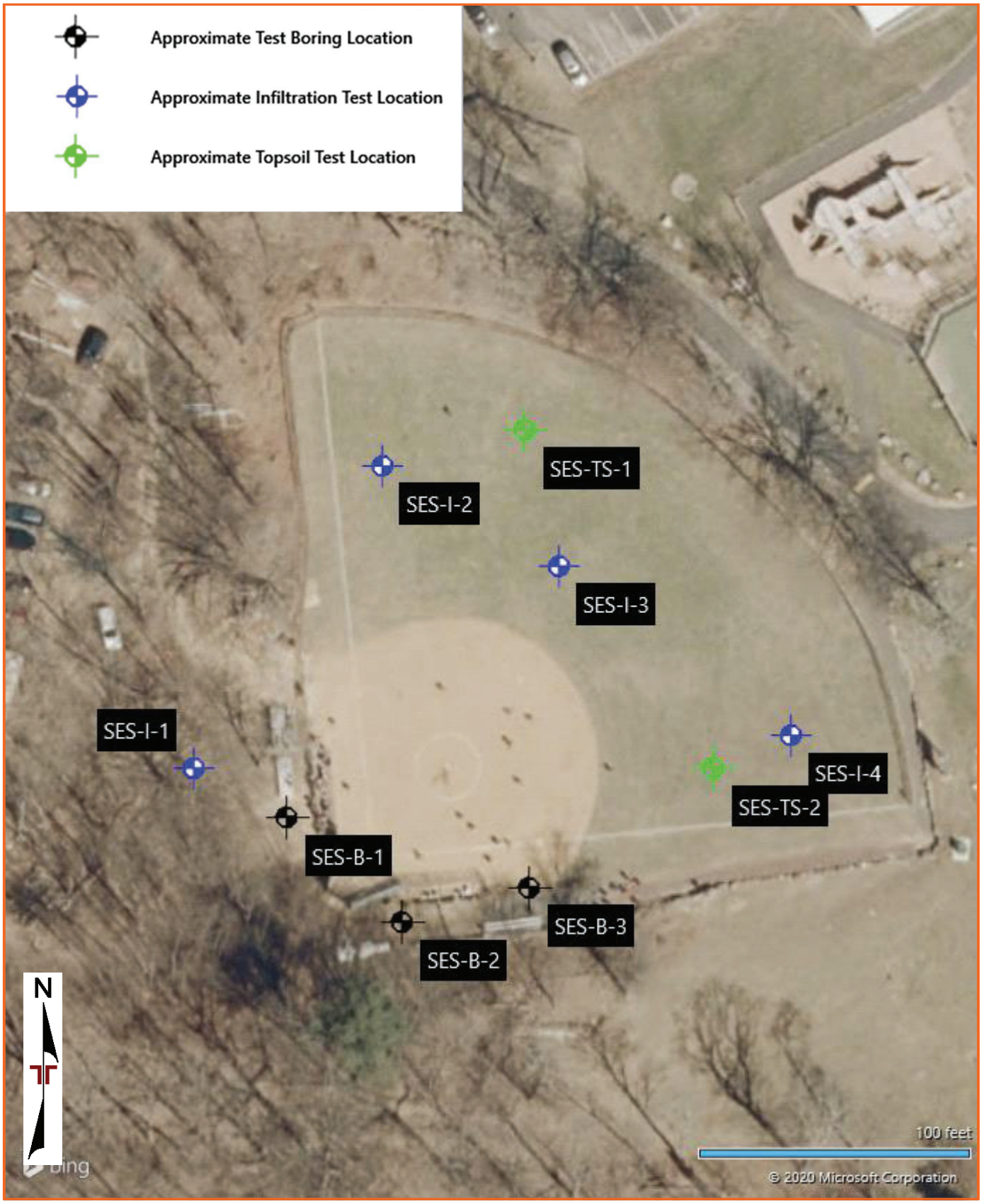


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

PHOTOGRAPHY LOG

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

Looking south along Johnston Court from boring SE-I-1


Looking south along Johnston Court from boring SE-I-2


Looking south along Johnston Court from boring SE-B-2


Looking north along Johnston Court from boring SE-I-1

View along l3rd base line from boring SES-B-1

View of right field looking at boring SES-I-4

View of left field looking at boring SES-I-2

View along 1st base line from boring SES-B-2

EXPLORATION RESULTS

Contents:

Boring Logs (12 pages)
Topsoil Laboratory Test Results (6 pages)

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

BORING LOG NO. SE-B-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0095° Longitude: -73.8642°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.1	**TOPSOIL**					
		2.0	**SILTY SAND (SM)**, trace rootlets, brown, moist, loose				7	3-4-2-3 N=6
2			**POORLY GRADED SAND (SP)**, with 1/2" thick silt seams, orange to brown, moist, loose				12	2-2-2-3 N=4
		6.0		5			6	5-4-2-7 N=6
			Boring Terminated at 6 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SE-B-2

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0088° Longitude: -73.8635°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
1		2.0	**FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM)**, brown, moist, loose				11	7-4-5-4 N=9
3		4.9	**SILTY SAND (SM)**, trace gravel, orange to brown, moist, very loose to very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**				11	2-1-2-2 N=3
			Grades to frequent cobbles and boulders				7	3-50/5"
			Sampler Refusal on Probable Boulders at 4.9 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-21-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-21-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SE-B-3

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exploration Plan Latitude: 41.0087° Longitude: -73.8629° DEPTH	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
3		0.4 **TOPSOIL**					
		SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM), occasional cobbles and boulders, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**	5			8	4-11-11-9 N=22
						19	8-12-18-22 N=30
						1	35-43-41-43 N=84
						15	39-24-27-24 N=51
						14	14-16-29-50/5" N=45
		9.9 ***Sampler Refusal at 9.9 Feet***					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:
Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-21-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-21-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SE-I-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0097° Longitude: -73.8644°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.4	**TOPSOIL**					
2			**SANDY SILT (ML)**, orange to brown, very moist, medium dense to very loose				1	5-4-6-3 N=10
							13	1-1-2-2 N=3
				5			14	2-2-3-3 N=5
		6.0	**Grades to loose**					
			SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM), orange to brown, moist, loose				17	2-3-5-10 N=8
		8.0	**POORLY GRADED SAND (SP)**, trace gravel, orange to gray, moist, dense				17	14-21-21-29 N=42
		10.0	***Boring Terminated at 10 Feet***	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-21-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-21-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SE-I-2

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.009° Longitude: -73.8637°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
2		0	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH GRAVEL (SP)**, orange to brown, moist, medium dense				8	8-6-4-4 N=10
		2.0						
3			**SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM)**, trace rootlets, orange to brown, moist, loose to very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**				4	4-3-2-4 N=5
			Grades to very moist	5			6	3-3-4-40 N=7
							9	28-50/5"
		8.1						
			Sampler Refusal at 8.1 Feet				0	50/1"

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-21-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-21-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-B-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0062° Longitude: -73.8633°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.3	**TOPSOIL**					
2			**POORLY GRADED SAND (SP)**, trace rootlets, orange to brown, moist, loose to very loose				14	4-3-3-2 N=6
							0	2-1-1-2 N=2
		4.0	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM)**, trace gravel, occasional cobbles, tan, moist, medium dense	5			17	5-5-6-6 N=11
			Grades with 1" silt seams				19	6-8-12-14 N=20
		10.0					19	10-12-14-14 N=26
			Boring Terminated at 10 Feet	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-B-2

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0061° Longitude: -73.8632°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.3	**TOPSOIL**					
2			**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH GRAVEL (SP)**, trace rootlets, occasional cobbles, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to loose				12	5-5-5-3 N=10
							5	4-3-5-13 N=8
		4.0	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM)**, with 1" seams of silt, occasional cobbles, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to loose	5			18	10-12-10-6 N=22
							17	3-3-3-2 N=6
		10.0					2	6-11-14-16 N=25
			Boring Terminated at 10 Feet	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-B-3

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0061° Longitude: -73.863°

MODEL LAYER	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
2	0.4	**TOPSOIL**					
		POORLY GRADED SAND (SP), trace rootlets and gravel, occasional cobbles, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to dense				22	6-6-10-11 N=16
						18	12-16-15-14 N=31
	5.0		5				
		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM), with 1" seams of silt, trace gravel, occasional cobbles, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to dense				17	11-12-11-15 N=23
			10			19	11-16-17-20 N=33
	15.0		15				
		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH GRAVEL (SP), occasional cobbles, brown, moist, very dense				10	25-50/5"
	20.3		20			3	50/4"
		Sampler Refusal at 20.3 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-21-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-21-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-I-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0063° Longitude: -73.8635°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
1		**FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL**, trace pieces of mulch, brown to black, moist, loose				11	6-4-2-2 N=6
		2.5					
2		**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL (SP-SM)**, with 1" silt seams, orange to brown, moist, very dense				21	7-17-37-34 N=54
		Grades to gray, frequent cobbles and boulders	5			17	21-22-50/5"
						22	40-30-32-31 N=62
		8.4				4	50/5"
		Sampler Refusal at 8.4 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-I-2

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0066° Longitude: -73.8632°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.4	**TOPSOIL**					
2			**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL**, trace rootlets, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to loose				5	5-7-7-7 N=14
							10	4-4-3-3 N=7
			Grades to gray, occasional cobbles and boulders	5			9	4-3-2-3 N=5
		6.0	**SILTY SAND (SM)**, trace organics, brown, very moist, loose				12	7-4-4-9 N=8
		8.0	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH GRAVEL (SP)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, gray, moist, dense				22	20-24-21-19 N=45
		10.0	***Boring Terminated at 10 Feet***	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-I-3

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0065° Longitude: -73.863°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5	**TOPSOIL**					
			SILTY SAND (SM), trace rootlets, brown, very moist, loose				15	1-2-3-3 N=5
							13	2-2-3-3 N=5
		5.0		5				
2		6.0	**SANDY SILT (ML)**, trace rootlets, brown, very moist, dense				9	4-6-11-24 N=17
			POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL (SP-SM), frequent cobbles and boulders, gray, moist, very dense				4	40-29-33-50/5" N=62
							4	50/5"
		10.0		10				
			Boring Terminated at 10 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. SES-I-4

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exploration Plan Latitude: 41.0063° Longitude: -73.8627° DEPTH	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5 **TOPSOIL**					
2		**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL (SP-SM)**, brown to gray, moist, medium dense to very dense	5			19	6-12-17-14 N=29
						13	10-24-34-37 N=58
						14	16-27-17-15 N=44
						19	17-19-21-27 N=40
						19	20-19-24-21 N=43
		10.0 ***Boring Terminated at 10 Feet***	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:
Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-20-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-20-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Soil Test Report

Prepared For:

Edward Gravelle
Dente Group
549 Broadway
Watervliet, NY 12189

ed.gravelle@terracon.com
518-266-0310

Sample Information:

Sample ID: SES-TS-1

Order Number: 49210
Lab Number: S200228-204
Area Sampled: 0.45 acres
Received: 2/28/2020
Reported: 3/9/2020

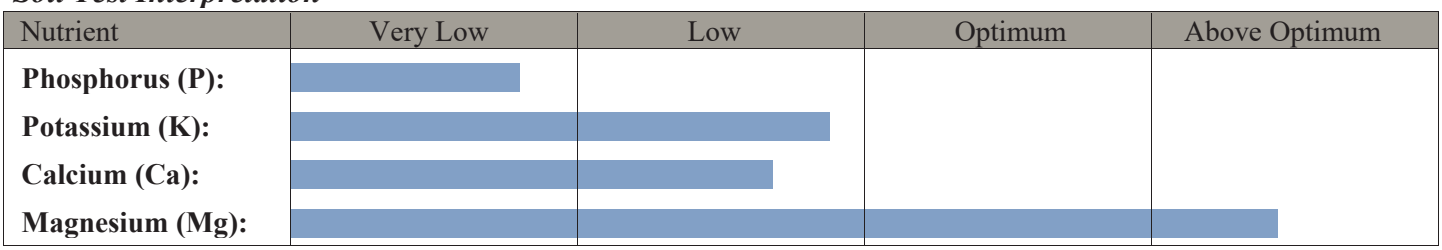
Results

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Soil pH (1:1, H2O)	6.0	
Modified Morgan extractable, ppm		
Macronutrients		
Phosphorus (P)	1.6	4-14
Potassium (K)	94	100-160
Calcium (Ca)	848	1000-1500
Magnesium (Mg)	155	50-120
Sulfur (S)	9.6	>10
Micronutrients *		
Boron (B)	0.2	0.1-0.5
Manganese (Mn)	4.8	1.1-6.3
Zinc (Zn)	1.6	1.0-7.6
Copper (Cu)	0.1	0.3-0.6
Iron (Fe)	4.2	2.7-9.4
Aluminum (Al)	43	<75
Lead (Pb)	3.5	<22

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Cation Exch. Capacity, meq/100g	9.4	
Exch. Acidity, meq/100g	3.7	
Base Saturation, %		
Calcium Base Saturation	45	50-80
Magnesium Base Saturation	13	10-30
Potassium Base Saturation	3	2.0-7.0
Scoop Density, g/cc	0.81	
Optional tests		
Soil Organic Matter (LOI), %	5.0	
Soluble Salts (1:2), dS/m	0.06	<0.6
Nitrate-N (NO3-N), ppm	10	

* *Micronutrient deficiencies rarely occur in New England soils; therefore, an Optimum Range has never been defined. Values provided represent the normal range found in soils and are for reference only.*

Soil Test Interpretation



Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Established Lawn

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
50	2 - 4	2	2

Comments:

-For instructions on converting nutrient recommendations to fertilizer applications in lawns, see Reference "Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns" (listed below).
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

References:

Home Lawn and Garden Information	http://ag.umass.edu/resources/home-lawn-garden
Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/fertilizer-guide-for-lawns

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Establishment

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
50	2 - 4	2.5	2

Comments:

-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Maintenance

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
50	4 - 6	2	2

Comments:

-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

General References:

Interpreting Your Soil Test Results	http://soiltest.umass.edu/fact-sheets/interpreting-your-soil-test-results
Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation & Recommendations	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/soil-lead-fact-sheet
For current information and order forms, please visit	http://soiltest.umass.edu/
UMass Extension Nutrient Management	http://ag.umass.edu/agriculture-resources/nutrient-management

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Soil Test Report

Prepared For:

Edward Gravelle
Dente Group
549 Broadway
Watervliet, NY 12189

ed.gravelle@terracon.com
518-266-0310

Sample Information:

Sample ID: SES-TS-2

Order Number: 49210
Lab Number: S200228-205
Area Sampled: 0.45 acres
Received: 2/28/2020
Reported: 3/9/2020

Results

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Soil pH (1:1, H2O)	6.3	
Modified Morgan extractable, ppm		
Macronutrients		
Phosphorus (P)	3.0	4-14
Potassium (K)	103	100-160
Calcium (Ca)	1284	1000-1500
Magnesium (Mg)	208	50-120
Sulfur (S)	11.8	>10
Micronutrients *		
Boron (B)	0.2	0.1-0.5
Manganese (Mn)	5.6	1.1-6.3
Zinc (Zn)	1.8	1.0-7.6
Copper (Cu)	0.1	0.3-0.6
Iron (Fe)	2.7	2.7-9.4
Aluminum (Al)	17	<75
Lead (Pb)	2.8	<22

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Cation Exch. Capacity, meq/100g	10.9	
Exch. Acidity, meq/100g	2.5	
Base Saturation, %		
Calcium Base Saturation	59	50-80
Magnesium Base Saturation	16	10-30
Potassium Base Saturation	2	2.0-7.0
Scoop Density, g/cc	0.85	
Optional tests		
Soil Organic Matter (LOI), %	6.7	
Soluble Salts (1:2), dS/m	0.05	<0.6
Nitrate-N (NO3-N), ppm	7	

* *Micronutrient deficiencies rarely occur in New England soils; therefore, an Optimum Range has never been defined. Values provided represent the normal range found in soils and are for reference only.*

Soil Test Interpretation

Nutrient	Very Low	Low	Optimum	Above Optimum
Phosphorus (P):				
Potassium (K):				
Calcium (Ca):				
Magnesium (Mg):				

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Established Lawn

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
0	2 - 4	1	1

Comments:

-For instructions on converting nutrient recommendations to fertilizer applications in lawns, see Reference "Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns" (listed below).
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

References:

Home Lawn and Garden Information	http://ag.umass.edu/resources/home-lawn-garden
Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/fertilizer-guide-for-lawns

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Establishment

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
0	2 - 4	1.5	1

Comments:

-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Maintenance

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
0	4 - 6	1	1

Comments:

-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

General References:

Interpreting Your Soil Test Results	http://soiltest.umass.edu/fact-sheets/interpreting-your-soil-test-results
Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation & Recommendations	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/soil-lead-fact-sheet
For current information and order forms, please visit	http://soiltest.umass.edu/
UMass Extension Nutrient Management	http://ag.umass.edu/agriculture-resources/nutrient-management

SUPPORTING INFORMATION

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

GENERAL NOTES

DESCRIPTION OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS
Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, New York
Terracon Project No. JB195335

Terracon GeoReport

SAMPLING	WATER LEVEL	FIELD TESTS
 Grab Sample  Split Spoon	 **Water Initially Encountered**  **Water Level After a Specified Period of Time**  **Water Level After a Specified Period of Time**  **Cave In Encountered** Water levels indicated on the soil boring logs are the levels measured in the borehole at the times indicated. Groundwater level variations will occur over time. In low permeability soils, accurate determination of groundwater levels is not possible with short term water level observations.	**N** Standard Penetration Test Resistance (Blows/Ft.) **(HP)** Hand Penetrometer **(T)** Torvane **(DCP)** Dynamic Cone Penetrometer **UC** Unconfined Compressive Strength **(PID)** Photo-Ionization Detector **(OVA)** Organic Vapor Analyzer

DESCRIPTIVE SOIL CLASSIFICATION

Soil classification as noted on the soil boring logs is based Unified Soil Classification System. Where sufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils consistent with ASTM D2487 "Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes" this procedure is used. ASTM D2488 "Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)" is also used to classify the soils, particularly where insufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils in accordance with ASTM D2487. In addition to USCS classification, coarse grained soils are classified on the basis of their in-place relative density, and fine-grained soils are classified on the basis of their consistency. See "Strength Terms" table below for details. The ASTM standards noted above are for reference to methodology in general. In some cases, variations to methods are applied as a result of local practice or professional judgment.

LOCATION AND ELEVATION NOTES

Exploration point locations as shown on the Exploration Plan and as noted on the soil boring logs in the form of Latitude and Longitude are approximate. See Exploration and Testing Procedures in the report for the methods used to locate the exploration points for this project. Surface elevation data annotated with +/- indicates that no actual topographical survey was conducted to confirm the surface elevation. Instead, the surface elevation was approximately determined from topographic maps of the area.

STRENGTH TERMS

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COARSE-GRAINED SOILS (More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.) Density determined by Standard Penetration Resistance		CONSISTENCY OF FINE-GRAINED SOILS (50% or more passing the No. 200 sieve.) Consistency determined by laboratory shear strength testing, field visual-manual procedures or standard penetration resistance		
Descriptive Term (Density)	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**	**Descriptive Term (Consistency)**	**Unconfined Compressive Strength Qu, (tsf)**	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**
Very Loose	0 - 3	Very Soft	less than 0.25	0 - 1
Loose	4 - 9	Soft	0.25 to 0.50	2 - 4
Medium Dense	10 - 29	Medium Stiff	0.50 to 1.00	4 - 8
Dense	30 - 50	Stiff	1.00 to 2.00	8 - 15
Very Dense	> 50	Very Stiff	2.00 to 4.00	15 - 30
		Hard	> 4.00	> 30

RELEVANCE OF SOIL BORING LOG

The soil boring logs contained within this document are intended for application to the project as described in this document. Use of these soil boring logs for any other purpose may not be appropriate.

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

Terracon GeoReport

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests [A]					Soil Classification	
					Group Symbol	Group Name [B]
Coarse-Grained Soils: More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	**Gravels:** More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	**Clean Gravels:** Less than 5% fines [C]	Cu ≥ 4 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3 [E]		GW	Well-graded gravel [F]
			Cu < 4 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]		GP	Poorly graded gravel [F]
		Gravels with Fines: More than 12% fines [C]	Fines classify as ML or MH		GM	Silty gravel [F, G, H]
			Fines classify as CL or CH		GC	Clayey gravel [F, G, H]
	Sands: 50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	**Clean Sands:** Less than 5% fines [D]	Cu ≥ 6 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3 [E]		SW	Well-graded sand [I]
			Cu < 6 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]		SP	Poorly graded sand [I]
		Sands with Fines: More than 12% fines [D]	Fines classify as ML or MH		SM	Silty sand [G, H, I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH		SC	Clayey sand [G, H, I]
Fine-Grained Soils: 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve	**Silts and Clays:** Liquid limit less than 50	**Inorganic:**	PI > 7 and plots on or above "A"		CL	Lean clay [K, L, M]
			PI < 4 or plots below "A" line [J]		ML	Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OL	Organic clay [K, L, M, N]
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt [K, L, M, O]
	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit 50 or more	**Inorganic:**	PI plots on or above "A" line		CH	Fat clay [K, L, M]
			PI plots below "A" line		MH	Elastic Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OH	Organic clay [K, L, M, P]
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt [K, L, M, Q]
Highly organic soils:	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor				PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75-mm) sieve.

[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

[C] Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt, GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay, GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt, GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay.

[D] Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: SW-SM well-graded sand with silt, SW-SC well-graded sand with clay, SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay.

[E] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $\quad Cc = \dfrac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

[F] If soil contains ≥ 15% sand, add "with sand" to group name.

[G] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

[H] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

[I] If soil contains ≥ 15% gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

[J] If Atterberg limits plot in shaded area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

[K] If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.

[L] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200 predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

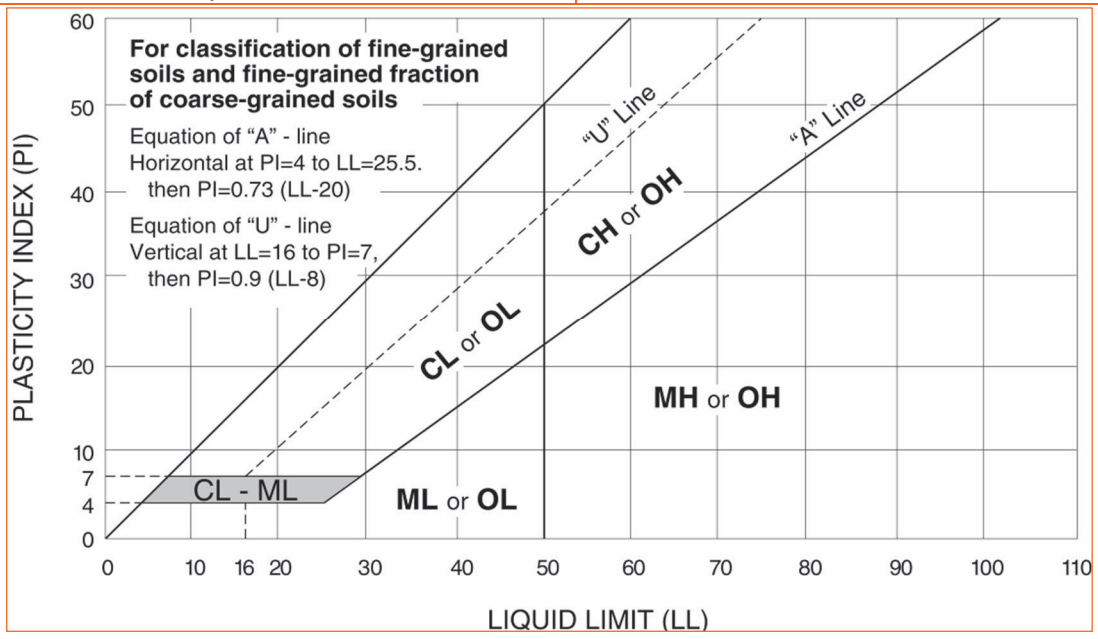
[M] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.

[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.

[P] PI plots on or above "A" line.

[Q] PI plots below "A" line.



DOBBS FERRY MIDDLE SCHOOL / HIGH SCHOOL

ATTACHMENTS

SITE LOCATION AND EXPLORATION PLANS

Contents:

Site Location Plan
Exploration Plans (2 pages)

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

SITE LOCATION

Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, New York
March 24, 2020 ■ Terracon Project No. JB195335

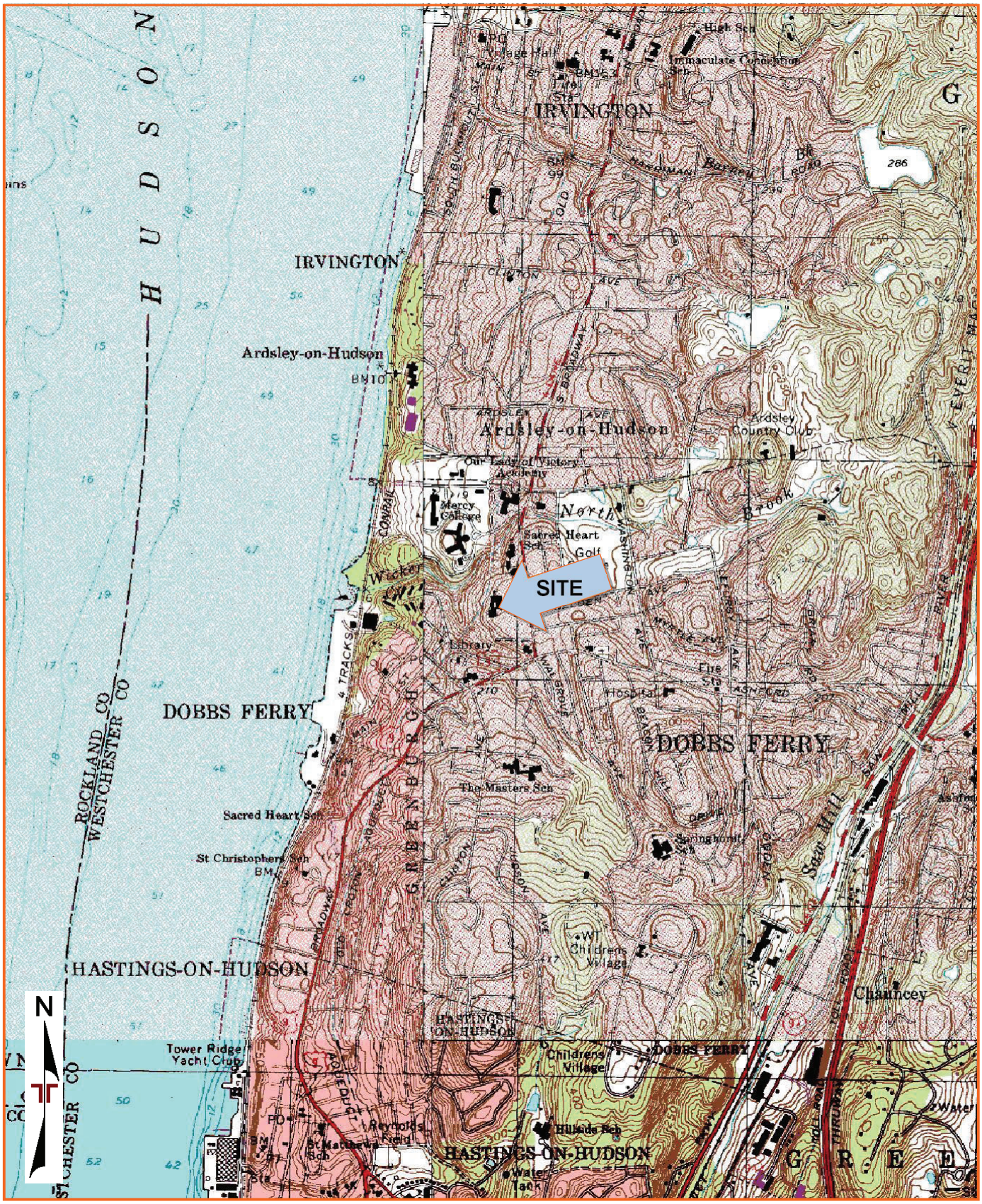


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

TOPOGRAPHIC MAP IMAGE COURTESY OF THE U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY QUADRANGLES INCLUDE: NYACK, NY (1/1/1979), WHITE PLAINS, NY (1/1/1994), YONKERS, NY (1/1/1998) and MOUNT VERNON, NY (1/1/1995).

EXPLORATION PLAN

Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, New York
March 25, 2020 ■ Terracon Project No. JB195335

DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

EXPLORATION PLAN

Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, NY
March 25, 2020 ■ Terracon Project No. JB195335

DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

PHOTOGRAPHY LOG

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

Looking south along proposed trail at north end of rear driveway.

View of stone path at bottom of stairway at south end of rear driveway.

Looking north at bent and leaning trees on slope at south end of rear driveway.

Looking north along proposed trail at north end of rear driveway.

Looking south at boring MS/HS-B-1

Looking north at boring MS/HS-B-2

Looking north at boring MS/HS-B-1

Looking south at boring MS/HS-B-2

Looking south at boring MS/HS-B-3

Looking north at boring MS/HS-B-5


Looking north at boring MS/HS-B-4


Looking north at boring MS/HS-B-5

EXPLORATION RESULTS

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-B-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exploration Plan Latitude: 41.0184° Longitude: -73.8712° DEPTH	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5 **ASPHALT**					
1		**POSSIBLE FILL - SILTY SAND (SM)**, trace gravel, brown, moist, medium dense				17	14-8-7-5 N=15
		3.0 **POSSIBLE FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM)**, brown, moist, loose				8	5-4-4-3 N=8
		5.0 ***Boring Terminated at 5 Feet***	5				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.
Sealed with bituminous cold patch at surface.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:
Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-B-2

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0182° Longitude: -73.8712°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.6	**ASPHALT**					
1		3.0	**POSSIBLE FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL**, occasional cobbles, orange to brown, moist, medium dense, **POSSIBLE REWORKED TILL**				19	18-14-12-15 N=26
1		7.5	**POSSIBLE FILL - POORLY GRADED GRAVEL**, frequent cobbles and boulders, tan, moist, dense to medium dense	5			13	21-24-15-12 N=39
							14	5-8-10-10 N=18
3			**SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, tan, moist, loose to very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**				12	8-5-4-3 N=9
				10			19	16-23-26-28 N=49
							12	18-19-12-10 N=31
		15.0					13	8-15-50/4"
3			**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, tan, moist, dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**	15			19	9-11-20-20 N=31
3		20.0						
3			**SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, tan, moist, very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**	20			23	17-25-31-38 N=56
				25			23	20-30-39-33 N=69
				30			23	23-28-40-32 N=68
		32.0	***Boring Terminated at 32 Feet***					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.
Sealed with bituminous cold patch at surface.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-B-3

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0181° Longitude: -73.8713°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.7	**ASPHALT**					
1			**FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL**, trace pieces of concrete, brown, moist, medium dense				19	9-8-9-10 N=17
							15	9-7-7-7 N=14
		6.0		5			15	8-10-12-13 N=22
3			**SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**				12	8-6-8-12 N=14
				10			12	5-6-6-14 N=12
							3	5-5-5-5 N=10
							7	11-50/1"
				15			5	14-17-21-25 N=38
		17.0	***Boring Terminated at 17 Feet***					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.
Sealed with bituminous cold patch at surface.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-B-4

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0178° Longitude: -73.8714°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5	**ASPHALT**					
1		5.0	**POSSIBLE FILL - SILTY SAND**, frequent cobbles and boulders, brown to orange, moist, dense to very dense, **POSSIBLE REWORKED TILL**				8	5-25-22-13 N=47
							0	18-30-50/4"
		9.0	**POSSIBLE FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL**, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to loose, **POSSIBLE REWORKED TILL**	5			8	14-11-10-7 N=21
							5	10-4-3-3 N=7
2		15.0	**SANDY SILT (ML)**, orange to brown, very moist to wet, medium dense to very loose	10			14	4-6-8-9 N=14
							15	6-5-4-3 N=9
				15			15	WH/12"-2-3 N=2
3		22.0	**SANDY SILT WITH GRAVEL (ML)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, tan, moist, very dense to medium dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**				15	5-27-50/4"
				20			17	15-14-13-15 N=27
			Boring Terminated at 22 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.
Sealed with bituminous cold patch at surface.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:
Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-B-5

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0176° Longitude: -73.8714°

MODEL LAYER	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
	0.3	**ASPHALT**					
	0.6	**PAVEMENT BASE**					
1		**FILL - SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL** , brown to orange, moist, dense, **REWORKED TILL**				12	2-22-12-12 N=34
	3.0						
		FILL - POORLY GRADED GRAVEL WITH SILT AND SAND , brown, moist, dense				19	12-20-18-11 N=38
	4.5						
2		**SANDY SILT WITH GRAVEL (ML)**, slight mottling, orange to brown, moist, medium dense to loose	5			13	8-4-4-4 N=8
	7.0						
		SILT WITH SAND (ML), trace gravel, orange to brown, moist to very moist, loose				19	4-3-3-4 N=6
			10			18	1-2-3-4 N=5
	11.0						
3		**SANDY SILT WITH GRAVEL (ML)**, occasional cobbles and boulders, orange to brown, moist, dense to medium dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**				8	6-13-26-38 N=39
						19	20-14-15-14 N=29
	15.0		15				
		SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SM), occasional cobbles and boulders, brown, moist, medium dense				22	12-10-9-9 N=19
		<<B>Grades to frequent cobbles and boulders, very dense	20			0	50/2"
			25			11	23-50/4"
	30.1		30			0	50/1"
		Sampler Refusal on Probable Boulders at 30.1 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.
Sealed with bituminous cold patch at surface.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-18-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-18-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-B-6

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0175° Longitude: -73.8716°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
1			**FILL - SILTY SAND**, pieces of cement, ash, and brick, trace rootlets, brown, moist, medium dense				21	6-7-8-8 N=15
							14	8-10-13-10 N=23
		4.5		5			17	6-4-4-4 N=8
2			**SANDY SILT WITH GRAVEL (ML)**, orange to brown, moist, loose				13	4-3-3-3 N=6
		8.0					18	4-2-5-6 N=7
			SILTY SAND (SM), trace gravel, orange to brown, moist, loose to medium dense	10			11	4-7-32-31 N=39
		11.0					14	31-34-32-31 N=66
3			**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL (SP-SM)**, tan, moist, medium dense to very dense, **(GLACIAL TILL)**	15			17	9-11-11-15 N=22
				20			19	16-17-31-36 N=48
		22.0						
			Boring Terminated at 22 Feet					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-18-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-18-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. MS/HS-I-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	LOCATION See Exploration Plan Latitude: 41.0183° Longitude: -73.8715° DEPTH	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5 **TOPSOIL**					
1		**FILL - POORLY GRADED SAND**, trace gravel, orange to brown, moist					
		2.5 ***Boring Terminated at 2.5 Feet***					

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Advancement Method:
Hand dug using post-hole diggers

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:
Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS
No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020
Drill Rig: N/A | Driller: S. Morey
Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. HSE-I-1

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0184° Longitude: -73.8699°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5	**TOPSOIL**					
1		3.5	**POSSIBLE FILL - SILT WITH SAND**, trace rootlets, tan, moist, loose				5	3-2-2-1 N=4
							11	2-2-4-12 N=6
2		10.0	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL**, occasional cobbles, tan, moist, dense to medium dense	5			19	10-21-28-28 N=49
							18	21-17-18-18 N=35
							18	13-12-14-14 N=26
			Boring Terminated at 10 Feet	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

BORING LOG NO. HSE-I-2

PROJECT: Dobbs Ferry Schools

CLIENT: Dobbs Ferry Union Free School District
Dobbs Ferry, New York

SITE: 505 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, New York

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 41.0181° Longitude: -73.8701°

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH		DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	RECOVERY (In.)	FIELD TEST RESULTS
		0.5	**TOPSOIL**					
1		2.5	**POSSIBLE FILL - SILT WITH SAND**, trace rootlets, tan, moist, loose				17	2-2-2-3 N=4
2			**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT AND GRAVEL**, occasional cobbles, tan, moist, dense to very dense	5			13	3-13-24-21 N=37
							19	16-23-27-24 N=50
							15	27-21-26-34 N=47
		10.0					18	19-21-18-19 N=39
			Boring Terminated at 10 Feet	10				

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
2 1/4" ID HSA

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with soil cuttings upon completion.

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Notes:

Logged by: JCH

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
594 Broadway
Watervliet, NY

Boring Started: 02-19-2020 | Boring Completed: 02-19-2020

Drill Rig: Diedrich D-50 | Driller: S. Morey

Project No.: JB195335

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Soil Test Report

Prepared For:

Edward Gravelle
Dente Group
549 Broadway
Watervliet, NY 12189

ed.gravelle@terracon.com
518-266-0310

Sample Information:

Sample ID: HSE-TS-1

Order Number: 49210
Lab Number: S200228-202
Area Sampled: 0.45 acres
Received: 2/28/2020
Reported: 3/9/2020

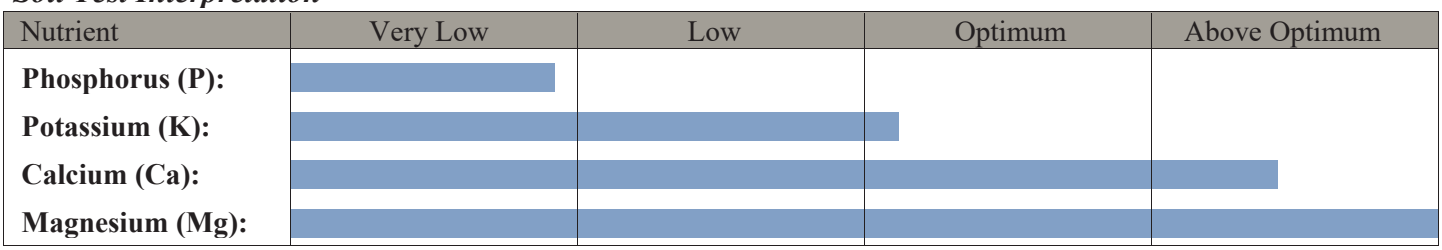
Results

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Soil pH (1:1, H2O)	7.1	
Modified Morgan extractable, ppm		
Macronutrients		
Phosphorus (P)	1.8	4-14
Potassium (K)	105	100-160
Calcium (Ca)	1714	1000-1500
Magnesium (Mg)	474	50-120
Sulfur (S)	15.7	>10
Micronutrients *		
Boron (B)	0.7	0.1-0.5
Manganese (Mn)	5.1	1.1-6.3
Zinc (Zn)	5.9	1.0-7.6
Copper (Cu)	0.2	0.3-0.6
Iron (Fe)	1.3	2.7-9.4
Aluminum (Al)	5	<75
Lead (Pb)	3.0	<22

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Cation Exch. Capacity, meq/100g	12.7	
Exch. Acidity, meq/100g	0.0	
Base Saturation, %		
Calcium Base Saturation	67	50-80
Magnesium Base Saturation	31	10-30
Potassium Base Saturation	2	2.0-7.0
Scoop Density, g/cc	0.78	
Optional tests		
Soil Organic Matter (LOI), %	5.8	
Soluble Salts (1:2), dS/m	0.14	<0.6
Nitrate-N (NO3-N), ppm	35	

* *Micronutrient deficiencies rarely occur in New England soils; therefore, an Optimum Range has never been defined. Values provided represent the normal range found in soils and are for reference only.*

Soil Test Interpretation



Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Established Lawn

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
0	2 - 4	2	1

Comments:

*Your nitrate level is currrently above optimum. Please disregard nitrogen recommendation. No additional nitrogen is needed at this time.
-For instructions on converting nutrient recommendations to fertilizer applications in lawns, see Reference "Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns" (listed below).
-When pH is greater than 6.8, Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) tends to be overestimated.
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

References:

Home Lawn and Garden Information	http://ag.umass.edu/resources/home-lawn-garden
Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/fertilizer-guide-for-lawns

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Establishment

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
0	2 - 4	2.5	1

Comments:

*Your nitrate level is currrently above optimum. Please disregard nitrogen recommendation. No additional nitrogen is needed at this time.
-When pH is greater than 6.8, Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) tends to be overestimated.
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Maintenance

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
0	4 - 6	2	1

Comments:

*Your nitrate level is currrently above optimum. Please disregard nitrogen recommendation. No additional nitrogen is needed at this time.
-When pH is greater than 6.8, Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) tends to be overestimated.
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

General References:

Interpreting Your Soil Test Results	http://soiltest.umass.edu/fact-sheets/interpreting-your-soil-test-results
Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation & Recommendations	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/soil-lead-fact-sheet
For current information and order forms, please visit	http://soiltest.umass.edu/
UMass Extension Nutrient Management	http://ag.umass.edu/agriculture-resources/nutrient-management

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Soil Test Report

Prepared For:

Edward Gravelle
Dente Group
549 Broadway
Watervliet, NY 12189

ed.gravelle@terracon.com
518-266-0310

Sample Information:

Sample ID: HSE-TS-2

Order Number: 49210
Lab Number: S200228-203
Area Sampled: 0.45 acres
Received: 2/28/2020
Reported: 3/9/2020

Results

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Soil pH (1:1, H2O)	5.8	
Modified Morgan extractable, ppm		
Macronutrients		
Phosphorus (P)	0.9	4-14
Potassium (K)	145	100-160
Calcium (Ca)	965	1000-1500
Magnesium (Mg)	165	50-120
Sulfur (S)	11.7	>10
Micronutrients *		
Boron (B)	0.2	0.1-0.5
Manganese (Mn)	8.3	1.1-6.3
Zinc (Zn)	1.8	1.0-7.6
Copper (Cu)	0.1	0.3-0.6
Iron (Fe)	3.2	2.7-9.4
Aluminum (Al)	48	<75
Lead (Pb)	3.1	<22

Analysis	*Value Found*	*Optimum Range*
Cation Exch. Capacity, meq/100g	11.6	
Exch. Acidity, meq/100g	5.1	
Base Saturation, %		
Calcium Base Saturation	42	50-80
Magnesium Base Saturation	12	10-30
Potassium Base Saturation	3	2.0-7.0
Scoop Density, g/cc	0.76	
Optional tests		
Soil Organic Matter (LOI), %	5.6	
Soluble Salts (1:2), dS/m	0.07	<0.6
Nitrate-N (NO3-N), ppm	23	

* *Micronutrient deficiencies rarely occur in New England soils; therefore, an Optimum Range has never been defined. Values provided represent the normal range found in soils and are for reference only.*

Soil Test Interpretation

Nutrient	Very Low	Low	Optimum	Above Optimum
Phosphorus (P):				
Potassium (K):				
Calcium (Ca):				
Magnesium (Mg):				

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Established Lawn

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
75	2 - 4	2	0

Comments:

-Do not topdress with more than 50 lb limestone per 1000 sq ft at one time. Split the above application between early spring and mid-autumn.
-For instructions on converting nutrient recommendations to fertilizer applications in lawns, see Reference "Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns" (listed below).
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

References:

Home Lawn and Garden Information	http://ag.umass.edu/resources/home-lawn-garden
Step-by-Step Fertilizer Guide for Lawns	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/fertilizer-guide-for-lawns

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Establishment

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
75	2 - 4	2.5	1

Comments:

-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

Soil and Plant Nutrient Testing Laboratory
203 Paige Laboratory
161 Holdsworth Way
University of Massachusetts
Amherst, MA 01003
Phone: (413) 545-2311
e-mail: soiltest@umass.edu
website: soiltest.umass.edu

Recommendations for Golf Greens and Tees-Maintenance

Limestone (Target pH of 6.5)	Nitrogen, N	Phosphorus, P2O5	Potassium, K2O
	lbs / 1000 sq ft		
75	4 - 6	2	1

Comments:

-Do not topdress with more than 50 lb limestone per 1000 sq ft at one time. Split the above application between early spring and mid-autumn.
-For best results, split the N, P2O5, and K2O recommendations above into three to four applications over the course of the growing season at six to eight week intervals, beginning in mid- to late-April.
-Many fertilizer sources and rates may be combined to provide acceptable turfgrass fertilty.
-The lead level in this soil is below the optimum range of <22 ppm listed on your test results. However, many variables affect this result, and safety thresholds vary by location and soil use. There may still be a potential risk of lead exposure for soils used for growing food or as play areas for children. Our Total Sorbed Metals test provides an accurate measurement of soil lead. For more information about lead levels in soil, see the fact sheet entitled "Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation, & Recommendations," listed under General References at the end of this report.

General References:

Interpreting Your Soil Test Results	http://soiltest.umass.edu/fact-sheets/interpreting-your-soil-test-results
Soil Lead: Testing, Interpretation & Recommendations	http://ag.umass.edu/soil-plant-nutrient-testing-laboratory/fact-sheets/soil-lead-fact-sheet
For current information and order forms, please visit	http://soiltest.umass.edu/
UMass Extension Nutrient Management	http://ag.umass.edu/agriculture-resources/nutrient-management

SUPPORTING INFORMATION

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

GENERAL NOTES

DESCRIPTION OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS
Dobbs Ferry Schools ■ Dobbs Ferry, New York
Terracon Project No. JB195335

Terracon GeoReport

SAMPLING	WATER LEVEL	FIELD TESTS
 Grab Sample  Split Spoon	 **Water Initially Encountered**  **Water Level After a Specified Period of Time**  **Water Level After a Specified Period of Time**  **Cave In Encountered** Water levels indicated on the soil boring logs are the levels measured in the borehole at the times indicated. Groundwater level variations will occur over time. In low permeability soils, accurate determination of groundwater levels is not possible with short term water level observations.	**N** Standard Penetration Test Resistance (Blows/Ft.) **(HP)** Hand Penetrometer **(T)** Torvane **(DCP)** Dynamic Cone Penetrometer **UC** Unconfined Compressive Strength **(PID)** Photo-Ionization Detector **(OVA)** Organic Vapor Analyzer

DESCRIPTIVE SOIL CLASSIFICATION

Soil classification as noted on the soil boring logs is based Unified Soil Classification System. Where sufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils consistent with ASTM D2487 "Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes" this procedure is used. ASTM D2488 "Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)" is also used to classify the soils, particularly where insufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils in accordance with ASTM D2487. In addition to USCS classification, coarse grained soils are classified on the basis of their in-place relative density, and fine-grained soils are classified on the basis of their consistency. See "Strength Terms" table below for details. The ASTM standards noted above are for reference to methodology in general. In some cases, variations to methods are applied as a result of local practice or professional judgment.

LOCATION AND ELEVATION NOTES

Exploration point locations as shown on the Exploration Plan and as noted on the soil boring logs in the form of Latitude and Longitude are approximate. See Exploration and Testing Procedures in the report for the methods used to locate the exploration points for this project. Surface elevation data annotated with +/- indicates that no actual topographical survey was conducted to confirm the surface elevation. Instead, the surface elevation was approximately determined from topographic maps of the area.

STRENGTH TERMS

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COARSE-GRAINED SOILS (More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.) Density determined by Standard Penetration Resistance		CONSISTENCY OF FINE-GRAINED SOILS (50% or more passing the No. 200 sieve.) Consistency determined by laboratory shear strength testing, field visual-manual procedures or standard penetration resistance		
Descriptive Term (Density)	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**	**Descriptive Term (Consistency)**	**Unconfined Compressive Strength Qu, (tsf)**	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**
Very Loose	0 - 3	Very Soft	less than 0.25	0 - 1
Loose	4 - 9	Soft	0.25 to 0.50	2 - 4
Medium Dense	10 - 29	Medium Stiff	0.50 to 1.00	4 - 8
Dense	30 - 50	Stiff	1.00 to 2.00	8 - 15
Very Dense	> 50	Very Stiff	2.00 to 4.00	15 - 30
		Hard	> 4.00	> 30

RELEVANCE OF SOIL BORING LOG

The soil boring logs contained within this document are intended for application to the project as described in this document. Use of these soil boring logs for any other purpose may not be appropriate.

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

Terracon GeoReport

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests [A]					Soil Classification	
					Group Symbol	Group Name [B]
Coarse-Grained Soils: More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	**Gravels:** More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	**Clean Gravels:** Less than 5% fines [C]	Cu ≥ 4 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3 [E]		GW	Well-graded gravel [F]
			Cu < 4 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]		GP	Poorly graded gravel [F]
		Gravels with Fines: More than 12% fines [C]	Fines classify as ML or MH		GM	Silty gravel [F, G, H]
			Fines classify as CL or CH		GC	Clayey gravel [F, G, H]
	Sands: 50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	**Clean Sands:** Less than 5% fines [D]	Cu ≥ 6 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3 [E]		SW	Well-graded sand [I]
			Cu < 6 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]		SP	Poorly graded sand [I]
		Sands with Fines: More than 12% fines [D]	Fines classify as ML or MH		SM	Silty sand [G, H, I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH		SC	Clayey sand [G, H, I]
Fine-Grained Soils: 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve	**Silts and Clays:** Liquid limit less than 50	**Inorganic:**	PI > 7 and plots on or above "A"		CL	Lean clay [K, L, M]
			PI < 4 or plots below "A" line [J]		ML	Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OL	Organic clay [K, L, M, N]
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt [K, L, M, O]
	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit 50 or more	**Inorganic:**	PI plots on or above "A" line		CH	Fat clay [K, L, M]
			PI plots below "A" line		MH	Elastic Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OH	Organic clay [K, L, M, P]
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt [K, L, M, Q]
Highly organic soils:	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor				PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75-mm) sieve.

[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

[C] Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt, GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay, GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt, GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay.

[D] Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: SW-SM well-graded sand with silt, SW-SC well-graded sand with clay, SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay.

[E] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $\quad Cc = \dfrac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

[F] If soil contains ≥ 15% sand, add "with sand" to group name.

[G] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

[H] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

[I] If soil contains ≥ 15% gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

[J] If Atterberg limits plot in shaded area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

[K] If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.

[L] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200 predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

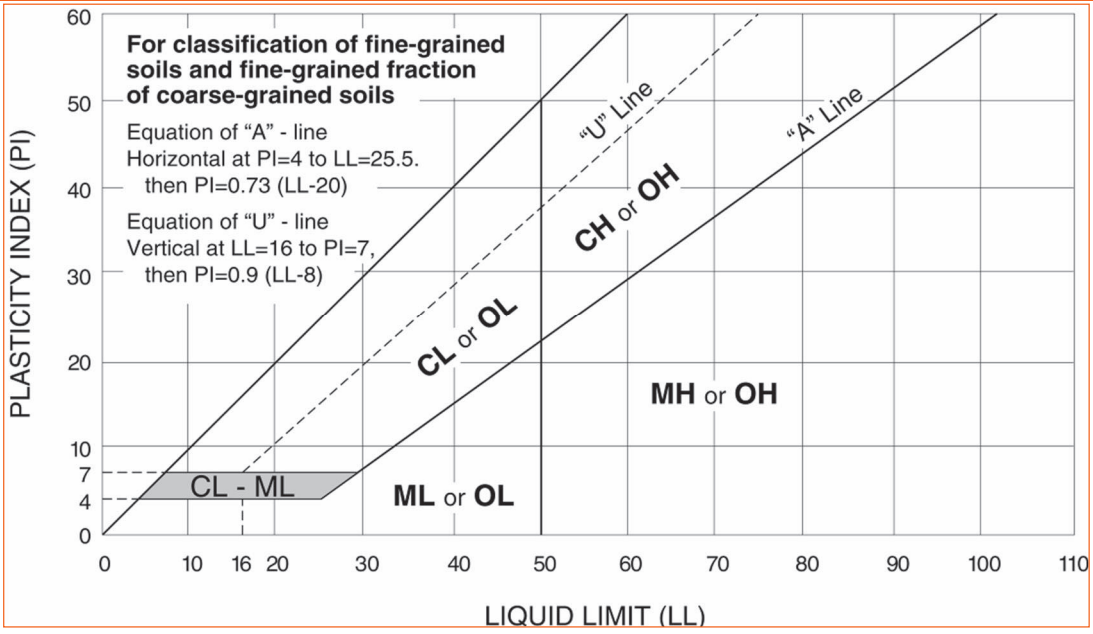
[M] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.

[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.

[P] PI plots on or above "A" line.

[Q] PI plots below "A" line.



SECTION 31 25 00 - EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Erosion, sediment and pollution controls as shown on the Drawings and as directed by the Architect to significantly reduce runoff on downstream properties. This includes temporary control measures to mitigate land disruption by other contractors during construction of this project.

2. Erosion, sediment and pollution control includes, but is not limited to, the following:

   a. Standard control measures such as storm structure protection, silt fence, silt fence dikes, and rip rap.
   b. Off site sediment tracking controls.
   c. Sedimentation basin.
   d. Seeding, sodding and erosion control fabric.
   e. Rock check dam, sediment trap and detention basin with weir.
   f. Temporary protection for existing vegetation.
   g. Clean up.

3. Comply with the Soil Erosion and Sediment Control (SESC) for this Project in consultation with appropriate local agencies and soil conservation service. *Any local or State Agency requirements are considered part of these specifications.*

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL:

A. General; Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product listed.

1. Filter fabric and hardware cloth for storm structure protection.
2. Silt fence and silt fence dikes.
3. Straw bales
4. Stakes

5. Erosion control blanket
6. Turf reinforcement matting
7. Soil stabilization fabric for off-site sediment tracking control.
8. Bonded fiber matrix
9. Channel drain inlet filter matting
10. Drop-In Inlet Protection

B. Material Certificates: Materials certificates showing content/mechanical analysis are required for the following products. Also, provide samples as noted.

1. Granular Backfill: Sample.
2. Granular Base Course Material: Sample.
3. Seeding & sodding.
4. Rip rap.
5. No. 4 stone for off site sediment tracking control.
6. 4,000 psi concrete.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Control Submittals

B. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by applicable subcontractor, Contractor and manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with applicable “Qualifications” requirements specified below in “Quality Assurance” article.

C. Installer Experience Listing: Submit list of completed projects using products proposed for this Project, including owner’s contact and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable “Qualifications” requirements specified below in “Quality Assurance” article.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform erosion, sediment and pollution control in compliance with applicable requirements of the New York Standards and Specifications Erosion and Sediment Control and other governing authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handle and store products according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.8 NOTICES

A. Pre-Construction Conference: Within seven days of start of construction, attend Civil/Structural Preconstruction Meeting. Representatives of all Contractors responsible for earthwork operations are required to attend.

B. When the site has been finally stabilized, Contractor will notify the Architect, in writing, that a final inspection be performed.

C. Pay any fines issued by any agency as a result of non-compliance with the SESC Plans.

1.9 INSPECTIONS AND MAINTENANCE

A. The Architect or qualified personnel of the Owner shall inspect disturbed areas of the construction site. Special attention will be focused on areas not finally stabilized, structural control measures, and locations where vehicles enter or exit the site. Disturbed areas will be inspected for pollutants entering the drainage system. Structural control measures will be reviewed for effectiveness in preventing significant impacts to receiving waters. Locations where vehicles enter or exit the site will be inspected for evidence of off-site sediment tracking.

B. Provide timely maintenance of vegetation erosion and sediment control measures, and other protective measures, during construction.

C. Perform corrective measures within three calendar days of the Architect's or Owner's report at no cost to the Owner. Failure by the Contractor to perform corrective work within this schedule automatically authorizes the Owner to hire others and deduct from the Contract Sum the costs incurred by the Owner for the performance of this Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STORM SEWER PROTECTION

A. 1/2-inch mesh hardware cloth covered with a polypropylene silt fence fabric (see below).

2.2 STRAW WATTLE

A. Dense, 9” diameter tubes made with certified noxious weed-free straw bound by netting. Straw wattles shall be temporary, sediment control devices that minimize sediment movement in runoff, reduce water velocity, and release water as sheet flow. In conjunction with other erosion control products and techniques, wattles shall provide slope, channel, swale, and ditch interruption and protection for water inlets and outlets. Wattles will be bound with twine or wire.

B. Encased in biodegradable netting, constructed of High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) with an added biodegradable agent and UV stabilizer.

2.3 SILT FENCE

A. Meet the following criteria unless specific type is shown on plans or Architect accepts the change in criteria.

1. Silt Fence: Polypropylene filter fabric supported by non-pressure treated hardwood posts meeting the following requirements.

Property	Unit	Test Method	Value
Grab Tensile Strength (Machine Direction)	lbs	ASTM D 4632	124 min
Grab Tensile Strength (Cross-Machine Direction)	lbs	ASTM D 4632	124 min
Grab Tensile Elongation	%	ASTM D 4632	15 / 15
Trapezoid Tear Strength	lbs	ASTM D 4533	65 min
Mullen Burst Strength	psi	ASTM D 3786	300 min
Puncture Strength	lbs	ASTM D 4833	60
Ultraviolet Stability (Strength Retained)	%	ASTM D 4355	70
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)	U.S. Sieve	ASTM D 4751	30
Permittivity	sec^{1}	ASTM D 4491	0.10
Coeff of Permeability	CM/Sec	ASTM D 4491	0.005 min
Water Flow Rate	$gal/min/ft^2$	ASTM D 4491	10 min

2. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements provide Tencate Geosynthetics Mirafi 100X fabric or comparable product.

3. Reinforced fence: Fabric backed with 14-1/2 gauge by 6 inch square mesh woven wire. See plans and details for specific locations or requirements.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. DGI Industries.
2. Hanes Geo Components.
3. TenCate Geosynthetics (Mirafi).

2.4 STAKES

A. One of the following:

1. 2-inch by 2-inch nominal by 4-feet long, non-pressure treated hardwood.
2. #4 rebar, 4-feet long min.

B. Maximum post spacing permitted shall be: 8’4” O.C.

2.5 STONE FILTERS

A. Size shown on the plans meeting the requirements of ASTM C33 or State specifications where applicable.

2.6 PERMANENT SEEDING AND SODDING

A. Refer to applicable section.

2.7 TEMPORARY SEEDING (unless otherwise shown on Drawings):

A. Minimum Requirements:

1. Lime: 1/2 ton per acre.
2. Fertilizer: Commercial 5-10-10 or equivalent (600 lbs per acre).
3. Seed: Ryegrass (annual or perennial) (40 lbs. per acre).
4. Mulch: Straw at 2 ton per acre.

2.8 EROSION CONTROL BLANKETS

A. On Slopes less than 3:1 – Netless Biodegradable Blanket: 100% biodegradable stitched excelsior erosion control matting. (Netted erosion control fabric on slopes flatter than 3:1 is not allowed.)

1. Material Characteristics:

a. Soil loss ratio: .063
b. Fiber Size: 80% of fibers min. of 6 inches long
c. Weight: 0.73 lb per square yard.
d. Suitable for channel flows up to 3.0 ft./second and 1.0 lb/ft. shear stress.

2. Staples: Use manufacturer provided staples.

3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. "Curlex NetFree" Erosion Control Blanket manufactured by North American Green.

B. On Slopes Steeper than 3:1 up to 1.5:1 – 100% biodegradable excelsior erosion control matting with polypropylene netting containing a UV degrader additive.

1. Material Characteristics:

a. Fiber Count: 7,000 per square yard.
b. Fiber length: 80% of fibers min. of 6" long
c. Net Openings: 1.0 inch x 2 inches
d. Thickness: 0.411 inch per ASTM D 6525
e. Swell: 49% per ECTC Procedure
f. MD-Tensile Strength Max.: 74.4 lb./ft. per ASTM D 6818
g. TD-Tensile Strength Max.: 36.0 lb./ft. per ASTM D 6818

2. Staples: Use manufacturer provided staples.

3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. "Curlex I QuickMow" Erosion Control Blanket manufactured by North American Green.

C. Within High Water Line or Floodway – Extended-term biodegradable fiber matrix with coconut fibers. Functional longevity to be 18 months with maximum flow velocity of 8.0 ft/s. Functional longevity to be 18 months with maximum flow velocity of 8.0 ft/s.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Product No. SC150BN manufactured by North American Green.

2.9 TURF REINFORCEMENT MATTING

A. Permanent erosion control/turf reinforcement mat constructed of a matrix of polypropylene monofilament yarns woven into uniform configuration of resilient pyramid-like projections.

1. Material Properties:

Property	**Test Method**	**Units**	**Property Requirement**
Thickness	ASTM D-6525	mm (in)	10.2 (0.40)
Resiliency	ASTM D-6524	percent	80
Mass Per Unit Area	ASTM D-6566	G/sq m (oz/sy)	455 (13.5)
Tensile Strength	ASTM D-6818	kN/m (lbs/ft)	58.4 x 43.8 (4,000 x 3,000)
Tensile Elongation	ASTM D-6818	percent	65 (max)
Light Penetration (% Passing)	ASTM D-6567	percent	10
UV Resistance	ASTM D-4355	percent	90 at 6000 hrs

2. Performance Properties: In a vegetated state, the RECP must demonstrate acceptable performance (as defined by the Engineer) when subjected to at least 0.5 hrs of continuous flow producing the following conditions:

   a. Permissible velocity: 7.6 m/sec (25 ft/sec)
   b. Permissible tractive force (shear stress): 0.718 kPa (15 psf)

3. Color: Green.

4. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Pyramat Geotextile System by Propex, Inc.

2.10 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE

A. No. 4 stone meeting the following requirements:

Standard ASTM Sieve Size	Percent Passing by Weight
4 inch	100
3 inch	90-100
2 inch	0-15
Passing No. 50	5-10
Passing No. 100	2-5

B. Soil Stabilization Fabric:

1. Stabilization Fabric: Commercially manufactured, UV stabilized low clogging, high flow, woven geotextile meeting the following requirements.

Property	Unit	Test Method	Value
Grab Strength	lbs	ASTMD-4632	315 min
Tensile Strength	lbs/in	ASTMD-4595	175 min
Grab Elongation	%	ASTMD-4632	15 max
Trapezoid Tear	lbs	ASTMD-4533	120 min
Mullen Burst	psi	ASTMD-3786	600 min
Permittivity	/Sec	ASTMD-4491	.05min
Water Flow Rate	gal/min/ft^2	ASTMD-4491	4 min

2. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements provide Tencate Geosynthetics Mirafi 600X fabric or comparable product.

3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. DGI Industries.
   b. Hanes Geo Components.
   c. TenCate Geosynthetics (Mirafi).

C. Granular Base Course Material: Shall be as specified in Earth Moving Section.

2.11 TEMPORARY TREE PROTECTION

A. Stakes: shall be a 2 inch by 4 inch by 6 feet (min) non-pressure treated hardwood.

B. Top Rail: shall be 2 inch x 4 inch x 8 feet (max) non-pressure treated hardwood fastened to stakes by nails or screws.

C. Fabric: Heavy duty orange construction barrier fencing similar to "Sentry HD" fencing by Tenax Corporation Baltimore Maryland. Fabric shall be attached to the stakes and top rails with staples or other fasteners.

2.12 OUTLET SEDIMENTATION TRAP

A. Outlet Sedimentation Trap: Constructed of 12 inch pipe, AASHTO M294-Type S or SP corrugated HDPE N-12 pipe and stone as shown in the Drawings. Filter fabric shall be as specified for siltation fence. Hardware cloth shall be ½ inch mesh. Concrete shall be 4,000 psi.

2.13 ROCK CHECK DAMS AND SEDIMENT TRAPS

A. Provide stone rip rap as specified. Vegetation shall be as described on the Drawings.

2.14 BONDED FIBER MATRIX

A. Hydraulically applied continuous layer of biodegradable elongated fiber strands held together by a water-resistant bonding agent with no holes greater than one millimeter in size.

B. Physical Components:

1. Ingredients/Composition:

    a. Gypsum-based, soil beneficial binder
    b. Cellulosic fiber mulch (paper/soft wood)
    c. Plant-based tackifiers (short-term binding agents)
    d. Nonpetroleum-based polymers (long-term binding agents)
    e. Surfactant
    f. Water-holding polyacrylmides (PAM)

C. Physical Properties:

1. Moisture: 10% (+/- 2%)
2. pH: 5.5 – 6.5
3. Mix: 70lbs (+/-10 lbs.) per 100 gallons of water (Recommended)
4. Color: Green
5. Wood/Cellulose Fiber: 70% / 30%
6. Water Holding ASTM D 7367-07: 850-950%
7. Water Holding ASTM Modified Method: 1200 – 1400%

D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. "Enviro-Shield" Brand Bonded Fiber Matrix by USG.
2. "Flexterra" by Profile Products, LLC.

2.15 DROP-IN INLET PROTECTION:

A. Standard of quality for aftermarket inlet protection for use in existing and proposed catch basin, drop inlets, curb box inlets and storm manholes shall be Flexstorm Inlet Filters, by Inlet and Pipe Protection, Inc., Naperville, Illinois.

1. Description of System:

a. An aftermarket drop-in inlet filter system designed to collect silt and sediment from surface storm water runoff at drainage locations shown on the plans, at existing inlets in pavement where adjacent disturbance will allow sediment runoff to occur, in areas where access to the site dictates their use due to phasing issues, or as directed by the Engineer.

b. An aftermarket drop-in inlet filter system comprised of a corrosion resistant steel frame and a replaceable geotextile sediment bag attached to the frame with a stainless steel locking band. The sediment bag hangs suspended from the rigid frame at a distance below the grate that shall allow full water flow into the drainage structure if the bag is completely filled with sediment.

c. The aftermarket drop-in inlet filter frame includes lifting handles in addition to the standard overflow feature. A proprietary Removal Tool engages the lifting bars or handles to allow manual removal of the assembly without machine assistance. The frame suspension system is adjustable in ½" increments up to 5" per side on rectangular designs should the casting or drainage structure have imperfections.

d. Standard woven polypropylene sediment bags with a typical flow rate of 200 gpm / sq ft.

2. Woven Sediment Bag Material Specifications:

		MARV[2]	
PROPERTY	TEST METHOD	ENGLISH	METRIC
Mechanical			
Tensile Strength (Grab)	ASTM D-4632	255 x 275 lbs	1130 x 1220 N
Elongation	ASTM D-4632	20 x 15 %	20 x 15 %
Puncture	ASTM D-4833	135 lbs	600 N
Mullen Burst	ASTM D-3786	420 psi	2890 kPa
Trapezoidal Tear	ASTM D-4533	40 x 50 lbs	175 x 220 N
Endurance			
UV Resistance	ASTM D-4355	90%	90%
Hydraulic			
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)[3]	ASTM D-4751	20 US Std. Sieve	0.850 mm
Percent Open Area (POA)	CW-02215 Mod.[4]	20%	20%
Permittivity	ASTM D-4491	1.50 sec^{-1}	1.50 sec^{-1}
Water Flow Rate	ASTM D-4491	200 gpm/ft^2	8,145 $l/min/m^2$

3. Tested Filtration Efficiency:

a. All testing performed in general accordance with the ASTM D 7351, *Standard Test Method For Determination of Sediment Retention Device Effectiveness in Sheet Flow Application*, with flow diverted into an area inlet. Test Soil used as sediment had the following characteristics with a nominal 7% sediment to water concentration mix:

Soil Characteristics	Test Method	Value
% Gravel	ASTM D 422	2
% Sand		60
% Silt		24
% Clay		14
Liquid Limit, %	ASTM D 4318	34
Plasticity Index, %		9
Soil Classification	USDA	Sandy Loam
Soil Classification	USCS	Silty Sand (SM)

Tested Efficiencies:

Property	Woven Sediment Bag
Filtration Efficiency	82%

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which soil erosion and sediment control is to be installed notify Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

B. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrate and conditions.

3.2 GENERAL EROSION CONTROL

A. Install initial construction erosion control features, as indicated on SESC Drawings and Specifications or as directed by the Architect, prior to topsoil stripping, earthwork, and removal of existing vegetation. Keep the disturbance to a minimum. Install other features as described in the sequence of erosion, sediment and pollution control on the drawings.

B. Minimize amount of bare soil exposed at one time. Cumulative disturbance in excess of one acre requires coverage under NYSDEC SPDES Permit for Construction Activities.

C. Start permanent seeding within seven calendar days of rough grading. When this is not possible, provide temporary seeding of perennial rye grass at the rate of three pounds seed per one thousand square feet. Provide temporary seeding within seven days on non-roof, non-paved areas. When adverse weather conditions prevent good germination, repeat seeding as directed by the Architect until the area is stabilized. Till under temporary grass and fine grade when preparing for final seeding.

D. Until a disturbed area is stabilized, trap runoff sediment by the use of debris basins, sediment basins, silt traps, or other methods acceptable to the Architect and governing authorities. Construct sediment basins to dimensions shown on plans.

E. Place stone filters in accordance with dimensions shown on Drawings. If filters become plugged or partially plugged, remove and replace the stone. Cleaning of stone will only be allowed when method is reviewed by Owner Representative and found acceptable.

F. Provide erosion controls on slopes and swales traversing, bordering, or leaving the site. Limit the water flow to a non-erosive velocity.

G. Do not store fill materials within fifty feet of the banks of any streams or water bodies, intermittent or perennial.

H. Provide temporary protection for Trees and Shrubs as outlined and shown on Drawings and elsewhere in this Section.

I. Inspect erosion and sediment control measures immediately after each rainfall and at least daily during prolonged rainfall. Make required repairs immediately.

J. Remove sediment deposits when they reach approximately one-half of the height of the barrier. Dispose sediment in a manner that does not result in additional erosion or pollution.

K. Provide prompt removal and disposal of rubbish and debris in accordance with the governing authorities.

L. Coordinate temporary erosion and sediment control measures with permanent erosion control features specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents to the maximum extent possible to assure economical, effective, and continuous erosion control.

M. Remove all temporary measures at completion of construction.

3.3 MUNICIPAL SEWER AND WETLAND EROSION CONTROL

A. Control erosion, siltation and pollution to municipal sewers, water bodies and wetlands by taking appropriate measures such as, but not limited to, the following:

1. Prevent petroleum products and excessive amounts of silt, clay, and muck from entering municipal sewers, waters or wetlands of New York State during construction.

2. Prevent fresh concrete, concrete leachate and washings from equipment and trucks, from entering municipal sewers, waters or wetlands of New York State during construction.

3. Place silt fence to control erosion at the down slope edge of disturbed areas. Place this barrier to sediments before disturbance of the ground occurs and maintain in good condition until disturbed land is heavily vegetated or otherwise permanently stabilized.

4. Seed areas of soil disturbance resulting from this Project with appropriate perennial grass seed and mulch with straw within seven calendar days as described in general erosion control. Maintain mulch until a suitable vegetative ground cover is established.

3.4 STORM STRUCTURE PROTECTION

A. As shown on the Soil Erosion and Sediment Control Plans (SESC), provide storm structure protection at each inlet as shown on the detail plan. Clean storm structure protection material after each storm event to permit the fabric and/or drainage stone to work effectively. Remove the drainage material when the site is stabilized and approved by the Architect.

3.5 SILT FENCE

A. Locate in accordance with plans and details and as directed by the Architect. Excavate trench along the lower perimeter(s) of site, along the contract limit line, and as indicated on the Drawings. The placement of silt fence shall consider drainage paths and intercept drainage prior to leaving site or entering storm system. Place excavated material on uphill side of trench for backfilling.

B. Drive stakes securely into the downhill side of the trench. When prefabricated silt fence with fabric attached to stakes is used, drive stakes so that fabric is buried in the ground as detailed.

C. Backfill trench with excavated material, so that fabric is securely buried in the ground to prevent undermining. Tamp soil.

D. Join sections by overlapping fabric between two stakes. Set stakes simultaneously. Overlap by minimum six inches, fold, and staple to prevent sediment bypass.

E. Attach silt fence securely to stakes spaced no more than eight feet on center. Secure fence fabric to stake with minimum three one inch staples.

F. Provide silt fence dikes perpendicular to swale center lines in swales one and one half percent and steeper. Locate dikes at a maximum interval of fifty feet on center unless otherwise shown on drawings.

G. Removal of silt and replacement of silt fence shall be on going throughout the duration of the project to maintain an effective silt removing barrier.

3.6 TEMPORARY SEEDING

A. When necessary, provide temporary seeding as described in this Section.

B. Seedbed Preparation:

1. Scarify soil if compacted.

2. Remove debris and obstacles such as rocks and stumps.
3. Apply lime and fertilizer.
4. Apply seed uniformly by mechanical seeder or hydroseeder.
5. Apply straw mulch.

C. Provide permanent seeding as described elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

3.7 EROSION CONTROL MAT

A. Install on all slopes 3:1 or steeper and where indicated on Drawings. Install in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations and design details, including number and location of staples.

3.8 TURF REINFORCMENT MATTING

A. Install where indicated on Drawings. Install in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations and design details, including number and location of staples.

3.9 BONDED FIBER MATRIX

A. Hydraulically install bonded fiber matrix in strict accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions at the maximum rate given.

B. Typical Application Rates:

1. <3:1 Slope: 3,000 lbs./acre
2. 3:1 < 2:1 Slope: 3,500 lbs./acre
3. >2:1 Slope: 4,000 lbs./acre

C. Limitations: Do not use this product in the following conditions. Notify Architect if these conditions exist.

1. Concentrated overland water flow.
2. On soils that display deep-seated instabilities.
3. Where soil compaction problems exist or on soils that are subjected to frost heave and/or surface peeling (loosening of top layer of soil).

D. Store and handle material per manufacturer's requirements.

3.10 OFFSITE SEDIMENT TRACKING CONTROLS

A. Stabilization Blanket: Install as detailed and shown on Drawings to eliminate tracking sediment off site. Inspect after each rain storm and at least one time per week. When sediment begins tracking off site, immediately replace stone with clean No. 4 stone to retain sediment on site. Remove fabric and stone at project completion. Complete construction of proposed final surface(s).

3.11 OUTLET SEDIMENTATION TRAP

A. Install as detailed. Remove temporary trap and install permanent end section per detail near end of project when directed by the Architect.

3.12 ROCK CHECK DAMS AND SEDIMENT TRAPS

A. Install rip rap and vegetation as detailed on the Drawings and described elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

3.13 DROP-IN INLET PROTECTION

A. Install channel drain inlet matting per manufacturer's installation requirements.
B. Clean silt from filter bag following each rain event and as required. Do NOT allow accumulated sediment to enter the inlet.

3.14 TREE PROTECTION

A. Temporary Protection for Trees and Shrubs:

1. Provide temporary fencing, barricades or guards as required to protect trees and other plants, which are to remain, from above ground damage.

2. Protect root system from smothering. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within drip line (outer perimeter of branches). Do not permit vehicular traffic or parking within drip line. Restrict foot traffic to prevent excessive compaction of soil over root systems.

3. Should any trees or shrubs be damaged which are to be saved, arrange to have such damage treated by a licensed arborist or tree surgeon.

4. Trees or shrubs which die because of the Contractor's failure to conform to the Drawings and specifications shall be evaluated by a qualified organization selected by the Owner's Representative. The removal and replacement of the tree, and the evaluation expenses shall be paid for by the Contractor. Contractor shall be required to replace the damaged tree with plant material of comparable size and quality (i.e. damaged 12 inch caliper Red Maple shall be replaced by three 4 inch cal. or four 3 inch cal. Red Maples). Substitutions for variety shall be approved by the Architect

3.15 CLEANING

A. During the Contract and at intervals as directed by the Architect and as erosion, sediment and pollution control procedures are completed, clear the site of extraneous materials, rubbish, and debris. Leave the site in a clean, safe, well draining, and neat condition.

B. Clean storm ponding areas, catch basins, detention basins, and Oil and Grit Separator(s): Clean out contaminants, sediment, rubbish, construction debris, foreign objects and accumulated floatables from chambers and ponding areas thoroughly, immediately prior to final acceptance.

END OF SECTION 31 25 00

SECTION 32 12 16 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
B. The principle reference for materials and methods is the “New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials,” latest edition (NYSS).

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
3. Pavement-marking paint.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for subgrade and aggregate base preparation and other requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

a. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.

C. Qualification Data:

1. Asphalt Paving Installer Experience Listing: Submit list of completed projects using products proposed for this Project demonstrating compliance with applicable requirements specified below in “Quality Assurance” article.

2. Manufacturer’s Certificates: Certify that hot mix asphalt products meet or exceed NYSDOT Standard Specifications:

a. Section 401: Plant Production
b. Section 402: Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Pavements
c. Section 407: Tack Coat
d. Section 685: Pavement Markings

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer and Mixing Plant Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer and mixing plant with NYSDOT approved materials and batch plant equipment complying with the following NYSDOT Standard Specifications:

1. Section 401: Plant Production
2. Section 402: Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Pavements.

B. Asphalt Paving Installer: Company specializing in performing work described in this section with minimum experience of three years.

C. Permits: Submit certified copies of all permits obtained from local regulatory agencies and New York State Department of Transportation.

D. Installation Requirements: Work to be performed in accordance with the following NYSDOT Standard Specifications:

1. Section 402: Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Pavements
2. Section 407: Tack Coat

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Obtain written permission and required permits from applicable agency prior to start of construction, and submit copies of permits as specified in "Submittals - Quality Control Submittals" above.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temperature and Seasonal Limitations: Refer to NYSDOT 402-3.01 Temperature and Seasonal Limitations.

1. Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, if the temperature has not been above 35 deg for 12 hours immediately prior to application or if the following minimum surface temperatures are not met.

2. Minimum Surface Temperatures: Comply with NYSDOT Standard Specifications Section 402, table 402-1 – Temperature Requirements.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature in accordance with NYSDOT Standard Specifications Section 685-3.02 – Atmospheric Conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE SUBBASE AND BASE FOR ASPHALT PAVING

A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.

2.2 ASPHALT PAVING MIX AGGREGATES

A. Aggregates for binder and top course: Conform to the requirements of NYSDOT Standard Specification 401-2.02, Aggregates.

2.3 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes meeting NYSDOT Standard Specifications, Section 402 (70 Series) for each pavement course and complying with the following requirements:

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
2. Mixes to be placed at thickness noted on the Drawings.
3. Binder Course (2-in < t < 3-in): NYSDOT No. 402.197903 (Type 3 Binder). Maximum 20% RAP permitted.
4. Binder Course (3-in < t < 5-in): NYSDOT No. 402.257903 (Type 3 Binder). Maximum 20% RAP permitted.
5. Top Course: NYSDOT No. 402.097303 (Type 7.) Maximum 20% RAP permitted.

B. Coatings/Fillers: Comply with New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 702 for material designations indicated.

1. Tack Coat: Emulsified asphalt

a. Slow setting type; NYSDOT Designation 702-3601 (SS-1h) or 702-4501 (CSS-1h).
b. Medium setting type; NYSDOT Designation 702-3401 (HFMS-2H) or 702-4301 (CMS-2h)

2. Asphalt Cement Filler: NYSDOT Designation 702-0700.

C. Water: Potable.

2.4 PAVEMENT MARKING PAINT

A. Complying with NYSDOT Standard Specifications:

1. Section 727-09: White and Yellow Solvent Borne Acrylic Permanent Traffic Paint

2. Colors:

a. White for asphalt striping and signage

1) Lane Markings for traffic in the same direction

b. Yellow for traffic markings

1) No parking parent / bus drop-off zones
2) No parking fire lanes
3) Lane Markings for opposing traffic
4) Parking Stalls – Confirm with owner

c. Blue for the following locations:

1) ADA Accessible symbol and associated ADA Accessible striping

3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. TM 5626 White Setfast Acrylic Traffic Marking Paint, Sherwin Williams Company, Baltimore, MD
b. TM 5627 Yellow Setfast Acrylic Traffic Marking Paint, Sherwin Williams Company, Baltimore, MD
c. TM 2133 Blue Setfast Latex Traffic Marking Paint, Sherwin Williams Company, Baltimore, MD

B. Pavement Striping Blackout Paint: Opaque, high quality, exterior grade primer compatible with existing asphalt surface and pavement marking paint.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. TM 5629 Black Setfast Acrylic Traffic Marking Paint, Sherwin Williams Company, Baltimore, MD

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.

B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.

2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.

3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

   a. Subsurface preparation shall conform to the appropriate section of NYSS.

4. After rolling, test course with straight edge min. 15 ft. long. Satisfactorily eliminate any depression over 1/4" deep.

5. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

D. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 SAWCUTTING

A. Saw cut existing pavement perpendicular to the roadway surface in neat lines. If the pavement breaks irregularly along the cut line during removal, saw cut the entire length of pavement again to achieve one uniform, straight, and neat line.

3.3 TACK COAT

A. Apply in accordance with NYSDOT Standard Specifications Section 407-3.02.

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

B. Manhole and Catch Basin Frames and Grates:

1. Coat surfaces of frames and grates with oil to prevent asphalt adherence to surfaces. Do not tack coat.

3.4 PATCHING

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement:

1. Preparation: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending the minimum distance shown on Drawings into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade. Apply tack coat.

2. Patching: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal new joints. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.5 REPAIRS

A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.

1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.

B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.

1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.6 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.

B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.

1. Herbicide Application: Obtain approval of Owner before herbicide notification or application. Notify Owner’s designated pesticide representative and all property neighbors not less than 48 hours in advance of any pesticide application including all herbicides, insecticides and fungicides in accordance with the School Pesticide Neighbor Notification Law, Section 409-h of New York State Education Law and Commissioner's Regulation 155.24.

C. Tack Coat: Apply tack coat.

3.7 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Application: Provide finished surface free from depressions that could collect water. Satisfactorily remove, at Contractor's expense, any depressions over 1/8" when tested with 6-foot straight edge without evidence of patching. Carry all paving to wood stripping, curbing or to location shown on Drawings.

B. Application Over Aggregate Base:

1. Heavy Duty, Auto Duty and Light Duty Asphalt Areas: Apply over aggregate base in 2 courses. Comply with New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 401 and Section 402, for asphalt types specified.

C. Placement: Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.

1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
2. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
3. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
4. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

D. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.

E. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.8 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.

2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.

3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.

4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."

5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.

6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

7. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal new joints. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.9 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.

B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:

1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927, but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.

E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.

F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.

G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.10 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:

1. Base Course: Plus 1/2 inch, no minus.
2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.

B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

C. Pavement Surface Drainage: Pavement is to drain to catch basin, swale or other storm drainage control measure as indicated on Drawings or, if not indicated on drawings, to nearest storm drainage control measure.

D. Pavement Remediation: If pavement surface smoothness and drainage requirements above are not met, correct to meet tolerance and performance requirements. If remediation is not acceptable to Architect, removal and replacement of area will be required. Feather and smooth edges of correction measure so that joint is invisible.

3.11 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Perform work in accordance with NYSDOT Standard Specifications Section 727-09.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Surface must be clean, dry and in sound condition. Remove all oil, dust, grease, dirt, loose rust, and other foreign material to ensure adequate adhesion.

E. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended application conditions (temperature, dew point, humidity) and rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils and minimum dry film thickness of 7.5 mils.

F. Do not apply pavement marking paint to concrete surfaces with concrete sealers or efflorescence. Remove by extended weathering, etching, or abrasive blasting.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
D. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
E. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.13 CLEANING AND DISPOSAL

A. Paver and Equipment Cleaning:

1. Do not clean tools and equipment used for HMA placement on the pavement surface, or near streams, ponds, drainage structures or other areas that are tributaries to waterways.

2. Use an area approved by the Owner's Representative for cleaning all paving equipment and tools.

    a. If possible, remove solid pieces of asphalt by scraping or other mechanical means prior to application of a cleaning agent.

3. If a petroleum product is used for cleaning, contain all liquid products during cleaning operations using tarpaulins, sand pads, pails, or other collection methods to prevent spillage or accidental release.

    a. Use hand sprayers or other similar devices to minimize the amount of petroleum product applied.

4. Properly dispose of sand and collected petroleum products as petroleum contaminated soil at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

SECTION 32 13 13 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sidewalks.
2. Curbs and gutters.
3. Joint Sealant.
4. Concrete Sealer.
5. Curing materials.
6. Joint forming materials.
7. Joint Filler.
8. Sealers
9. Detectable Warning Materials.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general concrete mix, materials, installation and building-related concrete requirements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

B. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for concrete submittal requirements, material certificates, installer qualification data and other required action and informational submittals.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Provide Product Data and Testing Information for each type of product indicated.

1. Forms
2. Form release agent
3. Sealer
4. Joint Sealant
5. Curing Compound
6. Expansion Joint Material
7. Expansion Joint Forming System
8. Detectable Warning Materials

1.5 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Jointing Plan: Provide shop drawing showing concrete joint layout, specifically indicating the locations of expansion, tooled and control joints.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer. (Refer to Div 03 concrete section for requirements.)

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. For Installer and Manufacturer requirements, refer to Div 03 concrete section**.**

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockups of full-thickness sections of concrete paving to demonstrate typical joints; surface finish, texture, and color; curing; and standard of workmanship in the location and of the size indicated where directed by Architect and not less than 96 inches by 96 inches.

2. Include full-size detectable warning in mockup.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 PREINSTALLATION MEETING

A. Concrete Paving Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place architectural concrete to attend, including the following:

   a. Contractor's superintendent.
   b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
   c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
   d. Cast-in-place architectural concrete subcontractor.

2. Review concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction joints, forms and form-removal limitations, reinforcement accessory installation, concrete repair procedures, and protection of cast-in-place architectural concrete.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Refer to Div 03 concrete section for products, unless noted below.

2.2 FORMS

A. Form Materials: Metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.

1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.

B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for cementitious material, aggregates, admixtures, and other concrete materials.

2.4 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

A. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for fiber reinforcement materials.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

A. Standard Concrete Curing Compound: Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound in accordance with ASTM C 309, Type 1-D, Class B, dissipating, with fugitive dye. Minimum 2-coats required.

B. VOC Content: Curing and sealing compounds shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.6 SEALER

A. Standard Concrete Sealer: Penetrating, Silane Sealer: Single component, 40% silane, waterbased slab sealer that forms chemical bond to the concrete. VOC compliant.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. BASF Construction Chemicals; MasterProtect H 400.
    b. Chem Masters; Aquanil Plus 40.
    c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Weather Worker 40% J29WB.

2.7 JOINT SEALANT

A. Joint Sealant: Two-part, elastomeric polyurethane or polysulfide-based pourable self-leveling joint sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, NT and CRD-C-506, Type 1, Classes A & B.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic SL 2.

        1) Color for uncolored concrete: Limestone.

    b. W.R. Meadows, Inc.; Deck-O-Seal Sealant.

        1) Color for uncolored concrete: Stone Gray.

2.8 EXPANSION JOINT MATERIALS

A. Expansion/Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ½-inch rigid, extruded polystyrene insulation (at exterior walls) ASTM D 1751; asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752.

B. Plastic Expansion Joint Forming System ("Zip-Strip"): Plastic joint form plus cap.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: (inserted space)

    a. W.R. Meadows, Inc.; Snap-Cap.

2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. The Bomanite Company, www.bomanite.com
    b. L.M. Scofield Company, www.scofield.com

2.9 DETECTABLE WARNING MATERIALS

A. Ductile iron detectable warning surface plates - for accessible concrete curb ramps: Ductile iron, permanently embedded, wear and corrosion resistant 18-inch/24-inch/30-inch x 24-inch ductile iron plates with raised truncated domes complying with ADA and the NYS Building Code, having a skid resistance coefficient of friction greater than 0.8.

1. Physical Properties:

   a. Slip Resistance ..... 1.10 Dry/1.06 Wet per ASTM C-1028
   b. Wear Resistance ..... 7333 per ASTM C-501-84
   c. Impact Resistance..... > 238 Newtons per ASTM D-1709
   d. Bond Strength Adhesion to Concrete..... > 5000 lbs per ASTM D-482
   e. Tensile Strength..... > 35000 lbs per ASTM A-48
   f. Design Compliance ..... Full Compliance with ADAAG / DOT

2. Hardware:

   a. Manufacturer approved stainless steel hardware for bolting plates together

3. Coating:

   a. Shop-dip applied black asphaltic coating.

4. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc. (EJIW): Duralast Cast Iron Detectable Warning Plates.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for concrete mixtures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving in accordance with Section 31 20 00 “Earth Moving”. Identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.

   1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

D. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for steel reinforcement.

3.5 JOINTS

A. General: Form construction, expansion/isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.

1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.

B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.

1. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.

2. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

C. Expansion / Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.

1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 30 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated.

2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.

3. Plastic Expansion Joint Forming System (“Zip Strip”). Install so that cap of channel is flush with surrounding concrete pavement. Install per manufacturer’s installation instructions. Remove plastic cap after concrete is cured.

4. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.

5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.

D. Control / Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving unless otherwise noted:

1. Tooled / Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.

2. Tooled / Grooved and Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks. Sawed joints without tooling are not allowed.

E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for concrete placement information.

B. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.

C. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

D. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.

E. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.

F. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, (4.3.2.1 Slump Adjustment).

1. With each concrete mixture submittal, indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

2. Water added must not increase the water-cement ratio past the approved mix design ratio.

3. Add additional water reducer or plasticizer to mix instead of adding water to achieve flowable, workable concrete. Do not add water to concrete after adding these admixtures to mixture.

4. Do not add water after truck is more than half empty.

G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.

H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.

1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement dowels and joint devices.

I. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.

J. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

K. Slip-Form Paving: Allowed only upon Architect approval. Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.

1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.

L. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.

2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.

3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

M. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.

2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.

3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.

B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.

1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 DETECTABLE WARNINGS

A. Cast Iron Detectable Warning Surface Plates:

1. Connection: Fasten plates together with stainless steel bolts per manufacturer’s torque requirements.

2. Setting Plates: Set cast iron detectable warning plates into wet concrete in accordance with ADAAG (American Disabilities Act and Accessibility Guidelines). Tamp plates thoroughly with rubber mallet until concrete seeps through vent holes.

3. Clean off excess concrete from the plate(s) and adjust adjacent concrete to be flush with plates. Finish concrete around plates to match surrounding concrete.

3.9 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 and 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Slabs: Protect slabs within building from precipitation accumulation. Immediately remove water, snow or ice from surface of slabs within building regardless if source is from precipitation, construction activities, etc.

C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

D. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.

E. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

F. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1:

1. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Refer to Div 03 concrete section for field quality control information.

1. Contractor Requirements:

a. Provide access to concrete construction for representatives of testing agency employed by Owner to perform concrete testing.
b. Notify Architect at least four days in advance of each concrete placement to allow notification of Owner's testing agency.

3.11 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.

B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.

C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

SECTION 32 31 13 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Chain-link fences.
2. Softball Backstop
3. Gates: Swing.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 03 30 00 “Cast-in-Place Concrete”
2. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving"

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A392 Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric.
B. ASTM F552 Standard Terminology Relating to Chain Link Fencing.
C. ASTM F567 Standard Practice for Installation of Chain Link Fence.
D. ASTM F626 Specification for Fence Fittings.
E. ASTM F900 Specification for Industrial and Commercial Swing Gates.
F. ASTM F1083 Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures.
G. ASTM F1184 Specification for Industrial and Commercial Horizontal Slide Gates.
H. CLFMI WLG2445 Chain Link Fence Wind Load Guide for the Selection of Line Post and Line Post Spacing.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design Wind Load: Comply with applicable requirements of building code in effect for Project including applicable portions of ASCE 7 for Wind Load Pressure and CLFMI WLG 2445 Wind Load Guide for the Selection of Line Post Spacings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit all action submittals (except Samples for Verification) and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for chain-link fences and gates.

    a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.

    b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.

    c. Polymer and polyester coatings.

        1) Note: Polymer and polyester coated samples and product data are to be submitted simultaneously.

    d. Gates and hardware.

2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.

3. Samples for Verification:

    a. Polymer and Polyester Coated Components: In 6-inch lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.

        1) Note: Polymer and polyester coated samples and product data are to be submitted simultaneously.

    b. Manufacturer's color charts.

4. Warranty:

    a. Sample of special warranty
    b. Sample of manufacturer warranty

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Qualification Data: Submit list of completed projects using products proposed for this Project, including owner's contact and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with "Quality Assurance" article.

2. Product Test Reports: For framing strength according to ASTMF 1043.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the following to include in operation and maintenance manuals:

    a. Polymer and polyester finishes.
    b. Gate hardware.

2. Warranty: Executed special warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Minimum five (5) years' experience in installing chain link fences and gates similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project in accordance with ASTM F 567, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance.

B. Mockups: If required by Architect, build mockups to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Contractor's warranty to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Failure of any component of fence to perform as designed.
b. Faulty operation of gate(s) to perform as designed.

2. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Contractor agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, coatings and other materials of the fence components, including fabric, framework and fittings.

2. Warranty Period: Fifteen (15) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle. Comply with CLFMI Product Manual and with requirements indicated below:

1. Fabric Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Steel Wire Fabric:

a. General Use: Wire with a diameter of 0.148 inch (9 gauge) minimum. For polymer coated fabric, wire with a diameter of 0.148 inch core (9 gauge core) minimum.

b. Baseball / Softball Backstops and Wings:

1) Up to 6 feet in height (or as indicated on drawings): 0.192 inch (6-gauge) core minimum.

2) Above 6 feet in height (or as indicated on drawings): 0.148 inch (9-gauge) core minimum.

c. Dugout Fencing: 0.148 inch (9-gauge) core minimum.

3. Mesh Size:

a. General Use: 2 inches, unless noted otherwise.

b. Baseball and Softball Backstop:

1) Bottom panels: 1-3/4 inch mesh
2) Remaining panels and hood: 2 inch mesh

4. Coatings:

a. Polymer-Coated (Vinyl) Fabric: ASTM F 668, Table 4, Class 2b, fused and adhered over zinc-coated steel wire.

1) Color: Black, complying with ASTM F 934.

2) Basis of Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, polymer coating that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a) Merchants Metals Brighton Colorcoat II fused and adhered polymer coating.

5. Selvage: Knuckled at both selvages.

2.2 FRAMEWORK MATERIALS

A. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for minimum dimensions and wall thickness of framing, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts, meeting the following criteria:

1. Heavy Industrial Strength: ASTM F 1043 Group I-C, SS40, round steel electric-resistance-welded pipe galvanized with hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M and ASTM A924/A924M.

2. Manufactured to meet minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi and coated in accordance with the following standards:

   a. ASTM F1043, Group IC, Electrical Resistance Welded Round Steel Pipe, heavy industrial weight.
   b. M181, Type I, Grade 2, Electrical Resistance Welded Steel Pipe
   c. RR-R 191/3, Class 1, Grade B, Electrical Resistance Welded Steel Pipe.

B. Coatings:

1. PVC / Polyester Coating Over Zinc Coating:

   a. Thermoplastic vinyl finish to be 10 mils (minimum) thick.

   b. Cleaning and Surface Preparation: Consists of a four-stage pretreatment/wash, an iron phosphate coating and immersion in a water based epoxy primer.

   c. PVC Coating Application: Coating is thermally fused to heated pipe meeting the following standards:

      1) ASTM F1043 Group I-C, Heavy Industrial.
      2) Federal specification RR-F-191/3E, Class 1
      3) Shows satisfactory adhesion in cross-hatch test, Method B, ASTM D3359.
      4) Finish shall not crack, blister or split under normal use.

2. Color: Match chain-link fabric, complying with ASTM F 934, Standard Colors for Polymer-Coated Chain Link Fence Materials.

C. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, framework and coatings that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Merchants Metals Colorbond Chain Link Fence Framework and Coating System.
2. Master Halco Permafused II Heavy Mil PVC Chain Link Fence Framework and Coating System.
3. Ameristar PermaCoat PC-40 (industrial weight), manufactured by Ameristar Fence Products (www.ameristarfence.com) Chain Link Fence Framework and Coating System.

2.3 FRAMEWORK SIZES

A. Line Post Size (determined by height):

1. 4 feet up to and including 6 feet high: 2 inches o.d.
2. 7 feet up to and including 9 feet high: 2-1/2 inches o.d.
3. 10 feet up to and including 12 feet high: 3 inches o.d.
4. Over 12 feet to 16 feet high: 4 inches o.d.

B. End, Corner and Pull Post:

1. 4 feet up to and including 6 feet high: 2-1/2 inches o.d.
2. 7 feet up to and including 9 feet high: 3 inches o.d.

3. 10 feet up to and including 12 feet high: 4 inches o.d.
4. Over 12 feet to 16 feet high: 4 inches o.d.

C. Softball and Baseball Backstop Posts Sizes: Refer to Drawings and Details.

D. Horizontal Framework Members: Intermediate, top and bottom rails complying with ASTM F 1043. Size in accordance with the following guidelines unless otherwise indicated on drawings:

1. Top, Intermediate and Bottom Rail: 1.66 inches in diameter.

a. Bottom Rail: Provide bottom rail for:

1) Fence 9 feet high and over
2) Fencing at baseball and softball foul lines

b. Intermediate Rail: Provide intermediate rail for:

1) Fencing 10 feet high and over,

c. Softball and Baseball Backstop horizontal framework sizes: Refer to Drawings and Details.

2. Brace Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043.

2.4 TENSION WIRE

A. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: For use on fencing with zinc coated fence fabric. 0.177-inch-diameter (7 gauge), marcelled tension wire complying with ASTM A 817 and ASTM A 824, with the following metallic coating:

1. Type II, zinc coated (galvanized) with the following minimum coating weight:

a. Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.

B. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: For use on fencing with polymer coated fence fabric. 0.177-inch-diameter (7 gauge core), tension wire complying with ASTM F 1664, Class 2b over zinc-coated steel wire.

1. Color: Match chain-link fabric, complying with ASTM F 934.

2.5 FITTINGS

A. General: Comply with ASTM F 626.

B. Post Caps: Provide for each post. Post caps to be weather-tight, securely fastened and vandal-resistant.

1. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.

C. Rail and Brace Ends: For each gate, corner, pull, and end post.

D. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:

1. Top Rail Sleeves: Pressed-steel or round-steel tubing not less than 6 inches long.

2. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting intermediate and bottom rails in the fence line-to-line posts.

E. Tension and Brace Bands: Pressed steel.

F. Tension Bars: Steel. Length not less than 2 inches shorter than full height of chain-link fabric with minimum cross-section of 3/16 inch x 3/4 inch. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.

G. Truss Rod Assemblies: Steel, hot-dip galvanized after threading. Provide rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.

H. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: According to ASTM F 626.

1. Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, complying with the following:

a. General Use Fencing including Foul Line, Outfield and Tennis Court Fencing:

1) Aluminum: ASTM B 211; Alloy 1350-H19; 0.148-inch-diameter, mill-finished wire. Coating to match chain-link fence fabric. (Provide coating to match framework.)

b. Baseball and Softball Backstops and Dugouts:

1) Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: 0.148-inch (9 gauge core) diameter wire. Coating to match chain-link fence fabric. Provide coating to match framework.

2. Hog Rings: For attaching chain link fabric to bottom tension wire.

a. Material: Aluminum per ASTM B 211; Alloy 1350-H19; 0.192 inch (6 gauge), mill-finished wire.

I. Fitting Finish:

1. Steel or cast iron: Galvanized Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron - Not less than 1.2 oz. /sq. ft. zinc.

a. Coating - Vinyl-coated per ASTM F 626.

2. Aluminum: Mill finish with coating to match framework.

3. Color: To match color of fence fabric.

J. Fasteners:

1. Material to be stainless steel.

a. Coating - Vinyl-coated per ASTM F 626.

2. Color: To match color of fence fabric.

3. Finish: Install fasteners that are no more than ¼ Inch long.

2.6 SWING GATES

A. General: Comply with ASTM F 900 for gate posts and single and double swing gate types.

1. Gate Leaf Width: 48 inches unless otherwise noted on drawings.
2. Gate Fabric Height: As indicated on drawings.

B. Pipe and Tubing:

1. Coating and finish to match fence framing.

2. Gate Post Size:

a. For gate heights over 6', and if gate height is equal to fence height, then standard fence framing end post requirements shall apply. Refer to Post and Rail requirements.

b. Gate Leaf up to 6 feet Wide: 2.875 inches o.d.; 4.64 lbs./l.f.

c. Gate Leaf over 6 feet and under 12 feet wide: 4 inches o.d.; 6.56 lbs./lin. ft. (weight applicable to Group IC SS40 framework only)

d. Gate Leaf over 12 feet Wide: 6.625 inches o.d.; 19 lbs./lin. ft.; or 4.5 inches o.d. (applicable to Group IC SS40 material complying with ASTM F 1043 only and upon approval of framework material by Architect.)

C. Frame Corner Construction: Welded.

D. Swing Gate Hardware:

1. Hinges: 180-degree inward swing unless otherwise noted on Drawings.

2. Latches: Commercial latch permitting operation from both sides of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate.

3. Padlock and Chain: Owner furnished.

4. Keeper: Provide keeper for all vehicular gates, which automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in open position until manually released. Provide sleeve to insert keeper. For concrete paving, set sleeve directly into concrete. For asphalt paving set sleeve into concrete collar.

5. Double Gates: Provide drop bar for all double gates, consisting of hot-dipped galvanized rod that drops into concrete collar. Provide locking device and padlock eyes as an integral part of the latch, requiring one padlock for locking both gate leaves.

6. Closer: Manufacturer's standard.

7. Color: To match fence fabric.

2.7 CONCRETE

A. Concrete Footings: Refer to Division 03 concrete section for cast-in-place concrete, ASTM F 567 Section 5 and Drawings and Details for footing size. Bottom of footing must not be smaller than the top to prevent frost heaving.

2.8 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107 and compatible with galvanized and clear coatings. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

B. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications. To be compatible with galvanized and clear coatings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements indicated.

1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.

3.4 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

A. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.

B. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil. Mechanically driven posts only allowed if shown on Drawings or specifically approved by Architect.

1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.

a. Concrete Fill: Minimum 28 day compressive strength 3,000 psi (20 MPa). Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

b. Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.

C. Types of Post Footings: As indicated on Drawing or as approved by Architect.

1. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.

2. Concealed Concrete: As indicated on Drawings to allow covering with surface material.

3. Posts Set into Concrete in Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.

D. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more.

E. Line Posts:

1. General Use Fencing: Space line posts uniformly at 10 feet o.c. unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

F. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.

1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 72 inches or higher, on fences with top rail and at two-third fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.

G. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with hog rings spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:

1. Extended along bottom of fence fabric. Install bottom within 6 inches of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with tie wires.

H. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps / loop caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps / loop caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer. Connection sleeves to be located / supported by post caps / loop caps.

I. Intermediate and Bottom Rails: Install and secure to posts with fittings.

J. Chain-Link Fabric: Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.

1. Height of fabric between finished grade and bottom selvage.

a. General Use: Leave 2 inches between finished grade or surface and bottom of selvage unless otherwise indicated.

2. Fabric installation on fence posts relative to adjacent use:

a. General Use: Apply fabric to inside of enclosing fence posts / framework as indicated on Drawings.

b. Baseball and Softball Fencing: Apply fabric to inside (field side) of enclosing fence posts / framework.

c. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread bar through first row of diamonds of fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.

K. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Aluminum ties: Both ends of the tie are to make two complete wraps around wire pickets. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.

1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.

3.5 FENCE INSTALLATION ADJACENT TO BUILDING WALL OR COLUMN

A. Install fencing and gates with maximum 2” gap between fence post and building wall or column unless otherwise noted.

3.6 SWING GATE INSTALLATION

A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chain-link fences and gates.

3.9 COMPLETION AND CLEAN UP

A. Leave the area of installation free of debris and excess soil, concrete, and gravel resulting from installation of the fence. Clean fencing of concrete slurry, hydroseeding overspray and any other excess material. Seed and mulch all areas around the fencing where bare earth is left exposed.

END OF SECTION 32 31 13

SECTION 32 50 00 - BOLLARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fabricated metal bollards.
2. Pre-fabricated bollards.
3. Bollard covers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals (except Samples for Verification) and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Fabricated metal bollards.
2. Pre-fabricated bollards.
3. Bollard covers.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for bollards.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of bollards and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats. Refer to Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings” for painting fabricated bollards requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pre-Fabricated Metals Bollards Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard limited warranty that the bollards will remain free from defects in material and workmanship including cracking, peeling, blistering and corroding for a period of three years from date of purchase.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of construction contiguous with bollards by field measurements.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.

2.3 NONFERROUS METALS

A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Acrylic Primer: Thermoplastic acrylic primer compatible with topcoat.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Rust-Oleum Corporation; 3200 System Clear Blue Undercoat.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

D. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

2.7 FABRICATED METAL BOLLARDS

A. Fabricated Metal Bollard: Fabricate metal bollards from 1/4-inch wall-thickness round galvanized steel tubing.

1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch-thick dome-shaped steel plate welded to post.
2. Paint metal bollards with high performance coating primer and high performance paint finish coats. Refer to Section 09 96 00, "High Performance Coatings".

2.8 BOLLARD COVERS

A. Plastic Bollard Cover: Heavy duty plastic bollard cover that fits over standard site-fabricated steel bollard.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ideal Shield, Plastic Bollard Cover, ¼" thick polyethylene or comparable product.
2. Materials: 1/4" thick UV resistant and anti-static LDPE plastic sleeve, domed at top.
3. Sleeve for pipe diameter: 6 inch.
4. Color: Yellow. Color warrantied for five (5) years.

2.9 PRE-FABRICATED METAL REMOVABLE BOLLARD

A. Pre-Fabricated Powder coated Removable Steel Bollard:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Reliance Foundry Co., LTD., Model R-7902, www.reliance-foundry.com

2. Materials: 4 1/3" O.D. tubular steel.

3. Height: 3 feet.

4. Receiver: with chain. With lid.

5. Finish: Polyester powder coating over epoxy primer. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

   a. Color: Architect to choose from full range of standard colors.

6. Mounting: Removable mounting.

2.10 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.11 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

B. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

C. Primer: Provide high performance shop primer in conformance with Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings”.

D. Painting: Apply high performance coatings in conformance with Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

C. Coordinate location to avoid utilities.

D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

E. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

G. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 PRIMING AND PAINTING

A. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces in conformance with Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings”.
B. Shop Priming: Apply high performance shop primer in conformance with Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings”.
C. Painting: Apply high performance coatings in conformance with Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings”. Provide the number of coatings (minimum) as specified.

3.3 INSTALLING FABRICATED METAL BOLLARDS

A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.

B. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 12 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured. Set bollard plumb.

3.4 INSTALLING PRE-FABRICATED BOLLARDS

A. Install bollards according to manufacturer's written instructions. Set bollards plumb.

3.5 INSTALLING PLASTIC BOLLARD COVERS

A. Install with manufacturer’s neoprene adhesive tape per manufacturer’s installation guidelines.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Provide touchup painting in conformance with Section 09 96 00, “High Performance Coatings”.

B. Bollards that have damage to the powder coated finish will be rejected and must be replaced.
C. Clean all surfaces thoroughly and protect until acceptance.

END OF SECTION 32 50 00

SECTION 32 84 00 – TURF IRRIGATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Provide and install complete irrigation system as indicated, including:

1. Pipe and pipe fittings (above and underground) for the irrigation system.
2. Sprinkler heads
3. Valves and cocks for the irrigation piping system.
4. Controller, control valves and electrical wiring for the irrigation system.
5. Remote programmer.
6. Remote controls.
7. Pressure gauges.
8. Valve boxes and covers
9. Ground hydrants
10. Underground Warning Tape.

B. Provide testing, regulation, and adjustment of system

C. Instruct Owner's personnel in system operation.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. SECTION 22 11 13 – Facility Water Distribution Piping
B. SECTION 31 20 00 – Earth Moving
C. SECTION 32 92 00 – Turf and Grasses

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Irrigation zone control shall be automatic operation with controller and automatic control valves.
B. Location of automatic control valves: Design location is approximate. Make minor adjustments necessary to avoid plantings and obstructions.

1.6 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For irrigation systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data prepared by a Certified Irrigation Designer (CID) responsible for their preparation.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Irrigation systems, drawn to scale, on which components are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved. Also include adjustments necessary to avoid plantings and obstructions such as signs and light standards.

B. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 33 00 - Submittals and as modified below.

C. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product literature including, material specifications and other information required to demonstrate compliance with specified requirements for following items:

1. Pipe and pipe fittings (above and underground) for the irrigation system.
2. Sprinkler heads
3. Valves and cocks for the irrigation piping system.
4. Controller, control valves and electrical wiring for the irrigation system.
5. Remote programmer.
6. Remote controls.
7. Pressure gauges.
8. Valve boxes and covers
9. Ground hydrants
10. Underground Warning Tape.

D. Schedule: Submit schedule showing locations, types, ranges, sizes and manufacturers specification data for thermometers and pressure gauges. Include in operation and maintenance manual.

E. Samples: Submit 1 sprinkler head of each type, complete with house. Accepted samples may be incorporated in work.

F. Quality Control Submittals.

1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by applicable subcontractor, Prime Contractor and manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with applicable “Qualifications” requirements specified below in “Quality Assurance” article.

2. Installer Experience Listing: Submit list of completed projects using products proposed for this Project, including owner’s contact and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable “Qualifications” requirements specified below in “Quality Assurance” article.

G. Zoning Chart: Show each irrigation zone and its control valve.

H. Controller Timing Schedule: indicate timing settings for each automatic controller zone.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements of SECTION 01 77 00, including submission of operating and maintenance instructions as item in "Operating and Maintenance Data" manual described in that section.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Qualifications

1. Manufacturer: Provide irrigation system components as a complete package produced by single manufacturer, including heads, valves, controls, and accessories.
2. Installer: Provide list of at least 5 installations of irrigation systems completed by installer, including name and telephone number of owner's representative

1.11 WARRANTIES

A. Sprinkler Heads: Five (5) year exchange warranty.
B. Electric Valves: Three (3) year warranty.
C. Control and Pumping Systems: One (1) year warranty.

1.12 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver automatic control valves with factory-applied identification. Provide shipping, storage, and handling to prevent damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
B. Store plastic valves protected from direct sunlight.

1.13 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance Service: Provide maintenance of irrigation system for a period of one (1) year after date of final acceptance including final adjustment of all sprinkler heads, winter drainage of system, spring activation of system, and service adjustments.

B. Extra Materials - Provide following spare parts, turn over to Owner and obtain receipt, and submit copy of receipt to Architect.

1. 3 ea. 180 deg sprinkler heads.
2. 3 ea. 36 deg sprinkler heads.
3. 1 ea. Remote control valve.
4. 3 ea. Dresser couplings for each pipe size.
5. 3 ea. Keys for automatic controller.
6. 2 ea. Quick-coupler key for each valve.

C. Controller Charts: Provide one controller chart for each controller installed. Chart shall show the areas controlled by each automatic controller and shall be the maximum size that each controller door will allow. Chart is to be a reduced drawing of the actual system. Chart shall be a blackline print and a different color shall be used to indicate areas of coverage for each station, using pastel or transparent colors. When completed and approved, charts shall be hermetically sealed between two pieces of plastic.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers offering irrigation systems complying with the following requirements include.

1. Hunter Industries Inc., San Marcos, CA,
2. Rain Bird Sprinkler Mfg. Corp., Glendora, CA,
3. Netafim USA, Fresno, CA.
4. Tucor Inc., Wexford, PA

2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Piping and Fittings.

1. Plastic Piping

a. All Main Line Pipe: SDR 21-Class 200 polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe conforming to ASTM D2241similar to “Ring-Tite PVC Pressure Rated Pipe” by J-M Pipe.

1) Fittings: Fittings: Push-on fittings with “O” ring connections and transition gaskets rated for 200 psi and compatible with mainline piping.

b. All Lateral Pipe: SDR 21 - Class 200 polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe conforming to ASTM D2241similar to “PVC Solvent Weld Pipe” by J-M Pipe.

1) Fittings: Schedule 40, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) standard weight compatible with mainline piping.

2) Solvent Cement: Meeting ASTM-D2564 and compatible with PVC pipe and of proper consistency. Application temperatures to be 35 to 110 degrees Fahrenheit.

c. Sleeves: Sleeves for pipes passing beneath paving shall conform to ASTM D2241, Schedule 40. Minimum diameter of 2 inch or 2 sizes larger than pipe scheduled to pass through them.

2. Swing Joints:

a. Swing Joint Connections: Connections between heads and laterals shall be thick wall, flexible, polyethylene pipe with fittings that have male barbs on one end and either male or female screw ends opposite. Glue fittings and female barb adapters are not allowed.

B. Valves:

1. Gate Valves:

a. 3" and smaller: Class 125 bronze gate valve complying with MSS SP-80, with screw -in bonnet, non-rising stem and solid bronze wedge and threaded ends similar to “T-113-2" bronze gate valve by Nibco.

2. Ball Valves:

a. Two-piece bronze body.
b. Full port valves with stainless steel ball.
c. Reinforced teflon seats
d. Threaded ends similar to "T-585-70-66 NPT x NPT" by Nibco.

3. Remote Control Valve:

a. Flow rate: 65 gallons per minute with a pressure loss not to exceed 3.3 pounds per square inch (psi) similar to “150-PESB Series” by Rain Bird Sprinkler Mfg. Corp., Glendora, Ca. The valve pressure rating shall not be less than 200 psi.

b. Valve: Equipped with hand operated flow control stem, manual bleed plug, and all internal parts serviceable from top of valve without energizing the solenoid. Valve shall have a self-cleaning, scrubber type, stainless steel screen designed for use in dirty water and algae applications.

c. Body and Bonnet: Heavy glass-filled, UV-resistant nylon, the diaphragm shall be of nylon-reinforced nitrile rubber.

d. Solenoid: normally closed 24 VAC 50/60 cycle solenoid with captured plunger with a removable retainer for easy servicing and a leverage handle for easy turning. Opens with 19.6VAC minimum at 200 psi. At 24 VAC average inrush current, it shall not exceed .41 amps. Average holding current shall not exceed .23 amps.

e. Options: Valve to have a pressure-regulating module capable of regulating outlet pressure between 15 and 100 psi. Pressure shall be adjustable when the valve is internally bled manually or electrically activated.

f. Products complying with these requirements by Hunter Industries Inc., San Marcos, Ca.

4. Quick Coupling Valves:

a. Brass body and bonnet, one-piece body with lockable thermoplastic rubber cover and stainless steel spring. Operating range from 10 to 125 gpm and 5 to 125 psi. Similar to "Model HQ-5RC" by Hunter Industries Inc., San Marcos, Ca. Provide two each of the following:

1) Valve key similar to "Model HK55."
2) Cover key.
3) Brass hose swivel similar to "Model HS1" 1" inlet, ¾ hose outlet
4) Products complying with these requirements manufactured by Hunter Industries, Inc. San Marcos, Ca.

b. Brass body and bonnet, two-piece body with spring loaded high visibility cover and stainless steel spring. Operating range from 5 to 50 gpm. Similar to "Model QCV100" by Hunter Industries, Inc. Cary, North Carolina. Provide two each of the following:

1) Cover key similar to "Item No. QCV 100K".
2) Brass hose swivel similar to "Model HS100".
3) Products complying with these requirements manufactured by Hunter Industries, Inc. Cary, North Carolina.

C. Valve Boxes for Quick Coupling Valves:

1. Natural Grass Applications:

a. For natural grass cover, install all valves in foam molded plastic valve boxes with locking covers similar to "317BCB Pro-Spec Series 13" x 20" Jumbo Rectangular Valve Box" by NDSPro, 851 North Harvard Avenue, Lindsay, CA 93247.

2. Asphalt Pavement – Sidewalk / Concrete Sidewalk Applications:

a. For asphalt pavement sidewalk / concrete sidewalk cover, install all valves in foam molded plastic valve boxes with locking covers similar to "317BCB Pro-Spec Series 13" x 20" Jumbo Rectangular Valve Box" by NDSPro, 851 North Harvard Avenue, Lindsay, CA 93247.

3. Synthetic Turf Applications:

a. For synthetic turf cover, install all valves in aluminum constructed, welded frame with open bottom box similar to "CBITI830 (3500) ComBox (18" x 30" x 14") + with patented infill retainer system" by Sportsfield Specialties, 41155 State Highway 10, Delhi, NY 13753.

D. Ground Hydrants

1. Ground Hydrants: 2 inch self-draining bronze hydrant with bronze casing, cast iron box and "T" handle key similar to Model Number 5814 by J. R. Smith Manufacturing Co. PO Box 3237 Montgomery, Alabama 36109-0237 207-277-8520. Provide extra key and two 2 inch female/female bronze connectors with each hydrant. Provide two 2 inch to 1 inch female/male bronze reducer couplings.

E. Automatic Controller

1. Features and Components

a. Provides completely automatic operation of sprinkler system.

b. Provides 8-station capacity with modular expansion capabilities to 32 stations.

1) Independent programming with separate day cycles and 8 start times.
2) Non-volatile memory.
3) Dial Programming.
4) 120/230VAC, 50/60Hz input; 24 VAC, 1.5A output.

c. Programmable pump circuit.

d. Self-diagnostic circuit breaker. Both controller and transformer U.L. approved.

e. Wall-mount type with heavy gauge steel housing, NEMA rated. Door mated with other cabinet parts, constructed for easy opening, and equipped with covered lock in closed position.

f. Similar to "ICC-1200M" by Hunter Industries, Inc., San Marcos, Ca.

g. Provide Simple Reliable Programmer module for downloading of irrigation schedules similar to "SRP-KIT" by Hunter Industries, Inc., San Marcos, Ca.

h. Provide Simple Reliable Remote control kit similar to "SRR-KIT" by Hunter Industries, Inc., San Marcos, Ca.

F. Control Wires: 24-volt solid wire UL approved for direct burial in ground. Minimum wire size - 14 gauge.

1. Sleeves for Control Wires: Under all walks and paving and where indicated on drawings. PVC Schedule 80 plastic pipe or galvanized heavy wall steel conduit.

G. Sprinkler Rotors - Full and/or Adjustable Sprinklers: Gear-driven rotary, in-ground type, designed with integral check valve for control of line drainage with the following features:

1. Capable of covering radius, pressure and flow rate as required to provide coverage.

2. Available with 8 nozzles discharging 1.2 GPM to 9.8 GPM.

3. Radius adjustment capabilities by means of a stainless-steel nozzle retainer/radius adjustment screw.

4. The sprinkler shall have a feature that will enable the user to sop the water flow through an individual sprinkler head.

5. Full-circle and adjustable part-circle configurations. The adjustable part-circle unit shall be minutely adjustable from 50° to 360°.

6. The sprinkler shall have a non-strippable drive mechanism that allows the nozzle turret to be turned during operation, without damage. It shall also have an automatic arc return feature that returns the nozzle turret to its proper orientation if it is turned outside its intended arc of coverage.

7. Drain check valve to prevent low head drainage, capable of checking up to 10 feet in elevation change, with a minimum of 4-inch (10 cm) pop-up stroke to bring the rotating nozzle turret into a clean environment.

8. Similar to "I-20-04-SS or I-20-06-SS" rotary sprinklers by Hunter Industries, Inc., San Marcos, Ca.

H. Pressure Gauge

1. Dial: White aluminum, 4-1/2" diam., rated to 1,000 psi with black markings and numerals, ranges provided to be read at mid-range, slotted and adjustable pointer.
2. Case: Aluminum with phenolic black turret and plastic lens with 1/4" N.P.T. connections located at bottom, lower back or center back as required.
3. Operation: ANSI B40.1 Grade A accuracy to 1% with brushed bushed rotary movement.
4. Manufacturer: Similar to "Series PG-1" by Weiss.

I. Pressure Gauge Accessories

1. Gauge Cock: 1/4 N.P.T. brass ball valve with lever handle, similar to "LC -14 or LCU-14" by Weiss.

2. Pressure Snubber: Brass housing, PSI rating 15000 PSI at 70□ F, with corrosion resistant porous metal dampening element with porosity selected to meet type of service, and inlet meeting connection size of gauge.

   a. Air and Gases: Similar to "No.PSN-B-25-G, 1/4" N.P.T.", or "No.PSN-B-50-G, ½" N.P.T." by Weiss.
   b. Water and Light Oil (30- 225 Saybolt Seconds Universal Viscosity): Similar to "No.PSN-B-25-E, 1/4" N.P.T.", or "No.PSN-B-50-E, ½" N.P.T." by Weiss.
   c. Oil (225 to 500 Saybolt Seconds Universal Viscosity): Similar to "No.PSN-B-25-G, 1/4" N.P.T.", or "No.PSN-B-50-G, ½" N.P.T." by Weiss.

J. Shock Absorbers: Type "K" copper barrel with brass piston and "O" ring seals. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc. "Water Hammer Arrestor" or equivalent.

1. Pressure Gauges: 4-1/2" dia. gauge with aluminum case, bronze Bourdon Tube, brass socket and stainless steel rotary type movement with range from 0 to 160 psi. Moeller Instrument Co. "No. 401101"

K. Accessories:

1. Rain Sensor:

a. Similar to “Mini-Click” by Hunter Industries.
b. The rain sensor shall be capable of interrupting the power from the irrigation controller to the valves when rainfall exceeds a pre-selected amount.
c. The sensor shall be adjustable, using settings on the unit to measure rainfall quantities of 1/8” to 1”.
d. The rain sensor circuitry shall be housed in a UV and corrosion resistant plastic casing and shall utilize hygroscopic disks to activate a switch in the unit.

L. Underground Warning Tape

1. Material: 2-inch wide, color-coded, heavy gauge 0.04 inch, detectable aluminum film, similar to “MT Series” by EMED Co., Inc. Buffalo N.Y.
2. Text: “CAUTION BURIED UTILITY LINE BURIED BELOW”.
3. Location: Provide warning tape 1 foot below finished grade in all buried piping trenches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which irrigation system is to be installed in coordination with Irrigation System Installer of materials and components specified in this Section and notify affected Prime Contractors and Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

1. When Installer confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to Architect written confirmation from applicable Installer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to Installer.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Set stakes to identify locations of proposed irrigation system

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground irrigation. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Pipe Line Assembly

1. Install remote control valves where shown; place no closer than 12" to walk edges, buildings and walls.

C. Solvent weld plastic pipe and fittings using solvents and methods recommended by pipe manufacturer, except where screwed connections are required. Thoroughly clean pipe and fittings thoroughly of dirt, dust, and moisture before applying solvent with non-synthetic bristle brush.

1. Pipe may be assembled and welded on surface. Snake pipe from side to side of trench bottom to allow for expansion and contraction.

D. Sprinkler Heads: Install all sprinklers as detailed on drawings.

E. Automatic Control Valve Installation

1. Install control cable in same trench as irrigation piping and at least 2-inches below or beside piping. Provide conductors of size not smaller than recommended by controller manufacturer. Install cable in separate sleeve under paved areas.

F. Joint Construction

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

2. Remove dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.

5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

6. PE Piping Fastener Joints: Join with insert fittings and bands or fasteners according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

7. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

8. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.

9. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

G. Closing of Pipe and Flushing Lines

1. Cap or plug all openings as soon as lines have been installed to prevent the entrance of materials that would obstruct the pipe. Leave in place until removal is necessary for completion of installation.

2. Thoroughly flush out all water lines before installing heads, valves, and other hydrants.

3. Test in accordance with paragraph on hydrostatic tests.

4. Upon completion of testing, Contractor shall complete assembly and adjust sprinkler heads for proper distribution.

H. Pressure Gauges:

1. Provide gauges, where indicated on Drawings, and as required for specific equipment and/or application.

2. Select scale ranges to provide nominal "mid-scale" indication under normal operating conditions.

3. Locate so that gauges in any one system can be read from one location wherever possible and easily read from floor. Install pressure gauges with sufficient clearance from surface of piping to expose gauge cock after insulation system has been installed.

4. Pressure Gauge Accessories: Provide gauge cock and pressure snubber on each pressure gauge.

I. Hydrostatic Tests

1. Request presence of Architect in writing at least 48 hours in advance of testing.

2. Testing to be accomplished at Contractor’s expense in Architect’s presence.

3. Center load piping with small amount of backfill to prevent arching or slipping under pressure.

4. Apply continuous and static water pressure of 100 PSI when welded plastic joints have cured at least 24 hours and with risers capped as follows:

a. Main lines and submains to be tested for 12 hours.
b. Lateral lines to be tested for 2 hours.
c. Repair leaks resulting from tests.

J. Automatic Controllers: Connect remote control valves to controller in clockwise sequence to correspond with station setting beginning with Stations 1, 2, 3, etc.

K. Automatic Control Wiring:

1. Install control wires, sprinkler mains, and laterals in common trenches wherever possible.

2. Install control wires at least 18" below finish grade and lay to the side and below main line. Provide looped slack at valves and snake wires in trench to allow for construction of wires. Tie wires in bundles at 10 intervals.

3. Control wire splices allowed in only runs more than 500 feet. Provide wire nuts covered with waterproof protectors similar to Scotch Lok or D.B.Y. connections as recommended by manufacturer or as detailed.

4. Encase all wire passing under existing or future paving, construction, etc., in plastic or galvanized steel conduit extending at least 12" beyond edges of paving or construction.

L. Backfill and Compacting: Refer to SECTION 31 20 00 – Earth Moving

M. Adjusting / Balancing:

1. Contractor shall adjust or change nozzle sizes, install or replace pressure compensating devices, change degrees or sprinkler arcs and adjust valves for optimum performance and to prevent as much overspray as possible onto walks, stairs, track surfaces and roadways. No spray is permitted on buildings.

2. Contractor shall perform complete coverage test of all systems in the presence of the Owner following all tests for watertightness and integrity, and after any adjustments. Any further adjustments required to provide complete coverage shall be done by the contractor to the Owner's satisfaction at no cost to the Owner.

N. Demonstration: After final adjustments to the Owners satisfaction, factory-authorized service representative shall instruct Owner's personnel in the full and proper adjustment, operation and maintenance of the system.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean all surfaces thoroughly and protect until acceptance.

END OF SECTION 32 84 00

SECTION 32 92 00 - TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Seeding.
2. Hydroseeding.
3. Turf planting soil.
4. Turf planting soil amendments and fertilizers.
5. Turf renovation.
6. Turf
7. Turf maintenance.

1.3 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including:

1. Seed.
2. Fertilizer.
3. Imported Topsoil.

B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes or quantities indicated below:

1. Imported and On-Site Topsoil: One-half gallon by volume of material in sturdy container of each type of topsoil, naming source for each material.
2. Compost: One quart container of material.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified landscape Installer.

C. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers, from manufacturer.

D. Material Test Reports:

1. Imported Topsoil: Before delivery, submit written statement giving location of properties from which topsoil is to be obtained, names and addresses of property owners, analysis of topsoil, depth to be stripped, and any crops grown during the previous 5 years.

2. Compost: Before delivery, submit a recent US Composting Seal of Testing Assurance Program data sheet.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of turf during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required initial maintenance periods.

B. Warranty: Executed special warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape Installer whose work has resulted in successful turf establishment.

1. Natural Turf Athletic Field Installer: Engage an experienced turf installation firm to perform athletic field work of this Section that has installed at least seven acceptable athletic fields of each of the types specified within past 5 years. Provide location and reference contacts for each of the submitted fields.

2. Turf Installer: Engage an experienced turf installation firm to perform work of this Section that has installed at least seven (7) acceptable projects of the type specified within past 5 years. Provide location and reference contacts for each of the submitted projects.

3. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association.

4. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor with certifications outlined below on Project site when work is in progress.

5. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor shall have certification in one of the following categories from the Professional Landcare Network:

    a. Certified Turfgrass Professional, designated CTP.
    b. Certified Turfgrass Professional of Cool Season Lawns, designated CTP-CSL.

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

C. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; available nutrients; deleterious material; pH and recommendations to obtain optimal pH factor; mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil; map with locations where each sample was collected; date, time and weather when samples were collected; and name of person who collected the samples.

1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.

2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling, with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from Architect. A minimum of three representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.

3. Report suitability of tested soil for turf growth.

    a. Based on the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1,000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.

    b. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.

2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting completion.

1. Spring Planting: March 15 to May 15.
2. Fall Planting: August 15 to September 15.

B. Hydroseeding Restrictions: Do not hydroseed without prior written permission of the Architect.

C. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.10 SEQUENCING AND REVIEW

A. Notify Architect no fewer than 48 hours in advance of proposed seeding to allow review of topsoil finish grading.

B. Do not proceed with seeding without Architect's written permission.

1. Architect’s written permission does not alleviate Contractor from conforming to the required grades indicated on Drawings.

1.11 MAINTENANCE

A. Initial Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established, as determined by the Architect, but for not less than the following periods:

1. Seeded Turf: Five (5) documented mowings.

a. Document mowings in writing via fax or email to Owner and Architect on the day each mowing is performed. Failure of notification may subject Contractor to further mowings at no additional cost to Owner.

2. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or if turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.

B. Water: Provide all water required to properly irrigate temporary, permanent, and renovated turf areas. Include all facilities including, but not limited to, hoses, sprinklers, water cannons and reels, as long as it takes to establish and maintain turf. When adequate water supply or pressure is not available, supply water from offsite, including trucking.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace turf that fails in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.

2. Warranty Period:

a. Turf: 12 months, after acceptable turf is established, as determined by the Architect.

3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:

a. Immediately remove dead turf and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
b. Replace with seed as originally specified.

B. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced turf material.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

A. Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Journal of Seed Technology; Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.

B. Seed Blends: Seed blend with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent live seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed.

1. If premixed blend, follow manufacturer’s recommended maximum seeding rate unless otherwise noted.

C. Lawn Seed:

1. Varieties: Premier varieties of Kentucky bluegrass, perennial ryegrass, tall fescue and fine fescue with a mean ranking of 6.0 or higher on the National Turfgrass Evaluation Program (NTEP) current list of tested varieties for the Northeast United States.

D. Seed Blends: Seed of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:

1. General Lawn Mixture-Tall Fescue/Kentucky Bluegrass Blend: Proportioned by weight as follows:

   a. 85 percent tall fescue (Festuca arundinacea).
   b. 15 percent Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis).

2. General Lawn Mixture – Kentucky Bluegrass: Proportioned by weight as follows:

   a. 85 percent 1/3 equal mixture of three Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis) varieties.
   b. 15 percent fine fescue (Fescue rubra).

3. General Lawn Sun/Shade Mixture: Proportioned by weight as follows:

   a. 75 percent 1/3 equal mixture of three Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis) varieties.
   b. 25 percent fine fescue (Fescue rubra).

4. Athletic Field Blend (Kentucky bluegrass): Proportioned by weight as follows:

   a. 90 percent 1/3 equal mixture of three Kentucky bluegrass (Poa pratensis) varieties.
   b. 10 percent fine fescue (Fescue rubra).

5. Athletic Field Blend (Tall fescue/Kentucky Bluegrass): Proportioned by weight as follows:

   a. 75 percent tall fescue.
   b. 25 percent Kentucky Bluegrass

6. Conservation / Detention Basin Seed Blend: Provide native grass and forb seed mix containing the following varieties: Panicum clandestinum (Deertongue, “Tioga”); Carex vulpinoidea (Fox Sedge); Elymus virginicus (Virginia Wildrye); Panicum virgatum “Shawnee” (Switchgrass, “Shawnee”); Agrostis perennans (Autumn Bentgrass); Agrostis scabra (Rough Bentgrass); Juncus effuses (Soft Rush); Juncus tenuis (Path Rush); Scirpus atrovirens (Green Bulrush).

   a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product manufactured by Ernst Conservation Seeds, Inc. “Native Detention Area Mix”, or comparable product.

2.2 ORGANIC COMPOST

A. Compost: Organic product manufactured through the controlled aerobic, biological decomposition of biodegradable materials which involves mesophilic and thermophilic temperatures to reduce weed seeds and stabilize carbon content. Manufacturing facility is to be registered and/or permitted by New York State Department of Environmental Conservation and is to comply with their requirements.

B. Compost requirements:

Parameters	Units of Measure	Range	Analysis Method
pH	pH units	5.8-7.8	TMECC 04.11-A
Soluble Salts Concentration (electrical conductivity)	dS/m (mmhos/cm)	Maximum 6	TMECC 04.10-A
Moisture Content	%, wet weight basis	20-50	TMECC 03.09-A
Organic Matter Content	%, dry weight basis	Minimum 60	TMECC 05.07-A
Particle Size	% passing a selected mesh size, dry weight basis	97-100% Passing 3/8"	TMECC 02.02-B or ASTM D 2977
C:N Ratio	Ratio, dry weight basis	5:1 – 30:1	TMECC 05.02-A
Physical Contaminants (man-made inerts)	%, dry weight basis	<.50	TMECC 03.08

C. Mix with existing and imported topsoils in ratio designated in "Turf Planting Soil" Article below. Compost must be provided for both existing and imported topsoil, with the exception of topsoil with 10% of organic content and above.

D. Compost testing is to be in accordance with the US Composting Seal of Testing Assurance Program.

E. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or a comparable product:

1. Naturcycle Compost, Naturcycle LLC
2. WeCare Compost, WeCare Organics
3. Sustane Concentrated Compost 2-6-3, Sustane Natural Fertilizer, Inc.
4. Agresource, Inc. - Agresoil Compost

2.3 FERTILIZERS

A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.

B. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Spring Fertilization: 10 percent nitrogen, 6 percent available phosphorous, and 4 percent water-soluble potash (10-6-4).

2. Fall Fertilization: 5 percent nitrogen, 10 percent available phosphorous, and 5 percent water-soluble potash (5-10-5).

3. Final Fertilization:

   a. Spring: Granular slow release fertilizer with high nitrogen (38 percent), Uramite or other Architect-approved material.
   b. Fall: "Fall Fertilization" composition above.

4. Follow requirements regarding fertilization recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.

2.4 TURF PLANTING SOILS

A. General: Provide turf planting soil consisting of existing and/or imported topsoil with amendments and fertilizers noted in this Section. Unamended existing or imported topsoil is not acceptable as turf planting soil.

1. Where quantities of existing topsoil are insufficient to provide 6 inch depth turf planting soil, supplement with imported topsoil, at no additional cost to Owner.

B. Topsoil Requirements: Free of subsoil, stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension, dense material, hardpan, slag, clay, cinders, sod, roots, sticks, poison ivy, crabgrass, cough grass, noxious weeds, and foreign matter, including but not limited to glass, screws, asbestos, toxins, hazardous wastes, petroleum product contamination, lead and chemicals (such as atrizene and muriatic acid) that may be injurious to humans, animals and plant materials.

1. Mechanically screen topsoil to conform to following gradations:

Sieve Designation	Percent Passing
1 inch	100
1/4 inch	97-100
#200	20-65 of the 1/4-inch sieve

2. No more than 60 percent of material passing #100 mesh shall consist of clay as determined by Bouyoucous hydrometer or by decantation method.

3. Topsoil to comply with the following:

   a. Organic Matter Content: Not more than 10 percent.
   b. Corrected to pH Value: 6.5 to 7.5 on that portion passing 1/4-inch sieve.
   c. Soluble Salt Content: Not to exceed 500 parts per million.

C. Existing Topsoil: Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process and stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of native surface topsoil to produce viable planting soil.

1. Provide soil analysis per requirements in Part 1 of this Section.

D. Imported Topsoil: Imported topsoil obtained from local sources or from areas having similar soil characteristics as Project site. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained sites where topsoil occurs at least 6 inches deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs or marshes.

1. Additional Properties of Imported Topsoil or Manufactured Topsoil: Screened and free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension; free of roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth; free of obnoxious weeds and invasive plants including quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and bromegrass; not infested with nematodes, grubs, other pests, pest eggs, or other undesirable organisms and disease-causing plant pathogens; friable and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration. Continuous, air-filled, pore-space content on a volume/volume basis shall be at least 15 percent when moisture is present at field capacity. Soil shall have a field capacity of at least 15 percent on a dry weight basis.

2. Provide soil analysis per requirements in Part 1 of this Section.

E. Required Amendments: Mix existing and imported topsoil with the following soil amendments in the following quantities to produce planting soil:

1. Organic Compost:

a. Ratio of Loose Compost to Blended Topsoil: For bidding purposes, provide 1 part compost to 5 parts blended topsoil. For athletic fields, tailor amount to achieve 8% organics. This amount of compost is required regardless of organic content of native or imported topsoil.

b. Regardless of topsoil organic content, add organic compost to all turf planting soils, including topsoils placed on slopes and in stormwater basins, swales and biofiltration areas.

2. pH Adjustment: Apply approved calcium or sulfur compounds to correct pH level to be between 6.5 and 7.5 or as recommended by soil analysis report.

3. Soil Analysis Recommendations: Provide nutritional and other amendments recommended in the soil analysis report, as approved by Architect.

4. Provide fertilizer per “Fertilizer” Article above.

2.5 TOPDRESSING SAND

A. Provide processed sand tested to meet the following requirements per ASTM-F-1632.

B. Processed Sand: The sand shall meet the following particle size criteria:

	Sieve Mesh	Diameter of Sieve (mm)	Allowable Range % retained
Coarse Gravel	5	4.00	0%
Fine Gravel	10	2.00	0-5%
Very Coarse Sand	18	1.00	0-20% combined with gravel
Coarse	35	0.50	20-50%
Medium	60	0.25	20-40%
Fine	100	0.15	20% maximum
Very Fine	270	0.50	5% maximum
Silt & Clay			3% maximum

1. Sand is to have a coefficient of uniformity not exceeding 3.5 (D60/D10).
2. Maximum of 5% combined very fine sand, silt and clay allowable.
3. Minimum of 60% in the medium and coarse size fractions required.

2.6 MULCHES

A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.

2.7 HYDROSEEDING MATERIALS

A. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

B. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

2.8 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Refer to Section 31 25 00 “Erosion and Sedimentation Controls.”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.

2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.

3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.

4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

D. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydromulching overspray.
2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.

B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF AREA PREPARATION

A. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.

B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

C. Bulk-mix screened topsoil, soil amendments, organic compost and fertilizer, and thoroughly blend planting soil.

1. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
2. If soil testing recommendations do not provide fertilizer application quantities, provide application rate of 1 lb. of nitrogen per 1,000 square feet.
3. If liming is required, mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

D. If topsoil is to remain in place, thoroughly incorporate the additives into the top 6 inches of topsoil.

E. Spread planting soil to a depth of 6 inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.

1. Spread approximately 1/3 the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.

F. Unchanged Subgrades: If topsoil is to remain in place, prepare surface soil as follows:

1. Cut neat line between existing turf to remain and new turf.

2. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.

3. Loosen surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches. Uniformly apply the soil amendments, organic compost and fertilizer over the entire area using a compost spreader or similar equipment that will achieve a uniform application, according to planting soil mix proportions and mix thoroughly into top 5 inches of soil. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture.

a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.

4. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, trash, and other extraneous matter.

5. Legally dispose of waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf.

G. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

H. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

I. Before planting, obtain Architect's written permission; restore planting areas if topsoil finish grading is eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 PREPARATION FOR EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Turf reinforcement matting: Install planting soil in two lifts. First lift is installed before the matting is placed. Second lift is placed after the matting is installed by filling the cells of the matting with planting soil. Lightly compact soil before seeding. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations.

3.5 SEEDING

A. Timing: Provide seeding within planting times indicated.

1. Seed at earliest possible date to achieve mature turf prior to Owner occupancy.
2. Sow Tall Fescue varieties preferably in fall.

B. Sow seed with Brillion spreader or similar seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in three passes: second pass at 90 degrees to the first, third pass at 45 degrees to second.

1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
2. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.

C. Sow seed at a total rate of 6 lb/1,000 sq. ft.

D. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

E. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:4 as follows:

1. In small areas adjacent to buildings, at parking islands and narrow strips of seeding along paving, spread straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment. Avoid areas of thick mulch that will prevent seed determination.

2. In larger areas, including athletic fields if approved by Architect, mulch by hydromulching.

F. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

3.6 HYDROSEEDING

A. Prior Permission: Request permission of Architect for hydroseeding. Do not hydroseed without prior written permission of the Architect. Equipment and materials must be submitted and approved before permission to hydroseed will be given.

B. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.

1. Mix slurry with fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended tackifier.

2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a **two-step process**.

   a. Apply first slurry coat containing mulch and seed at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 500-lb/acre dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.

   b. Apply slurry cover coat of fiber mulch (hydromulching) at a rate of 1,000 lb/acre. For slopes greater than 10 percent, apply second coat at 1,500 lb/acre.

3. When hydromulching, avoid overspray on buildings, pavements, signs and other site features. If overspray occurs, clean mulch from all surfaces.

C. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

3.7 EXISTING TURF RENOVATION/REPAIR – GENERAL (NON-ATHLETIC FIELD) AREAS

A. Renovate existing turf indicated on Drawings, turf areas disturbed as part of Project, and areas damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required and install new planting soil and turf as required below.

1. In areas where turf has been removed, killed, damaged or contaminated:

   a. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.

   b. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new planting soil.

   c. Till stripped or bare areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 4 inches.

   d. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.

   e. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizers required for establishing new turf and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of soil.

   f. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch as required for new turf.

   g. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

   h. For other maintenance required, refer to Turf Maintenance section.

2. In areas where existing turf remains:

   a. Mow to height of 2-1/2”.
   b. Core aerate in two to three passes at a rate of nine holes minimum per square foot to a minimum depth of 4 inches, and rake existing turf.

c. Remove weeds.
d. Remove waste and foreign materials, loose vegetation, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
e. Drag to break up cores or remove them.
f. Topdress with fine topsoil and overseed if there is less than 90% healthy turf coverage.

3.8 EXISTING TURF RENOVATION/REPAIR – ATHLETIC FIELD AREAS

A. Renovate existing athletic field turf indicated on Drawings or athletic field turf areas disturbed as part of Project as required below:

1. Determine areas that are too high and low to drain properly or that affect playability. Remove sod from those areas and shave down high spots and fill in low spots.

2. Install new planting soil to fill low spots.

3. Remove weeds.

4. Mow to height of 2-1/2".

5. Core aerate with an aerator equipped with ¾" spoons in two to three passes at a rate of thirty holes minimum per square foot to a minimum depth of 4 inches.

6. Apply 50/50 mixture of Topdressing Sand and finely screened or granular Organic Compost (3/8" minus or less) evenly over turf surface using a top dresser or other suitable equipment in a uniform depth of ½".

7. Break up cores and smooth grade with a York rake, weighted chain link fence fabric or other acceptable equipment.

8. Apply seed to bare areas and areas with thin turf coverage per seeding specification.

9. Work should be done in late spring or early fall.

3.9 TURF MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.

1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
3. Use hand weeding to control weeds. Schedule weedings throughout the year to maintain turf as free of weeds as possible.

B. Watering: Use of sprinkler or irrigation system. Coordinate with Section 015000 “Temporary Facilities and Controls”

1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.

2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:

1. Mow turf to a height of 2-1/2 to 3 inches.
2. Neatly trim edges and hand clip where necessary.
3. Immediately after each mowing (same day), carefully remove excess clippings to prevent damage to turf.

D. Turf Postfertilization: Apply fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.

3.10 SATISFACTORY TURF

A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:

1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

C. Warranty period does not begin until satisfactory turf is established, as determined by the Architect.

3.11 CONSERVATION GRASSES

A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.

1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.

B. Sow seed at a total rate recommended by manufacturer and approved by Architect.

C. Brush seed into top 1/16 inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.

D. Mulch in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until meadow is established.

3.12 CONSERVATION GRASSES MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish conservation grasses by watering, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish a healthy, viable grasses. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.

1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials in areas of subsidence.
2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.

B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep planting uniformly moist.

1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.

2. Water planting with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1/2 inch per week for eight weeks after planting unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

3.13 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.

C. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 32 92 00

SECTION 32 93 00 - PLANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plants.
2. Planting soils.
3. Tree stabilization.
4. Mulch.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.

B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.

C. Balled and Potted Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

D. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

E. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.

F. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

G. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

H. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

I. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

J. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.

K. Planting Soil: Manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.

L. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.

M. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.

N. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.

O. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

P. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

Q. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

1.4 SUBMITTALS, GENERAL

A. General: Submit all action submittals and informational submittals required by this Section concurrently.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including soils.

1. Plant Materials: Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.

B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following:

1. Organic Compost Mulch: 1-pint volume of each organic mulch required; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.

2. Shredded Bark Mulch: 1-pint volume in sealed plastic bag

3. Weed Control Barrier: 12 by 12 inches.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified landscape Installer. Include list of similar projects completed by Installer demonstrating Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.

B. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of plants during a calendar year. Submit before start of required maintenance periods.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Executed special warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape Installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.

1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association.

2. Experience: Five (5) years of experience in landscape installation in addition to requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.

4. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor shall have certification in the following categories from the Professional Landcare Network:

a. Certified Landscape Technician - Exterior, with installation and maintenance areas, designated CLT-Exterior.

B. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.

C. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.

1. Trees and Shrubs: Measure with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above the root flare for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above the root flare for larger sizes.

2. Other Plants: Measure with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.

D. Plant Material Observation: Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Architect retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

1. Notify Architect of sources of planting materials seven days in advance of delivery to site.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.

2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

C. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.

D. Handle planting stock by root ball.

E. Store bulbs, corms, and tubers in a dry place at 60 to 65 deg F until planting.

F. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.

1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.

2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.

3. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.

B. Interruption of Existing Services or Utilities: Do not interrupt services or utilities to facilities occupied by Owner or others.

C. Planting Restrictions: Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion. Adjust planting period for plant species that require a specific planting period per industry standards.

D. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

E. Coordination with Turf Areas (Lawns): Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.

1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
c. Faulty performance of tree stabilization and/or other landscaping products provided.
d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Periods from Date of written acceptance of planting by Architect:

a. Trees, Shrubs, Vines, and Ornamental Grasses: 12 months.
b. Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, and Other Plants: 12 months.

3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:

    a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
    b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
    c. A limit of one replacement of each plant will be required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
    d. Replace plants with material of the same species, quantity and size unless a substitution is approved by the Architect.
    e. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material.

1.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service for Trees, Shrubs, Ground Covers and other plants: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.

1. Maintenance Period: 12 months from date of written acceptance of planting by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.

2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.

B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.

C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which shall begin at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.

D. Labeling: Label each plant with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature from "Standardized Plant Names" listing by American Joint Committee of Horticulture for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant as shown on Drawings.

E. If formal arrangements or consecutive order of plants is shown on Drawings, select stock for uniform height and spread.

2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:

1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through No. 60 sieve.

2. Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone if additional magnesium is determined by soil testing to be required; provide calcitic limestone or mollusk shells if additional magnesium is not required.

B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 6 sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through No. 40 sieve.

C. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.

D. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.

E. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.

F. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through No. 50 sieve.

G. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, and free of toxic materials.

H. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.

2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Compost: Well-decomposed, stable, and weed-free organic matter derived from agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; animal manures; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste, meeting the following requirements:

Parameters	Units of Measure	Range	Analysis Method
pH	pH units	5.8-7.8	TMECC 04.11-A
Soluble Salts Concentration (electrical conductivity)	dS/m (mmhos/cm)	Maximum 7	TMECC 04.10-A
Moisture Content	%, wet weight basis	20-45	TMECC 03.09-A
Organic Matter Content	%, dry weight basis	40-90	TMECC 05.07-A
Particle Size	% passing a selected mesh size, dry weight basis	97-100% Passing 3/8"	TMECC 02.02-B or ASTM D 2977
C:N Ratio	Ratio, dry weight basis	5:1 – 30:1	TMECC 05.02-A
Physical Contaminants (man-made inerts)	%, dry weight basis	<1	TMECC 03.08

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Sustane 2-6-3 Concentrated Compost, Sustane Natural Fertilizer, Inc.
    b. WeCare Compost, manufactured by WeCare Organics, LLC; www.wecareorganics.com.
    c. Agresoil Compost, manufactured by Agresource, Inc; www.agresourceinc.com

2.4 FERTILIZERS

A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 1 percent nitrogen and 10 percent phosphoric acid.

B. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:

1. Composition: 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight or as recommended in soil-testing reports.

C. Chelated Iron: If recommended in soil-testing report, provide commercial-grade FeEDDHA for dicots and woody plants, and commercial-grade FeDTPA for ornamental grasses and monocots.

2.5 PLANTING SOILS

A. Native Planting Soil: Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process and stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of native surface topsoil to produce viable planting soil. Clean soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

1. Supplement with imported planting soil when quantities are insufficient.

2. Mix existing, native surface topsoil with the following soil amendments and fertilizers in the following quantities to produce planting soil:

a. Compost: Ratio of loose compost to topsoil by volume: 1:4. Compost is required to be added to planting topsoil regardless of organic content of topsoil.

b. Weight of Commercial Fertilizer per 1,000 Sq. Ft.: 1 lb.

c. Determine quantities below based on soil testing done. If soil testing has not been done, use the amounts specified; however these will have to be modified once the contractor soil tests are provided. Conduct initial pH test if not done professionally to flag the need for lime or sulphur.

d. Weight of Lime per 1,000 Sq. Ft.: To be determined by pH and nutritional testing of soils provided by Contractor.

e. Weight of Sulfur per 1,000 Sq. Ft.: To be determined by pH and nutritional testing of soils provided by Contractor.

f. Weight of Agricultural Gypsum per 1,000 Sq. Ft.:

g. Volume of Sand Plus 10 Percent [Diatomaceous Earth] per 1000 Sq. Ft.:

h. Weight of Bonemeal per 1,000 Sq. Ft.:

B. Imported Planting Soil: ASTM D 5268 topsoil, with pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 6 percent organic material content; free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

1. For quantity of soil amendments and fertilizers, see requirements for Native Topsoil above, including compost and commercial fertilizer.

2. Additional Properties of Imported Topsoil or Manufactured Topsoil: Screened and free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension; free of roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth; free of obnoxious weeds and invasive plants including quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and bromegrass; not infested with nematodes; grubs; or other pests, pest eggs, or other undesirable organisms and disease-causing plant pathogens; friable and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration. Continuous, air-filled pore space content on a volume/volume basis shall be at least 15 percent when moisture is present at field capacity. Soil shall have a field capacity of at least 15 percent on a dry weight basis.

2.6 MULCHES

A. Shredded Hardwood Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs complying with requirements below. Shredded former wood products are not allowed (ex., wood pallets).

1. Type: Shredded hardwood
2. Size Range: 3 inches maximum, 1/2 inch minimum.
3. Color: Natural (no added color).
4. Color: Readily available natural gravel color range.

2.7 WEED-CONTROL BARRIERS

A. Nonwoven Geotextile Filter Fabric: Polypropylene or polyester fabric, 3 oz./sq. yd. minimum, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. Fabric shall be inert to biological degradation and resist naturally-encountered chemicals, alkalis, and acids.

2.8 TREE STABILIZATION MATERIALS

A. Stakes and Guys:

1. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood or softwood with specified wood pressure-preservative treatment, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2-by-2-inch nominal by length indicated, pointed at one end.

2. Flexible Ties: Wide rubber or elastic bands or straps of length required to reach stakes, turnbuckles or compression springs.

2.9 LANDSCAPE EDGINGS

A. Aluminum Edging:

1. Heavy duty commercial grade aluminum edging.

2. Stakes: 12” interlocking aluminum.

3. Color: Black, complying with AMMA 2603.

4. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Permaloc “CleanLine” Aluminum Landscape Edging.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Wood Pressure-Preservative Treatment: AWPA C2, with waterborne preservative for soil and freshwater use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and containing no arsenic; including ammoniacal copper arsenate, ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate, and chromated copper arsenate.

B. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Burlap: Non-synthetic, biodegradable.

D. Planter Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile manufactured for separation applications and made of polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fibers or combination of them.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.

2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.

3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.

4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

D. Beginning installation constitutes Contractor’s acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

C. Stake locations of individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Notify architect a minimum of one week prior to planting. Staked location to be approved by architect prior to installation, excavation of pits or preparation of beds. Make minor adjustments as required.

D. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.

1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.

E. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.

3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

A. Loosen subgrade of planting areas to a minimum depth of 12 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.

a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
b. If liming is required, mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

B. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

C. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

A. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are not acceptable. Trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage away from center. Do not further disturb base. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling. Scarify sides of planting pit smeared or smoothed during excavation.

1. Excavate approximately three times as wide as ball diameter for balled and burlapped and container-grown stock.

2. Do not excavate deeper than depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.

3. If area under the plant was initially dug too deep, add soil to raise it to the correct level and thoroughly tamp the added soil to prevent settling.

4. Maintain required angles of repose of adjacent materials as shown on the Drawings. Do not excavate subgrades of adjacent paving, structures, hardscapes, or other new or existing improvements.

5. Maintain supervision of excavations during working hours.

6. Keep excavations covered or otherwise protected at all times.

B. Subsoil removed from excavations may not be used as planting soil.

C. Obstructions: Notify Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.

D. Drainage: Notify Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.

3.5 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PLANTING

A. Before planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.

B. Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.

C. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch above adjacent finish grades.

1. Use planting soil for backfill.

2. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove burlap, rope, and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.

3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.

4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.

5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

D. Set container-grown stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch above adjacent finish grades.

1. Use planting soil for backfill.

2. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.

3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.

4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.

5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

E. Set and support bare-root stock in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch above adjacent finish grade.

1. Use planting soil for backfill.

2. Spread roots without tangling or turning toward surface, and carefully work backfill around roots by hand. Puddle with water until backfill layers are completely saturated. Plumb before backfilling, and maintain plumb while working backfill around roots and placing layers above roots.

3. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside soil-covered roots about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole or touching the roots.

4. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

F. When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.

3.6 MECHANIZED TREE SPADE PLANTING

A. Trees may be planted with an approved mechanized tree spade at the designated locations. Do not use tree spade to move trees larger than the maximum size allowed for a similar field-grown, balled-and-burlapped root-ball diameter according to ANSI Z60.1, or larger than the manufacturer's maximum size recommendation for the tree spade being used, whichever is smaller.

B. When extracting the tree, center the trunk within the tree spade and move tree with a solid ball of earth.

C. Cut exposed roots cleanly during transplanting operations.

D. Use the same tree spade to excavate the planting hole as was used to extract and transport the tree.

E. Plant trees as shown on Drawings, following procedures in "Tree, Shrub, and Vine Planting" Article.

F. Where possible, orient the tree in the same direction as in its original location.

3.7 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PRUNING

A. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines according to standard professional horticultural and arboricultural practices. Unless otherwise indicated by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured, dying, or dead branches from trees and shrubs; and prune to retain natural character.

B. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.

3.8 TREE STABILIZATION

A. Install trunk stabilization only when trees are subjected to windy or other conditions that increases the likelihood of tipping or leaning:

1. Upright Staking and Tying:

a. For trees of 2-inch through 5-inch caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch caliper only as required to prevent wind tip out. Refer to Drawings for trunk stabilization requirements. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree or support trees with two strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.

2. Staking and Guying: Stake and guy trees more than 14 feet in height and more than 3 inches in caliper unless otherwise indicated. Securely attach no fewer than three guys to stakes 30 inches long, driven to grade.

   a. Site-Fabricated Staking-and-Guying Method: For trees more than 6 inches in caliper, anchor guys to wood deadmen buried at least 36 inches below grade. Provide turnbuckle or compression spring for each guy wire and tighten securely. Support trees with one of two systems below:

      1) Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle or compression spring. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.

      2) Support trees with strands of cable or multiple strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle or compression spring. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.

      3) Paint turnbuckles and compression springs with luminescent white paint.

3.9 GROUND COVER AND PLANT PLANTING

A. Set out and space ground cover and plants other than trees, shrubs, and vines as indicated in even rows with triangular spacing.
B. Use planting soil for backfill.
C. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots.
D. For rooted cutting plants supplied in flats, plant each in a manner that will minimally disturb the root system but to a depth not less than two nodes.
E. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water.
F. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.
G. Protect plants from hot sun and wind; remove protection if plants show evidence of recovery from transplanting shock.

3.10 PLANTING AREA MULCHING

A. Install weed-control barriers before mulching according to manufacturer's written instructions. Completely cover area to be mulched, overlapping edges a minimum of 6 inches and secure seams with galvanized pins.

B. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.

   1. Trees and Tree-like Shrubs in Turf Areas: Apply organic mulch ring with radius as indicated in planting details around trunks or stems. Do not place mulch within 3 inches of trunks or stems.

2. Mineral Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply mineral mulch extending 12 inches beyond edge of individual planting pit or trench and over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 6 inches of trunks or stems.

3.11 PLANT MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.

B. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated past management practices whenever possible to avoid the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

3.12 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.

B. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance period. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.

C. After installation and before Substantial Completion, nursery stakes, tie tape, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

1. Nursery tags to be removed only after Architect’s Substantial Completion review of plant materials.

3.13 DISPOSAL

A. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 32 93 00

SECTION 33 41 00 - STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe and fittings.
2. Non-pressure transition couplings.
3. Perforated Edge Drains.
4. Frames and grates/lids
5. Catch basins.
6. Pipe outlets.
7. Flared End Sections

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 01 78 39 “Project Record Documents”
2. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving"

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Catch basins. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and grates.

C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

D. Quality Control Submittals

1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by applicable subcontractor, Prime Contractor and manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with applicable “Qualifications” requirements specified below in “Quality Assurance” article.

2. Installer Experience Listing: Submit list of completed projects using products proposed for this Project, including owner's contact and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable "Qualifications" requirements specified below in "Quality Assurance" article.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Perform work, including shoring, in compliance with the applicable requirements of governing authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
C. Handle catch basins according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID DOUBLE WALL HDPE SMOOTH INTERIOR PIPE:

A. Interior Diameter, 4" to 36": Corrugated polyethylene circular pipe with an integrally formed smooth interior complying with the following specifications:

1. Applicable Standards:

a. 4 inch to 10 inch pipe: AASHTO M 252-Type S or SP
b. 12 inch to 36 inch pipe: AASHTO M294-Type S or SP

2. Mannings "n" Value: 0.012.

3. ASTM D3034 for maximum allowable deflection.

4. Fittings: Meet performance requirements of ASTM D 3034 and ASTM F 1336. Gaskets to comply with ASTM F477.

5. Manufacturer: Similar to "N-12 Smooth Interior Pipe" by Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc.; London, Ohio.

2.2 PERFORATED SINGLE WALL HDPE CORRUGATED PIPE:

A. Interior Diameter, 3" to 24": Corrugated perforated single wall polyethylene circular pipe with uniform slots and drilled holes complying with the following specifications:

1. Applicable Standards:

a. 3 inch to 10 inch pipe: AASHTO M 252
b. 12 inch to 24 inch pipe: AASHTO M294

2. Fittings: Meet performance requirements of ASTM D 3034 and ASTM F 1336. Gaskets to comply with ASTM F477.

3. Manufacturer: Similar to “Perforated Single Wall Plastic Corrugated Pipe” by Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc.; London, Ohio.

2.3 NONPRESSURE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:

1. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
2. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
3. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
b. Fernco Inc.
c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
d. NDS Inc.
e. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.

2. Description: Elastomeric sleeve with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

2.4 PERFORATED EDGE DRAINS

A. Perforated Edge Drain Piping: 1" x 12" polyethylene multi-channeled edge drain with polypropylene filter fabric sock. Provide all fittings and connections required for installation fabricated by manufacturer of drainage piping used. Similar to “AdvanEdge Pipe” by Advanced Drainage Systems.

1. Pipe Properties

   a. Compressive Strength (ASTM D-695):..... 6,000 psf (41.7 psi) minimum.
   b. Flow Rate (ASTM D-4716): ..... 11gpm/sf.
   c. Peel Strength (ASTM D-1876):..... 35 lbs/ft minimum.
   d. Core Thickness:..... 0.80"

2. Drainage Fabric Properties

   a. Grab Tensile Strength (D-4632):..... 120 lbs.
   b. Grab Elongation Strength (ASTM D-4632):... 60%.
   c. Mullen Burst Strength (ASTM 3786): ..... 90 psi.
   d. Puncture Strength (ASTM 4833): ..... 30 lbs.
   e. Trapezoid Tear Strength (ASTM D-4533):..... 40 lbs.
   f. U.V. Resistence (ASTM D-4355): ..... 70% strength retained.
   g. A.O.S.:..... Per ASTM D-4751
   h. Permeability (ASTM 4491):..... K Fabric > K Soil
   i. Permitivity (ASTM 4491): 7

2.5 FLARED END SECTIONS

A. Galvanized Steel End Sections: Flared end sections manufactured in accordance with New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Item 707-10.

2.6 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:

   1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
   2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
   3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
   4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4,000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

   1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
   2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3,000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

   1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
   2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

2.7 CATCH BASINS

A. Inside Dimension: 24-inch by 24-inch clear inside area, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Description: ASTM C 913, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.

C. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.

D. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, Length, Width and Depth as indicated.

E. Top Section: Flat-slab-top type is indicated.

F. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.

G. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.

H. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6 to 9-inch total thickness, that match the frame and grate, and height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

I. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

2.8 CATCH BASIN FRAMES AND GRATES

A. Heavy Duty Ductile Iron Frame and Grate:

1. Description: Heavy-duty 24-in by 24-in (nominal clear opening) ductile iron frame and grate.

2. Material Requirements:

a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 70-50-05, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Meets AASHTO M306
b. Grate style: Bar, Flat
c. Frame style: Top Flange, Reversible, Bottom Flange
d. Coating: Asphaltic Coated
e. Color: Black
f. Origin of manufacture: USA
g. Clear opening depth: 24-in minimum, unless otherwise indicated
h. Clear opening length: 24-in minimum, unless otherwise indicated
i. Cover/Grate opening depth: 2-in
j. Cover/Grate opening width: 26-in
k. Cover/Grate opening length: 26in
l. Flange inner length: 26-in
m. Flange inner width: 26-in
n. Flange outer length: 32-in
o. Flange outer width: 32-in
p. Frame height: 6-in
q. Frame outside length: 27.5-in
r. Frame outside width: 27.5-in
s. Grate thickness: 2-in

t. Grate length: 25.75-in
u. Grate width: 27.75-in
v. Grate open area: 321 sq. in.
w. Grate wetted perimeter: 103-in
x. Slot width: 1.5-in
y. Tag Text: “Drains To Waterways Dump No Waste!”

3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide EJ Group Inc., Product No. 45726033C03 – “Classic Series V5626-2 REV 6” V5726 EXHD DI GR SET” by EJ Group Inc. (East Jordan Iron Works), 301 Spring Street, East Jordan, MI 49727 Telephone: 1-800-874-4100.

B. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.

1. Size: 24-in by 24-in minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.

C. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include 24-inch ID by 7 to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch- diameter flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.

1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 PIPE OUTLETS

A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.

B. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregularly sized and shaped, graded stone according to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."

1. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-5, screen opening 5 inches.

C. Filter Stone: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size graded stone.

D. Energy Dissipaters: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 IDENTIFICATION

A. Underground Warning Tape

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Presco, Inc.; Sherman, Texas
b. EMED Co., Buffalo, New York.
c. Seton Identification Products, A Tricor Direct Company.

2. Material: 6-inch wide, color-coded, heavy gauge 5-mil tape with aluminum backing.

3. All tapes printed with black ink on APWA (American Public Works Association) approved colors to meet or exceed industry standards.

4. Location: Provide warning tape 18 inches feet below finished grade in buried piping trenches and at foundation wall.

2.11 CONCRETE

A. Cast-in-Place Concrete: Refer to Div 03 concrete section for concrete strength, mixtures, fiber reinforcement and other requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

D. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.

E. Install gravity-flow, non-pressure drainage piping according to the following:

1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.

2. Install piping NPS 6 and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.

3. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover.

4. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."

5. Install corrugated steel piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.

6. Install PE corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.

7. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:

1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasketed joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
2. Join corrugated steel sewer piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
3. Join corrugated PE piping according to ASTM D 3212 for push-on joints.
4. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasketed joints.
5. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
6. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

3.4 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.5 STORMWATER OUTLET INSTALLATION

A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
E. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place and test cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318 and Division 03 concrete section**.**

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.

1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.

    a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.

4. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

B. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use non-pressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, non-pressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.

    a. Shielded flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
    b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
    c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.

3.8 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:

1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.

B. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.

1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.

2. Defects requiring correction include the following:

a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.

3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.

4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.

2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.

4. Submit separate report for each test.

5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:

   a. Exception: Piping with soil tight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
   c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 33 41 00